ISSN 1007-9327 (print)
ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

# World Journal of *Gastroenterology*

*World J Gastroenterol* 2021 May 7; 27(17): 1847-2053

Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Contents

Weekly Volume 27 Number 17 May 7, 2021

## EVIDENCE REVIEW



## REVIEW



## MINIREVIEWS



## ORIGINAL ARTICLE

### Basic Study

## Retrospective Study



## Observational Study

## ABOUT COVER

Editorial Board Member of *World Journal of Gastroenterology*, Abhinav Vasudevan, Bachelor of Medicine, MPH, PhD, FRACP, Advanced Inflammatory Bowel Disease Fellow, Mayo Clinic, 200 1st Street SW, Rochester, MN 55902, United States. vasudevan.abhinav@mayo.edu

## AIMS AND SCOPE

The primary aim of *World Journal of Gastroenterology* (*WJG*, *World J Gastroenterol*) is to provide scholars and readers from various fields of gastroenterology and hepatology with a platform to publish high-quality basic and clinical research articles and communicate their research findings online. *WJG* mainly publishes articles reporting research results and findings obtained in the field of gastroenterology and hepatology and covering a wide range of topics including gastroenterology, hepatology, gastrointestinal endoscopy, gastrointestinal surgery, gastrointestinal oncology, and pediatric gastroenterology.

## INDEXING/ABSTRACTING

The *WJG* is now indexed in Current Contents®/Clinical Medicine, Science Citation Index Expanded (also known as SciSearch®), Journal Citation Reports®, Index Medicus, MEDLINE, PubMed, PubMed Central, and Scopus. The 2020 edition of Journal Citation Report® cites the 2019 impact factor (IF) for *WJG* as 3.665; IF without journal self cites: 3.534; 5-year IF: 4.048; Ranking: 35 among 88 journals in gastroenterology and hepatology; and Quartile category: Q2. The *WJG*'s CiteScore for 2019 is 7.1 and Scopus CiteScore rank 2019: Gastroenterology is 17/137.

## RESPONSIBLE EDITORS FOR THIS ISSUE



**NAME OF JOURNAL**
*World Journal of Gastroenterology*

**ISSN**
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

**LAUNCH DATE**
October 1, 1995

**FREQUENCY**
Weekly

**EDITORS-IN-CHIEF**
Andrzej S Tarnawski, Subrata Ghosh

**EDITORIAL BOARD MEMBERS**
http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/editorialboard.htm

**PUBLICATION DATE**
May 7, 2021



**INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS**
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/204

**GUIDELINES FOR ETHICS DOCUMENTS**
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/GerInfo/287

**GUIDELINES FOR NON-NATIVE SPEAKERS OF ENGLISH**
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/240

**PUBLICATION ETHICS**
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/GerInfo/288

**PUBLICATION MISCONDUCT**
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/208

**ARTICLE PROCESSING CHARGE**
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/242

**STEPS FOR SUBMITTING MANUSCRIPTS**
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/GerInfo/239

**ONLINE SUBMISSION**
https://www.f6publishing.com

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

*World J Gastroenterol* 2021 May 7; 27(17): 1847-1863

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i17.1847

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

EVIDENCE REVIEW

# Pancreatic adenocarcinoma: Beyond first line, where are we?

Sara Cherri, Silvia Noventa, Alberto Zaniboni

**ORCID number:** Sara Cherri 0000-0001-7062-8723; Silvia Noventa 0000-0001-7423-6065; Alberto Zaniboni 0000-0002-2140-7040.

**Author contributions:** Cherri S contributed drafting of the manuscript; Noventa S contributed tables and figures; Noventa S and Zaniboni A contributed critical revision of the manuscript for important intellectual content; all the authors read and approved the final manuscript.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** Each author certifies that he or she, or a member of his or her immediate family, has no funding or commercial associations (e.g., consultancies, stock ownership, equity interest, patent/Licensing arrangements) that might pose a conflict of interest in connection with the submitted article.



**Sara Cherri, Silvia Noventa, Alberto Zaniboni,** Department of Oncology, Fondazione Poliambulanza, Brescia 25124, Italy

**Corresponding author:** Sara Cherri, MD, Medical Assistant, Department of Oncology, Fondazione Poliambulanza, Via Bissolati 57, Brescia 25124, Italy. sara.m.cherri@gmail.com

## Abstract

Pancreatic cancer is considered one of the most aggressive cancers, with an increasing incidence in recent years. To date, chemotherapy is still the standard of care for advanced metastatic disease, unfortunately providing only a slight advantage in terms of survival. The molecular and cellular characteristics of pancreatic cancer cells, as well as the cells that characterize the pancreatic tumour microenvironment, are the basis of the mechanisms of resistance to treatment. After progression during first-line treatment, few patients are eligible for second-line treatment due to the loss of performance status. To date, a clear survival advantage has not yet been demonstrated for second-line chemotherapy. Precision medicine could be the key to increasing responses to cancer treatment and finally impacting survival in this difficult-to-treat disease. In this review, we analyze current recommendations in the second-line setting and potential future prospects.

**Key Words:** Pancreatic adenocarcinoma; Second-line; Chemotherapy; Targeted therapy; Immunotherapy



**Core Tip:** The incidence of pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma is increasing, with anticipation of a large impact on the population. Despite achieving a survival gain in first-line treatment in the last decade, to date, little has been achieved in second-line treatment. The molecular and genetic characteristics of this tumour represent a fundamental challenge for preclinical and clinical research. In this review, we illustrate current clinical practice in second-line treatment for advanced pancreatic adenocarcinoma and the research landscape of potential future prospects.

**Citation:** Cherri S, Noventa S, Zaniboni A. Pancreatic adenocarcinoma: Beyond first line, where are we? *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; 27(17): 1847-1863

**URL:** https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v27/i17/1847.htm

**Manuscript source:** Invited manuscript

**Specialty type:** Gastroenterology and hepatology

**Country/Territory of origin:** Italy

**Peer-review report's scientific quality classification**

Grade A (Excellent): A
Grade B (Very good): B, B, B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): D, D
Grade E (Poor): 0

**Received:** January 26, 2021
**Peer-review started:** January 26, 2021
**First decision:** February 27, 2021
**Revised:** March 9, 2021
**Accepted:** April 13, 2021
**Article in press:** April 13, 2021
**Published online:** May 7, 2021

**P-Reviewer:** Deshwal H, Feng JF, Hamada Y, Handra-Luca A
**S-Editor:** Gao CC
**L-Editor:** A
**P-Editor:** Wu YXJ

**DOI:** https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v27.i17.1847

## INTRODUCTION

Pancreatic cancer remains one of the deadliest malignancies, recording 432242 new deaths in 2018, with 458918 new pancreatic cancer cases reported globally[1]. Adenocarcinoma is the most common type of exocrine (non-endocrine) pancreatic cancer, accounting for over 90 percent of pancreatic cancer diagnoses. In most cases, it originates from the pancreatic ducts (ductal adenocarcinoma), in a smaller percentage of cases it can originate from the acini (acinar cell carcinoma). Rarer forms of pancreatic cancer are squamous cell carcinoma, adenosquamous carcinoma and colloid carcinoma. Despite advances in pancreatic cancer detection and management, the 5-year survival rate is still very low, only approximately 9%[2]. It is expected to become the second most common cause of cancer-related death by 2030[3]. Unfortunately, most cases are diagnosed in locally advanced or metastatic stages, for which chemotherapy remains the standard of care[4]. Progress in the treatment of pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma (PDAC) has been very limited; in particular, gemcitabine (GEM) has been used as a monotherapy agent for first-line treatment for approximately 20 years. Subsequently, in 2011, there was a breakthrough in the treatment of metastatic PDAC (mPDAC) with the introduction of the FOLFIRINOX regimen [5-fluorouracil (5FU), folinic acid, irinotecan (IRI) and oxaliplatin (OX)] as a first-line standard of treatment[5]. However, this regimen is not suitable for all patients. Eventually, the combination of nab-paclitaxel and GEM (NabGem) also demonstrated an overall survival (OS) gain in mPDAC compared to GEM monotherapy[6]. However, no prospective randomized studies have demonstrated a benefit in terms of OS for a second-line treatment; moreover, there is currently no standard regarding the sequencing of treatments.

## CURRENT CLINICAL PRACTICE IN SECOND LINE MPDAC

### *Chemotherapy*

mPDAC is a biologically aggressive cancer that is often characterized by clinically evident disease progression during first-line treatment (pain, fatigue, anorexia, weight loss, constipation, fever, diabetic decompensation, *etc.*) with a deterioration of the patient performance status (PS) that limits subsequent treatments. Several complications can also arise, such as duodenal stenosis, obstruction of biliary stents and cholangitis, gastrointestinal bleeding and intestinal obstructions, which further limit the possibility of accessing second-line chemotherapy. In this context, it is not surprising that few data from large randomized trials are available. To date, there are no clear data on the superiority of a specific chemotherapy regimen due to the lack of adequate comparisons.

In advanced PDAC, the choice of which chemotherapy to use in the second-line setting basically depends on the treatments used in the first-line setting, residual toxicities (*e.g.*, peripheral neuropathy), patient PS, age and comorbidities. The ability of patients in different countries to access a specific treatment should also be considered due to the limitations of regulatory agencies.

Currently, in first-line treatment for patients with a good PS, Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group (ECOG) 0-1, two main regimens are indicated based on evidence of an OS benefit highlighted by randomized phase III trials: FOLFIRINOX and NabGem. In fact, the PRODIGE4/ACCORD11 trial showed the superiority of FOLFIRINOX over GEM in terms of OS (11.1 mo *vs* 6.8 mo), progression-free survival (PFS, 6.4 mo *vs* 3.3 mo) and the objective response rate (ORR, 31.6% *vs* 9.4%)[5], while in the Metastatic Pancreatic Adenocarcinoma Clinical Trial (MPACT), NabGem showed superiority over GEM (OS 8.5 mo *vs* 6.7 mo, PFS 5.5 mo *vs* 3.7 mo, ORR 23% *vs* 7%, respectively)[6]. It is significant to consider how many patients received a subsequent therapy after progression on first-line therapy in these trials. In the PRODIGE4/ACCORD11 trial, second-line therapy was administered in approximately 50% of patients in both arms, while in the MPACT trial, second-line therapy was administered in 38% of patients in the NabGem group and in 42% of patients in the GEM group. Real-life data are very different; in fact, even in the best cases, they do not seem to include half of patients receiving second-line therapy. It is remarkable that patients

treated in high-volume centres, especially those aged < 65 years and with an ECOG PS of 0-1, receive more lines of therapy. According to Abrams *et al*[7], in the United States in 2015, approximately 56% of patients received second-line therapy and 22% received third-line therapy. The percentages reported in other recent databases are even lower: 38.2% in the United States[8], 33% in Sweden[9], and 44%-48% in British Columbia and Canada[10]. Higher percentages are reported in Austria, where the proportions of patients who had access to second- and third-line therapy were 62%-65% and 29%-37%, respectively[11].

The choice of subsequent treatment has to consider the chemotherapy drugs received in the first line. Therefore, there are two main scenarios: after a first-line treatment with GEM-based chemotherapy, the advice of the main guidelines is to choose a 5FU-based chemotherapy; in the case of a front line therapy with a 5FU-based scheme, the indication is a GEM-based therapy[12,13]. The choice between a multidrug combination regimen and monotherapy depends on the patient's PS (ECOG 0-1 or 2, respectively). A summary of the current possible options is reported in Figure 1. The study by Taieb *et al*[14] evaluated first-line and second-line treatment regimens and their geographic variation across European countries between 2014 and 2016, highlighting that the most common first-line treatments were FOLFIRINOX (35.6%), the first choice in France and in the United Kingdom; NabGem (25.7%); and GEM monotherapy (20.5%). Overall, GEM was the most frequently used second-line therapy (27.1%), followed by NabGem (17.8%), FOLFOX [5FU+ leucovorin (LV) + OX, 17.6%] and 5FU monotherapy (16.7%)[14]. It should be noted that nab-paclitaxel beyond the first line is not approved in all countries, and at that time, pegylated liposomal IRI (Nal-IRI) was not yet available.

Pancreatic cancers with specific molecular characteristics, such as microsatellite instability, fusion of the *NTRK* gene, and *BRCA 1-2* mutations, require a separate discussion. In fact, currently, it is recommended by National Comprehensive Cancer Network guidelines to evaluate at least these three genetic features, but unfortunately, this is not accessible yet for everyone in several countries.

For a better understanding of the data available in the literature, we considered the following possible scenarios: (1) Second-line chemotherapy after treatment with FOLFIRINOX; and (2) Second-line chemotherapy after GEM-based regimens (Figure 1).

### *Second-line chemotherapy after treatment with FOLFIRINOX*

There is no clear consensus on the second-line treatment after progression to FOLFIRINOX since no prospective randomized trials have been conducted in this setting. The choice is generally a GEM-based treatment, which could be GEM monotherapy or a GEM-based therapy. Table 1 summarizes the main second-line trials and their results, divided according to the type of study.

**GEM in monotherapy:** Only a series of retrospective studies have evaluated the efficacy of GEM as a second-line monotherapy after FOLFIRINOX failure[15,16]. The analysis conducted by Viaud *et al*[17] showed a median OS with GEM of 3.7 mo [95% confidence interval (CI): 2.5-5.2], a median PFS of 2.1 mo (95%CI: 2.0-2.6) and a disease control rate (DCR) of 40%, highlighting that age at diagnosis and PS were independently associated with OS in a multivariate analysis [hazard ratio (HR) of 1.86; $P = 0.0055$ and 2.42; $P < 0.0001$, respectively] and suggesting that GEM is beneficial for patients with a good PS. A multicentre retrospective study in the same setting showed an ORR of 11% and a clinical benefit of 44% for patients, regardless of their previous response to the first-line treatment, concluding that some patients benefit from a second-line treatment[18].

**GEM based treatment:** No randomized trials have evaluated the efficacy of the NabGem combination as second-line therapy. Zhang *et al*[19] published retrospective data collected from a total of 146 patients treated with FOLFIRINOX as the first-line treatment. Of those, 30 received the NabGem combination, 8 received GEM as monotherapy, and 22 received best supportive care (BSC). The median PFS and OS were 3.61 mo and 5.69 mo in the NabGem group and 2.51 mo and 3.82 mo in the GEM monotherapy group, respectively. In a second retrospective study[10], the percentage of patients receiving NabGem compared to GEM alone was different depending on the region considered and the respective possibility for reimbursement[20]. In this study, the OS outcomes favour the NabGem combination regardless of funded access to the second-line combination. The efficacy of the combination in the second-line setting was confirmed in a third multicentre retrospective analysis, although without a comparison with GEM alone[21]. A prospective study showed that the DCR with

**Table 1 Studies of second-line treatment in metastatic pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma**

| Ref. | Type of study | Patients (*n*) | 1st-line regimen | 2nd-line regimen | Median 2nd-line OS (mo) | Median 2nd-line PFS (mo) | 2nd-line ORR (%) | 2nd-line DCR (%) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Pelzer *et al*[35], 2011 | Phase III | 46[1] | GEM monotherapy | OFF; BSC | 4.8; 2.3 | - | - | - |
| Oettle *et al*[36], 2014, CONKO-003 | Phase III | 160 | GEM monotherapy | OFF; FF | 5.9; 3.3 | 2.9; 2.0 | - | - |
| Gill *et al*[37], 2016, PANCREOX | Phase III | 108 | GEM-based (approximately 75% monotherapy) | mFOLFOX6; FU/LV | 6.1; 9.9 | 3.1; 2.9 | 13.2; 8.5 | 60; 63.8 |
| Wang-Gillam *et al*[37], 2016, NAPOLI-1 | Phase III | 417 | GEM-based[2] | Nal-IRI; FU/LV; Nal-IRI + FU/LV | 4.9; 4.2; 6.1 | 2.7; 1.5; 3.1 | 6; 1; 16 | 44; 24; 52 |
| Chung *et al*[29], 2018 | Phase II | 48 | GEM-based | mFOLFIRINOX | 9.0 | 5.8 | 18.8 | 62.5 |
| Tsavaris *et al*[33], 2005 | Phase II | 30 | GEM | OX 50 mg/mq + FU/LV (1-h iv infusion), weekly | 6.25 | - | 23.3 | 53.3 |
| Pelzer *et al*[32], 2009 | Phase II | 37 | GEM | OFF | 5.5 | 3.0 | 6 | 49 |
| Yoo *et al*[34], 2009 | Phase II | 61 | GEM-based | mFOLFIRI.3; mFOLFOX | 3.9; 3.5 | 1.9; 1.4 | 0; 7 | 23; 17 |
| Zaniboni *et al*[49], 2012 | Phase II | 50 | GEM ± platinoid | FOLFIRI | 5 | 3.2 | 8 | 36 |
| Chung *et al*[29], 2018, SWOG S1115 | Phase II | 137 | GEM-based | Selumetinib+ MK-2206; mFOLFOX | 3.9; 6.7 | 1.9; 2.0 | 1.7; 8 | 22.4; 30.6 |
| Portal *et al*[22], 2015 | Prospective cohort | 57 | FOLFIRINOX | NabGem | 8.8 | 5.1 | 17.5 | 58 |
| Zaanan *et al*[47], 2014 | Prospective cohort | 46 | GEM/FOLFIRI.3 in FIRGEM trial | FOLFOX | 4.3 | 1.7 | 0 | 36 |
| Wainberg *et al*[45], 2020 | Meta-analysis | 454 | GEM-based | FOLFOX; Nal-IRI | 6.3; 6.1 | - | - | - |
| Sonbol *et al*[51], 2017 | Meta-analysis | 895 | GEM-based | FPOX; FPIRIFP | FPIRI *vs* FP: HR OS 0.7, PFS 0.64; FPOX *vs* FP: HR OS 1.0, PFS 0.81 | | | |
| Citterio *et al*[52], 2018 | Meta-analysis | 1587 | GEM-based | FP, OX or IRI-based | Most effective IRI-based regimens (results cannot be translated into the table) | | | |
| Rahma *et al*[43], 2013 | Systematic analysis | 1503 | GEM-based | GEM + platinum; FPOXBSC | 6.0; 5.7; 2.8 | 4; 2.9; - | - | - |
| Petrelli *et al*[53], 2017 | Systematic analysis | - | GEM-based | OX-based; IRI-based | 5.3; 5.5 | 2.9; 2.7 | 11.9; 8.7 | 41.1; 29.4 |
| Berk *et al*[48], 2012 | Comparative | 85 | GEM-based | FOLFOX4; XELOX | 5.8; 4.9 | 3.7; 3.7 | 17; 18 | 43; 59 |
| Zhang *et al*[19], 2018 | Retrospective | 146 | FOLFIRINOX | NabGem; Gem alone | 5.69; 3.82 | 3.61; 2.51 | - | - |
| Chae *et al*[21], 2020 | Retrospective | 102 | FOLFIRINOX | NabGem | 9.8 | 4.6 | 8.5 | 73.6 |
| Viaud *et al*[17], 2017 | Retrospective | 96 | FOLFIRINOX | GEM monotherapy | 3.7 | 2.1 | - | 40 |
| Gilabert *et al*[18], 2017 | Retrospective | 72 | FOLFIRINOX | GEM monotherapy | - | 2.5 | 11 | - |

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Pointet *et al*[38], 2020 | Retrospective | 137 | NabGem | FOLFOX; FOLFIRI; FOLFIRINOX | 3.5; 9.7; 6.1 | 2; 6.6; 3.4 | 0; 9.5; 6.3 | 29.2; 61.9; 50 |
| Lee *et al*[41], 2020 | Retrospective | 120 | GEM-based | FPOX; FP | 7.04; 7.43 | 2.89; 3.81 | 6.4; 5.4 | 52.6; 59.5 |
| Neuzillet *et al*[50], 2012 | Retrospective | 63 | GEM ± platinoid | FOLFIRI | 6.6 | 3.0 | 7.9 | 39.7 |
| Kieler *et al*[24], 2019 | Retrospective | 52 | GEM-based | Nal-IRI + FU/LV | 6.79 | 3.84 | 19.2 | 46.2 |

[1]The trial was prematurely stopped due to insufficient accrual.
[2]Approximately 45% of gemcitabine alone and 55% in combination. About 30% of patients had received ≥ 2 previous lines for metastatic disease, with 45% of patients pretreated with fluorouracil/leucovorin-based regimens. GEM: Gemcitabine; DCR: Disease control rate; BSC: Best supportive care; OFF: Oxaliplatin, folinic acid and 5-fluorouracil; 5FU: 5-Fluorouracil; OX: Oxaliplatin; LV: Leucovorin; FF: Folinic acid and 5-fluorouracil; Nal-IRI: Liposomal irinotecan; FOLFIRINOX: 5-Fluorouracil, folinic acid, irinotecan and oxaliplatin; FOLFOX: 5-fluorouracil + leucovorin + oxaliplatin; FPOX: Fluoropyrimidine and oxaliplatin-based regimens; HR: Hazard ratio; OS: Overall survival; NabGem: Nb-paclitaxel and gemcitabine; FP: Fluoropyrimidine; IRI: Irinotecan.

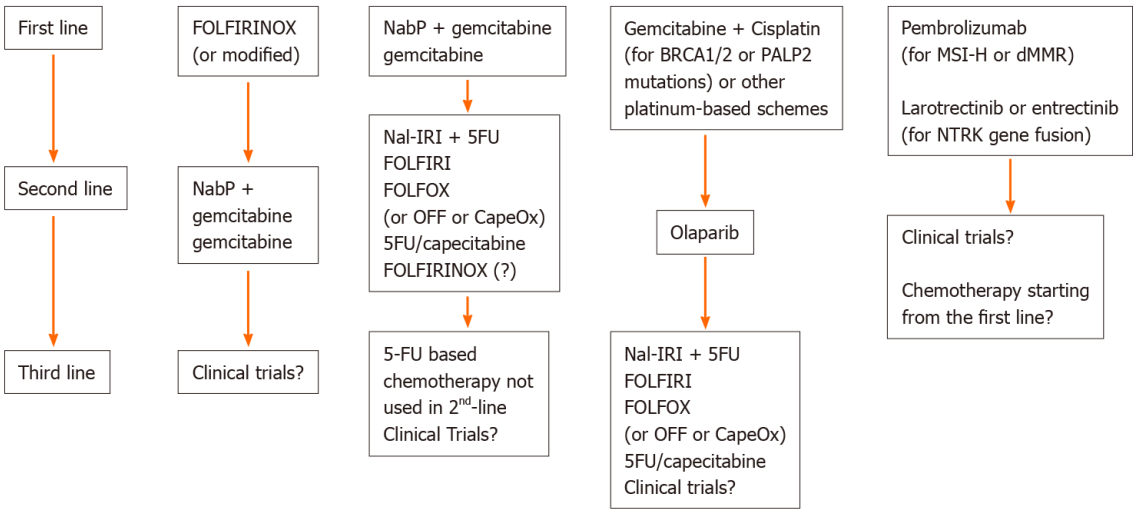



**Figure 1 Current therapeutic possibilities for metastatic pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma.** NabP: Nab-paclitaxel; Nal-IRI: Nanoliposomal irinotecan; 5FU: 5-Fluorouracil; FOLFIRI: 5-Fluorouracil + irinotecan; FOLFOX: 5-fluorouracil + leucovorin + oxaliplatin; OFF: Oxaliplatin + 5-fluorouracil + folinic acid; CapeOx: Capecitabine + oxaliplatin; MSI-H: Microsatellite instability high; dMMR: DNA mismatch repair deficiency; Clinical trials?: Evaluate the availability of clinical trials suitable for the patient.

NabGem was 58% (ORR 17.5%), OS was 8.8 mo (95%CI: 6.2-9.7) and the PFS was 5.1 mo (95%CI: 3.2-6.2)[22].

To date, there are no second-line treatment recommendations after progression on the FOLFIRINOX scheme, and the use of GEM alone or in combination with nabpaclitaxel is generally dictated by patient characteristics and by the possibility of reimbursement in individual countries.

### *Second-line chemotherapy after treatment with GEM based combination therapy*

For patients previously treated with GEM-based regimens, the main international guidelines recommend 5FU-based therapies, which include FOLFIRI, Nal-IRI+5FU, OX, folinic acid and 5FU (OFF), FOLFOX or CapeOX and monotherapy with 5FU or capecitabine.

**Nal-IRI ± 5FU/LV:** Nal-IRI + 5FU/LV is the regimen with the most evidence and therefore a higher degree of recommendation[13]. This indication comes from the results of the NAPOLI-1 study, which compared 5FU/LV alone *vs* monotherapy with Nal-IRI or the combination of 5FU/LV + Nal-IRI in 417 patients with mPDAC and a Karnofsky PS ≥ 70 who were previously treated with GEM-based therapy[23]. In particular, 12% of patients received GEM-based therapy in the adjuvant, neoadjuvant, or locally advanced setting; 56% had received one previous line of metastatic treatment; and 32% had received two or more lines of metastatic treatment. It should be emphasized that few patients received NabGem in the first-line setting since the

GEM combination is preferred in current clinical practice, and 43% of patients had already received previous 5FU-based therapy (10% IRI and 32% platinum). Patients in the 5FU/LV + Nal-IRI group achieved a longer OS than patients in the 5FU/LV group (6.1 mo *vs* 4.2 mo; $P$ = 0.012, HR: 0.67); however, no significant difference in OS was observed between the 5FU/LV and Nal-IRI monotherapy groups (4.2 mo *vs* 4.9 mo; $P$ = 0.94, HR: 0.99).

These data were confirmed by a retrospective study that included 52 patients[24] and a similar Korean study[25]. However, in some countries, including Italy, this combination is not approved due to the methodological limitations of the study, such as the heterogeneity of the patient population, the study design without a comparison with the classic FOLFIRI regimen, and the inclusion of patients pretreated with 5FU or IRI[26].

**Fluoropyrimidine and OX-based regimens:** The efficacy and safety data of second-line treatment with FOLFIRINOX are based on retrospective analyses[27,28] and on some phase II studies[29,30]. In the single-arm multicentre phase 2 study performed by Chung *et al*[29] (48 patients) of modified FOLFIRINOX (IRI 120 mg/m$^2$ and OX 60 mg/m$^2$), the ORR, DCR, median PFS and OS were 18.8%, 62.5%, 5.8 mo and 9.0 mo, respectively, with significant toxicity (neutropenia grade 3 or 4 rates of 64.6%, febrile neutropenia 16.7%). A highly toxic triplet therapy is not very suitable for second-line palliative treatment in patients with a non-optimal PS and is reserved for only a few cases. Furthermore, in a recent real-world analysis, triplet therapy with FOLFIRINOX did not seem to have an advantage over sequential chemotherapy with FOLFIRI-FOLFOX regimens[31].

For the other OX-based regimens, the data are controversial. Based on the promising results of some phase II studies[32-34], three main phase III trials have been conducted[35-37]. In the CONKO-003 trial, 160 patients were randomized to receive FF (folinic acid 200 mg/m$^2$ followed by a continuous IV infusion of fluorouracil 2000 mg/m$^2$ over 24 h on days 1, 8, 15, and 22 every 42 d) or OFF (FF and OX 85 mg/m$^2$ IV administered before FF on days 8 and 22). Compared to FF, OFF achieved a significant increase in both OS (5.9 *vs* 3.3 mo) and PFS (2.9 *vs* 2 mo)[36]. In phase III by Pelzer *et al*[35], OFF compared to BSC significantly prolonged OS (4.82 mo *vs* 2.30 mo, respectively) despite the premature closure for insufficient accrual (only 46 patients) due to the difficulty of clinicians and patients accepting BSC[35]. However, these results of the superiority of OFF over FF and BSC were not confirmed by the phase III PANCREOX trial[37]. In particular, in this study, the addition of OX to FF (in the mFOLFOX6 scheme) did not translate into an increase in OS; in contrast, it seemed detrimental (6.1 mo *vs* 9.9 mo) at the expense of increased toxicity.

In the literature, different retrospective trials and reviews have dealt with the same topic, with discordant results[38-47].

A comparative study evaluated the XELOX and FOLFOX schemes, highlighting their comparable results in terms of efficacy and toxicity profile[48].

**IRI and 5FU-based regimens (fluoropyrimidine IRI):** The use of second-line FOLFIRI in patients who progressed on first-line therapy of GEM and platinum (cisplatin or OX) was evaluated in a prospective multicentre study[49]. Among the 50 patients enrolled, four partial responses (8%) were observed with disease stability in 28% of patients, while PFS and OS were 3.2 mo and 5.0 mo, respectively. Similar results were obtained from another study that evaluated FOLFIRI after progression on GEM and platinoids[50]. Unlike the previous study, patients ($n$ = 63) could receive more than one treatment line in the metastatic setting. In particular, most patients had received two previous lines. DCR was achieved in 25 patients (39.7%; partial response: $n$ = 5, stable disease: $n$ = 20) with FOLFIRI. The median time to progression (TTP) was 3.0 mo, and the median OS was 6.6 mo. An ECOG PS of 2 was significantly associated with a poor TTP and OS, limiting the efficacy of FOLFIRI to patients with a good PS (PS 0-1).

Some meta-analyses have concluded that fluoropyrimidine (FP) IRI (FPIRI) is superior to FP and OX-based regimens (FPOX) after first-line treatment with gem-based chemotherapy. In particular, Sonbol *et al*[51] collected randomized controlled trials comparing FP monotherapy *vs* FPOX or FPIRI and showed that FPOX or FPIRI improved PFS compared with single-agent FP, but only FPIRI reported an OS advantage. Similarly, in the network meta-analysis by Citterio *et al*[52] and the meta-analysis by Catalano *et al*[40], FPIRI seemed superior to FPOX in terms of OS. Conversely, in the systematic review of 24 studies by Petrelli *et al*[53], FPOX and FPIRI were associated with a similar efficacy, with a pooled ORR, DCR, PFS and OS of 11%, 37.9%, 2.87 mo and 5.48 mo, respectively.

In conclusion, in patients with preserved PS (ECOG PS 0-1), without relevant comorbidities, it is reasonable to propose a second-line treatment with a 5FU-based or GEM-based treatment, depending on the first-line treatment used. Within the 5FU-based regimens, any residual toxicities of the first-line treatment can lead to choose a scheme rather than another. For example, if the patient has residual neurotoxicity (*e.g.*, from Nab-paclitaxel) the choice could be FOLFIRI or Nal-IRI-5FU; if he has diarrhea or bone marrow toxicity, FOLFOX. However, some treatments, such as NabGem or Nal-IRI, are not reimbursed for the second-line in all countries, thus inevitably influencing the choice of treatment.

### *Targeted therapy*

The introduction of increasingly accurate techniques for molecular sequencing and a better understanding of the pathogenetic role of genes related to PDAC have led to the drafting of numerous clinical trials to study potential targeted treatments in chemorefractory disease. Studies in the literature suggest that the use of precision medicine can have a substantial effect on survival in patients affected with PDAC and that molecular-guided treatments targeting oncogenic drivers promise potential developments in clinical practice[54]. Despite countless studies, to date, few biologic treatments have been approved for advanced PDAC. In particular, the FDA (Food and Drug Administration)- and EMA (European Medicines Agency)-approved targeted drugs for second-line treatment are erlotinib, larotrectinib and entrectinib. Olaparib is approved for maintenance after response to a first-line platinum-containing agent[55].

**Erlotinib:** The approval of erlotinib, an EGFR (epidermal growth factor receptor) TK inhibitor, in combination with GEM comes from a phase III study that demonstrated a statistically significant, albeit modest, improvement in survival in PDAC compared to GEM alone[56]. These data have been confirmed in other prospective[57] and retrospective studies[58].

**Larotrectinib and entrectinib:** Fusions involving *NTRK1*, *NTRK2* and *NTRK3* lead to the expression of chimeric rearrangements in tropomyosin receptor kinases (TRKs) A, B, and C, respectively, with constitutively active kinase function. TRK fusions are oncogenic drivers in numerous cancer histotypes, including pancreatic cancer, albeit in a very low percentage of cases, approximately 0.34%[59]. A peculiarity of the studies that evaluated TRK inhibitor drugs is that the efficacy of the specific treatment on a genomic alteration is evaluated independent of the tumour histology. No randomized trials have been conducted, but the high ORR that exceeded the predetermined minimum of the investigators (30%), which was 75% for larotrectinib and 57% for entrectinib, led to the approval of these drugs. However, data from studies of these two drugs are not comparable given the heterogeneity of the study populations involved.

The approval of entrectinib for solid tumours with *NTRK* gene fusions is based on the results of three clinical trials: ALKA-372-001, STARTRK-1[60] and STARTRK-2 (NCT02568267). An integrated analysis of the following phase I and II studies included a total of 54 patients with *NTRK* fusion-positive advanced solid tumours for a total of 19 different histotypes[61]. The median follow-up was 12.9 mo and showed 50% partial responses and 7% complete responses. This response to treatment has been maintained over time with a median duration of response of 10 mo and a good toxicity profile.

The approval of larotrectinib is based on data from three multicentre, open-label, single-arm clinical studies: LOXO-TRK-14001 (NCT02122913), SCOUT (NCT02637687) and NAVIGATE (NCT02576431). A pooled analysis of these studies by Hong *et al*[62] included 55 patients treated with larotrectinib. The ORR was 79% (95%CI: 72-85) in 153 evaluable patients, with a 16% complete response rate and a good safety profile.

Given the clinical benefit, even considering the low prevalence of *NTRK* fusions in patients with pancreatic cancer and the lack of easy access to Next Generation Sequencing services, patients should be tested at diagnosis for such gene alterations to guide treatment decisions as well as for gaining access to potential clinical trials.

Unfortunately, in real life clinical practice it is not possible to require such molecular insights in all patients with mPDAC due to the cost sustainability. The lack of access to these drugs in different countries represents the current gap between what precision medicine for mPDAC could be in the future and current clinical practice in different oncology contexts. The use of resources and the high costs of oncological treatments will be an increasingly important topic in the near future and it is inevitable to take this into account.

### *Immunotherapy*

Immunotherapy has changed the natural history of various cancer pathologies, especially melanoma and lung cancer, providing results in terms of increased OS in other neoplastic pathologies, such as cancer of the head and neck, bladder cancer, renal carcinoma, Merkel cell carcinoma and triple-negative breast tumours. However, to date, immune checkpoint inhibitors (ICI) have not shown any efficacy in controlling advanced PDAC, either in monotherapy[63,64] or in combination with chemotherapy[65,66]. Several actors are known to be responsible for the response/resistance mechanisms to ICI. Among these actors, the ability of the tumour to express antigens recognizable by the cells of the immune system and the characteristics of the tumour microenvironment in which the balance of immuno-sensitizing/immuno-suppressive factors is in favour of the latter[67]. In particular, PDAC are characterized by the presence of an abundant desmoplastic stroma composed of fibroblasts, extracellular matrix, immune cells and stellate cells. Immune cells infiltrating this stroma are mostly represented by tumour-associated macrophages, myeloid-derived suppressor cells and Treg cells, with very few effector T cells. Numerous trials are underway aimed at converting the pancreatic tumour microenvironment from immunosuppressive to immunosensitive[68,69]; however, to date, there is no indication for second-line immunotherapy treatments in chemorefractory disease. A PD-1 (programmed cell death protein 1) ICI, Pembrolizumab, has been approved by the FDA for diseases with microsatellite instability, regardless of tumour site[70]. However, this indication has not yet been approved by EMA, and in Europe, it is therefore not possible to prescribe immunotherapy in this setting outside of clinical trials.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

As seen from current clinical practice in second-line treatment of mPDAC, there are fundamental open questions. These questions include therapeutic possibilities for treatment after progression on TRK inhibitors in TRK fusion-positive cancers, an increase in targeted therapies, and overcoming the immuno-resistance of metastatic pancreatic disease.

### *Therapeutic possibilities for treatment after progression on TRK inhibitors in TRK fusion-positive cancers*

Patients may acquire resistance to first-generation *TRK* inhibitors; however, to date, the mechanisms of resistance to *TRK* inhibitor drugs are not known, and the only secondary resistance mechanism identified is the acquisition of targeted mutations in the *NTRK* kinase domain of the oncogenic fusion. Currently, several trials of newer molecules, such as LOXO-195[71] and TPX-00005[72], have been performed to evaluate the efficacy of targeted therapies after progression on *TRK* inhibitors with very promising results. Such molecules could become the second-line standard in the future after the failure of first-generation *TRK* inhibitors in *TRK* fusion-positive pancreatic adenocarcinoma.

### *Increase of targeted therapies*

Despite the high ORR of *TRK* inhibitor drugs, unfortunately, the percentage of PDAC patients susceptible to this targeted treatment is extremely low. Furthermore, identification of the *BRCA* mutation allows the prescription of olaparib in maintenance after a response to a first-line platinum-based treatment, so there is currently no possibility of second-line targeted treatment in mutated *BRCA* patients[73].

To date, there are few data on the efficacy of targeted treatments in advanced PDAC; however, this deficiency should not discourage clinicians from requiring a genomic study in these patients. Indeed, knowledge of the prospective genomic profile can predict the response to chemotherapy treatment[74]. Furthermore, these data could be useful for the enrolment of second-line patients in a clinical trial. Research is currently progressing by targeting the recombination deficits of DNA as well as considering the driver genes in pancreatic carcinogenesis. Alongside drugs that target pancreatic tumour cells, there is a large amount of research addressing the peculiar tumour microenvironment that is partly responsible for the poor response to cancer treatments of advanced PDAC (Figure 2).

Regarding tumours with recombination deficiency of DNA repair, research is also underway to determine the extent of the cancer risk in patients with the so-called

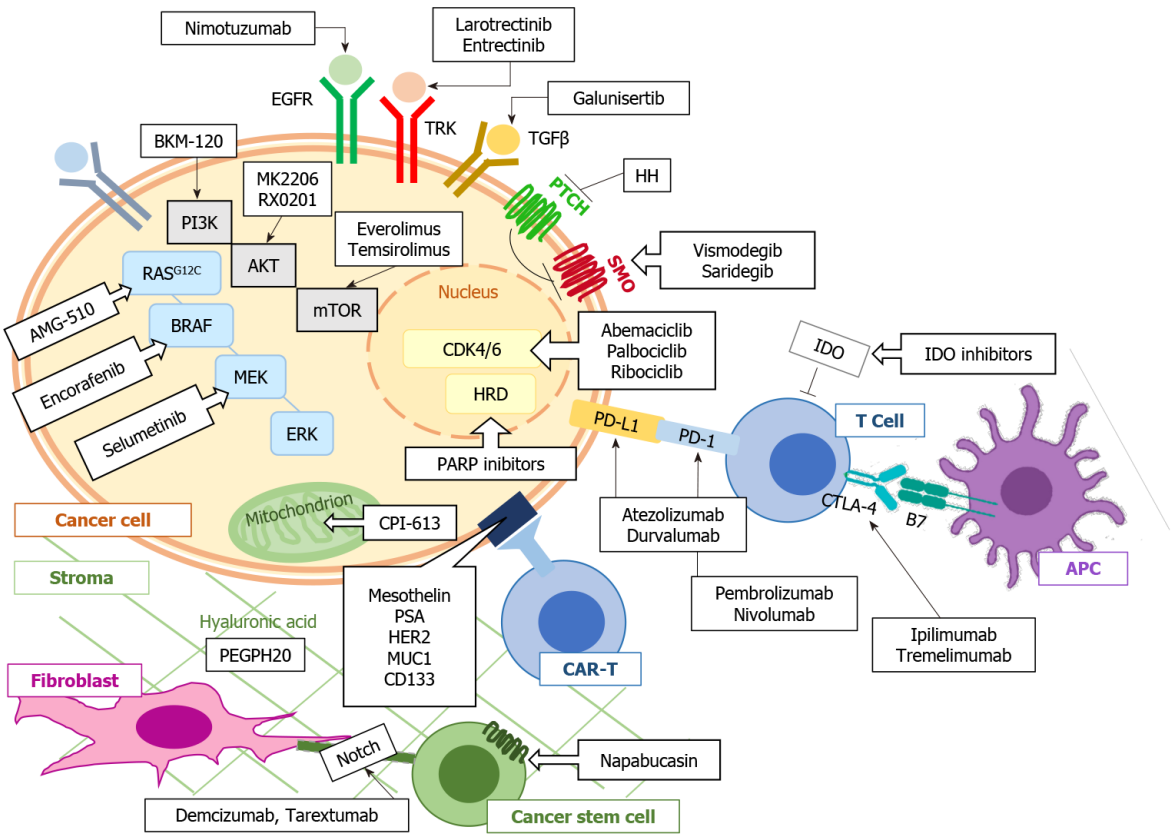



**Figure 2 Main targeted drugs under study for patients with advanced pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma.** EGFR: Epidermal growth factor receptor; TGFβ: Transforming growth factor β; APC: Antigen presenting cells; PD-1: Programmed cell death protein 1; PD-L1: Programmed cell death protein ligand 1; CAR-T: Chimeric antigen receptor T cells.

'bracness' phenotype, or rather the genetic alterations that result in a defect in homologous recombination repair, mimicking the loss of *BRCA1* or *BRCA2*. Among these mutations is the *PALB2* mutation, which occurs in 3%-4% of familial pancreatic cancer cases[75,76]. Most studies of *PARP* inhibitors are conducted as maintenance after a response or stability after treatment with a platinum-based first line, *i.e.*, the current indication for olaparib. However, studies have also been conducted on the second line in patients pretreated and in progression after a first-line chemotherapy treatment[77-79]. However, in this setting, the data are currently conflicting, promising for olaparib and rucaparib and not significant for veliparib. Nevertheless, phase 3 studies are lacking.

Considering the major driver genes in pancreatic carcinogenesis, pancreatic tumours are characterized in most cases by activating mutations in *KRAS* (> 90%) and loss-of-function mutations in *TP53* (50%) and *CDKN2A* (80%). Several studies are underway with the aim of targeting such drivers; however, to date, the potential therapeutic target genes are limited to *KRASG12C* and *CDKN2A*, which are found in only a small percentage of patients. AMG 510 is a novel small molecule that specifically and irreversibly inhibits *KRASG12C* and shows antitumour activity when administered as monotherapy in pretreated patients[80,81]. Since the loss of p16INK4a is a standard feature in *KRAS*-driven PDAC, pharmacological specific inhibition of CDK4/6 represents a possible targeted treatment. However, monotherapy treatment with CDK4/6 inhibitors does not appear to be remarkably effective for pancreatic cancer[82]. It has therefore been hypothesized that the activity of CDK4/6 inhibitors can be exploited by combination therapies, such as mTOR inhibitors or chemotherapy[83]. Numerous clinical trials are currently underway (Table 2).

PI3K/Akt signalling is one of the most deregulated signalling pathways in cancer, including PDAC, and has a mediating role of the cellular signalling not only for tumour cells but also for stromal cells. Indeed, *KRAS* activates various signalling pathways of downstream effectors, including the PI3K pathway, which can, in turn, be activated by different signal transduction pathways linked to various growth factor receptors. In the last decade, there has been considerable interest in molecules inhibiting the PI3K/Akt-mediated transduction pathway, including PDAC[84,85]. One

**Table 2 Main ongoing targeted therapy studies (clinicaltrial.gov) for advanced pancreatic adenocarcinoma**

| Treatment | Target | Phase of study | Setting |
|---|---|---|---|
| Ribociclib plus trametinib; NCT02703571 | CDK4/6 | Phase I/II trial, open label single arm | Advanced or metastatic pancreatic cancer and *KRAS*-mutant colorectal cancer |
| Palbociclib + the PI3K/mTOR inhibitor, gedatolisib; NCT03065062 | CDK4/6 | Phase I, open label single arm | Advanced squamous cell lung, pancreatic, head and neck and other solid tumours |
| Abemaciclib in combination with the TGF-β inhibitor galunisertib or other agents; NCT02981342 | CDK4/6 | Phase II, open label, randomized | Previously treated metastatic pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma |
| BKM120 + mFOLFOX6; NCT01571024 | PI3K | Phase I, open label, single arm | Advanced solid tumours including metastatic pancreatic cancer |
| Metformin + Gemcitabine + Erlotinib; NCT01210911 | PI3K | Phase II, randomized, placebo controlled | Locally advanced or metastatic pancreatic cancer |
| Capecitabine + Cetuximab + Everolimus; NCT01077986 | mTOR | Phase I/II, open label, single arm | Metastatic pancreatic cancer |
| Temsirolimus; NCT00075647 | mTOR | Phase II, open label, single arm | Locally advanced or metastatic pancreatic cancer |
| MK2206 + Fluorouracil + Oxaliplatin + Selumetinib; NCT01658943 | Akt | Phase II, open label, randomized | Metastatic pancreatic cancer |
| RX-0201 + Gemcitabine; NCT01028495 | Akt | Phase II, open label, single arm | Metastatic pancreatic cancer |
| Gemcitabine ± nimotuzumab; NCT02395016 | EGFR | Phase III, prospective, randomized, controlled, double-blind | Locally advanced or metastatic pancreatic cancer |
| MRTX849 (inhibitor of KRAS G12C) + TNO155 (inhibitor of SHP2); NCT04330664 | KRASG12C | Phase I/II, open label, non-randomized | Advanced or metastatic cancer with a KRAS *G12C* mutation |
| AMG 510 Monotherapy; NCT03600883 | KRASG12C | Phase I/II, open label, non-randomized | *KRAS* p.G12C mutant advanced solid tumours |
| Gemcitabine + M7824 (TGF-β ligand trap); NCT03451773 | TGF-β | Phase I/II, open label, single arm | Locally advanced or metastatic pancreatic cancer |
| FFX *vs* CPI-613 + mFFX; NCT03504423 | CPI-613 | Pase III, open-label randomized | Mtastatic adenocarcinoma of the pancreas |

TGF-β: Transforming growth factor β.

of the major challenges contributing to the suboptimal response to PI3K inhibitor drug monotherapies is the development of resistance mechanisms. Therefore, in this case, the current standard is the identification of new targeted combination therapies[86]. Table 2 reports the current ongoing clinical trials targeting the phosphoinositide signalling cascade for the treatment of pancreatic cancer.

The transformation of growth factor beta (TGF-β) signalling regulates cell proliferation and plays a fundamental role in the process of metastasis, angiogenesis and escape from immune surveillance. Several TGF-β inhibitory molecules are being studied, including oral inhibitors of the TGF-β receptor kinase, such as galunisertib (LY2157299), which specifically downregulates SMAD2 phosphorylation, blocking the activation of the canonical pathway[87], and trabedersen (AP 12009), a TGF-β2-specific antisense phosphorothioate oligodeoxynucleotide[88]. For example, data from a phase Ib study using galunisetinib in combination with second-line durvalumab suggests possible second-line activity of the combination[89].

CPI-613 is a new anticancer drug that selectively targets the altered form of mitochondrial energy metabolism in cancer cells, compromising the activity leading to apoptosis of cancer cells. Following the promising results of Phase I and II studies[90], a Phase III study is underway to compare this combination of FOLFIRINOX and CPI-613 with FOLFIRINOX alone.

Numerous other potential targets have been studied, such as c-KIT, VEGFR, and RET. Unfortunately, both masatinib, an anti-cKIT tyrosine kinase inhibitor, and vandetanib, an anti-VEGFR2, -RET, and -EGFR tyrosine kinase inhibitor, have failed to demonstrate a benefit over standard therapy[91,92].

A possible explanation for the failure of targeted therapies is the adaptive response to drug inhibition, for example, through the blockage of downstream signalling and the activation of other signalling transduction pathways. The future is trending towards the identification of combinations of treatments, with the aim of overcoming resistance mechanisms with an acceptable toxicity profile. Alongside this trend, there

is the need to identify predictive molecular markers of response to treatment.

### *Overcome immuno-resistance of metastatic pancreatic disease*

As previously reported, the initial enthusiasm for immunotherapy in advanced pancreatic cancer waned due to the not very encouraging data from early clinical trials. However, the improved understanding of resistance mechanisms has led to further clinical studies aiming to overcome the immuno-resistance of the pancreatic tumour microenvironment.

To date, data from clinical trials that evaluated the combination of ICI drugs in second-line treatment are not promising. The study conducted by O'Reilly *et al*[93] that evaluated the efficacy of the combination of durvalumab and tremelimumab in patients who progressed to first-line FP or GEM did not yield the desired results.

For the association of immunotherapy drugs with chemotherapy, the data seem to be encouraging; however, numerous association trials are also underway with cancer vaccines, adoptive T cell transfer, and direct targeted treatments in the tumour microenvironment (JAK/STAT inhibitors, CSF1R blockers, BTK inhibitors)[94].

Again, there is a lack of factors that allow us to predict the response to treatment; greater knowledge of the individual genetic characteristics together with the molecular characteristics of the disease could in the future lead to a broader selection of patients for immunotherapy treatments.

## CONCLUSION

Treatment of patients with mPDAC has improved in recent years thanks to the introduction of more effective chemotherapy regimens in the first-line setting. Consequently, the proportion of patients who are candidates for second- and third-line regimens is increasing. However, to date, chemotherapy remains the second-line standard of care, and neither personalized medicine nor immunotherapy has in fact provided important positive results in the treatment of pancreatic cancer. There are many ongoing studies aiming to overcome the multiple resistance mechanisms to treatment; however, the key to overcoming these mechanisms and providing personalized medicine to patients who have progressed to a first line of treatment is far from being identified. The small improvements shown by ongoing clinical trials could be considered a first step in what could be the future of treatment for advanced pancreatic cancer.

## REFERENCES


1 **Bray F**, Ferlay J, Soerjomataram I, Siegel RL, Torre LA, Jemal A. Global cancer statistics 2018: GLOBOCAN estimates of incidence and mortality worldwide for 36 cancers in 185 countries. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2018; **68**: 394-424 [PMID: 30207593 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21492]

2 **Rawla P**, Sunkara T, Gaduputi V. Epidemiology of Pancreatic Cancer: Global Trends, Etiology and Risk Factors. *World J Oncol* 2019; **10**: 10-27 [PMID: 30834048 DOI: 10.14740/wjon1166]

3 **Rahib L**, Smith BD, Aizenberg R, Rosenzweig AB, Fleshman JM, Matrisian LM. Projecting cancer incidence and deaths to 2030: the unexpected burden of thyroid, liver, and pancreas cancers in the United States. *Cancer Res* 2014; **74**: 2913-2921 [PMID: 24840647 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-14-0155]

4 **Siegel RL**, Miller KD, Jemal A. Cancer statistics, 2020. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2020; **70**: 7-30 [PMID: 31912902 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21590]

5 **Conroy T**, Desseigne F, Ychou M, Bouché O, Guimbaud R, Bécouarn Y, Adenis A, Raoul JL, Gourgou-Bourgade S, de la Fouchardière C, Bennouna J, Bachet JB, Khemissa-Akouz F, Péré-Vergé D, Delbaldo C, Assenat E, Chauffert B, Michel P, Montoto-Grillot C, Ducreux M; Groupe Tumeurs Digestives of Unicancer; PRODIGE Intergroup. FOLFIRINOX *vs* gemcitabine for metastatic pancreatic cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 1817-1825 [PMID: 21561347 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1011923]

6 **Von Hoff DD**, Ervin T, Arena FP, Chiorean EG, Infante J, Moore M, Seay T, Tjulandin SA, Ma WW, Saleh MN, Harris M, Reni M, Dowden S, Laheru D, Bahary N, Ramanathan RK, Tabernero J, Hidalgo M, Goldstein D, Van Cutsem E, Wei X, Iglesias J, Renschler MF. Increased survival in pancreatic cancer with nab-paclitaxel plus gemcitabine. *N Engl J Med* 2013; **369**: 1691-1703 [PMID: 24131140 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1304369]

7 **Abrams TA**, Meyer G, Meyerhardt JA, Wolpin BM, Schrag D, Fuchs CS. Patterns of Chemotherapy Use in a U.S.-Based Cohort of Patients with Metastatic Pancreatic Cancer. *Oncologist* 2017; **22**: 925-933 [PMID: 28476943 DOI: 10.1634/theoncologist.2016-0447]

8 **O'Reilly EM**, Cockrum P, Surinach A, Wu Z, Dillon A, Yu KH. Reducing nihilism in metastatic

pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma: Treatment, sequencing, and effects on survival outcomes. *Cancer Med* 2020; **9**: 8480-8490 [PMID: 32997898 DOI: 10.1002/cam4.3477]

9 **Gränsmark E**, Bågenholm Bylin N, Blomstrand H, Fredrikson M, Åvall-Lundqvist E, Elander NO. Real World Evidence on Second-Line Palliative Chemotherapy in Advanced Pancreatic Cancer. *Front Oncol* 2020; **10**: 1176 [PMID: 32850339 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2020.01176]

10 **Tsang ES**, Spratlin J, Cheung WY, Kim CA, Kong S, Xu Y, Gill S. Real-world Outcomes Among Patients Treated With Gemcitabine-based Therapy Post-FOLFIRINOX Failure in Advanced Pancreatic Cancer. *Am J Clin Oncol* 2019; **42**: 903-908 [PMID: 31693510 DOI: 10.1097/COC.0000000000000625]

11 **Kieler M**, Unseld M, Bianconi D, Schindl M, Kornek GV, Scheithauer W, Prager GW. Impact of New Chemotherapy Regimens on the Treatment Landscape and Survival of Locally Advanced and Metastatic Pancreatic Cancer Patients. *J Clin Med* 2020; **9** [PMID: 32121198 DOI: 10.3390/jcm9030648]

12 **National Comprehensive Cancer Network**. National comprehensive cancer network (NCCN) guidelines. [cited 17 January 2021]. In: National Comprehensive Cancer Network [Internet]. Available from: https://www.nccn.org/professionals/physician_gls/pdf/pancreatic.pdf

13 **European Society for Medical Oncology**. Cancer of the pancreas: ESMO clinical practice guidelines. [cited 17 January 2021]. In: European Society for Medical Oncology [Internet]. Available from: https://www.esmo.org/guidelines/gastrointestinal-cancers/pancreatic-cancer

14 **Taieb J**, Prager GW, Melisi D, Westphalen CB, D'Esquermes N, Ferreras A, Carrato A, Macarulla T. First-line and second-line treatment of patients with metastatic pancreatic adenocarcinoma in routine clinical practice across Europe: a retrospective, observational chart review study. *ESMO Open* 2020; **5** [PMID: 31958291 DOI: 10.1136/esmoopen-2019-000587]

15 **Sarabi M**, Mais L, Oussaid N, Desseigne F, Guibert P, De La Fouchardiere C. Use of gemcitabine as a second-line treatment following chemotherapy with folfirinox for metastatic pancreatic adenocarcinoma. *Oncol Lett* 2017; **13**: 4917-4924 [PMID: 28599496 DOI: 10.3892/ol.2017.6061]

16 **da Rocha Lino A**, Abrahão CM, Brandão RM, Gomes JR, Ferrian AM, Machado MC, Buzaid AC, Maluf FC, Peixoto RD. Role of gemcitabine as second-line therapy after progression on FOLFIRINOX in advanced pancreatic cancer: a retrospective analysis. *J Gastrointest Oncol* 2015; **6**: 511-515 [PMID: 26487945 DOI: 10.3978/j.issn.2078-6891.2015.041]

17 **Viaud J**, Brac C, Artru P, Le Pabic E, Leconte B, Bodère A, Pracht M, Le Sourd S, Edeline J, Lièvre A. Gemcitabine as second-line chemotherapy after Folfirinox failure in advanced pancreatic adenocarcinoma: A retrospective study. *Dig Liver Dis* 2017; **49**: 692-696 [PMID: 28256401 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2017.02.007]

18 **Gilabert M**, Chanez B, Rho YS, Giovanini M, Turrini O, Batist G, Kavan P, Raoul JL. Evaluation of gemcitabine efficacy after the FOLFIRINOX regimen in patients with advanced pancreatic adenocarcinoma. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2017; **96**: e6544 [PMID: 28422841 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000006544]

19 **Zhang H**, Kellett C, Lambert P, Kim CA. Efficacy and Tolerability of Second-line Nab-paclitaxel and Gemcitabine After Failure of First-line FOLFIRINOX for Advanced Pancreas Cancer: A Single-institution Experience. *Clin Colorectal Cancer* 2018; **17**: e451-e456 [PMID: 29631907 DOI: 10.1016/j.clcc.2018.03.003]

20 **Tehfe M**, Dowden S, Kennecke H, El-Maraghi R, Lesperance B, Couture F, Letourneau R, Liu H, Romano A. nab-Paclitaxel Plus Gemcitabine Versus Gemcitabine in Patients with Metastatic Pancreatic Adenocarcinoma: Canadian Subgroup Analysis of the Phase 3 MPACT Trial. *Adv Ther* 2016; **33**: 747-759 [PMID: 27085323 DOI: 10.1007/s12325-016-0327-4]

21 **Chae H**, Jeong H, Cheon J, Chon HJ, Ryu H, Kim IH, Kang MJ, Jeong JH, Ryoo BY, Kim KP, Yoo C. Efficacy and safety of second-line nab-paclitaxel plus gemcitabine after progression on FOLFIRINOX for unresectable or metastatic pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma: multicenter retrospective analysis. *Ther Adv Med Oncol* 2020; **12**: 1758835920923424 [PMID: 32523632 DOI: 10.1177/1758835920923424]

22 **Portal A**, Pernot S, Tougeron D, Arbaud C, Bidault AT, de la Fouchardière C, Hammel P, Lecomte T, Dréanic J, Coriat R, Bachet JB, Dubreuil O, Marthey L, Dahan L, Tchoundjeu B, Locher C, Lepère C, Bonnetain F, Taieb J. Nab-paclitaxel plus gemcitabine for metastatic pancreatic adenocarcinoma after Folfirinox failure: an AGEO prospective multicentre cohort. *Br J Cancer* 2015; **113**: 989-995 [PMID: 26372701 DOI: 10.1038/bjc.2015.328]

23 **Wang-Gillam A**, Li CP, Bodoky G, Dean A, Shan YS, Jameson G, Macarulla T, Lee KH, Cunningham D, Blanc JF, Hubner RA, Chiu CF, Schwartsmann G, Siveke JT, Braiteh F, Moyo V, Belanger B, Dhindsa N, Bayever E, Von Hoff DD, Chen LT; NAPOLI-1 Study Group. Nanoliposomal irinotecan with fluorouracil and folinic acid in metastatic pancreatic cancer after previous gemcitabine-based therapy (NAPOLI-1): a global, randomised, open-label, phase 3 trial. *Lancet* 2016; **387**: 545-557 [PMID: 26615328 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(15)00986-1]

24 **Kieler M**, Unseld M, Bianconi D, Scheithauer W, Prager GW. A real-world analysis of second-line treatment options in pancreatic cancer: liposomal-irinotecan plus 5-fluorouracil and folinic acid. *Ther Adv Med Oncol* 2019; **11**: 1758835919853196 [PMID: 31360237 DOI: 10.1177/1758835919853196]

25 **Yoo C**, Im HS, Kim KP, Oh DY, Lee KH, Chon HJ, Kim JH, Kang M, Kim I, Lee GJ, Oh SY, Choi Y, Choi HJ, Kim ST, Park JO, Ryoo BY. Real-world efficacy and safety of liposomal irinotecan plus fluorouracil/Leucovorin in patients with metastatic pancreatic adenocarcinoma: a study by the Korean Cancer Study Group. *Ther Adv Med Oncol* 2019; **11**: 1758835919871126 [PMID: 31489036 DOI:

10.1177/1758835919871126]
26 **Associazione Italiana di Oncologia Medica**. Carcinoma del pancreas esocrino. [cited 17 January 2021]. In: Associazione Italiana di Oncologia Medica [Internet]. Available from: https://www.aiom.it/wp-content/uploads/2020/10/2020_LG_AIOM_Pancreas.pdf
27 **Assaf E**, Verlinde-Carvalho M, Delbaldo C, Grenier J, Sellam Z, Pouessel D, Bouaita L, Baumgaertner I, Sobhani I, Tayar C, Paul M, Culine S. 5-fluorouracil/Leucovorin combined with irinotecan and oxaliplatin (FOLFIRINOX) as second-line chemotherapy in patients with metastatic pancreatic adenocarcinoma. *Oncology* 2011; **80**: 301-306 [PMID: 21778770 DOI: 10.1159/000329803]
28 **Lee MG**, Lee SH, Lee SJ, Lee YS, Hwang JH, Ryu JK, Kim YT, Kim DU, Woo SM. 5-Fluorouracil/Leucovorin combined with irinotecan and oxaliplatin (FOLFIRINOX) as second-line chemotherapy in patients with advanced pancreatic cancer who have progressed on gemcitabine-based therapy. *Chemotherapy* 2013; **59**: 273-279 [PMID: 24457620 DOI: 10.1159/000356158]
29 **Chung MJ**, Kang H, Kim HG, Hyun JJ, Lee JK, Lee KH, Noh MH, Kang DH, Lee SH, Bang S; Pancreatobiliary Cancer Study Group of Korean Society of Gastrointestinal Cancer. Multicenter phase II trial of modified FOLFIRINOX in gemcitabine-refractory pancreatic cancer. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2018; **10**: 505-515 [PMID: 30595804 DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v10.i12.505]
30 **Kobayashi N**, Shimamura T, Tokuhisa M, Goto A, Endo I, Ichikawa Y. Effect of FOLFIRINOX as second-line chemotherapy for metastatic pancreatic cancer after gemcitabine-based chemotherapy failure. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2017; **96**: e6769 [PMID: 28489753 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000006769]
31 **Tezuka S**, Ueno M, Kobayashi S, Morimoto M, Nagashima S, Sano Y, Asama H, Kawano K, Tanaka S, Fukushima T. Modified FOLFIRINOX *vs* sequential chemotherapy (FOLFIRI/FOLFOX) as second-line treatment for advanced pancreatic adenocarcinoma: A real-world analysis. *J Clin Oncol* 2020; **38**: 711 [DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2020.38.4_suppl.711]
32 **Pelzer U**, Stieler J, Roll L, Hilbig A, Dörken B, Riess H, Oettle H. Second-line therapy in refractory pancreatic cancer. results of a phase II study. *Onkologie* 2009; **32**: 99-102 [PMID: 19295247 DOI: 10.1159/000197769]
33 **Tsavaris N**, Kosmas C, Skopelitis H, Gouveris P, Kopterides P, Loukeris D, Sigala F, Zorbala-Sypsa A, Felekouras E, Papalambros E. Second-line treatment with oxaliplatin, leucovorin and 5-fluorouracil in gemcitabine-pretreated advanced pancreatic cancer: A phase II study. *Invest New Drugs* 2005; **23**: 369-375 [PMID: 16012797 DOI: 10.1007/s10637-005-1446-y]
34 **Yoo C**, Hwang JY, Kim JE, Kim TW, Lee JS, Park DH, Lee SS, Seo DW, Lee SK, Kim MH, Han DJ, Kim SC, Lee JL. A randomised phase II study of modified FOLFIRI.3 *vs* modified FOLFOX as second-line therapy in patients with gemcitabine-refractory advanced pancreatic cancer. *Br J Cancer* 2009; **101**: 1658-1663 [PMID: 19826418 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6605374]
35 **Pelzer U**, Schwaner I, Stieler J, Adler M, Seraphin J, Dörken B, Riess H, Oettle H. Best supportive care (BSC) *vs* oxaliplatin, folinic acid and 5-fluorouracil (OFF) plus BSC in patients for second-line advanced pancreatic cancer: a phase III-study from the German CONKO-study group. *Eur J Cancer* 2011; **47**: 1676-1681 [PMID: 21565490 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2011.04.011]
36 **Oettle H**, Riess H, Stieler JM, Heil G, Schwaner I, Seraphin J, Görner M, Mölle M, Greten TF, Lakner V, Bischoff S, Sinn M, Dörken B, Pelzer U. Second-line oxaliplatin, folinic acid, and fluorouracil *vs* folinic acid and fluorouracil alone for gemcitabine-refractory pancreatic cancer: outcomes from the CONKO-003 trial. *J Clin Oncol* 2014; **32**: 2423-2429 [PMID: 24982456 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2013.53.6995]
37 **Gill S**, Ko YJ, Cripps C, Beaudoin A, Dhesy-Thind S, Zulfiqar M, Zalewski P, Do T, Cano P, Lam WYH, Dowden S, Grassin H, Stewart J, Moore M. PANCREOX: A Randomized Phase III Study of Fluorouracil/Leucovorin With or Without Oxaliplatin for Second-Line Advanced Pancreatic Cancer in Patients Who Have Received Gemcitabine-Based Chemotherapy. *J Clin Oncol* 2016; **34**: 3914-3920 [PMID: 27621395 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2016.68.5776]
38 **Pointet AL**, Tougeron D, Pernot S, Pozet A, Béchade D, Trouilloud I, Lourenco N, Hautefeuille V, Locher C, Williet N, Desrame J, Artru P, Soularue E, Le Roy B, Taieb J. Three fluoropyrimidine-based regimens in routine clinical practice after nab-paclitaxel plus gemcitabine for metastatic pancreatic cancer: An AGEO multicenter study. *Clin Res Hepatol Gastroenterol* 2020; **44**: 295-301 [PMID: 31607641 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinre.2019.08.009]
39 **Foschini F**, Napolitano F, Servetto A, Marciano R, Mozzillo E, Carratù AC, Santaniello A, De Placido P, Cascetta P, Butturini G, Frigerio I, Regi P, Silvestris N, Delcuratolo S, Vasile E, Vivaldi C, Bianco C, De Placido S, Formisano L, Bianco R. FOLFIRINOX after first-line gemcitabine-based chemotherapy in advanced pancreatic cancer: a retrospective comparison with FOLFOX and FOLFIRI schedules. *Ther Adv Med Oncol* 2020; **12**: 1758835920947970 [PMID: 33062062 DOI: 10.1177/1758835920947970]
40 **Catalano M**, Conca R, Petrioli R, Ramello M, Roviello G. FOLFOX *vs* FOLFIRI as Second-line of Therapy After Progression to Gemcitabine/Nab-paclitaxel in Patients with Metastatic Pancreatic Cancer. *Cancer Manag Res* 2020; **12**: 10271-10278 [PMID: 33116881 DOI: 10.2147/CMAR.S267393]
41 **Lee K**, Bang K, Yoo C, Hwang I, Jeong JH, Chang HM, Oh D, Song TJ, Park DH, Lee SS, Lee SK, Kim MH, Park JH, Kim KP, Ryoo BY. Clinical Outcomes of Second-Line Chemotherapy after Progression on Nab-Paclitaxel Plus Gemcitabine in Patients with Metastatic Pancreatic Adenocarcinoma. *Cancer Res Treat* 2020; **52**: 254-262 [PMID: 31291709 DOI:

10.4143/crt.2019.190]
42 **Gebbia V**, Maiello E, Giuliani F, Borsellino N, Caruso M, Di Maggio G, Ferraù F, Bordonaro R, Verderame F, Tralongo P, Di Cristina L, Agueli R, Russo P, Colucci G. Second-line chemotherapy in advanced pancreatic carcinoma: a multicenter survey of the Gruppo Oncologico Italia Meridionale on the activity and safety of the FOLFOX4 regimen in clinical practice. *Ann Oncol* 2007; **18** Suppl 6: vi124-vi127 [PMID: 17591805 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdm240]
43 **Rahma OE**, Duffy A, Liewehr DJ, Steinberg SM, Greten TF. Second-line treatment in advanced pancreatic cancer: a comprehensive analysis of published clinical trials. *Ann Oncol* 2013; **24**: 1972-1979 [PMID: 23670093 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdt166]
44 **Nagrial AM**, Chin VT, Sjoquist KM, Pajic M, Horvath LG, Biankin AV, Yip D. Second-line treatment in inoperable pancreatic adenocarcinoma: A systematic review and synthesis of all clinical trials. *Crit Rev Oncol Hematol* 2015; **96**: 483-497 [PMID: 26481952 DOI: 10.1016/j.critrevonc.2015.07.007]
45 **Wainberg ZA**, Feeney K, Lee MA, Muñoz A, Gracián AC, Lonardi S, Ryoo BY, Hung A, Lin Y, Bendell J, Hecht JR. Meta-analysis examining overall survival in patients with pancreatic cancer treated with second-line 5-fluorouracil and oxaliplatin-based therapy after failing first-line gemcitabine-containing therapy: effect of performance status and comparison with other regimens. *BMC Cancer* 2020; **20**: 633 [PMID: 32641104 DOI: 10.1186/s12885-020-07110-x]
46 **Chiorean EG**, Von Hoff DD, Tabernero J, El-Maraghi R, Wee Ma W, Reni M, Harris M, Whorf R, Liu H, Shiansong Li J, Manax V, Romano A, Lu B, Goldstein D. Second-line therapy after nab-paclitaxel plus gemcitabine or after gemcitabine for patients with metastatic pancreatic cancer. *Br J Cancer* 2016; **115**: e13 [PMID: 27657342 DOI: 10.1038/bjc.2016.306]
47 **Zaanan A**, Trouilloud I, Markoutsaki T, Gauthier M, Dupont-Gossart AC, Lecomte T, Aparicio T, Artru P, Thirot-Bidault A, Joubert F, Fanica D, Taieb J. FOLFOX as second-line chemotherapy in patients with pretreated metastatic pancreatic cancer from the FIRGEM study. *BMC Cancer* 2014; **14**: 441 [PMID: 24929865 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2407-14-441]
48 **Berk V**, Ozdemir N, Ozkan M, Aksoy S, Turan N, Inal A, Balakan O, Yasar N, Unal OU, Benekli M, Durnali A, Colak D, Sonmez OU. XELOX vs. FOLFOX4 as second line chemotherapy in advanced pancreatic cancer. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2012; **59**: 2635-2639 [PMID: 22534542 DOI: 10.5754/hge12181]
49 **Zaniboni A**, Aitini E, Barni S, Ferrari D, Cascinu S, Catalano V, Valmadre G, Ferrara D, Veltri E, Codignola C, Labianca R. FOLFIRI as second-line chemotherapy for advanced pancreatic cancer: a GISCAD multicenter phase II study. *Cancer Chemother Pharmacol* 2012; **69**: 1641-1645 [PMID: 22576338 DOI: 10.1007/s00280-012-1875-1]
50 **Neuzillet C**, Hentic O, Rousseau B, Rebours V, Bengrine-Lefèvre L, Bonnetain F, Lévy P, Raymond E, Ruszniewski P, Louvet C, Hammel P. FOLFIRI regimen in metastatic pancreatic adenocarcinoma resistant to gemcitabine and platinum-salts. *World J Gastroenterol* 2012; **18**: 4533-4541 [PMID: 22969226 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v18.i33.4533]
51 **Sonbol MB**, Firwana B, Wang Z, Almader-Douglas D, Borad MJ, Makhoul I, Ramanathan RK, Ahn DH, Bekaii-Saab T. Second-line treatment in patients with pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma: A meta-analysis. *Cancer* 2017; **123**: 4680-4686 [PMID: 28817187 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.30927]
52 **Citterio C**, Baccini M, Orlandi E, Di Nunzio C, Cavanna L. Second-line chemotherapy for the treatment of metastatic pancreatic cancer after first-line gemcitabine-based chemotherapy: a network meta-analysis. *Oncotarget* 2018; **9**: 29801-29809 [PMID: 30038721 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.25639]
53 **Petrelli F**, Inno A, Ghidini A, Rimassa L, Tomasello G, Labianca R, Barni S; GISCAD (Gruppo Italiano per lo Studio dei Carcinomi dell'Apparato Digerente) and Cremona Hospital. Second line with oxaliplatin- or irinotecan-based chemotherapy for gemcitabine-pretreated pancreatic cancer: A systematic review. *Eur J Cancer* 2017; **81**: 174-182 [PMID: 28633088 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2017.05.025]
54 **Pishvaian MJ**, Blais EM, Brody JR, Lyons E, DeArbeloa P, Hendifar A, Mikhail S, Chung V, Sahai V, Sohal DPS, Bellakbira S, Thach D, Rahib L, Madhavan S, Matrisian LM, Petricoin EF 3rd. Overall survival in patients with pancreatic cancer receiving matched therapies following molecular profiling: a retrospective analysis of the Know Your Tumor registry trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2020; **21**: 508-518 [PMID: 32135080 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(20)30074-7]
55 **Sohal DPS**, Kennedy EB, Cinar P, Conroy T, Copur MS, Crane CH, Garrido-Laguna I, Lau MW, Johnson T, Krishnamurthi S, Moravek C, O'Reilly EM, Philip PA, Pant S, Shah MA, Sahai V, Uronis HE, Zaidi N, Laheru D. Metastatic Pancreatic Cancer: ASCO Guideline Update. *J Clin Oncol* 2020; JCO2001364 [PMID: 32755482 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.20.01364]
56 **Moore MJ**, Goldstein D, Hamm J, Figer A, Hecht JR, Gallinger S, Au HJ, Murawa P, Walde D, Wolff RA, Campos D, Lim R, Ding K, Clark G, Voskoglou-Nomikos T, Ptasynski M, Parulekar W; National Cancer Institute of Canada Clinical Trials Group. Erlotinib plus gemcitabine compared with gemcitabine alone in patients with advanced pancreatic cancer: a phase III trial of the National Cancer Institute of Canada Clinical Trials Group. *J Clin Oncol* 2007; **25**: 1960-1966 [PMID: 17452677 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2006.07.9525]
57 **Wang JP**, Wu CY, Yeh YC, Shyr YM, Wu YY, Kuo CY, Hung YP, Chen MH, Lee WP, Luo JC, Chao Y, Li CP. Erlotinib is effective in pancreatic cancer with epidermal growth factor receptor mutations: a randomized, open-label, prospective trial. *Oncotarget* 2015; **6**: 18162-18173 [PMID: 26046796 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.4216]

58 **Wang Y**, Hu GF, Zhang QQ, Tang N, Guo J, Liu LY, Han X, Wang X, Wang ZH. Efficacy and safety of gemcitabine plus erlotinib for locally advanced or metastatic pancreatic cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Drug Des Devel Ther* 2016; **10**: 1961-1972 [PMID: 27358556 DOI: 10.2147/DDDT.S105442]

59 **Vaishnavi A**, Le AT, Doebele RC. TRKing down an old oncogene in a new era of targeted therapy. *Cancer Discov* 2015; **5**: 25-34 [PMID: 25527197 DOI: 10.1158/2159-8290.CD-14-0765]

60 **Drilon A**. TRK inhibitors in TRK fusion-positive cancers. *Ann Oncol* 2019; **30**: viii23-viii30 [DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdz282]

61 **Doebele RC**, Drilon A, Paz-Ares L, Siena S, Shaw AT, Farago AF, Blakely CM, Seto T, Cho BC, Tosi D, Besse B, Chawla SP, Bazhenova L, Krauss JC, Chae YK, Barve M, Garrido-Laguna I, Liu SV, Conkling P, John T, Fakih M, Sigal D, Loong HH, Buchschacher GL Jr, Garrido P, Nieva J, Steuer C, Overbeck TR, Bowles DW, Fox E, Riehl T, Chow-Maneval E, Simmons B, Cui N, Johnson A, Eng S, Wilson TR, Demetri GD; trial investigators. Entrectinib in patients with advanced or metastatic NTRK fusion-positive solid tumours: integrated analysis of three phase 1-2 trials. *Lancet Oncol* 2020; **21**: 271-282 [PMID: 31838007 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(19)30691-6]

62 **Hong DS**, DuBois SG, Kummar S, Farago AF, Albert CM, Rohrberg KS, van Tilburg CM, Nagasubramanian R, Berlin JD, Federman N, Mascarenhas L, Geoerger B, Dowlati A, Pappo AS, Bielack S, Doz F, McDermott R, Patel JD, Schilder RJ, Tahara M, Pfister SM, Witt O, Ladanyi M, Rudzinski ER, Nanda S, Childs BH, Laetsch TW, Hyman DM, Drilon A. Larotrectinib in patients with TRK fusion-positive solid tumours: a pooled analysis of three phase 1/2 clinical trials. *Lancet Oncol* 2020; **21**: 531-540 [PMID: 32105622 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(19)30856-3]

63 **Royal RE**, Levy C, Turner K, Mathur A, Hughes M, Kammula US, Sherry RM, Topalian SL, Yang JC, Lowy I, Rosenberg SA. Phase 2 trial of single agent Ipilimumab (anti-CTLA-4) for locally advanced or metastatic pancreatic adenocarcinoma. *J Immunother* 2010; **33**: 828-833 [PMID: 20842054 DOI: 10.1097/CJI.0b013e3181eec14c]

64 **Brahmer JR**, Tykodi SS, Chow LQ, Hwu WJ, Topalian SL, Hwu P, Drake CG, Camacho LH, Kauh J, Odunsi K, Pitot HC, Hamid O, Bhatia S, Martins R, Eaton K, Chen S, Salay TM, Alaparthy S, Grosso JF, Korman AJ, Parker SM, Agrawal S, Goldberg SM, Pardoll DM, Gupta A, Wigginton JM. Safety and activity of anti-PD-L1 antibody in patients with advanced cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2012; **366**: 2455-2465 [PMID: 22658128 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1200694]

65 **Aglietta M**, Barone C, Sawyer MB, Moore MJ, Miller WH Jr, Bagalà C, Colombi F, Cagnazzo C, Gioeni L, Wang E, Huang B, Fly KD, Leone F. A phase I dose escalation trial of tremelimumab (CP-675,206) in combination with gemcitabine in chemotherapy-naive patients with metastatic pancreatic cancer. *Ann Oncol* 2014; **25**: 1750-1755 [PMID: 24907635 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdu205]

66 **Kamath SD**, Kalyan A, Kircher S, Nimeiri H, Fought AJ, Benson A 3rd, Mulcahy M. Ipilimumab and Gemcitabine for Advanced Pancreatic Cancer: A Phase Ib Study. *Oncologist* 2020; **25**: e808-e815 [PMID: 31740568 DOI: 10.1634/theoncologist.2019-0473]

67 **Sunami Y**, Häußler J, Kleeff J. Cellular Heterogeneity of Pancreatic Stellate Cells, Mesenchymal Stem Cells, and Cancer-Associated Fibroblasts in Pancreatic Cancer. *Cancers (Basel)* 2020; **12** [PMID: 33333727 DOI: 10.3390/cancers12123770]

68 **Torphy RJ**, Zhu Y, Schulick RD. Immunotherapy for pancreatic cancer: Barriers and breakthroughs. *Ann Gastroenterol Surg* 2018; **2**: 274-281 [PMID: 30003190 DOI: 10.1002/ags3.12176]

69 **Rosenberg A**, Mahalingam D. Immunotherapy in pancreatic adenocarcinoma-overcoming barriers to response. *J Gastrointest Oncol* 2018; **9**: 143-159 [PMID: 29564181 DOI: 10.21037/jgo.2018.01.13]

70 **U**. S. Food and Drug Administration. FDA grants accelerated approval to pembrolizumab for first tissue/site agnostic indication. [cited 10 January 2020]. In: U.S. Food and Drug Administration [Internet]. Available from: https://www.fda.gov/drugs/resources-information-approved-drugs/fda-grants-accelerated-approval-pembrolizumab-first-tissuesite-agnostic-indication

71 **Drilon A**, Nagasubramanian R, Blake JF, Ku N, Tuch BB, Ebata K, Smith S, Lauriault V, Kolakowski GR, Brandhuber BJ, Larsen PD, Bouhana KS, Winski SL, Hamor R, Wu WI, Parker A, Morales TH, Sullivan FX, DeWolf WE, Wollenberg LA, Gordon PR, Douglas-Lindsay DN, Scaltriti M, Benayed R, Raj S, Hanusch B, Schram AM, Jonsson P, Berger MF, Hechtman JF, Taylor BS, Andrews S, Rothenberg SM, Hyman DM. A Next-Generation TRK Kinase Inhibitor Overcomes Acquired Resistance to Prior TRK Kinase Inhibition in Patients with TRK Fusion-Positive Solid Tumors. *Cancer Discov* 2017; **7**: 963-972 [PMID: 28578312 DOI: 10.1158/2159-8290.CD-17-0507]

72 **Drilon A**, Ou SI, Cho BC, Kim DW, Lee J, Lin JJ, Zhu VW, Ahn MJ, Camidge DR, Nguyen J, Zhai D, Deng W, Huang Z, Rogers E, Liu J, Whitten J, Lim JK, Stopatschinskaja S, Hyman DM, Doebele RC, Cui JJ, Shaw AT. Repotrectinib (TPX-0005) Is a Next-Generation ROS1/TRK/ALK Inhibitor That Potently Inhibits ROS1/TRK/ALK Solvent- Front Mutations. *Cancer Discov* 2018; **8**: 1227-1236 [PMID: 30093503 DOI: 10.1158/2159-8290.CD-18-0484]

73 **Rainone M**, Singh I, Salo-Mullen EE, Stadler ZK, O'Reilly EM. An Emerging Paradigm for Germline Testing in Pancreatic Ductal Adenocarcinoma and Immediate Implications for Clinical Practice: A Review. *JAMA Oncol* 2020; **6**: 764-771 [PMID: 32053139 DOI: 10.1001/jamaoncol.2019.5963]

74 **Aung KL**, Fischer SE, Denroche RE, Jang GH, Dodd A, Creighton S, Southwood B, Liang SB, Chadwick D, Zhang A, O'Kane GM, Albaba H, Moura S, Grant RC, Miller JK, Mbabaali F, Pasternack D, Lungu IM, Bartlett JMS, Ghai S, Lemire M, Holter S, Connor AA, Moffitt RA, Yeh JJ, Timms L, Krzyzanowski PM, Dhani N, Hedley D, Notta F, Wilson JM, Moore MJ, Gallinger S, Knox JJ. Genomics-Driven Precision Medicine for Advanced Pancreatic Cancer: Early Results from the

COMPASS Trial. *Clin Cancer Res* 2018; **24**: 1344-1354 [PMID: 29288237 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-17-2994]

75 **Janssen B**, Bellis S, Koller T, Tischkowitz M, Liau SS. A systematic review of predicted pathogenic PALB2 variants: an analysis of mutational overlap between epithelial cancers. *J Hum Genet* 2020; **65**: 199-205 [PMID: 31619740 DOI: 10.1038/s10038-019-0680-7]

76 **Villarroel MC**, Rajeshkumar NV, Garrido-Laguna I, De Jesus-Acosta A, Jones S, Maitra A, Hruban RH, Eshleman JR, Klein A, Laheru D, Donehower R, Hidalgo M. Personalizing cancer treatment in the age of global genomic analyses: PALB2 gene mutations and the response to DNA damaging agents in pancreatic cancer. *Mol Cancer Ther* 2011; **10**: 3-8 [PMID: 21135251 DOI: 10.1158/1535-7163.MCT-10-0893]

77 **Lowery MA**, Kelsen DP, Capanu M, Smith SC, Lee JW, Stadler ZK, Moore MJ, Kindler HL, Golan T, Segal A, Maynard H, Hollywood E, Moynahan M, Salo-Mullen EE, Do RKG, Chen AP, Yu KH, Tang LH, O'Reilly EM. Phase II trial of veliparib in patients with previously treated BRCA-mutated pancreas ductal adenocarcinoma. *Eur J Cancer* 2018; **89**: 19-26 [PMID: 29223478 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2017.11.004]

78 **Kaufman B**, Shapira-Frommer R, Schmutzler RK, Audeh MW, Friedlander M, Balmaña J, Mitchell G, Fried G, Stemmer SM, Hubert A, Rosengarten O, Steiner M, Loman N, Bowen K, Fielding A, Domchek SM. Olaparib monotherapy in patients with advanced cancer and a germline BRCA1/2 mutation. *J Clin Oncol* 2015; **33**: 244-250 [PMID: 25366685 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2014.56.2728]

79 **Domchek SM**, Hendifar AE, McWilliams RR, Geva R, Epelbaum R, Biankin A, Vonderheide RH, Wolff RA, Alberts SR, Giordano H, Goble S, Lin KK, Shroff RT. RUCAPANC: An open-label, phase 2 trial of the PARP inhibitor rucaparib in patients (pts) with pancreatic cancer (PC) and a known deleterious germline or somatic BRCA mutation. *J Clin Oncol* 2016; **34** [DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2016.34.15_suppl.4110]

80 **Fakih M**, O'Neil B, Price TJ, Falchook GS, Desai J, Kuo, J Govindan R, Rasmussen E, Morrow PKH, Ngang J, Henary HA, Hong DS. Phase 1 study evaluating the safety, tolerability, pharmacokinetics (PK), and efficacy of AMG 510, a novel small molecule KRASG12C inhibitor, in advanced solid tumors. *J Clin Oncol* 2019; **37** [DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2019.37.15_suppl.3003]

81 **Gillson J**, Ramaswamy Y, Singh G, Gorfe AA, Pavlakis N, Samra J, Mittal A, Sahni S. Small Molecule KRAS Inhibitors: The Future for Targeted Pancreatic Cancer Therapy? *Cancers (Basel)* 2020; **12** [PMID: 32456277 DOI: 10.3390/cancers12051341]

82 **Baghdadi TA**, Halabi S, Garrett-Mayer E, Mangat PK, Ahn ER, Sahai V, Alvarez RH, Kim ES, Yost KJ, Rygiel AL, Antonelli KR, Butler NL, Bruinooge SS, Schilsky RL. Palbociclib in Patients With Pancreatic and Biliary Cancer With CDKN2A Alterations: Results From the Targeted Agent and Profiling Utilization Registry Study. *JCO Precis Oncol* 2019; **3**: 1-8

83 **García-Reyes B**, Kretz AL, Ruff JP, von Karstedt S, Hillenbrand A, Knippschild U, Henne-Bruns D, Lemke J. The Emerging Role of Cyclin-Dependent Kinases (CDKs) in Pancreatic Ductal Adenocarcinoma. *Int J Mol Sci* 2018; **19** [PMID: 30340359 DOI: 10.3390/ijms19103219]

84 **Ebrahimi S**, Hosseini M, Shahidsales S, Maftouh M, Ferns GA, Ghayour-Mobarhan M, Hassanian SM, Avan A. Targeting the Akt/PI3K Signaling Pathway as a Potential Therapeutic Strategy for the Treatment of Pancreatic Cancer. *Curr Med Chem* 2017; **24**: 1321-1331 [PMID: 28176634 DOI: 10.2174/0929867324666170206142658]

85 **Baer R**, Cintas C, Therville N, Guillermet-Guibert J. Implication of PI3K/Akt pathway in pancreatic cancer: When PI3K isoforms matter? *Adv Biol Regul* 2015; **59**: 19-35 [PMID: 26166735 DOI: 10.1016/j.jbior.2015.05.001]

86 **Murthy D**, Attri KS, Singh PK. Phosphoinositide 3-Kinase Signaling Pathway in Pancreatic Ductal Adenocarcinoma Progression, Pathogenesis, and Therapeutics. *Front Physiol* 2018; **9**: 335 [PMID: 29670543 DOI: 10.3389/fphys.2018.00335]

87 **Herbertz S**, Sawyer JS, Stauber AJ, Gueorguieva I, Driscoll KE, Estrem ST, Cleverly AL, Desaiah D, Guba SC, Benhadji KA, Slapak CA, Lahn MM. Clinical development of galunisertib (LY2157299 monohydrate), a small molecule inhibitor of transforming growth factor-beta signaling pathway. *Drug Des Devel Ther* 2015; **9**: 4479-4499 [PMID: 26309397 DOI: 10.2147/DDDT.S86621]

88 **Schlingensiepen KH**, Jaschinski F, Lang SA, Moser C, Geissler EK, Schlitt HJ, Kielmanowicz M, Schneider A. Transforming growth factor-beta 2 gene silencing with trabedersen (AP 12009) in pancreatic cancer. *Cancer Sci* 2011; **102**: 1193-1200 [PMID: 21366804 DOI: 10.1111/j.1349-7006.2011.01917.x]

89 **Melisi D**, Hollebecque A, Oh DY, Calvo E, Varghese AM, Borazanci EH, Mercade TM, Simionato F, Park JO, Bendell JC, Faivre SJ, Zhao Y, Gueorguieva I, Man M, Estrem S, Benhadji KA, Lanasa M, Guba SC, Garcia-Carbonero R. A phase Ib dose-escalation and cohort-expansion study of safety and activity of the transforming growth factor (TGF) β receptor I kinase inhibitor galunisertib plus the anti-PD-L1 antibody durvalumab in metastatic pancreatic cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2019; **37**: 4124

90 **Alistar A**, Morris BB, Desnoyer R, Klepin HD, Hosseinzadeh K, Clark C, Cameron A, Leyendecker J, D'Agostino Jr R, Topaloglu U, Boteju LW, Boteju AR, Shorr R, Zachar Z, Bingham PM, Ahmed T, Crane S, Shah R, Migliano JJ, Pardee TS, Miller L, Hawkins G, Jin G, Zhang W, Pasche B. Safety and tolerability of the first-in-class agent CPI-613 in combination with modified FOLFIRINOX in patients with metastatic pancreatic cancer: a single-centre, open-label, dose-escalation, phase 1 trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2017; **18**: 770-778 [DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(17)30314-5]

91 **Deplanque G**, Demarchi M, Hebbar M, Flynn P, Melichar B, Atkins J, Nowara E, Moyé L, Piquemal D, Ritter D, Dubreuil P, Mansfield CD, Acin Y, Moussy A, Hermine O, Hammel P. A randomized,

placebo-controlled phase III trial of masitinib plus gemcitabine in the treatment of advanced pancreatic cancer. *Ann Oncol* 2015; **26**: 1194-1200 [PMID: 25858497 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdv133]

92 **Middleton G**, Palmer DH, Greenhalf W, Ghaneh P, Jackson R, Cox T, Evans A, Shaw VE, Wadsley J, Valle JW, Propper D, Wasan H, Falk S, Cunningham D, Coxon F, Ross P, Madhusudan S, Wadd N, Corrie P, Hickish T, Costello E, Campbell F, Rawcliffe C, Neoptolemos JP. Vandetanib plus gemcitabine *vs* placebo plus gemcitabine in locally advanced or metastatic pancreatic carcinoma (ViP): a prospective, randomised, double-blind, multicentre phase 2 trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2017; **18**: 486-499 [PMID: 28259610 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(17)30084-0]

93 **O'Reilly EM**, Oh DY, Dhani N, Renouf DJ, Lee MA, Sun W, Fisher G, Hezel A, Chang SC, Vlahovic G, Takahashi O, Yang Y, Fitts D, Philip PA. Durvalumab With or Without Tremelimumab for Patients With Metastatic Pancreatic Ductal Adenocarcinoma: A Phase 2 Randomized Clinical Trial. *JAMA Oncol* 2019 [PMID: 31318392 DOI: 10.1001/jamaoncol.2019.1588]

94 **Looi CK**, Chung FF, Leong CO, Wong SF, Rosli R, Mai CW. Therapeutic challenges and current immunomodulatory strategies in targeting the immunosuppressive pancreatic tumor microenvironment. *J Exp Clin Cancer Res* 2019; **38**: 162 [PMID: 30987642 DOI: 10.1186/s13046-019-1153-8]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

*World J Gastroenterol* 2021 May 7; 27(17): 1864-1882

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i17.1864

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

*REVIEW*

# Non-alcoholic fatty liver and chronic kidney disease: Retrospect, introspect, and prospect

Rajiv Heda, Masahiko Yazawa, Michelle Shi, Madhu Bhaskaran, Fuad Zain Aloor, Paul J Thuluvath, Sanjaya K Satapathy

**ORCID number:** Rajiv Heda 0000-002-5556-5784; Masahiko Yazawa 0000-0002-3907-5347; Michelle Shi 0000-0002-1387-3770; Madhu Bhaskaran 0000-0002-8903-9301; Fuad Zain Aloor 0000-0002-2508-4517; Paul J Thuluvath 0000-0002-4374-4507; Sanjaya K Satapathy 0000-0003-0153-2829.

**Author contributions:** Satapathy SK conceptualized the manuscript; Satapathy SK, Heda R, Yazawa M, and Shi M drafted the manuscript; all other authors participated in the critical revision of the manuscript for important intellectual content.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** The authors has nothing to disclose.



**Rajiv Heda,** Department of Internal Medicine, Tulane University School of Medicine, New Orleans, LA 70112, United States

**Masahiko Yazawa,** Department of Nephrology and Hypertension, St. Marianna University School of Medicine, Kawasaki 216-8511, Japan

**Michelle Shi, Sanjaya K Satapathy,** Department of Internal Medicine, Donald and Barbara Zucker School of Medicine, Northwell Health, Manhasset, NY 11030, United States

**Madhu Bhaskaran,** Department of Nephrology, Northwell Health/Zucker School of Medicine at Hosftra, Manhasset, NY 11030, United States

**Fuad Zain Aloor,** Department of Internal Medicine, Baylor College of Medicine, Houston, TX 77030, United States

**Paul J Thuluvath,** Institute of Digestive Health & Liver Diseases, Mercy Medical Center, Baltimore, MD 21202, United States

**Corresponding author:** Sanjaya K Satapathy, FAASLD, AGAF, FACG, MBBS, MD, Professor, Department of Internal Medicine, Donald and Barbara Zucker School of Medicine, Northwell Health, 400 Community Drive, Manhasset, NY 11030, United States. ssatapat@northwell.edu

## Abstract

With the growing prevalence of obesity and diabetes in the United States and across the world, a rise in the overall incidence and prevalence of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) is expected. The risk factors for NAFLD are also associated with the development of chronic kidney disease (CKD). We review the epidemiology, risk factors, genetics, implications of gut dysbiosis, and specific pathogenic mechanisms linking NAFLD to CKD. Mechanisms such as ectopic lipid accumulation, cellular signaling abnormalities, and the interplay between fructose consumption and uric acid accumulation have led to the emergence of potential therapeutic implications for this patient population. Transplant evaluation in the setting of both NAFLD and CKD is also reviewed. Potential strategies for surveillance and management include the monitoring of comorbidities, the use of non-invasive fibrosis scoring systems, and the measurement of laboratory markers. Lastly, we discuss the management of patients with NAFLD and CKD, from preventative measures to experimental interventions.

**Manuscript source:** Invited manuscript

**Specialty type:** Gastroenterology and hepatology

**Country/Territory of origin:** United States

**Peer-review report's scientific quality classification**

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): C, C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

**Received:** January 10, 2021
**Peer-review started:** January 10, 2021
**First decision:** February 11, 2021
**Revised:** March 7, 2021
**Accepted:** April 7, 2021
**Article in press:** April 7, 2021
**Published online:** May 7, 2021

**P-Reviewer:** Li YY, Yang SS
**S-Editor:** Fan JR
**L-Editor:** A
**P-Editor:** Wu YXJ

**Key Words:** Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease; Chronic kidney disease; Nonalcoholic steatohepatitis; Organ transplant; genetic; Microbiome; Pathophysiology



**Core Tip:** Patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) are at higher risk for the development of chronic kidney disease (CKD) than the general population. The prevalence of mutual comorbidities in addition to direct pathogenic mechanisms linking NAFLD to the development of CKD can explain this finding. With the breadth of data linking NAFLD to CKD, there are minimal options for treating this patient population. Regardless, we have presented strategies that can be implemented at various levels including surveillance, preventative, and management level.

**Citation:** Heda R, Yazawa M, Shi M, Bhaskaran M, Aloor FZ, Thuluvath PJ, Satapathy SK. Non-alcoholic fatty liver and chronic kidney disease: Retrospect, introspect, and prospect. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; 27(17): 1864-1882
**URL:** https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v27/i17/1864.htm
**DOI:** https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v27.i17.1864

## INTRODUCTION

Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) encompasses a spectrum of chronic liver disease ranging from steatosis on one end to fibrosis and cirrhosis on the other end[1]. NAFLD and non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH) are the hepatic manifestations of metabolic syndrome (MetS), which is a driving force for a multitude of comorbidities, such as insulin resistance, cardiovascular disease (CVD), chronic kidney disease (CKD), obstructive sleep apnea (OSA), as well as increased malignancy risk[2]. While NASH is the second leading indication for liver transplantation (LT), it is expected that NASH will overtake hepatitis C virus (HCV) as the leading cause, given the efficacy of direct-acting antiviral therapy[3]. A recent epidemiological study has already confirmed a downward trend for HCV-related LT in the United States[4].

NAFLD is tightly linked to underlying insulin resistance and is associated with other comorbidities related to MetS[5]. Growing evidence suggests that NAFLD is a risk factor for CKD[6] due to shared metabolic risk factors[7]. Of note, several studies have shown an association between the severity of NASH and CKD[8-11]. Interestingly, a meta-analysis of 33 studies showed that diabetes status and metabolic risk factors had no impact on the positive correlation between the severity of NASH and CKD[12], suggesting a possible unique pathogenic link between NAFLD and CKD irrespective of their shared metabolic risk factors. We review the genetic, epidemiologic, and pathogenic links between NAFLD and CKD in addition to potential preventative and management strategies.

## PREVALENCE OF CKD IN NAFLD AND POTENTIAL PREDISPOSING RISK FACTORS

Two meta-analyses and a retrospective cohort analysis suggest that the incidence and prevalence of CKD increase in patients with NAFLD compared to patients without NAFLD (Table 1). In all analyses, the magnitude and direction of effects remained unaffected by diabetes status, even after adjustment for other risk factors[12-14]. Moreover, the association was stronger in patients with advanced fibrosis or decompensated cirrhosis as compared to compensated cirrhosis. The studies that were included in these major meta-analyses defined advanced fibrosis was defined by histological parameters, imaging findings, and/or elevations in the NAFLD fibrosis score (NFS). Of note, among 42 studies included in these two meta-analyses, only 13 ($n$ = 2205) utilized liver histology, which is the gold standard in diagnosing NAFLD[15]. The majority of the studies established diagnosis of NAFLD *via* abdominal ultrasound, liver enzyme elevation [including serum gamma-glutamyl transferase (GGT)

**Table 1 Incidence and prevalence of chronic kidney disease in patients with varying degrees of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease severity**

| Ref. | Year | *n* | NAFLD diagnostic modalities | Conclusion(s) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Musso *et al*[12]. A meta-analysis of 33 studies | 2014 | 63902 | Liver biopsy, abdominal ultrasound, elevated liver enzymes | (1) 20 cross-sectional studies: Nearly two-fold increased risk of CKD in patients with NAFLD (OR 2.12, 95%CI 1.69-2.66); (2) 11 longitudinal studies: 1.8-fold increased risk of CKD in patients with NAFLD (HR 1.79, 95%CI 1.65–1.95); and (3) advanced fibrosis associated with increased prevalence (OR 5.20, 95%CI 3.14-8.61) and incidence (HR 3.29, 95%CI 2.30-4.71) of CKD in patients with NAFLD |
| Mantovani *et al*[13]. A meta-analysis of 9 studies | 2018 | 96595 | Abdominal ultrasound; FLI; serum GGT | Incidence of CKD: (1) 1.4-fold increased long-term risk (HR 1.37, 95%CI 1.20–1.53) in patients with NAFLD with a median follow-up period of 5.2 years; and (2) 1.5-fold increased risk (HR 1.50, 95%CI 1.25-1.74) in patients with severe NAFLD (defined as NFS ≥ -1.455 or serum GGT ≥ 109 U/L) |
| Park *et al*[14]. Retrospective Cohort with Propensity Score Matching (1:3) | 2019 | 262619 | ICD-9 | Incidence of CKD: 1.4-fold increased risk (aHR 1.41; 95%CI, 1.36-1.46) in patients with NAFLD after adjusting for demographics, baseline covariates, and ACEi/ARB use; Risk of incident CKD increases as the severity of NAFLD increases: (1) compensated cirrhosis (aHR, 1.47; 95%CI 1.36-1.59); and (2) decompensated cirrhosis (aHR, 2.28; 95%CI 2.12-2.46) |

NAFLD: Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease; CKD: Chronic kidney disease; HR: Hazard ratio; FLI: Fatty liver index; GGT: Gamma glutamyl transferase; NFS: NAFLD fibrosis score; CI: Confidence interval; OR: Odds ratio; ACEi: Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor; ARB: Angiotensin receptor blocker; ICD-9: International classification of disease-9.

elevation], or using international classification of disease-9 code.

Previous review articles estimated that the prevalence of CKD was 20% to 55% in patients with NAFLD, whereas the prevalence of CKD in patients without NAFLD was 5% to 30%[16,17]. However, most of these reviews evaluated the same pool of data[8,9,11,18-22], which were also included in the two meta-analyses mentioned above. Our conclusions were based on studies that were published before 2015 as several more recent studies did not use histology or imaging for NAFLD diagnosis[23-26].

Many non-hepatic and hepatic risk factors are associated with CKD in those with NAFLD.

### Non-hepatic risk factors

There is minimal data on non-hepatic risk factors to predict which patients will go on to develop CKD. However, there are a few studies outlined below to identify which patients may be at higher risk (Table 2).

### Smoking

Current cigarette smoking is associated with CKD or death from end-stage renal disease. Mainstream cigarette smoke includes over 4000 compounds, and nicotine is one of many biologically stable and active compounds present in tobacco. Nicotine causes kidney damage by modulating α7nAChR, NLRP6 inflammasome, ER stress, and autophagy[27,28]. Studies examining the relationship between smoking and NAFLD are lacking; however, in a cohort study of 1525 CKD patients who underwent repeated health check-up examinations over 10 years, the decline in estimated glomerular filtration rate (eGFR) associated with NAFLD was greater in current smokers, hypertensive patients, or those with lower eGFR at baseline had greater age- and sex-adjusted decline in eGFR[29].

### Diabetes

Around one-third of patients with NAFLD have impaired renal function and its prevalence in patients with NAFLD is dependent on the severity of liver disease and presence of diabetes mellitus[30]. The development of NAFLD in patients with diabetes appears to be an important event in its natural history predisposing these patients to a higher risk for developing CKD. Type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM) increases the risk of serious NASH and advanced fibrosis in patients with NAFLD[31,32]. Patients with T2DM or type 1 diabetes mellitus and NAFLD are at an increased risk of developing CKD compared to diabetics without NAFLD[20,33,34]. Despite accumulating evidence for NAFLD as a driver for CKD, the shared common risk factors make it difficult to isolate diabetes as an independent risk factor for CKD in NAFLD patients.

**Table 2 Summary of studies assessing non-hepatic risk factors for chronic kidney disease in patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease**

| Ref. | Risk factor(s) | Year | *n* | Comparison | Findings |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Önnerhag *et al*[147] | Older age | 2019 | 120 | Biopsy-proven NAFLD *vs* non-NAFLD | Higher prevalence of CKD in patients ≥ 55 years old |
| Targher *et al*[20] | Diabetes mellitus | 2008 | 2103 | NAFLD and T2DM *vs* T2DM only | Patients with NAFLD and T2DM independently associated with increased risk of CKD (OR 1.87; 95%CI 1.3-4.1, $P$ = 0.020) |
| Targher *et al*[33] | Diabetes mellitus | 2010 | 301 | NAFLD and T1DM *vs* T1DM only | Patients with NAFLD and T1DM independently associated with increased risk of CKD |
| Jang *et al*[29] | Elevated baseline eGFR, HTN, and current smoking | 2018 | 1525 | NAFLD *vs* Non-NAFLD | The decline in eGFR associated with NAFLD appeared to be stronger among patients who were current smokers, hypertensive, and lower eGFR at baseline |

NAFLD: Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease; CKD: Chronic kidney disease; T2DM: Type 2 diabetes mellitus; OR: Odds ratio; CI: Confidence interval; T1DM: Type 1 Diabetes Mellitus; eGFR: Estimated glomerular filtration rate; HTN: Hypertension.

### *Hypothyroid*

Proper thyroid function is implicated in renal blood flow, glomerular and tubular function, electrolyte homeostasis, hepatic lipid metabolism, and fatty acid beta-oxidation[35]. Hypothyroidism can cause NAFLD through fat accumulation, while hyperthyroid can cause NAFLD through reactive oxygen species formation[36]. Additionally, the prevalence of hypothyroidism increases for each 10 mL/min/1.73 $m^2$ decrement in eGFR[37], and patients with hypothyroidism were more than 2 times likely to have NAFLD and 4 times more likely to have NASH[38].

### *Hepatic risk factors*

**NAFLD-related advanced fibrosis:** Patients with NAFLD-related advanced fibrosis are more likely to have CKD compared to patients with NAFLD but without advanced fibrosis[39]. The risk of albuminuria increases with the severity of NAFLD-related advanced fibrosis, according to a 2017 study of 1763 Chinese diabetic patients[40]. After adjusting for common CKD risk factors such as diabetes and other metabolic comorbidities, advanced fibrosis but not steatosis was associated with a higher risk of albuminuria (OR: 1.52; 95%CI: 1.02-2.28; $P$ = 0.039). In a 2019 study of 594 patients with T2DM, significant liver fibrosis as detected by elastography (LSM ≥ 7.0/6.2 kPa) was independently associated with a higher risk of CKD (adjusted OR: 3.6, 95%CI: 1.3-10.1; $P$ = 0.01) in addition to CVD and other microvascular complications[41]. Increased liver stiffness as detected by transient elastography is a predictor of CKD in patients with ultrasound-diagnosed NAFLD[42]

In a 12-year prospective cohort, patients with non-obese NAFLD had a higher risk of developing CKD than patients with obese NAFLD[43]. A recent study has noted that the risk of developing CKD is higher in metabolically unhealthy non-obese NAFLD patients than their counterparts with metabolically healthy status defined by the lack of metabolic risk factors (*i.e.* diabetes mellitus, low High-density lipoprotein, hypertriglyceridemia, arterial hypertension)[44].

**Pathophysiology:** CKD secondary to fatty liver is thought to be due to systemic low-grade inflammation[45], which may involve upregulation of the nuclear factor-κB (NF-κB) pathway[45,46]. As discussed earlier, there is circumstantial evidence to suggest that patients with NASH-related advanced fibrosis have an increased prevalence of CKD. Progression of NASH may be partly mediated by the altered renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system due to CKD has also been proposed as a mechanism for NAFLD progression[47]. Although direct pathogenic links between NAFLD and CKD seem to be confounded by common metabolic comorbidities, novel mechanisms have been described.

**Insulin resistance**: Increased adiposity leads to increased free fatty acids and pro-inflammatory cytokine release that causes systemic insulin resistance (IR), which is an established mediator of NAFLD. IR is further exacerbated by the progression of NAFLD, leading to atherogenic dyslipidemia and further release of inflammatory cytokines resulting in CKD as shown in animal models[48]. Proinflammation occurs through the NF-κB and Jun-N-terminal kinase (JNK) pathways; activation of adipose-specific JNK pathways has been shown to cause insulin resistance[48,49]. As NAFLD

progresses to NASH, the inflammatory component is neutrophil-predominant and can cause systemic endothelial dysfunction (Figure 1)[50,51]. Notably, IR leads to increased production of very-low-density lipoprotein and endoplasmic reticulum stress, both of which can cause podocyte damage in glomeruli[52]. These latter two mechanisms have been linked to proteinuria and subsequent hastening of CKD[53,54].

**Ectopic lipid accumulation:** In animal models, a high fat/fructose diet resulted in increased urinary albumin excretion, elevated transaminases, and increased incidence of liver tumors when compared to a standard diet. Microscopically, lipid deposition leads to accelerated hepatorenal pathologies, suggesting that intracellular lipid accumulation may link NAFLD to CKD[55]. When treated with fenofibrate, slower intracellular lipid accumulation was noted in co-incidence with slower progression of renal and hepatic pathologies[55].

**Wnt signaling abnormalities:** Alterations in cellular pathways critical for homeostasis play an important role in the development of CKD in patients with NAFLD. Specifically, abnormalities in the Wnt (named as a fusion of the Drosophila gene wingless and its vertebrate homolog, integrated) signaling pathway have been linked to lipid accumulation, chronic inflammation, and fibrosis in the development of both NAFLD and CKD[56].

**Sterol regulatory element-binding proteins**: Sterol regulatory-element binding proteins are activated in a nutrient-rich (*i.e.*, anabolic) state that leads to insulin-signaling and increased endoplasmic reticulum stress, which can cause increased lipogenesis and hepatosteatosis. These changes cause the progression of other metabolic phenomena such as CKD and MetS[57].

**Fructose consumption and uric acid accumulation:** Fructose intake has been linked to hepatorenal injury *via* uric acid accumulation by altering the gut microbiome (Figure 2)[45,58]. Patients with a normal body mass index (BMI) and elevated serum uric acid levels (> 10 mg/dL) have an increased prevalence of MetS when compared to patients with a serum uric acid < 6 mg/dL[59], which is corroborated by other studies[60-62]. An increase in serum uric acid levels is also associated with an increase in the incidence of NAFLD[63]. In patients with NAFLD, elevated uric acid levels are known to be pathogenic in CKD progression[42,64]. These studies suggest that MetS, NAFLD, and CKD are interconnected through elevated serum uric acid levels[65].

Uric acid stimulates fructokinase, which sensitizes hepatocytes to fructose metabolism, subsequently leading to fat deposition in the liver, thereby explaining the link between elevated uric acid and NAFLD[66]. Elevated uric acid levels in animal models lead to glomerular hypertension and tubulointerstitial fibrosis, two processes that preclude the development of CKD[64]. Decreased urate clearance in CKD patients may further exacerbate this pathology. Interestingly, xanthine oxidase inhibitors are currently being tested in patients with CKD to monitor for disease progression in the CKD-FIX[67].

**Gut dysbiosis:** Changes in the gut microbiome play a role in the pathogenesis of NAFLD and CKD[45]. Dietary conditions such as increased fructose intake and vitamin D deficiency are shown to cause dysbiosis, which may directly lead to low-grade inflammation responsible for the development of NAFLD and CKD[45]. Dysbiosis and subsequent microbial fermentation lead to increased production of uremic toxins indoxyl sulfate and p-cresyl sulfate, which correlate directly with the progression of CKD[68]. The liver cytochrome P450 enzymes are directly regulated by these uremic toxins derived from alterations in gut microbial metabolism, hence the gut-liver-kidney axis[69]. Animal models have also shown the gut microbiota's ability to metabolize choline into trimethylamine N-oxide (TMAO), which is considered both nephrotoxic and hepatotoxic. In a 2015 study comparing TMAO levels in patients with CKD ($n$ = 521) to healthy patients ($n$ = 3166), median TMAO levels among CKD patients were significantly higher ($P$ < 0.001)[70]. Similarly, a 2019 case-control study comparing patients with NAFLD ($n$ = 34) to those without ($n$ = 14) showed that TMAO has a role in aggravating liver steatosis[71]. Lastly, certain species in the gut microbiota produce short-chain fatty acids (SCFAs) such as butyrate, acetate, and propionate and diffuse through gut mucosa, which can disrupt the integrity of the intestinal barrier. In the bloodstream, SCFAs can cause systemic inflammation, the common pathogenic link between NAFLD and CKD[45].

**Genetic links between NAFLD and CKD:** Two gene variants associated with both CKD and NAFLD are the G allele of the *patatin-like phospholipase domain-containing* (

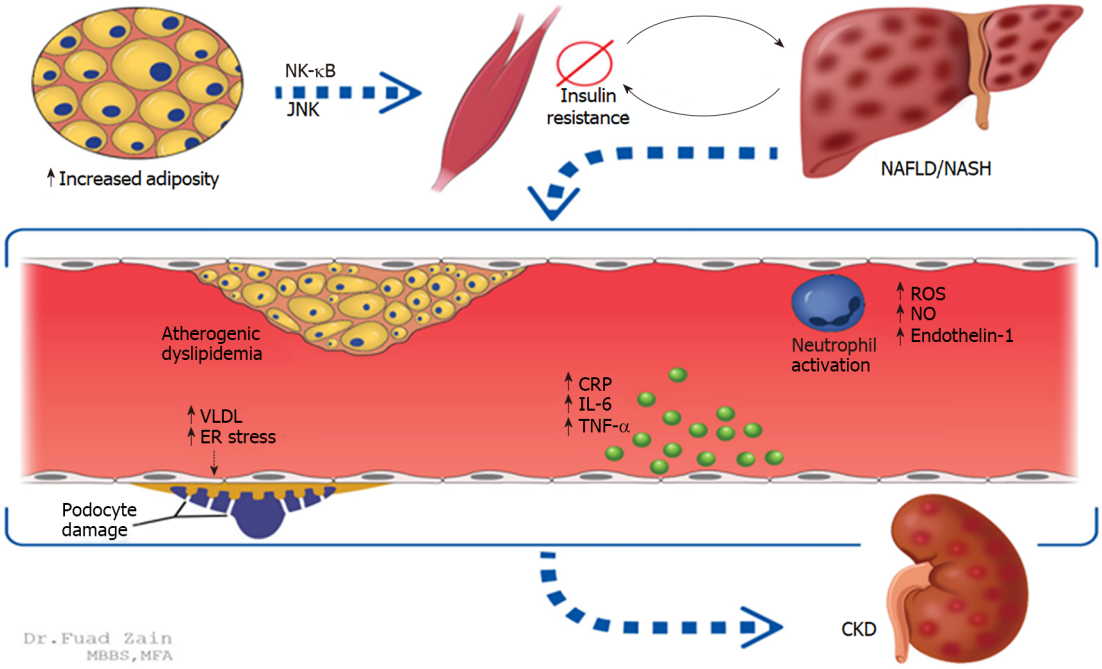



**Figure 1 Two established mechanisms between non-alcoholic fatty liver disease and the development of chronic kidney disease are increased adiposity and insulin resistance.** NF-κB: Nuclear factor-κB; JNK: Jun N-terminal kinases; NAFLD/NASH: Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease/Non-alcoholic steatohepatitis; ROS: Reactive oxygen species; NO: Nitric oxide; CRP: C-reactive protein; IL-6: Interleukin-6; VLDL: Very low-density lipoprotein; TNF-α: Tumor necrosis factor alpha; CKD: Chronic kidney disease

*PNPLA3)* gene and the T allele of the *transmembrane 6 superfamily member 2* (*TM6SF2*) gene. The G allele in the rs738409 polymorphism of the *PNPLA3* gene has been shown to play a major role in the progression of NASH[72,73]. Patients with the G allele also have been shown to have lower eGFR, increased incidence of microalbuminuria, and increased prevalence of CKD, regardless of NAFLD/NASH status[74,75]. The patient population that was found to have the highest risk of CKD and NAFLD in a 2015 study were patients who carried the G allele of the *PNPLA3*; furthermore, these patients were not obese, which is an important risk factor for CKD[75]. Another study showed that Chinese patients with normal alanine aminotransferase levels who carried the rs738409 polymorphism in the *PNPLA3* gene were at risk for early glomerular and tubular damage, which could explain why these patients develop CKD even in the absence of well-known risk factors, such as obesity or diabetes[76]. In postmenopausal women with T2DM, having the G/G allele leads to a higher prevalence of CKD, regardless of NAFLD status, further supporting the argument that this polymorphism may be an independent predictor for CKD[77]. Patients who are found to have the G/G allele in the polymorphism rs738409 should have close monitoring for the development of NAFLD as well as renal dysfunction, even in normal-weight patients[75]. On the other hand, the rs58542926 polymorphism on the *TM6SF2* gene, also known as the T allele of the *TMS6F2* gene, has been associated with the development of NAFLD[78] but has also been associated with a higher eGFR and lower prevalence of microalbuminuria[74]. Thus, this specific polymorphism in *TM6SF2* may be nephroprotective in patients with NAFLD.

### *Identifying NAFLD patients at risk for progression of CKD*

**Role of non-invasive fibrosis scoring systems:** Non-invasive scoring systems are utilized in assessing the severity of various chronic liver diseases. However, they have also been shown in several studies to be useful in predicting CKD in patients with NAFLD (Table 3). Incremental increases in the fatty liver index are an independent risk factor for developing CKD in a 10-year prospective analysis of 6238 adults (age 40-69 years) without CKD at baseline[23]. In another study of 11376 Taiwanese subjects, the NFS was negatively correlated with eGFR[6]. Multiple studies show that patients who have an intermediate and high-risk category of fibrosis-4 index (FIB-4)-index and NFS are at an increased risk of CKD[79,80], while a 2019 cross-sectional study of 11836

**Table 3 Summary of studies assessing non-invasive scoring systems for advanced fibrosis to assess risk for chronic kidney disease in patients with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease**

| Ref. | Year | *n* | Scoring system(s) assessed | Results |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Ciardullo *et al*[82] | 2020 | 2770 | APRI, FIB-4, FLI, NFS | NAFLD-related fibrosis as measured with FIB-4 associated with CKD ($P < 0.01$) |
| Hsieh *et al*[6] | 2020 | 11376 | NFS | Higher NFS associated with impaired eGFR ($P < 0.0001$) |
| Choi *et al*[81] | 2019 | 11836 | APRI, BARD, FIB-4, FLI | FIB-4 ($P = 0.0258$) most precise in predicting kidney dysfunction |
| Önnerhag *et al*[79] | 2019 | 144 | APRI, BARD, NFS, FIB-4 | High-risk NFS ($P < 0.001$), FIB-4 ($P < 0.001$), APRI ($P = 0.008$) predict CKD |
| Wijarnpreecha *et al*[80] | 2018 | 4142 | APRI, BARD, NFS, FIB-4 | High/intermediate probability of liver fibrosis on NFS (AUC = 0.75) and FIB-4 (AUC = 0.77) independently predict CKD |
| Huh *et al*[23] | 2017 | 6238 | FLI | NAFLD cut-off for NAFLD is an independent RF for CKD ( $P < 0.0001$) |

NFS: Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease fibrosis score; FIB-4: Fibrosis-4 index; APRI: Aspartate aminotransferase to platelet ratio index; FLI: Fatty liver index; CKD: Chronic kidney disease; eGFR: Estimated glomerular filtration rate; AUC: Area under the curve; RF: Risk factor; BARP: Biologically-oriented Alveolar Ridge Preservation; NAFLD: Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease.

patients showed that FIB-4 is the most precise tool when estimating renal dysfunction attributable to NAFLD (area under the curve = 0.6227, 95%CI: 0.5929-0.6526, $P = 0.0258$) after adjusting for various demographic and clinical variables[81]. FIB-4 is the most superior predictor in other studies as well[80,82]. In summary, patients with NAFLD-related fibrosis are at increased risk for CKD, and these patients should undergo proper surveillance *via* non-invasive fibrosis scoring systems and/or advanced imaging techniques (*i.e.* Fibroscan, TE) (Figure 3).

**Cystatin C:** Serum creatinine, a widely used biomarker in assessing renal function, is inaccurate in determining GFR in patients with cirrhosis[83]. This is due to muscle wasting that occurs in cirrhosis, thus leading to diminished creatinine formation, increased tubular secretion of creatinine, and impaired assay interpretation caused by elevated bilirubin[83]. Alternatively, the measurement of cystatin C does not have the same limitations as serum creatinine due to its low molecular weight and because it does not require adjustment for gender, mass, or bilirubin level[84]. A combination of serum creatinine and cystatin C is more accurate in determining GFR than serum creatinine alone[85]. However, serum creatinine alone is superior for patients without cirrhosis[85]. Measurement of cystatin C in addition to serum creatinine may have utility for accurately assessing renal function in transplant candidates and for monitoring the development of CKD in patients with NASH cirrhosis. Although the cost of measuring eGFR using Cystatin C in addition to serum creatinine is higher, the burden of over-diagnosing CKD in patients with cirrhosis is lessened, which may lead to an overall reduction in unnecessary medical expenses for patients with cirrhosis who truly have CKD[86].

**Alkaline phosphatase and GGT:** In diabetic patients with NAFLD, serum alkaline phosphatase (ALP), a NAFLD-associated marker when elevate, was also significantly associated with impaired renal function[87,88]. Interestingly, ALP is associated with the release of proinflammatory cytokines from the liver that are known to disrupt the glomerular endothelial glycocalyx, leading to albuminuria, which may explain why ALP is a potential surveillance marker in patients with NAFLD who are at risk for developing CKD[89]. Furthermore, elevated serum GGT is associated with an increased risk of CKD[24,90,91]. GGT is associated with increased inflammatory markers and insulin resistance, both of which play central roles in patients with NAFLD who develop CKD[24,92]. However, elevated GGT may not be an accurate CKD parameter in Caucasian men, as GGT is confounded by BMI, lifestyle factors, and lipids, as noted in a 2017 study[25]. Therefore, elevated GGT in Caucasian men with NAFLD should be interpreted with caution when monitoring for CKD. Of importance, NAFLD was diagnosed by elevated GGT levels (in addition to ultrasound in only one study[91]; therefore, these findings may not apply to patients diagnosed by more

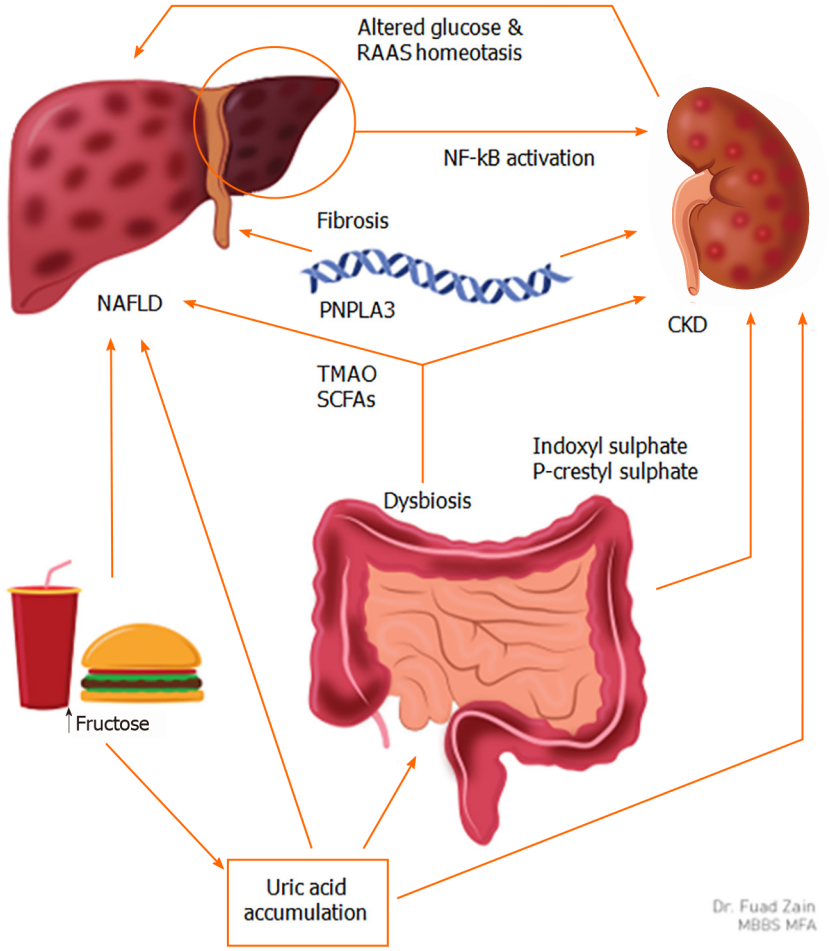



**Figure 2 Fructose consumption and uric acid accumulation play a key role in patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease who develop chronic kidney disease.** TMAO: Trimethylamine N-oxide; SCFAs: Short-chain fatty acids; RAAS: Renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system; PNPLA3: Patatin-like phospholipase domain-containing protein 3; NAFLD: Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease; CKD: Chronic kidney disease; NF-κB: Nuclear factor-κB.

invasive parameters (*i.e.* liver biopsy).

*Managing the progression of CKD*

**Surveillance of comorbidities**: In general, we recommend patients with diabetes and NAFLD undergo frequent surveillance for underlying kidney dysfunction, more so than patients with diabetes only. Monitoring thyrotropin and thyroid hormone levels may have clinical utility when evaluating the risk of developing CKD in patients with NAFLD; however, future studies are needed to specifically address the risk of CKD in patients with NAFLD and hypothyroidism (Table 4).

### Body weight

**Waist-to-hip ratio:** Few studies have evaluated the impact of weight loss on the progression of CKD in patients with NAFLD. Recent studies have shown that a decrease in the waist-to-hip ratio (WHR) in patients with NAFLD decreases the risk of CKD development[43]. Serial monitoring of WHR may be beneficial in identifying patients with NAFLD at risk for CKD. A drawback to this finding is that a reduction in WHR does not differentiate between a reduction in visceral fat *vs* subcutaneous fat. Studies have shown that visceral fat, but not subcutaneous fat, is the key driver in NAFLD pathogenesis *via* increased insulin resistance[93]. However, with regards to reducing the risk of CKD, the significance of reducing visceral *vs* subcutaneous fat is not well-studied.

**Weight loss:** Data from a post-hoc analysis of a clinical trial involving 261 patients with NAFLD showed a statistically significant relationship between reduction in body weight and changes in eGFR (when calculated by CKD-Epidemiology collaboration and modification of diet in renal disease equations), even after adjusting for

**Table 4 Summary of Interventions for patients with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease and chronic kidney disease**

| Intervention | Ref. | Year | *n* | Findings | Recommendation |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Decreasing WHR | Chon *et al*[43]. 12-yr prospective cohort | 2020 | 6137 | A decrease in the WHR of more than 5% in patients with NAFLD leads to a significantly reduced risk of CKD development, even in non-obese patients | Serial Monitoring WHR may be beneficial in identifying patients with NAFLD at risk of developing CKD and reduction can ameliorate the progression |
| Weight loss | Vilar-Gomez *et al*[94]. Post-hoc analysis | 2017 | 261 | Improvement in liver histology due to weight loss linked to improved renal outcomes, even after adjusting for medication profile, diabetes, and hypertension | Advocate for weight loss |
| SGLT2 Inhibitors | Shimizu *et al*[96]. RCT | 2019 | 57 | SGLT inhibitor (Dapagliflozin) improved liver steatosis in patients with T2DM and NAFLD and attenuates liver fibrosis in patients with NAFLD-related advanced fibrosis | Although data is not sufficient, consider using SGLT2 inhibitors in T2DM patients with NAFLD and CKD |
| | Perkovic *et al*[95]. CREDENCE trial | 2019 | 4401 | SGLT2 inhibitor (Canagliflozin) decreased the risk of renal failure in patients with T2DM and CKD | |
| GLP-1 | Armstrong *et al*[100]. LEAN trial | 2016 | 52 | Liraglutide led to weight loss, glycemic control, and histological resolution of NASH | GLP-1's in NASH is considered effective in improving components of MetS, however, long-term studies are needed to determine NASH-related outcomes |
| | Tuttle *et al*[101]. AWARD-7 trial | 2018 | 577 | Once-weekly dulaglutide is associated with reduced decline in eGFR, while being as effective as insulin in achieving glycemic control | GLP-1 is a safe option for patients with CKD and is associated with slower progression of CKD |
| Coenzyme Q10 | Farhangi *et al*[109] and Farsi *et al*[110]. RCT | 2014[109] and 2016[110] | 44[109] and 41[110] | 100 mg of oral CoQ10/d improve biochemical variables of NAFLD after 4 wk[109] and 12 wk[110] of treatment | Due to lack of data in patients with both NAFLD and CKD, the benefit of CoQ10 supplementation is unknown; however, in separate trials with regards to both NAFLD and CKD, CoQ10 supplementation is beneficial |
| | Yeung *et al*[111]. RCT | 2015 | 15 | Oral CoQ10 supplementation in patients with CKD showed significant improvement in serum creatinine when compared to placebo | |

WHR: Waist-to-hip ratio; NAFLD: Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease; CKD: Chronic kidney disease; SGLT2: Sodium-glucose co-transporter-2; RCT: Randomized controlled trial; T2DM: Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus; GLP-1: Glucagon-like peptide receptor agonist; NASH: Non-alcoholic steatohepatitis.

medication profile, diabetes, and hypertension[94]. Additionally, patients with improvement in liver histology due to lifestyle modifications such as weight loss were linked with significantly improved renal outcomes[94]**.** Overall, patients with NAFLD who had more than 5% weight loss and/or more than a 5% reduction in WHR had improved renal outcomes.

**Sodium-glucose cotransporter type-2 inhibitors:** In patients with T2DM, sodium-glucose cotransporter type-2 (SGLT2) inhibitors have an established role in improving glycemic control, weight loss, cardiovascular outcomes, and lowering serum uric acid levels. In patients with type 2 diabetes, the landmark CREDENCE trial showed that patients treated with an SGLT2 inhibitor (*i.e.*, canagliflozin) were shown to have improved outcomes related to CKD[95]. Furthermore, recent evidence has shown that SGLT2 inhibitors can also improve NAFLD progression as determined by TE[96] and biomarkers in NAFLD (*i.e.*, liver enzymes)[96,97]. As SGLT2 inhibitors decrease serum uric acid levels, this may also contribute to this class's positive effects on both diseases. In addition to facilitating glucosuria, SGLT2 inhibitors are thought to decrease inflammation and reactive oxygen species formation[98], which is key in the pathogenesis of NAFLD and NASH[99].

**Glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor agonists:** Among its multiple mechanisms of action, glucagon-like peptide 1 **(**GLP-1)'s aid in increasing insulin secretion, delaying gastric

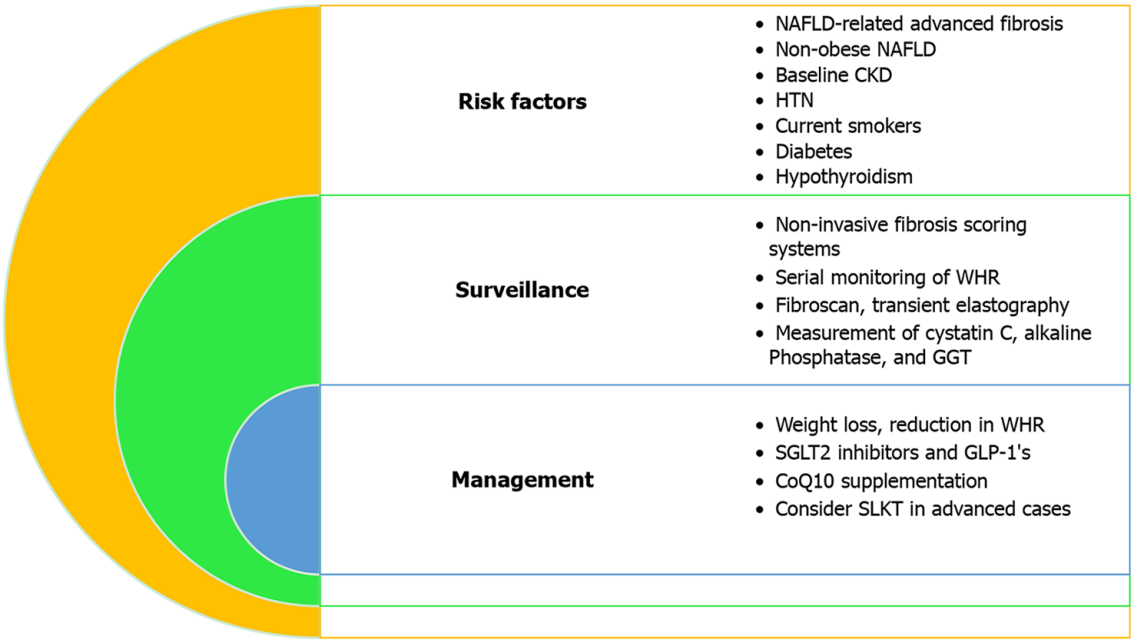



**Figure 3 Identifying and managing non-alcoholic fatty liver disease patients who are at risk for developing chronic kidney disease.**
NAFLD: Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease; CKD: Chronic kidney disease; HTN: Hypertension; WHR: Waist-to-Hip ratio; GGT: Gamma-glutamyl transferase; T2DM: Type 2 diabetes mellitus; SLKT: Simultaneous liver-kidney transplantation; SGLT2: Sodium-glucose cotransporter type-2; GLP-1: Glucagon-like peptide 1.

emptying, and decreasing appetite, all of which can lead to improved glycemic control and weight loss. Additionally, a possible anti-inflammatory mechanism makes GLP-1's an attractive agent in NAFLD and NASH. For instance, GLP-1 Liraglutide, when compared to placebo, led to histological resolution of NASH; however, larger studies are still needed[100]. In CKD, GLP-1's are shown to be nephroprotective, which could be due to GLP-1's ability to lower blood pressure in addition to the aforementioned mechanisms[101,102]. GLP-1's and SGLT2 inhibitors exhibit cardioprotective effects, and as discussed previously, patients with NAFLD and CKD are at high risk for CV events. Therefore, the use of these agents is recommended in patients with NAFLD and CKD. However, while there is landmark data to support the use of GLP-1's and SGLT2 inhibitors to prevent CV events in patients with established CVD, data on primary prevention in patients with NAFLD and CKD is lacking[103,104]. Regardless, in patients with T2DM, CKD, and NAFLD, SGLT2 inhibitors or GLP-1's are highly recommended not only for glycemic control but for the cardio-, hepato-, and nephro-protective effects as well.

**Coenzyme Q10:** Coenzyme Q10 (CoQ10) is produced endogenously and has antioxidant and anti-inflammatory effects[105]. CoQ10 also serves as an electron carrier in cellular respiration and a cofactor in pyrimidine synthesis for DNA repair and replication, among other important roles. Patients with NAFLD, CKD, and/or CVD have been reported to have CoQ10 deficiency[106]. A majority of endogenous CoQ10 is produced in the liver, and patients with NAFLD had diminished CoQ10 production[106,107]. CoQ10 deficiency will lead to oxidative stress, which plays a key pathogenic factor in NAFLD[108]. Results from separate trials assessing oral CoQ10 supplementation in patients with NAFLD and CKD are summarized in Table 4. Briefly, CoQ10 has been shown to improve NAFLD parameters and CKD parameters in separate trials[109-111]. Specific findings are summarized in Table 4. CoQ10 has positive effects on the progression of CVD as well, which is notable because patients with CKD and NAFLD are at risk for cardiovascular events[112,113]. Supplementation may be beneficial in patients with NAFLD who have CKD, but clinical data in this population is lacking.

### *Experimental interventions*

**Thiazolidinediones:** Thiazolidinediones are agonists of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors (PPARs), and they play a physiologic role in metabolism and cellular differentiation. PPARs have proven clinical utility in diseases such as hyperlipidemia (PPARα) and T2DM (PPARγ)[114]. Because CKD is a manifestation of a

metabolic and/or inflammatory process, the use of PPAR agonists has been studied in patients with CKD. Specifically, pioglitazone, a PPARγ agonist, has been shown to improve cardiovascular outcomes in patients with CKD and diabetes[115]. Several RCTs have shown the beneficial effects that pioglitazone has on histopathology and metabolic function in patients with NASH[116-120]. Pioglitazone has been endorsed as a pharmacological agent in biopsy-proven NASH by the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases[121]. Rosiglitazone has been shown to improve histological components of NASH through increasing insulin sensitivity[122] while also improving liver function[123] in a separate study, although both studies did not show improvements in liver fibrosis[122,123]. Interestingly, an extension trial showed that rosiglitazone was only beneficial in the first year of treatment, without substantial benefit noted with longer use[124]. However, Rosiglitazone is not available in most countries and its use is limited in the United States due to data concerning for increased coronary events. The most widely studied PPAR agonist, Pioglitazone has shown favorable outcomes in patients with CKD and patients with NAFLD, but data assessing the efficacy in patients with both CKD and NAFLD is lacking[114].

**Vitamin D:** Vitamin D deficiency is associated with increased severity of NAFLD[125] and is also associated with CKD[126]. These findings may be explained by the physiology of vitamin D activation, which requires hydroxylation by both the kidney and liver, and therefore the presence of CKD and NAFLD inevitably leads to vitamin D resistance[58]. Furthermore, experimental models have demonstrated the role hypovitaminosis D plays in the pathogenesis of both CKD and NAFLD[58]. In patients with CKD, therapeutic implications of higher vitamin D supplementation showed an ability to correct hypovitaminosis D[127], but a meta-analysis yielded a higher incidence of hypercalcemia[128]. In patients with NAFLD, vitamin D supplementation did not correct hypovitaminosis D[129], however, trials are underway for assessing the use of Vitamin D supplementation in CKD and NAFLD/NASH[130-132] (NCT00893451, NCT01623024, and NCT02098317, www.clinicaltrials.gov).

**Probiotics**: In rodent models, fecal microbiota transplantation[133], antibiotics in fructose-fed models[134] reduced NAFLD severity, whereas specific probiotics (*Lactobacillaceae* or *Bifidobacteriales*) alleviated proteinuria and reduced systemic inflammation in rodents with CKD. While much of this data is based on studies from animal models, human trials are needed to further evaluate the therapeutic implications of the gut-liver-kidney axis.

### *LT for patients with NAFLD/NASH and CKD*

In recent decades, NASH has become more prevalent and will become the most common indication for LT[135]. Patients with NASH have a higher incidence of CKD compared with other etiologies, and therefore, NASH is rapidly growing as a cause for not only LT[136,137] but also simultaneous liver-kidney transplantation (SLKT) in the United States given serum creatinine and dialysis status are important components of the model for end-stage liver disease (MELD) score[138]. Considering the increased incidence of renal dysfunction at LT due to prioritization based on the MELD allocation system in the United States, SLKT rates climbed from 2.7% of all LT in 2000 to 9.3% in 2016[138-140]. NASH is currently the leading and most rapidly growing indication for SLKT in the United States[138,140] with a 200% increase for SLKT from 2002 to 2010[138]. Patients with NASH have a high probability to undergo SLKT rather than LT alone since they are highly incident for CKD for a prolonged duration, which can fulfill criteria for SLKT (patients with CKD: GFR ≤ 60 mL/min for ≥ 3 mo with recent GFR ≤ 30 mL/min or on hemodialysis, patients with AKI: Dialysis for > 6 wk GFR ≤ 25 for > 6 wk)[141].

Patients with NASH were independently associated with a higher risk of CKD or advanced kidney damage after LT compared with those without NASH[142-144]. In general, renal dysfunction after LT is affected not only by immunosuppressant medications, especially calcineurin inhibitors, pre-LT kidney dysfunction, but also persistent or de novo metabolic co-morbidities such as hypertension, diabetes, and obesity - all of which are highly likely in NASH patients undergoing LT[142,145]. Special attention to the recognition of CKD is needed for patients with NASH patients when deciding LT *vs* SLKT. Controlling for metabolic complications and avoiding or keeping a low dose of calcineurin inhibitors as much as possible seems to be crucially important to reduce the risk of incident CKD, and risk of progression of CKD after liver transplant in NASH patients.

## CONCLUSION

Despite the breadth of research, minimal guideline-based management of patients with both NAFLD and CKD is available. However, important pathogenic links and shared risk factors between NAFLD and CKD underscore the importance of earlier surveillance and strict control of shared metabolic risk factors. Although preventative strategies for CKD in NAFLD are limited, treatment directed specifically for NASH in the future will hopefully ameliorate the progression of renal dysfunction in affected patients. There is a plethora of clinical trials underway, and if these drugs show safety and efficacy in improving NASH, they may translate into improving renal function[146]. Specific interventions for preventing CKD progression using SGLT2 inhibitors, PPAR agonists, SAM, XO inhibitors, and Vitamin D have been tried but need further confirmation. Progression from NAFLD to NAFLD-related advanced fibrosis is linked to an increased risk of CKD, and earlier intervention in those with renal dysfunction is warranted. Genetic links between NAFLD and CKD have also been proposed, specifically in the G allele of *PNPLA3* and the T allele of *TM6SF2*, and future studies targeting patients with such genetic profiles to prevent progression to CKD is needed.

## REFERENCES


1 **Satapathy SK**, Sanyal AJ. Epidemiology and Natural History of Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease. *Semin Liver Dis* 2015; **35**: 221-235 [PMID: 26378640 DOI: 10.1055/s-0035-1562943]

2 **Kovalic AJ**, Cholankeril G, Satapathy SK. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease and alcoholic liver disease: metabolic diseases with systemic manifestations. *Transl Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2019; **4**: 65 [PMID: 31620647 DOI: 10.21037/tgh.2019.08.09]

3 **Noureddin M**, Vipani A, Bresee C, Todo T, Kim IK, Alkhouri N, Setiawan VW, Tran T, Ayoub WS, Lu SC, Klein AS, Sundaram V, Nissen NN. NASH Leading Cause of Liver Transplant in Women: Updated Analysis of Indications For Liver Transplant and Ethnic and Gender Variances. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2018; **113**: 1649-1659 [PMID: 29880964 DOI: 10.1038/s41395-018-0088-6]

4 **Gadiparthi C**, Spatz M, Greenberg S, Iqbal U, Kanna S, Satapathy SK, Broder A, Ahmed A. NAFLD Epidemiology, Emerging Pharmacotherapy, Liver Transplantation Implications and the Trends in the United States. *J Clin Transl Hepatol* 2020; **8**: 215-221 [PMID: 32832402 DOI: 10.14218/JCTH.2020.00014]

5 **Byrne CD**, Targher G. NAFLD: a multisystem disease. *J Hepatol* 2015; **62**: S47-S64 [PMID: 25920090 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2014.12.012]

6 **Hsieh MH**, Wu KT, Chen YY, Yang JF, Lin WY, Chang NC, Lin CY, Huang CK, Wang CL, Chuang HY, Lin SC, Hsu YK, Tsai YS, Chuang WL, Yu ML, Dai CY. Higher NAFLD fibrosis score is associated with impaired eGFR. *J Formos Med Assoc* 2020; **119**: 496-503 [PMID: 31353118 DOI: 10.1016/j.jfma.2019.07.007]

7 **Locatelli F**, Pozzoni P, Del Vecchio L. Renal manifestations in the metabolic syndrome. *J Am Soc Nephrol* 2006; **17**: S81-S85 [PMID: 16565254 DOI: 10.1681/ASN.2005121332]

8 **Yilmaz Y**, Alahdab YO, Yonal O, Kurt R, Kedrah AE, Celikel CA, Ozdogan O, Duman D, Imeryuz N, Avsar E, Kalayci C. Microalbuminuria in nondiabetic patients with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: association with liver fibrosis. *Metabolism* 2010; **59**: 1327-1330 [PMID: 20096896 DOI: 10.1016/j.metabol.2009.12.012]

9 **Yasui K**, Sumida Y, Mori Y, Mitsuyoshi H, Minami M, Itoh Y, Kanemasa K, Matsubara H, Okanoue T, Yoshikawa T. Nonalcoholic steatohepatitis and increased risk of chronic kidney disease. *Metabolism* 2011; **60**: 735-739 [PMID: 20817213 DOI: 10.1016/j.metabol.2010.07.022]

10 **Park CW**, Tsai NT, Wong LL. Implications of worse renal dysfunction and medical comorbidities in patients with NASH undergoing liver transplant evaluation: impact on MELD and more. *Clin Transplant* 2011; **25**: E606-E611 [PMID: 21958082 DOI: 10.1111/j.1399-0012.2011.01497.x]

11 **Machado MV**, Gonçalves S, Carepa F, Coutinho J, Costa A, Cortez-Pinto H. Impaired renal function in morbid obese patients with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *Liver Int* 2012; **32**: 241-248 [PMID: 22098270 DOI: 10.1111/j.1478-3231.2011.02623.x]

12 **Musso G**, Gambino R, Tabibian JH, Ekstedt M, Kechagias S, Hamaguchi M, Hultcrantz R, Hagström H, Yoon SK, Charatcharoenwitthaya P, George J, Barrera F, Hafliðadóttir S, Björnsson ES, Armstrong MJ, Hopkins LJ, Gao X, Francque S, Verrijken A, Yilmaz Y, Lindor KD, Charlton M, Haring R, Lerch MM, Rettig R, Völzke H, Ryu S, Li G, Wong LL, Machado M, Cortez-Pinto H, Yasui K, Cassader M. Association of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease with chronic kidney disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *PLoS Med* 2014; **11**: e1001680 [PMID: 25050550 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pmed.1001680]

13 **Mantovani A**, Zaza G, Byrne CD, Lonardo A, Zoppini G, Bonora E, Targher G. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease increases risk of incident chronic kidney disease: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Metabolism* 2018; **79**: 64-76 [PMID: 29137912 DOI: 10.1016/j.metabol.2017.11.003]

14 **Park H**, Dawwas GK, Liu X, Nguyen MH. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease increases risk of

incident advanced chronic kidney disease: a propensity-matched cohort study. *J Intern Med* 2019; **286**: 711-722 [PMID: 31359543 DOI: 10.1111/joim.12964]

15 **Jennison E**, Patel J, Scorletti E, Byrne CD. Diagnosis and management of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Postgrad Med J* 2019; **95**: 314-322 [PMID: 31085617 DOI: 10.1136/postgradmedj-2018-136316]

16 **Corey KE**, Kartoun U, Zheng H, Shaw SY. Development and Validation of an Algorithm to Identify Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease in the Electronic Medical Record. *Dig Dis Sci* 2016; **61**: 913-919 [PMID: 26537487 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-015-3952-x]

17 **Targher G**, Byrne CD. Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: an emerging driving force in chronic kidney disease. *Nat Rev Nephrol* 2017; **13**: 297-310 [PMID: 28218263 DOI: 10.1038/nrneph.2017.16]

18 **Campos GM**, Bambha K, Vittinghoff E, Rabl C, Posselt AM, Ciovica R, Tiwari U, Ferrel L, Pabst M, Bass NM, Merriman RB. A clinical scoring system for predicting nonalcoholic steatohepatitis in morbidly obese patients. *Hepatology* 2008; **47**: 1916-1923 [PMID: 18433022 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22241]

19 **Targher G**, Bertolini L, Rodella S, Lippi G, Zoppini G, Chonchol M. Relationship between kidney function and liver histology in subjects with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol* 2010; **5**: 2166-2171 [PMID: 20724519 DOI: 10.2215/CJN.05050610]

20 **Targher G**, Bertolini L, Rodella S, Zoppini G, Lippi G, Day C, Muggeo M. Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease is independently associated with an increased prevalence of chronic kidney disease and proliferative/laser-treated retinopathy in type 2 diabetic patients. *Diabetologia* 2008; **51**: 444-450 [PMID: 18058083 DOI: 10.1007/s00125-007-0897-4]

21 **Targher G**, Pichiri I, Zoppini G, Trombetta M, Bonora E. Increased prevalence of chronic kidney disease in patients with Type 1 diabetes and non-alcoholic fatty liver. *Diabet Med* 2012; **29**: 220-226 [PMID: 21883436 DOI: 10.1111/j.1464-5491.2011.03427.x]

22 **Li G**, Shi W, Hug H, Chen Y, Liu L, Yin D. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease associated with impairment of kidney function in nondiabetes population. *Biochem Med (Zagreb)* 2012; **22**: 92-99 [PMID: 22384523 DOI: 10.11613/bm.2012.010]

23 **Huh JH**, Kim JY, Choi E, Kim JS, Chang Y, Sung KC. The fatty liver index as a predictor of incident chronic kidney disease in a 10-year prospective cohort study. *PLoS One* 2017; **12**: e0180951 [PMID: 28738057 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0180951]

24 **Shen ZW**, Xing J, Wang QL, Faheem A, Ji X, Li J, Bian WW, Jiang Z, Li XJ, Xue FZ, Liu J. Association between serum γ-glutamyltransferase and chronic kidney disease in urban Han Chinese: a prospective cohort study. *Int Urol Nephrol* 2017; **49**: 303-312 [PMID: 27704320 DOI: 10.1007/s11255-016-1429-2]

25 **Kunutsor SK**, Laukkanen JA. Gamma-glutamyltransferase and risk of chronic kidney disease: A prospective cohort study. *Clin Chim Acta* 2017; **473**: 39-44 [PMID: 28811239 DOI: 10.1016/j.cca.2017.08.014]

26 **Sinn DH**, Kang D, Jang HR, Gu S, Cho SJ, Paik SW, Ryu S, Chang Y, Lazo M, Guallar E, Cho J, Gwak GY. Development of chronic kidney disease in patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: A cohort study. *J Hepatol* 2017; **67**: 1274-1280 [PMID: 28870674 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2017.08.024]

27 **Zheng CM**, Lee YH, Chiu IJ, Chiu YJ, Sung LC, Hsu YH, Chiu HW. Nicotine Causes Nephrotoxicity through the Induction of NLRP6 Inflammasome and Alpha7 Nicotinic Acetylcholine Receptor. *Toxics* 2020; **8** [PMID: 33114531 DOI: 10.3390/toxics8040092]

28 **Rezonzew G**, Chumley P, Feng W, Hua P, Siegal GP, Jaimes EA. Nicotine exposure and the progression of chronic kidney disease: role of the α7-nicotinic acetylcholine receptor. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol* 2012; **303**: F304-F312 [PMID: 22552933 DOI: 10.1152/ajprenal.00661.2011]

29 **Jang HR**, Kang D, Sinn DH, Gu S, Cho SJ, Lee JE, Huh W, Paik SW, Ryu S, Chang Y, Shafi T, Lazo M, Guallar E, Cho J, Gwak GY. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease accelerates kidney function decline in patients with chronic kidney disease: a cohort study. *Sci Rep* 2018; **8**: 4718 [PMID: 29549269 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-018-23014-0]

30 **Nampoothiri RV**, Duseja A, Rathi M, Agrawal S, Sachdeva N, Mehta M, Dhaliwal HS, Dhiman RK, Chawla Y. Renal Dysfunction in Patients With Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease is Related to the Presence of Diabetes Mellitus and Severity of Liver Disease. *J Clin Exp Hepatol* 2019; **9**: 22-28 [PMID: 30765935 DOI: 10.1016/j.jceh.2017.12.005]

31 **Bian H**, Zhu X, Xia M, Yan H, Chang X, Hu X, Pan B, Guo W, Li X, Gao X. Impact of type 2 diabetes on nonalcoholic steatohepatitis and advanced fibrosis in patients with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *Endocr Pract* 2020; **26**: 444-453 [PMID: 31968197 DOI: 10.4158/EP-2019-0342]

32 **Reddy YK**, Marella HK, Jiang Y, Ganguli S, Snell P, Podila PSB, Maliakkal B, Satapathy SK. Natural History of Non-Alcoholic Fatty Liver Disease: A Study With Paired Liver Biopsies. *J Clin Exp Hepatol* 2020; **10**: 245-254 [PMID: 32405181 DOI: 10.1016/j.jceh.2019.07.002]

33 **Targher G**, Bertolini L, Chonchol M, Rodella S, Zoppini G, Lippi G, Zenari L, Bonora E. Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease is independently associated with an increased prevalence of chronic kidney disease and retinopathy in type 1 diabetic patients. *Diabetologia* 2010; **53**: 1341-1348 [PMID: 20369224 DOI: 10.1007/s00125-010-1720-1]

34 **Manco M**, Ciampalini P, DeVito R, Vania A, Cappa M, Nobili V. Albuminuria and insulin resistance in children with biopsy proven non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Pediatr Nephrol* 2009; **24**: 1211-1217 [PMID: 19242728 DOI: 10.1007/s00467-009-1134-9]

35 **Iglesias P**, Díez JJ. Thyroid dysfunction and kidney disease. *Eur J Endocrinol* 2009; **160**: 503-515 [PMID: 19095779 DOI: 10.1530/EJE-08-0837]

36 **van Tienhoven-Wind LJ**, Dullaart RP. Low-normal thyroid function and the pathogenesis of common cardio-metabolic disorders. *Eur J Clin Invest* 2015; **45**: 494-503 [PMID: 25690560 DOI: 10.1111/eci.12423]

37 **Rhee CM**, Kalantar-Zadeh K, Streja E, Carrero JJ, Ma JZ, Lu JL, Kovesdy CP. The relationship between thyroid function and estimated glomerular filtration rate in patients with chronic kidney disease. *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 2015; **30**: 282-287 [PMID: 25246335 DOI: 10.1093/ndt/gfu303]

38 **Pagadala MR**, Zein CO, Dasarathy S, Yerian LM, Lopez R, McCullough AJ. Prevalence of hypothyroidism in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *Dig Dis Sci* 2012; **57**: 528-534 [PMID: 22183820 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-011-2006-2]

39 **Chen PC**, Kao WY, Cheng YL, Wang YJ, Hou MC, Wu JC, Su CW. The correlation between fatty liver disease and chronic kidney disease. *J Formos Med Assoc* 2020; **119**: 42-50 [PMID: 30876789 DOI: 10.1016/j.jfma.2019.02.010]

40 **Yeung MW**, Wong GL, Choi KC, Luk AO, Kwok R, Shu SS, Chan AW, Lau ESH, Ma RCW, Chan HL, Chan JC, Wong VW, Kong AP. Advanced liver fibrosis but not steatosis is independently associated with albuminuria in Chinese patients with type 2 diabetes. *J Hepatol* 2017 [PMID: 28989092 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2017.09.020]

41 **Lombardi R**, Airaghi L, Targher G, Serviddio G, Maffi G, Mantovani A, Maffeis C, Colecchia A, Villani R, Rinaldi L, Orsi E, Pisano G, Adinolfi LE, Fargion S, Fracanzani AL. Liver fibrosis by FibroScan® independently of established cardiovascular risk parameters associates with macrovascular and microvascular complications in patients with type 2 diabetes. *Liver Int* 2020; **40**: 347-354 [PMID: 31612634 DOI: 10.1111/liv.14274]

42 **Qin S**, Wang S, Wang X, Wang J. Liver stiffness assessed by transient elastography as a potential indicator of chronic kidney disease in patients with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *J Clin Lab Anal* 2019; **33**: e22657 [PMID: 30239032 DOI: 10.1002/jcla.22657]

43 **Chon YE**, Kim HJ, Choi YB, Hwang SG, Rim KS, Kim MN, Lee JH, Ha Y, Lee MJ. Decrease in waist-to-hip ratio reduced the development of chronic kidney disease in non-obese non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Sci Rep* 2020; **10**: 8996 [PMID: 32488147 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-020-65940-y]

44 **Ampuero J**, Aller R, Gallego-Durán R, Banales JM, Crespo J, García-Monzón C, Pareja MJ, Vilar-Gómez E, Caballería J, Escudero-García D, Gomez-Camarero J, Calleja JL, Latorre M, Albillos A, Salmeron J, Aspichueta P, Lo Iacono O, Francés R, Benlloch S, Fernández-Rodríguez C, García-Samaniego J, Estévez P, Andrade RJ, Turnes J, Romero-Gómez M; HEPAmet Registry. The effects of metabolic status on non-alcoholic fatty liver disease-related outcomes, beyond the presence of obesity. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2018; **48**: 1260-1270 [PMID: 30353552 DOI: 10.1111/apt.15015]

45 **Raj D**, Tomar B, Lahiri A, Mulay SR. The gut-liver-kidney axis: Novel regulator of fatty liver associated chronic kidney disease. *Pharmacol Res* 2020; **152**: 104617 [PMID: 31881272 DOI: 10.1016/j.phrs.2019.104617]

46 **Willy JA**, Young SK, Stevens JL, Masuoka HC, Wek RC. CHOP links endoplasmic reticulum stress to NF-κB activation in the pathogenesis of nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. *Mol Biol Cell* 2015; **26**: 2190-2204 [PMID: 25904325 DOI: 10.1091/mbc.E15-01-0036]

47 **Marcuccilli M**, Chonchol M. NAFLD and Chronic Kidney Disease. *Int J Mol Sci* 2016; **17**: 562 [PMID: 27089331 DOI: 10.3390/ijms17040562]

48 **Targher G**, Chonchol MB, Byrne CD. CKD and nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *Am J Kidney Dis* 2014; **64**: 638-652 [PMID: 25085644 DOI: 10.1053/j.ajkd.2014.05.019]

49 **Sabio G**, Das M, Mora A, Zhang Z, Jun JY, Ko HJ, Barrett T, Kim JK, Davis RJ. A stress signaling pathway in adipose tissue regulates hepatic insulin resistance. *Science* 2008; **322**: 1539-1543 [PMID: 19056984 DOI: 10.1126/science.1160794]

50 **Khukhlina OS**, Antoniv AA, Mandryk OY, Smandych VS, Matushchak MR. The role of endothelial dysfunction in the progression mechanisms of non-alcoholic steatohepatitis in patients with obesity and chronic kidney disease. *Wiad Lek* 2019; **72**: 523-526 [PMID: 31055525]

51 **Hübscher SG**. Histological assessment of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Histopathology* 2006; **49**: 450-465 [PMID: 17064291 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2559.2006.02416.x]

52 **Sieber J**, Lindenmeyer MT, Kampe K, Campbell KN, Cohen CD, Hopfer H, Mundel P, Jehle AW. Regulation of podocyte survival and endoplasmic reticulum stress by fatty acids. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol* 2010; **299**: F821-F829 [PMID: 20668104 DOI: 10.1152/ajprenal.00196.2010]

53 **Joles JA**, van Goor H, van der Horst ML, van Tol A, Elema JD, Koomans HA. High lipid levels in very low density lipoprotein and intermediate density lipoprotein may cause proteinuria and glomerulosclerosis in aging female analbuminemic rats. *Lab Invest* 1995; **73**: 912-921 [PMID: 8558854]

54 **Lindenmeyer MT**, Rastaldi MP, Ikehata M, Neusser MA, Kretzler M, Cohen CD, Schlöndorff D. Proteinuria and hyperglycemia induce endoplasmic reticulum stress. *J Am Soc Nephrol* 2008; **19**: 2225-2236 [PMID: 18776125 DOI: 10.1681/ASN.2007121313]

55 **Monteillet L**, Gjorgjieva M, Silva M, Verzieux V, Imikirene L, Duchampt A, Guillou H, Mithieux G, Rajas F. Intracellular lipids are an independent cause of liver injury and chronic kidney disease in non alcoholic fatty liver disease-like context. *Mol Metab* 2018; **16**: 100-115 [PMID: 30100243 DOI: 10.1016/j.molmet.2018.07.006]

56 **Ackers I**, Malgor R. Interrelationship of canonical and non-canonical Wnt signalling pathways in chronic metabolic diseases. *Diab Vasc Dis Res* 2018; **15**: 3-13 [PMID: 29113510 DOI:

10.1177/1479164117738442]
57 **Shimano H**, Sato R. SREBP-regulated lipid metabolism: convergent physiology - divergent pathophysiology. *Nat Rev Endocrinol* 2017; **13**: 710-730 [PMID: 28849786 DOI: 10.1038/nrendo.2017.91]
58 **Musso G**, Cassader M, Cohney S, De Michieli F, Pinach S, Saba F, Gambino R. Fatty Liver and Chronic Kidney Disease: Novel Mechanistic Insights and Therapeutic Opportunities. *Diabetes Care* 2016; **39**: 1830-1845 [PMID: 27660122 DOI: 10.2337/dc15-1182]
59 **Choi HK**, Ford ES. Prevalence of the metabolic syndrome in individuals with hyperuricemia. *Am J Med* 2007; **120**: 442-447 [PMID: 17466656 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjmed.2006.06.040]
60 **Babio N**, Martínez-González MA, Estruch R, Wärnberg J, Recondo J, Ortega-Calvo M, Serra-Majem L, Corella D, Fitó M, Ros E, Becerra-Tomás N, Basora J, Salas-Salvadó J. Associations between serum uric acid concentrations and metabolic syndrome and its components in the PREDIMED study. *Nutr Metab Cardiovasc Dis* 2015; **25**: 173-180 [PMID: 25511785 DOI: 10.1016/j.numecd.2014.10.006]
61 **Zurlo A**, Veronese N, Giantin V, Maselli M, Zambon S, Maggi S, Musacchio E, Toffanello ED, Sartori L, Perissinotto E, Crepaldi G, Manzato E, Sergi G. High serum uric acid levels increase the risk of metabolic syndrome in elderly women: The PRO.V.A study. *Nutr Metab Cardiovasc Dis* 2016; **26**: 27-35 [PMID: 26643208 DOI: 10.1016/j.numecd.2015.10.007]
62 **Sun HL**, Pei D, Lue KH, Chen YL. Uric Acid Levels Can Predict Metabolic Syndrome and Hypertension in Adolescents: A 10-Year Longitudinal Study. *PLoS One* 2015; **10**: e0143786 [PMID: 26618358 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0143786]
63 **Yuan H**, Yu C, Li X, Sun L, Zhu X, Zhao C, Zhang Z, Yang Z. Serum Uric Acid Levels and Risk of Metabolic Syndrome: A Dose-Response Meta-Analysis of Prospective Studies. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2015; **100**: 4198-4207 [PMID: 26308292 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2015-2527]
64 **Johnson RJ**, Nakagawa T, Jalal D, Sánchez-Lozada LG, Kang DH, Ritz E. Uric acid and chronic kidney disease: which is chasing which? *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 2013; **28**: 2221-2228 [PMID: 23543594 DOI: 10.1093/ndt/gft029]
65 **Sharaf El Din UAA**, Salem MM, Abdulazim DO. Uric acid in the pathogenesis of metabolic, renal, and cardiovascular diseases: A review. *J Adv Res* 2017; **8**: 537-548 [PMID: 28748119 DOI: 10.1016/j.jare.2016.11.004]
66 **Lanaspa MA**, Sanchez-Lozada LG, Cicerchi C, Li N, Roncal-Jimenez CA, Ishimoto T, Le M, Garcia GE, Thomas JB, Rivard CJ, Andres-Hernando A, Hunter B, Schreiner G, Rodriguez-Iturbe B, Sautin YY, Johnson RJ. Uric acid stimulates fructokinase and accelerates fructose metabolism in the development of fatty liver. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e47948 [PMID: 23112875 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0047948]
67 **Kimura K**, Hosoya T, Uchida S, Inaba M, Makino H, Maruyama S, Ito S, Yamamoto T, Tomino Y, Ohno I, Shibagaki Y, Iimuro S, Imai N, Kuwabara M, Hayakawa H, Ohtsu H, Ohashi Y; FEATHER Study Investigators. Febuxostat Therapy for Patients With Stage 3 CKD and Asymptomatic Hyperuricemia: A Randomized Trial. *Am J Kidney Dis* 2018; **72**: 798-810 [PMID: 30177485 DOI: 10.1053/j.ajkd.2018.06.028]
68 **Wu IW**, Hsu KH, Lee CC, Sun CY, Hsu HJ, Tsai CJ, Tzen CY, Wang YC, Lin CY, Wu MS. p-Cresyl sulphate and indoxyl sulphate predict progression of chronic kidney disease. *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 2011; **26**: 938-947 [PMID: 20884620 DOI: 10.1093/ndt/gfq580]
69 **Liu H**, Narayanan R, Hoffmann M, Surapaneni S. The Uremic Toxin Indoxyl-3-Sulfate Induces CYP1A2 In Primary Human Hepatocytes. *Drug Metab Lett* 2016; **10**: 195-199 [PMID: 27449409 DOI: 10.2174/1872312810666160719143703]
70 **Tang WH**, Wang Z, Kennedy DJ, Wu Y, Buffa JA, Agatisa-Boyle B, Li XS, Levison BS, Hazen SL. Gut microbiota-dependent trimethylamine N-oxide (TMAO) pathway contributes to both development of renal insufficiency and mortality risk in chronic kidney disease. *Circ Res* 2015; **116**: 448-455 [PMID: 25599331 DOI: 10.1161/CIRCRESAHA.116.305360]
71 **Tan X**, Liu Y, Long J, Chen S, Liao G, Wu S, Li C, Wang L, Ling W, Zhu H. Trimethylamine N-Oxide Aggravates Liver Steatosis through Modulation of Bile Acid Metabolism and Inhibition of Farnesoid X Receptor Signaling in Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease. *Mol Nutr Food Res* 2019; **63**: e1900257 [PMID: 31095863 DOI: 10.1002/mnfr.201900257]
72 **Anstee QM**, Seth D, Day CP. Genetic Factors That Affect Risk of Alcoholic and Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease. *Gastroenterology* 2016; **150**: 1728-1744. e7 [PMID: 26873399 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2016.01.037]
73 **Macaluso FS**, Maida M, Petta S. Genetic background in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: A comprehensive review. *World J Gastroenterol* 2015; **21**: 11088-11111 [PMID: 26494964 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v21.i39.11088]
74 **Musso G**, Cassader M, Gambino R. PNPLA3 rs738409 and TM6SF2 rs58542926 gene variants affect renal disease and function in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *Hepatology* 2015; **62**: 658-659 [PMID: 25482317 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27643]
75 **Oniki K**, Saruwatari J, Izuka T, Kajiwara A, Morita K, Sakata M, Otake K, Ogata Y, Nakagawa K. Influence of the PNPLA3 rs738409 Polymorphism on Non-Alcoholic Fatty Liver Disease and Renal Function among Normal Weight Subjects. *PLoS One* 2015; **10**: e0132640 [PMID: 26200108 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0132640]
76 **Sun DQ**, Zheng KI, Xu G, Ma HL, Zhang HY, Pan XY, Zhu PW, Wang XD, Targher G, Byrne CD, Chen YP, Yuan WJ, Zheng MH. PNPLA3 rs738409 is associated with renal glomerular and tubular

injury in NAFLD patients with persistently normal ALT levels. *Liver Int* 2020; **40**: 107-119 [PMID: 31519069 DOI: 10.1111/liv.14251]

77 **Mantovani A**, Zusi C, Sani E, Colecchia A, Lippi G, Zaza GL, Valenti L, Byrne CD, Maffeis C, Bonora E, Targher G. Association between PNPLA3rs738409 polymorphism decreased kidney function in postmenopausal type 2 diabetic women with or without non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Diabetes Metab* 2019; **45**: 480-487 [PMID: 30763699 DOI: 10.1016/j.diabet.2019.01.011]

78 **Sookoian S**, Castaño GO, Scian R, Mallardi P, Fernández Gianotti T, Burgueño AL, San Martino J, Pirola CJ. Genetic variation in transmembrane 6 superfamily member 2 and the risk of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease and histological disease severity. *Hepatology* 2015; **61**: 515-525 [PMID: 25302781 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27556]

79 **Önnerhag K**, Hartman H, Nilsson PM, Lindgren S. Non-invasive fibrosis scoring systems can predict future metabolic complications and overall mortality in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD). *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2019; **54**: 328-334 [PMID: 30907181 DOI: 10.1080/00365521.2019.1583366]

80 **Wijarnpreecha K**, Thongprayoon C, Scribani M, Ungprasert P, Cheungpasitporn W. Noninvasive fibrosis markers and chronic kidney disease among adults with nonalcoholic fatty liver in USA. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2018; **30**: 404-410 [PMID: 29215435 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0000000000001045]

81 **Choi JW**, Lee CH, Park JS. Comparison of laboratory indices of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease for the detection of incipient kidney dysfunction. *PeerJ* 2019; **7**: e6524 [PMID: 30867987 DOI: 10.7717/peerj.6524]

82 **Ciardullo S**, Muraca E, Perra S, Bianconi E, Zerbini F, Oltolini A, Cannistraci R, Parmeggiani P, Manzoni G, Gastaldelli A, Lattuada G, Perseghin G. Screening for non-alcoholic fatty liver disease in type 2 diabetes using non-invasive scores and association with diabetic complications. *BMJ Open Diabetes Res Care* 2020; **8** [PMID: 32049637 DOI: 10.1136/bmjdrc-2019-000904]

83 **Angeli P**, Ginès P, Wong F, Bernardi M, Boyer TD, Gerbes A, Moreau R, Jalan R, Sarin SK, Piano S, Moore K, Lee SS, Durand F, Salerno F, Caraceni P, Kim WR, Arroyo V, Garcia-Tsao G. Diagnosis and management of acute kidney injury in patients with cirrhosis: revised consensus recommendations of the International Club of Ascites. *J Hepatol* 2015; **62**: 968-974 [PMID: 25638527 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2014.12.029]

84 **Piano S**, Romano A, Di Pascoli M, Angeli P. Why and how to measure renal function in patients with liver disease. *Liver Int* 2017; **37** Suppl 1: 116-122 [PMID: 28052631 DOI: 10.1111/liv.13305]

85 **Mindikoglu AL**, Dowling TC, Weir MR, Seliger SL, Christenson RH, Magder LS. Performance of chronic kidney disease epidemiology collaboration creatinine-cystatin C equation for estimating kidney function in cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2014; **59**: 1532-1542 [PMID: 23744636 DOI: 10.1002/hep.26556]

86 **Shardlow A**, McIntyre NJ, Fraser SDS, Roderick P, Raftery J, Fluck RJ, McIntyre CW, Taal MW. The clinical utility and cost impact of cystatin C measurement in the diagnosis and management of chronic kidney disease: A primary care cohort study. *PLoS Med* 2017; **14**: e1002400 [PMID: 29016597 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pmed.1002400]

87 **Bulum T**, Kolarić B, Duvnjak M, Duvnjak L. Alkaline phosphatase is independently associated with renal function in normoalbuminuric type 1 diabetic patients. *Ren Fail* 2014; **36**: 372-377 [PMID: 24455970 DOI: 10.3109/0886022X.2013.872569]

88 **Pantsari MW**, Harrison SA. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease presenting with an isolated elevated alkaline phosphatase. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2006; **40**: 633-635 [PMID: 16917408 DOI: 10.1097/00004836-200608000-00015]

89 **Satchell SC**, Tooke JE. What is the mechanism of microalbuminuria in diabetes: a role for the glomerular endothelium? *Diabetologia* 2008; **51**: 714-725 [PMID: 18347777 DOI: 10.1007/s00125-008-0961-8]

90 **Ryu S**, Chang Y, Kim DI, Kim WS, Suh BS. gamma-Glutamyltransferase as a predictor of chronic kidney disease in nonhypertensive and nondiabetic Korean men. *Clin Chem* 2007; **53**: 71-77 [PMID: 17110470 DOI: 10.1373/clinchem.2006.078980]

91 **Arase Y**, Suzuki F, Kobayashi M, Suzuki Y, Kawamura Y, Matsumoto N, Akuta N, Sezaki H, Saito S, Hosaka T, Ikeda K, Kumada H, Ohmoto Y, Amakawa K, Tsuji H, Hsieh SD, Kato K, Tanabe M, Ogawa K, Hara S, Kobayashi T. The development of chronic kidney disease in Japanese patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Intern Med* 2011; **50**: 1081-1087 [PMID: 21576832 DOI: 10.2169/internalmedicine.50.5043]

92 **Thamer C**, Tschritter O, Haap M, Shirkavand F, Machann J, Fritsche A, Schick F, Häring H, Stumvoll M. Elevated serum GGT concentrations predict reduced insulin sensitivity and increased intrahepatic lipids. *Horm Metab Res* 2005; **37**: 246-251 [PMID: 15952086 DOI: 10.1055/s-2005-861411]

93 **Kim D**, Kim WR. Nonobese Fatty Liver Disease. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2017; **15**: 474-485 [PMID: 27581063 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2016.08.028]

94 **Vilar-Gomez E**, Calzadilla-Bertot L, Friedman SL, Gra-Oramas B, Gonzalez-Fabian L, Villa-Jimenez O, Lazo-Del Vallin S, Diago M, Adams LA, Romero-Gomez M, Chalasani N. Improvement in liver histology due to lifestyle modification is independently associated with improved kidney function in patients with non-alcoholic steatohepatitis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2017; **45**: 332-344 [PMID: 27862096 DOI: 10.1111/apt.13860]

95 **Perkovic V**, Jardine MJ, Neal B, Bompoint S, Heerspink HJL, Charytan DM, Edwards R, Agarwal

R, Bakris G, Bull S, Cannon CP, Capuano G, Chu PL, de Zeeuw D, Greene T, Levin A, Pollock C, Wheeler DC, Yavin Y, Zhang H, Zinman B, Meininger G, Brenner BM, Mahaffey KW; CREDENCE Trial Investigators. Canagliflozin and Renal Outcomes in Type 2 Diabetes and Nephropathy. *N Engl J Med* 2019; **380**: 2295-2306 [PMID: 30990260 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1811744]

96 **Shimizu M**, Suzuki K, Kato K, Jojima T, Iijima T, Murohisa T, Iijima M, Takekawa H, Usui I, Hiraishi H, Aso Y. Evaluation of the effects of dapagliflozin, a sodium-glucose co-transporter-2 inhibitor, on hepatic steatosis and fibrosis using transient elastography in patients with type 2 diabetes and non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Diabetes Obes Metab* 2019; **21**: 285-292 [PMID: 30178600 DOI: 10.1111/dom.13520]

97 **Leiter LA**, Forst T, Polidori D, Balis DA, Xie J, Sha S. Effect of canagliflozin on liver function tests in patients with type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes Metab* 2016; **42**: 25-32 [PMID: 26575250 DOI: 10.1016/j.diabet.2015.10.003]

98 **Scheen AJ**. Beneficial effects of SGLT2 inhibitors on fatty liver in type 2 diabetes: A common comorbidity associated with severe complications. *Diabetes Metab* 2019; **45**: 213-223 [PMID: 30708071 DOI: 10.1016/j.diabet.2019.01.008]

99 **Angulo P**, Lindor KD. Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2002; **17** Suppl: S186-S190 [PMID: 12000605 DOI: 10.1046/j.1440-1746.17.s1.10.x]

100 **Armstrong MJ**, Gaunt P, Aithal GP, Barton D, Hull D, Parker R, Hazlehurst JM, Guo K; LEAN trial team, Abouda G, Aldersley MA, Stocken D, Gough SC, Tomlinson JW, Brown RM, Hübscher SG, Newsome PN. Liraglutide safety and efficacy in patients with non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (LEAN): a multicentre, double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled phase 2 study. *Lancet* 2016; **387**: 679-690 [PMID: 26608256 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(15)00803-X]

101 **Tuttle KR**, Lakshmanan MC, Rayner B, Busch RS, Zimmermann AG, Woodward DB, Botros FT. Dulaglutide versus insulin glargine in patients with type 2 diabetes and moderate-to-severe chronic kidney disease (AWARD-7): a multicentre, open-label, randomised trial. *Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol* 2018; **6**: 605-617 [PMID: 29910024 DOI: 10.1016/S2213-8587(18)30104-9]

102 **Sumida Y**, Yoneda M, Toyoda H, Yasuda S, Tada T, Hayashi H, Nishigaki Y, Suzuki Y, Naiki T, Morishita A, Tobita H, Sato S, Kawabe N, Fukunishi S, Ikegami T, Kessoku T, Ogawa Y, Honda Y, Nakahara T, Munekage K, Ochi T, Sawada K, Takahashi A, Arai T, Kogiso T, Kimoto S, Tomita K, Notsumata K, Nonaka M, Kawata K, Takami T, Kumada T, Tomita E, Okanoue T, Nakajima A; Japan Study Group Of Nafld Jsg-Nafld. Common Drug Pipelines for the Treatment of Diabetic Nephropathy and Hepatopathy: Can We Kill Two Birds with One Stone? *Int J Mol Sci* 2020; **21** [PMID: 32668632 DOI: 10.3390/ijms21144939]

103 **Kristensen SL**, Rørth R, Jhund PS, Docherty KF, Sattar N, Preiss D, Køber L, Petrie MC, McMurray JJV. Cardiovascular, mortality, and kidney outcomes with GLP-1 receptor agonists in patients with type 2 diabetes: a systematic review and meta-analysis of cardiovascular outcome trials. *Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol* 2019; **7**: 776-785 [PMID: 31422062 DOI: 10.1016/S2213-8587(19)30249-9]

104 **McMurray JJV**, Solomon SD, Inzucchi SE, Køber L, Kosiborod MN, Martinez FA, Ponikowski P, Sabatine MS, Anand IS, Bělohlávek J, Böhm M, Chiang CE, Chopra VK, de Boer RA, Desai AS, Diez M, Drozdz J, Dukát A, Ge J, Howlett JG, Katova T, Kitakaze M, Ljungman CEA, Merkely B, Nicolau JC, O'Meara E, Petrie MC, Vinh PN, Schou M, Tereshchenko S, Verma S, Held C, DeMets DL, Docherty KF, Jhund PS, Bengtsson O, Sjöstrand M, Langkilde AM; DAPA-HF Trial Committees and Investigators. Dapagliflozin in Patients with Heart Failure and Reduced Ejection Fraction. *N Engl J Med* 2019; **381**: 1995-2008 [PMID: 31535829 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1911303]

105 **Hargreaves IP**. Coenzyme Q10 as a therapy for mitochondrial disease. *Int J Biochem Cell Biol* 2014; **49**: 105-111 [PMID: 24495877 DOI: 10.1016/j.biocel.2014.01.020]

106 **Mantle D**, Hargreaves I. Coenzyme Q10 and Degenerative Disorders Affecting Longevity: An Overview. *Antioxidants (Basel)* 2019; **8** [PMID: 30781472 DOI: 10.3390/antiox8020044]

107 **Yesilova Z**, Yaman H, Oktenli C, Ozcan A, Uygun A, Cakir E, Sanisoglu SY, Erdil A, Ates Y, Aslan M, Musabak U, Erbil MK, Karaeren N, Dagalp K. Systemic markers of lipid peroxidation and antioxidants in patients with nonalcoholic Fatty liver disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2005; **100**: 850-855 [PMID: 15784031 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2005.41500.x]

108 **Angulo P**. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *N Engl J Med* 2002; **346**: 1221-1231 [PMID: 11961152 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra011775]

109 **Farhangi MA**, Alipour B, Jafarvand E, Khoshbaten M. Oral coenzyme Q10 supplementation in patients with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: effects on serum vaspin, chemerin, pentraxin 3, insulin resistance and oxidative stress. *Arch Med Res* 2014; **45**: 589-595 [PMID: 25450583 DOI: 10.1016/j.arcmed.2014.11.001]

110 **Farsi F**, Mohammadshahi M, Alavinejad P, Rezazadeh A, Zarei M, Engali KA. Functions of Coenzyme Q10 Supplementation on Liver Enzymes, Markers of Systemic Inflammation, and Adipokines in Patients Affected by Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease: A Double-Blind, Placebo-Controlled, Randomized Clinical Trial. *J Am Coll Nutr* 2016; **35**: 346-353 [PMID: 26156412 DOI: 10.1080/07315724.2015.1021057]

111 **Yeung CK**, Billings FT 4th, Claessens AJ, Roshanravan B, Linke L, Sundell MB, Ahmad S, Shao B, Shen DD, Ikizler TA, Himmelfarb J. Coenzyme Q10 dose-escalation study in hemodialysis patients: safety, tolerability, and effect on oxidative stress. *BMC Nephrol* 2015; **16**: 183 [PMID: 26531095 DOI: 10.1186/s12882-015-0178-2]

112 **Mortensen SA**, Rosenfeldt F, Kumar A, Dolliner P, Filipiak KJ, Pella D, Alehagen U, Steurer G, Littarru GP; Q-SYMBIO Study Investigators. The effect of coenzyme Q10 on morbidity and mortality in chronic heart failure: results from Q-SYMBIO: a randomized double-blind trial. *JACC Heart Fail* 2014; **2**: 641-649 [PMID: 25282031 DOI: 10.1016/j.jchf.2014.06.008]

113 **Alehagen U**, Johansson P, Björnstedt M, Rosén A, Dahlström U. Cardiovascular mortality and N-terminal-proBNP reduced after combined selenium and coenzyme Q10 supplementation: a 5-year prospective randomized double-blind placebo-controlled trial among elderly Swedish citizens. *Int J Cardiol* 2013; **167**: 1860-1866 [PMID: 22626835 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijcard.2012.04.156]

114 **Cheng HS**, Tan WR, Low ZS, Marvalim C, Lee JYH, Tan NS. Exploration and Development of PPAR Modulators in Health and Disease: An Update of Clinical Evidence. *Int J Mol Sci* 2019; **20** [PMID: 31614690 DOI: 10.3390/ijms20205055]

115 **Schneider CA**, Ferrannini E, Defronzo R, Schernthaner G, Yates J, Erdmann E. Effect of pioglitazone on cardiovascular outcome in diabetes and chronic kidney disease. *J Am Soc Nephrol* 2008; **19**: 182-187 [PMID: 18057215 DOI: 10.1681/ASN.2007060678]

116 **Promrat K**, Lutchman G, Uwaifo GI, Freedman RJ, Soza A, Heller T, Doo E, Ghany M, Premkumar A, Park Y, Liang TJ, Yanovski JA, Kleiner DE, Hoofnagle JH. A pilot study of pioglitazone treatment for nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. *Hepatology* 2004; **39**: 188-196 [PMID: 14752837 DOI: 10.1002/hep.20012]

117 **Belfort R**, Harrison SA, Brown K, Darland C, Finch J, Hardies J, Balas B, Gastaldelli A, Tio F, Pulcini J, Berria R, Ma JZ, Dwivedi S, Havranek R, Fincke C, DeFronzo R, Bannayan GA, Schenker S, Cusi K. A placebo-controlled trial of pioglitazone in subjects with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. *N Engl J Med* 2006; **355**: 2297-2307 [PMID: 17135584 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa060326]

118 **Aithal GP**, Thomas JA, Kaye PV, Lawson A, Ryder SD, Spendlove I, Austin AS, Freeman JG, Morgan L, Webber J. Randomized, placebo-controlled trial of pioglitazone in nondiabetic subjects with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **135**: 1176-1184 [PMID: 18718471 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2008.06.047]

119 **Sanyal AJ**, Chalasani N, Kowdley KV, McCullough A, Diehl AM, Bass NM, Neuschwander-Tetri BA, Lavine JE, Tonascia J, Unalp A, Van Natta M, Clark J, Brunt EM, Kleiner DE, Hoofnagle JH, Robuck PR; NASH CRN. Pioglitazone, vitamin E, or placebo for nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **362**: 1675-1685 [PMID: 20427778 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0907929]

120 **Cusi K**, Orsak B, Bril F, Lomonaco R, Hecht J, Ortiz-Lopez C, Tio F, Hardies J, Darland C, Musi N, Webb A, Portillo-Sanchez P. Long-Term Pioglitazone Treatment for Patients With Nonalcoholic Steatohepatitis and Prediabetes or Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus: A Randomized Trial. *Ann Intern Med* 2016; **165**: 305-315 [PMID: 27322798 DOI: 10.7326/M15-1774]

121 **Chalasani N**, Younossi Z, Lavine JE, Charlton M, Cusi K, Rinella M, Harrison SA, Brunt EM, Sanyal AJ. The diagnosis and management of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: Practice guidance from the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases. *Hepatology* 2018; **67**: 328-357 [PMID: 28714183 DOI: 10.1002/hep.29367]

122 **Neuschwander-Tetri BA**, Brunt EM, Wehmeier KR, Oliver D, Bacon BR. Improved nonalcoholic steatohepatitis after 48 weeks of treatment with the PPAR-gamma ligand rosiglitazone. *Hepatology* 2003; **38**: 1008-1017 [PMID: 14512888 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2003.50420]

123 **Ratziu V**, Giral P, Jacqueminet S, Charlotte F, Hartemann-Heurtier A, Serfaty L, Podevin P, Lacorte JM, Bernhardt C, Bruckert E, Grimaldi A, Poynard T; LIDO Study Group. Rosiglitazone for nonalcoholic steatohepatitis: one-year results of the randomized placebo-controlled Fatty Liver Improvement with Rosiglitazone Therapy (FLIRT) Trial. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **135**: 100-110 [PMID: 18503774 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2008.03.078]

124 **Ratziu V**, Charlotte F, Bernhardt C, Giral P, Halbron M, Lenaour G, Hartmann-Heurtier A, Bruckert E, Poynard T; LIDO Study Group. Long-term efficacy of rosiglitazone in nonalcoholic steatohepatitis: results of the fatty liver improvement by rosiglitazone therapy (FLIRT 2) extension trial. *Hepatology* 2010; **51**: 445-453 [PMID: 19877169 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23270]

125 **Eliades M**, Spyrou E, Agrawal N, Lazo M, Brancati FL, Potter JJ, Koteish AA, Clark JM, Guallar E, Hernaez R. Meta-analysis: vitamin D and non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2013; **38**: 246-254 [PMID: 23786213 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12377]

126 **LaClair RE**, Hellman RN, Karp SL, Kraus M, Ofner S, Li Q, Graves KL, Moe SM. Prevalence of calcidiol deficiency in CKD: a cross-sectional study across latitudes in the United States. *Am J Kidney Dis* 2005; **45**: 1026-1033 [PMID: 15957131 DOI: 10.1053/j.ajkd.2005.02.029]

127 **Parikh A**, Chase HS, Vernocchi L, Stern L. Vitamin D resistance in chronic kidney disease (CKD). *BMC Nephrol* 2014; **15**: 47 [PMID: 24641586 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2369-15-47]

128 **Xu L**, Wan X, Huang Z, Zeng F, Wei G, Fang D, Deng W, Li Y. Impact of vitamin D on chronic kidney diseases in non-dialysis patients: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e61387 [PMID: 23626678 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0061387]

129 **Dasarathy J**, Varghese R, Feldman A, Khiyami A, McCullough AJ, Dasarathy S. Patients with Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease Have a Low Response Rate to Vitamin D Supplementation. *J Nutr* 2017; **147**: 1938-1946 [PMID: 28814531 DOI: 10.3945/jn.117.254292]

130 **NIH**. Effect on Liver Histology of Vitamin D in Patients With Non-alcoholic Steatohepatitis. [cited 7 November 2020]. Available from: https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/results?cond=&term=NCT01623024&cntry=&state=&city=&dist=

131 **NIH**. Study of Vitamin D3 Supplementation in Patients With Chronic Kidney Disease. [cited 7 November 2020]. Available from:

https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/results?cond=&term=NCT00893451&cntry=&state=&city=&dist=
132 **NIH**. DHA and Vitamin D in Children With Biopsy-proven NAFLD. [cited 7 November 2020]. Available from: https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/results?cond=&term=+NCT02098317&cntry=&state=&city=&dist=
133 **García-Lezana T**, Raurell I, Bravo M, Torres-Arauz M, Salcedo MT, Santiago A, Schoenenberger A, Manichanh C, Genescà J, Martell M, Augustin S. Restoration of a healthy intestinal microbiota normalizes portal hypertension in a rat model of nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. *Hepatology* 2018; **67**: 1485-1498 [PMID: 29113028 DOI: 10.1002/hep.29646]
134 **Bergheim I**, Weber S, Vos M, Krämer S, Volynets V, Kaserouni S, McClain CJ, Bischoff SC. Antibiotics protect against fructose-induced hepatic lipid accumulation in mice: role of endotoxin. *J Hepatol* 2008; **48**: 983-992 [PMID: 18395289 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2008.01.035]
135 **Younossi Z**, Anstee QM, Marietti M, Hardy T, Henry L, Eslam M, George J, Bugianesi E. Global burden of NAFLD and NASH: trends, predictions, risk factors and prevention. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2018; **15**: 11-20 [PMID: 28930295 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2017.109]
136 **Wong RJ**, Aguilar M, Cheung R, Perumpail RB, Harrison SA, Younossi ZM, Ahmed A. Nonalcoholic steatohepatitis is the second leading etiology of liver disease among adults awaiting liver transplantation in the United States. *Gastroenterology* 2015; **148**: 547-555 [PMID: 25461851 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2014.11.039]
137 **Calzadilla-Bertot L**, Jeffrey GP, Jacques B, McCaughan G, Crawford M, Angus P, Jones R, Gane E, Munn S, Macdonald G, Fawcett J, Wigg A, Chen J, Fink M, Adams LA. Increasing Incidence of Nonalcoholic Steatohepatitis as an Indication for Liver Transplantation in Australia and New Zealand. *Liver Transpl* 2019; **25**: 25-34 [PMID: 30609187 DOI: 10.1002/lt.25361]
138 **Singal AK**, Hasanin M, Kaif M, Wiesner R, Kuo YF. Nonalcoholic Steatohepatitis is the Most Rapidly Growing Indication for Simultaneous Liver Kidney Transplantation in the United States. *Transplantation* 2016; **100**: 607-612 [PMID: 26479282 DOI: 10.1097/TP.0000000000000945]
139 **Miles CD**, Westphal S, Liapakis A, Formica R. Simultaneous Liver-Kidney Transplantation: Impact on Liver Transplant Patients and the Kidney Transplant Waiting List. *Curr Transplant Rep* 2018; **5**: 1-6 [PMID: 29564203 DOI: 10.1007/s40472-018-0175-z]
140 **Singal AK**, Salameh H, Kuo YF, Wiesner RH. Evolving frequency and outcomes of simultaneous liver kidney transplants based on liver disease etiology. *Transplantation* 2014; **98**: 216-221 [PMID: 24621538 DOI: 10.1097/TP.0000000000000048]
141 **Formica RN**, Aeder M, Boyle G, Kucheryavaya A, Stewart D, Hirose R, Mulligan D. Simultaneous Liver-Kidney Allocation Policy: A Proposal to Optimize Appropriate Utilization of Scarce Resources. *Am J Transplant* 2016; **16**: 758-766 [PMID: 26603142 DOI: 10.1111/ajt.13631]
142 **Houlihan DD**, Armstrong MJ, Davidov Y, Hodson J, Nightingale P, Rowe IA, Paris S, Gunson BK, Bramhall SB, Mutimer DJ, Neuberger JM, Newsome PN. Renal function in patients undergoing transplantation for nonalcoholic steatohepatitis cirrhosis: time to reconsider immunosuppression regimens? *Liver Transpl* 2011; **17**: 1292-1298 [PMID: 21761549 DOI: 10.1002/lt.22382]
143 **Mikolasevic I**, Orlic L, Hrstic I, Milic S. Metabolic syndrome and non-alcoholic fatty liver disease after liver or kidney transplantation. *Hepatol Res* 2016; **46**: 841-852 [PMID: 26713425 DOI: 10.1111/hepr.12642]
144 **Molnar MZ**, Joglekar K, Jiang Y, Cholankeril G, Abdul MKM, Kedia S, Gonzalez HC, Ahmed A, Singal A, Bhamidimarri KR, Aithal GP, Duseja A, Wong VW, Gulnare A, Puri P, Nair S, Eason JD, Satapathy SK; Global NAFLD Consortium. Association of Pretransplant Renal Function With Liver Graft and Patient Survival After Liver Transplantation in Patients With Nonalcoholic Steatohepatitis. *Liver Transpl* 2019; **25**: 399-410 [PMID: 30369023 DOI: 10.1002/lt.25367]
145 **Mikolasevic I**, Filipec-Kanizaj T, Mijic M, Jakopcic I, Milic S, Hrstic I, Sobocan N, Stimac D, Burra P. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease and liver transplantation - Where do we stand? *World J Gastroenterol* 2018; **24**: 1491-1506 [PMID: 29662288 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v24.i14.1491]
146 **Ganguli S**, DeLeeuw P, Satapathy SK. A Review Of Current And Upcoming Treatment Modalities In Non-Alcoholic Fatty Liver Disease And Non-Alcoholic Steatohepatitis. *Hepat Med* 2019; **11**: 159-178 [PMID: 31814783 DOI: 10.2147/HMER.S188991]
147 **Önnerhag K**, Dreja K, Nilsson PM, Lindgren S. Increased mortality in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease with chronic kidney disease is explained by metabolic comorbidities. *Clin Res Hepatol Gastroenterol* 2019; **43**: 542-550 [PMID: 30827925 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinre.2019.02.004]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

*World J Gastroenterol* 2021 May 7; 27(17): 1883-1904

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i17.1883

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

*REVIEW*

# Repurposing metformin for the treatment of gastrointestinal cancer

Ademar Dantas Cunha Júnior, Arinilda Campos Bragagnoli, Felipe Osório Costa, José Barreto Campello Carvalheira

**ORCID number:** Ademar Dantas Cunha Júnior 0000-0001-8112-4766; Arinilda Campos Bragagnoli 0000-0002-5165-0797; Felipe Osório Costa 0000-0002-1997-8389; José Barreto Campello Carvalheira 0000-0002-0136-0943.

**Author contributions:** Cunha Junior AD, Bragagnoli AC, Costa FO and Carvalheira JBC developed the concept and design for this review; Cunha Junior AD, Bragagnoli AC and Costa FO collected and assembled the data; Cunha Junior AD, Bragagnoli AC, Costa FO and Carvalheira JBC led the writing and were responsible for critical revisions; all authors contributed to data analysis and interpretation, creation of figures and tables, and preparation of the report for publication and they approved the final version of the manuscript.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** None of the authors have any conflict of interest to disclose.



**Ademar Dantas Cunha Júnior, Felipe Osório Costa, José Barreto Campello Carvalheira,** Department of Internal Medicine, Division of Oncology, University of Campinas (UNICAMP), Campinas 13083-970, São Paulo, Brazil

**Arinilda Campos Bragagnoli,** Division of Oncology, Hospital de Câncer de Barretos, Barretos 14784-400, São Paulo, Brazil

**Corresponding author:** José Barreto Campello Carvalheira, MD, PhD, Associate Professor, Department of Internal Medicine, Division of Oncology, University of Campinas (UNICAMP), Tessália Vieira Camargo, S/N, Campinas 13083-970, São Paulo, Brazil. jbcc@unicamp.br

## Abstract

Diabetes mellitus type 2 and cancer share many risk factors. The pleiotropic insulin-dependent and insulin-independent effects of metformin might inhibit pathways that are frequently amplified in neoplastic tissue. Particularly, modulation of inflammation, metabolism, and cell cycle arrest are potential therapeutic cancer targets utilized by metformin to boost the anti-cancer effects of chemotherapy. Studies *in vitro* and *in vivo* models have demonstrated the potential of metformin as a chemo- and radiosensitizer, besides its chemopreventive and direct therapeutic activity in digestive system (DS) tumors. Hence, these aspects have been considered in many cancer clinical trials. Case-control and cohort studies and associated meta-analyses have evaluated DS cancer risk and metformin usage, especially in colorectal cancer, pancreatic cancer, and hepatocellular carcinoma. Most clinical studies have demonstrated the protective role of metformin in the risk for DS cancers and survival rates. On the other hand, the ability of metformin to enhance the actions of chemotherapy for gastric and biliary cancers is yet to be investigated. This article reviews the current findings on the anti-cancer mechanisms of metformin and its apparatus from pre-clinical and ongoing studies in DS malignancies.

**Key Words:** Antidiabetic treatments; Gastrointestinal tumors; Therapeutic target



**Core Tip:** Modulation of cell function into the neoplastic and around the microenvironment tissue are possible cancer targets utilized by metformin to raise

**Manuscript source:** Invited manuscript

**Specialty type:** Gastroenterology and hepatology

**Country/Territory of origin:** Brazil

**Peer-review report's scientific quality classification**

Grade A (Excellent): A
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): C, C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

**Received:** January 22, 2021
**Peer-review started:** January 22, 2021
**First decision:** February 28, 2021
**Revised:** March 13, 2021
**Accepted:** April 7, 2021
**Article in press:** April 7, 2021
**Published online:** May 7, 2021

**P-Reviewer:** Mao Y, Ou CL, Xiao M, Yoshida S
**S-Editor:** Fan JR
**L-Editor:** A
**P-Editor:** Ma YJ

chemotherapy's anti-tumor outcomes. Herein we review the studies that have demonstrated the likelihood of metformin as chemo and radiosensitizer, in addition to its chemopre-ventive and direct therapeutic activity in gastrointestinal tumors.

**Citation:** Cunha Júnior AD, Bragagnoli AC, Costa FO, Carvalheira JBC. Repurposing metformin for the treatment of gastrointestinal cancer. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; 27(17): 1883-1904
**URL:** https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v27/i17/1883.htm
**DOI:** https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v27.i17.1883

## INTRODUCTION

Diabetes mellitus type 2 (DM2) and cancer share several risk factors[1]. Notably, obesity and metabolic syndrome, with their inherent biological connections, such as hyperinsulinemia[2] and chronic inflammation[3]. Furthermore, some antihyperglycemic medications (*e.g.*, sulfonylureas and insulin) used for the treatment of DM2 may increase cancer risk[4]. Particularly, central obesity, physical inactivity, and perhaps a low dietetic polyunsaturated fat to saturated fat ratio are major risk factors for insulin resistance and hyperinsulinemia and seem to be related to cancer risk[5]. All of them have been recognized as proposed gears holding those relationships[6-9]. Epidemiologic studies and meta-analyses have suggested that patients with DM2 have a higher incidence and mortality from malignancies[10,11], including digestive system (DS) cancers[12-15].

Metformin is a well-known oral hypoglycemic drug that belongs to the biguanide class and has been used to treat DM2 for almost a century[16]. Importantly, those patients with DM2 with long-term use of metformin have a decreased tumor incidence and lower cancer-associated mortality[17-21]. Furthermore, recent research indicates that metformin can have direct anti-cancer activity against many tumor cells, including tumor stem cells[22,23], therefore, carrying out pleiotropic effects in both the cancer cell and the neoplastic microenvironment[24]. Their potential mechanisms are insulin-dependent [*via* insulin growth factor (IGF) receptor, phosphatidyl inositol 3 kinase (PI3K), and Akt/mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR)][25,26] and insulin-independent [*via* adenosine kinase monophosphate (AMPK), tuberous sclerosis complex (TSC), and mTOR][27,28]. Moreover, it promotes antitumor immunity-related metabolic checkpoints in T-cells, cancer cells, as well as associated with immunosuppressive cells of the tumor milieu[29]. Furthermore, it might interfere with the gut microbiota and have systemic impacts on body metabolism[30,31]. This article aims to review the rationale of metformin as a drug that might be repurposed for DS cancer treatment.

## MECHANISM OF ACTION OF METFORMIN AS AN ANTI-CANCER AGENT

Two potential mechanisms for the antineoplastic action of metformin have been suggested (Figure 1). First, metformin can directly activate AMPK, resulting in inhibition of downstream Akt/mTOR signaling and consequent suppression of cell proliferation[32,33]. Second, metformin-induced reductions in circulating insulin and IGF concentrations may reduce activation of the IGF receptor signaling axis, resulting in decreased growth promotion and mitogenesis[2,34]. Hence, the anti-cancer effects of metformin are mediated through a systemic improvement in the metabolic milieu or directly on tumor cells[35].

The noticeable intracellular metabolic change caused by metformin is the decreased accumulation of glycolytic intermediates and a coordinated decrease in tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle intermediates[36,37]. Moreover, the activation of AMPK reduces fatty acid synthase (FAS) gene expression in the synthesis of fatty acids[32]. Furthermore, metformin offers other direct anti-tumor effects by (1) decreasing specific protein (Sp) transcription factors and Sp-related oncogenic proteins[38,39]; (2) decreasing AMPK-dependent c-Myc oncogene; (3) increasing other miRNAs, such as mir33a[40]; (4) increasing other miRNAs, such as miR-26a[41]; (5) reducing endogenous reactive oxygen species and associated DNA damage[42]; (6) reducing Sonic hedgehog

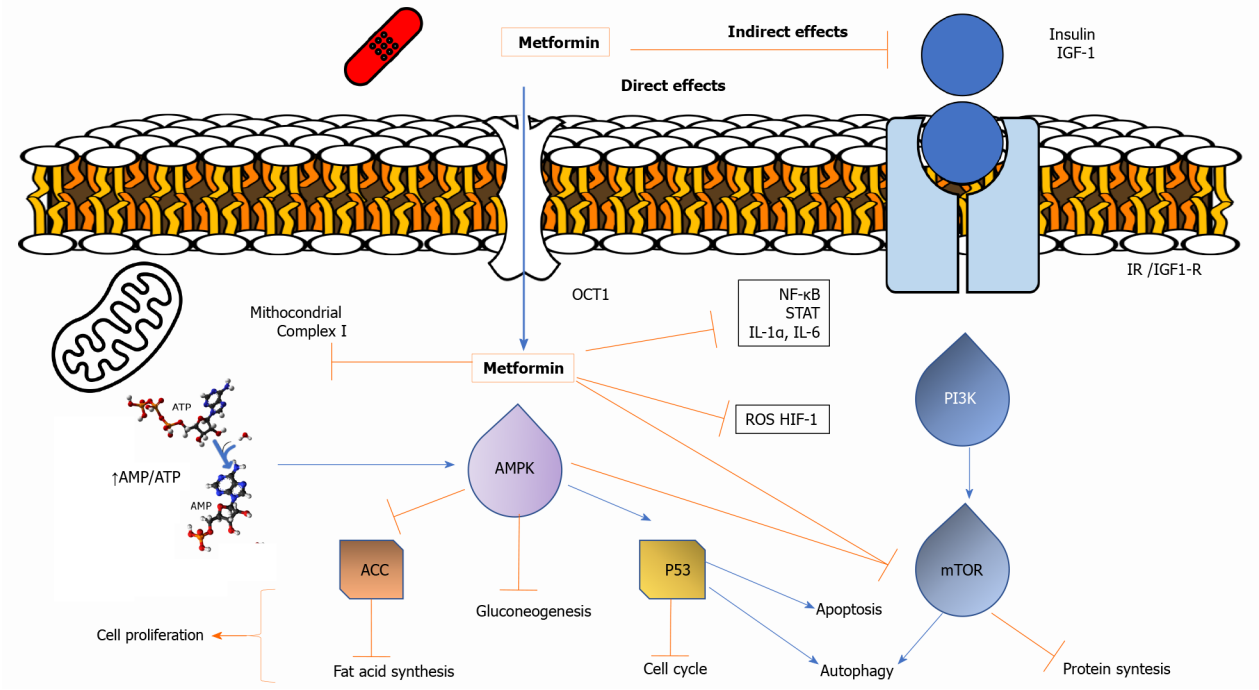



**Figure 1 Overview of cellular mechanisms of metformin in cancer.** Metformin inhibits mitochondria complex I, stimulates the adenosine monophosphate-activated protein kinase signaling pathway, and/or inhibits the insulin signaling pathway. Blue lines represent activated pathways while red lines represent inhibitory pathways. AMPK: Adenosine monophosphate-activated protein kinase; ACC: Acetyl-CoA carboxylase; HIF-1α: Hypoxia-inducible factor-1 alpha; IGF: Insulin growth factor; IGF-1: Insulin-like growth factor-1; IGF-1R: Insulin-like growth factor-1 receptor; IR: Insulin receptor; IL-1: Interleukin 1; IL-6: Interleukin-6; NF-κB: Nuclear factor kappa; OCT1: Organic cation transporter 1; ROS: Reactive oxygen species; STAT: Signal transducer and activator of transcription; AMP: Adenosine monophosphate; ATP: Adenosine triphosphate; PI3K: Phosphoinositide 3-kinase; mTOR: Mechanistic target of rapamycin.

expression[43]; (7) reducing expression of angiogenic factor CCN1, which inhibits invasion induced by the stromal cell-derived factor-1 and reducing levels of type 4 chemokine receptor[44]; and (8) inhibiting Rac1 GTPase activity[45]. Finally, metformin might interfere with the gut microbiota[30,31], as well as interfere with the balance between T-cells and associated immunosuppressive cells in the tumor milieu[29].

### *Insulin-dependent or indirect effects*

A central signal transduction pathway involved in cancer is the PI3K/Akt/mTOR pathway, which, when hyperactivated, leads to deregulation of survival and cell growth[28,46,47]. IGF-1 is a more potent mitogen than insulin and, like insulin, binds to its particular growth factor receptor and stimulates cell growth and anti-apoptotic activity *via* MAPK/ERK or Ras/Raf/MEK/ERK and PI3K/Akt/mTOR signaling [2,34]. In addition, IGF-1 inhibits PTEN, a phosphatase that deactivates PI3K/Akt/mTOR[2]. The indirect mechanisms of metformin action include inhibition of hepatic gluconeogenesis and stimulation of peripheral glucose absorption, which ultimately lead to decreased blood glucose and insulin levels. Thus, the most apparent mechanism of insulin-dependent metformin involves decreasing insulin levels, which reduces insulin binding to the insulin receptor (IR), inhibiting tumor growth[48]. A reduction of insulin/IGF-1 levels is, at least in part, involved in the antiproliferative activity of metformin[49]. Additionally, metformin downregulates IGF-R and IR by decreasing the promoter activity of receptor genes with subsequent Akt/mTOR and MAPK/ERK signaling inhibition[50,51].

### *Insulin-independent or direct effects*

Metformin activates AMPK by inhibiting mitochondrial complex I, which leads to impaired mitochondrial function, decreased adenosine triphosphate synthesis, increased adenosine monophosphate, and subsequent phosphorylation and activation by LKB1[52]. Activated AMPK then phosphorylates TSC2, which negatively regulates mTOR activity[53]. Activation of LKB1 and AMPK, AMPK-induced stabilization of TSC1-TSC2 (inhibitor of Rheb, an mTORC1 activator), and activation of the tumor suppressor p53[54]. Moreover, independent of AMPK, metformin impedes mTORC1 by raising p53-dependent expression of REDD1 and repressing Rags[55]. Metformin

also retards transformation by inhibiting mediators of the inflammatory response, including transcription factors (nuclear factor kappa, Signal transducer and activator of transcription 3, and Forkhead box O signaling), and downregulating Lin28B, most Let-7 miRNA family members, and inflammatory molecules [interleukin (IL)-1α, IL-1β, IL-6, and vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF)][56].

Metformin has other AMPK-mediated actions that may be implicated in cancer. Through the activation of AMPK, metformin causes the suppression of FAS gene expression, which is involved in the synthesis of fatty acids, resulting in reduced lipogenesis, increased fatty acid oxidation, and decreased cell proliferation[32,57]. The activation of AMPK also modulates cyclin D1 (cell cycle protein), p21 and p27 (cyclin-dependent protein kinase), which further contribute to its anti-cancer effects[55,58]. Interestingly, metformin may act as a chemosensitizer, for example, increasing the 5-fluorouracil (5-FU) and paclitaxel sensitivities of cancer cell lines[59,60]. The ability of metformin to disconnect the electron transport chain by inhibiting complex I (NADH dehydrogenase) strongly induces cell death when glucose is limited. Metformin also reduces the hypoxic activation of hypoxia inducing factor (HIF-1), suggesting that the effects of metformin are increased in hypoglycemic and hypoxic conditions[61].

### *Other mechanisms*

As a drug that controls metabolism, metformin promotes a coordinated decrease of TCA cycle intermediates, including succinate, fumarate, malate, citrate, and α-ketoglutarate[36,37]. The dependency of neoplastic cells on glutamine metabolism has been shown to be reprogrammed by the Kras oncogenic pathway through a single pathway involving serum glutamic-oxaloacetic transaminase, which maintains the cellular redox states essential to mitochondria and offers innovative therapeutic targets in combination with metformin[62].

Metformin can exert antitumor activity by increasing CD8+ T-cells[63,64]. It might inhibit apoptosis of CD8+ tumor infiltrating lymphocytes and prevent immune exhaustion[63,65]. Furthermore, metformin might adjust the expression profile of immune checkpoints[66], such as programmed death ligand 1, in the context of the neoplasm[37], thereby suggesting that a combination of metformin might have the potential to enhance the strength of cancer immunotherapy[63].

There is evidence that epigenomic modifications by metformin may contribute to its anti-cancer properties[67]. Metformin might regulate the activity of numerous epigenetic modifying enzymes, principally by modulating the activation of AMPK. Activated AMPK can phosphorylate several substrates, comprising epigenetic enzymes, such as histone acetyltransferases (HATs), class II histone deacetylases (HDACs) and DNA methyltransferases (DNMTs), usually resulting in their inhibition; however, HAT1 activity may be increased. Metformin has also been related to the diminished expression of various histone methyltransferases[68], enhancing the activity of the class III HDAC SIRT1 and minimizing the influence of DNMT inhibitors[69,70].

## METFORMIN STUDIES IN DIGESTIVE SYSTEM MALIGNANCIES

### *Metformin in colorectal cancer*

**Cell lines and animal models:** Metformin promotes cell cycle arrest in the G0/G1 phase in colorectal cancer (CRC) cell lines. It also decreases the expression of c-Myc and causes down-regulation of IGF-1R[71]. Consequently, up-regulation of the adenosine A1 receptor induces apoptosis[72]. Additionally, it was shown that metformin enhances the activity of the *Sprouty2* gene, which suppresses colon cancer growth[73].

The combination of metformin with 5-FU was investigated on the SW620 CRC cell line and on patients with DM2. The study showed that metformin plus 5-FU treatment significantly inhibited the proliferation of SW620 cells compared with that in monotherapy. Additionally, the examination of 86 CRC tissue samples obtained from patients with DM2 revealed that treatment with metformin decreased the proportion of poorly differentiated tumors[74]. Moreover, a synergistic effect of 5-FU and metformin was observed in a 5-FU resistant cell line[74] and metformin radiosensitizer CRC cells, with reduced survival of ionization-resistant cells[75]. Consistently, the association of oxaliplatin, 5-FU and metformin also demonstrated a superior anti-tumor activity in chemoresistant HT-29, and HCT-116 cells compared to that with the drugs separately[76].

In 1977, it was firstly reported that phenformin inhibits metabolic immunosuppression in rats[77]. Since then, several reports have demonstrated that metformin has both chemopreventive and therapeutic activities in animal models of CRC. For instance, metformin treated ApcMin/+ mice showed significantly smaller polyps[78], and carcinogen-induced animal models that received metformin had a reduction of aberrant crypt foci[79], indicating the chemopreventive effect of metformin. Moreover, the association of metformin with D3 vitamin demonstrated a chemopreventive effect against 1,2-dimethylhydrazine (DMH)-induced CRC in rats and DMH-dextran sodium sulfate-induced colitis-associated CRC in mice[80]. On the other hand, treatment with metformin, 5-FU and oxaliplatin demonstrated superior antiproliferative effects in SCID mice bearing CRC[76]. In avatar models, metformin suppressed the tumor growth in the patient-derived xenografts by 50%[81]. In the same study, when metformin was combined with 5-FU, the tumor growth was inhibited up to 85%[81].

### Clinical use of metformin

**Metformin and CRC risk:** As shown in Table 1 many case-control and cohort studies and associated meta-analyses have evaluated DS cancer risk and metformin use. Specifically, a decreased risk of CRC was found in the majority of studies[82-86], but no association or an increased risk of CRC was found in some of them[87-91]. Although these different results may be related to biases, a large cohort study that used adequate methods to minimize biases also concluded that metformin use decreased the risk of CRC[92].

Saliently, Cardel *et al*[82] demonstrated, in a case-control study, that the risk of CRC was decreased by 17% (OR: 0.83, 95%CI: 0.74-0.92) among patients treated with metformin compared to that among patients not using metformin[82], while Liu *et al*[93] showed a 22% risk reduction for the development of CRC[93]. Importantly, the role of metformin for CRC prophylaxis was addressed in a prospective Japanese phase III trial that demonstrated that low metformin doses for 1-year reduced polyp formation and colorectal adenomas in non-diabetic patients at high risk for new polyps[94]. However, further studies are necessary to draw a definitive conclusion.

### Metformin and CRC treatment

Table 2 summarizes the clinical studies of metformin on DS cancers treatment. Specifically related to CRC, a Korean study of 595 patients with diabetes who had CRC with clinical stages I to IV showed that patients using metformin had higher overall survival (OS) and specific cancer survival compared to patients who did not use it[95]. In accordance, metformin use in 424 diabetic patients with CRC was associated with an OS of 76.9 mo *vs* 56.9 mo in patients not using metformin ($P$ = 0.048)[95]. After adjusting for possible confounding factors, the study showed that patients with DM2 treated with metformin had a 30% increase in OS when compared to patients with DM2 treated with other antidiabetic drugs[95]. Recent meta-analyses demonstrated that metformin increases the OS of patients with CRC, as well as a 10% reduction in the incidence of the disease[96,97]. The ASAMET trial, an ongoing randomized, phase II, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial aims to determine the effect of low-dose aspirin and metformin in patients with stage I-III CRC in reducing CRC mortality rates and adenoma recurrence[98]. The 160 patients with CRC were divided in four arms: aspirin, metformin, aspirin plus metformin and placebo for a duration of 1 year.

The radiotherapy-induced tumor response was improved with metformin in a Korean retrospective study that evaluated patients with localized rectal cancer. The diabetic patients receiving metformin had significantly more tumor regression grade 3-4 ($P$ = 0.029) and higher lymph node downstaging ($P$ = 0.006) as compared to patients not receiving the medication. However, the disease-free survival (DFS) and OS was not affected[99]. Consistently, a study with 482 patients examined the effect of metformin use on pathologic complete response (pCR) rates and outcomes in patients submitted to neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy for rectal cancer. The pCR rates were higher in patients with DM2 taking metformin (35%) compared with those in nondiabetic patients (16.6%) and patients with DM2 not using metformin (7.5%). Additionally, significantly increased DFS and OS was found in patients taking metformin[100].

A phase II clinical trial addressed the combination of metformin with 5-FU in patients with refractory CRC. It demonstrated a disease control rate in 8 wk of 22%, with a median OS of 7.9 mo and progression-free survival (PFS) of 1.8 mo[101]. A trial of our group with a similar design that analyzed the combination of irinotecan with metformin found 41% disease control rate and OS of 8.2 mo[102]. Further randomized prospective studies are needed to establish metformin as a modern drug for the treatment of refractory CRC.

**Table 1 Selected clinical studies of metformin on digestive system cancers chemoprevention**

| Ref. | Study design and population | Inclusion criteria | Combined interventions /drugs | Main findings |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Comparison groups | Risk estimates and 95%CI |
| **Colorectal cancer** | | | | |
| Cardel *et al*[82], 2014 | Case-control study. Cases-controls: 2088:9060 | Cases: DM2 with CRC. Controls: DM2 without CRC | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | OR: 0.83 (0.68-1.00) |
| Lee *et al*[83], 2011 | Prospective Cohort, Taiwan. *n* = 480984 | DM2 and cancer free subjects | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | HR: 0.36 (0.13-0.98) |
| Sehdev *et al*[84], 2015 | Case control study. Cases-controls: 2682:5365 | Cases: DM2 with CRC. Controls: DM2 without CRC | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | OR: 0.85 (0.76-0.95) |
| Tseng *et al*[84]., 2012 | Retrospective Cohort. Men: 493704. Women: 502139 | Subjects covered by National Health Insurance without CRC | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | RR: 0.64 (0.49-0.84) |
| Zhang *et al*[86], 2011 | Meta-analysis. 108161 DM2 patients | Studies conducted in humans that evaluate metformin and CRC | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | RR: 0.63 (0.47-0.84) |
| Kowall *et al*[87], 2015 | Retrospective Cohort, United Kingdom. 80263 DM2 patients | Patients aged 30-89 years with DM2 diagnosis | Metformin user *vs* sulfonylurea user | HR: 1.04 (0.82-1.31) |
| Lin *et al*[88], 2015 | Prospective Cohort. 36270 DM2 patients. 145080 non DM2 | Patients older than 20 years old DM2 and Cancer- free | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | HR: 0.74 (0.53-1.03) |
| Smiechowski *et al*[89], 2013 | Case-control, United Kingdom. Cases-controls: 607:5837 | DM patients treated with non-insulin antidiabetic agents | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | RR: 0.93 (0.73-1.18) |
| Bodmer *et al*[90], 2012 | Case control, United Kingdom. Cases-controls: 920:5519 | Cases: DM2 with CRC. Controls: DM2 without CRC | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | Men: OR: 1.81 (1.25-2.62). Women: OR: 1.00 (0.63-1.58) |
| Knapen *et al*[91], 2013 | Retrospective Cohort, Denmark. 177281 DM2 with OHA | Oral antidiabetic drug users were matched 1:3 with population-based reference group | Biguanide user *vs* non-diabetic | HR: 1.19 (1.08-1.30) |
| Bradley *et al*[92], 2018 | Retrospective Cohort, Northern California. 47351 DM2 patients | DM2 and no history of cancer or metformin use | Long-term metformin use ( 5 years) *vs* nonuser | All population: HR: 0.78 (0.60-1.02). Men: HR: 0.65 (0.45-0.94) |
| Liu *et al*[175], 2017 | Meta-analysis. 20 case-control and cohort studies | Studies about metformin therapy and risk of adenoma/CRC in DM2 patients | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | Adenoma: OR: 0.75 (0.59-0.97). Carcinoma: OR: 0.781 (0.7-0.87) |
| Higurashi *et al*[94], 2016 | RCT, phase 3. *n* = 151 patients with resected adenomas or polyps | Non- diabetic adult patients who had previously had single or multiple colorectal adenomas or polyps resected by endoscopy | Metformin 250 daily or placebo (1:1) for 1 yr | Adenoma: RR 0.60 (0.39-0.92) |
| **Gastric cancer** | | | | |
| Tseng *et al*[107], 2016 | Retrospective Cohort, Taiwan. 287971 DM2 with metformin. 16217 DM2 without metformin | DM2 patients newly treated with antidiabetic drugs | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | HR: 0.45 (0.36-0.56) |
| Dulskas *et al*[108], 2020 | Retrospective Cohort study. *n* = 99992 | DM2 patients with gastric cancer | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | SIR: 0.75 (0.66-0.86) |
| Ruiter *et al*[109], 2012 | Retrospective Cohort study. 85289 DM2 patients | DM2 with more than one prescription of antidiabetic drugs | Metformin user *vs* sulfonylurea user | HR: 0.90 (0.88-0.91) |
| Kim *et al*[110], 2014 | Retrospective cohort study. 39978 DM2 patients | DM2 receiving oral antidiabetic drugs | Metformin user and non-insulin user *vs* nonuser | HR: 0.73 (0.53-1.01) |
| Cheung *et al*[112], 2019 | Prospective Cohort study. 7266 DM2 | DM2 with prescription of therapy for H. pylori. Exclusion: history of GC | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | HR: 0.49 (0.24-0.98) |
| Tsilidis *et al*[113], 2014 | Retrospective Cohort study. 51484 metformin. 18264 sulfonylureas | DM2 receiving oral antidiabetic drugs | Metformin user *vs* sulfonylurea user | HR: 0.96 (0.60-1.56) |
| de Jong *et al*[114], 2017 | Retrospective Cohort study, Netherlands. 57621 DM2 with OHA | DM2 receiving oral antidiabetic drugs | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | HR: 0.97 (0.82-1.15) |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Zheng *et al*[115], 2019 | Prospective Cohort study. 544130 DM2 patients | Diabetes Cohort: DM2 receiving antidiabetic drugs. Matched cohort: common-medication users. Exclusion: History of GC or gastrectomy | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | Non-cardia: HR: 0.93 (0.78-1.12). Cardia: HR: 1.49 (1.09-2.02) |
| Shuai *et al*[116], 2020 | Meta-analysis. 11 cohort studies | Studies conducted in humans that evaluate metformin and GC risk | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | HR: 0.79 (0.62-1.00) |
| Zhou *et al*[117], 2017 | Meta-analysis. 7 Cohort studies. *n* = 591077 | Studies conducted in humans that evaluate metformin and GC risk | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | HR: 0.76 (0.64-0.91) |
| **Pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma** | | | | |
| Currie *et al*[123], 2009 | Retrospective cohort study. *n* = 62.809 DM2. Comparison between treatment: Metformin alone; Sulfonylurea alone; metformin plus sulfonylurea; insulin | DM2 developed > 40 years of age; United Kingdom residents | Metformin *vs* Sulfonylurea. Metformin *vs* Insulin | HR: 0.20 (0.11-0.36). HR: 0.22 (0.12-0.38) |
| Li *et al*[124], 2009 | Hospital-based case control. Cases-controls: 973:863. Comparison between treatment: Metformin; insulin secretagogues; Other antidiabetic medications; insulin | DM subjects; cases: Newly PDAC diagnosed. Controls: Nonblood relative controls; United States residents | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | OR: 0.38 (0.22-0.69) |
| Soranna *et al*[126], 2012 | Meta-analysis of 17 case-control and cohort studies. Any cancer: 17 case-control and cohort studies; 37632 cases. PDAC: 4 case-controls and retrospective cohort studies; 1192 cases | DM2 patients exposed to metformin alone or combined to sulfonylurea | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | RR: 0.38 (0.14-0.91) |
| Zhang *et al*[125], 2013 | Meta-analysis of 37 case-control and cohort studies. *n* = 1535636 | DM2 patients on treatment | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | SRR: 0.54 (0.35-0.83) |
| **Hepatocellular carcinoma** | | | | |
| Donadon *et al*[159], 2010 | Clinic-hospitalbased case control. Cases-controls: 190:359 | Cases: HCC patients. Controls: Liver cirrhosis patients and healthy controls | Metformin *vs* sulfonylurea. Metformin *vs* insulin | OR: 0.39 (0.22-0.73). OR: 0.21 (0.11-0.42) |
| Hassan *et al*[158], 2010 | Hospital-based case control. Cases-controls: 122:86 | Cases: HCC. Controls: Healthy controls | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | OR: 0.30 (0.20-0.60) |
| Ma *et al*[160], 2017 | Meta-analysis of 19 case-control and cohort studies and post hoc analysis of RCT of DM2 patients. *n* = 550.882 | DM2 exposed to metformin or biguanide | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | OR: 0.52 (0.40-0.68) |
| **Intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma** | | | | |
| Chaiteerakij *et al*[168], 2013 | Clinic-hospital based case-control. Cases-controls: 612:594 | Cases: ICC patients. Controls: Non-cancer patients | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | OR: 0.40 (0.20-0.90) |

PDAC: Pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma; HR: Hazard ratio; OHA: Oxidized hyaluronate; RCT: Randomized clinical trial; HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma; ICC: Intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma; CRC: Colorectal cancer.

Interestingly, a randomized trial that included 40 patients with stage III CRC evaluated the use of metformin in preventing oxaliplatin-induced neuropathy. After the 12$^{th}$cycle of the FOLFOX-4 regimen, in the metformin group, there were fewer patients with grade 2 and 3 neuropathy as compared to the control arm (60% *vs* 95%, $P$ = 0.009). Moreover, significantly higher total scores on the Ntx-12 questionnaire and pain score were found in the metformin arm. The serum levels of neurotensin and malondialdehyde were also significantly lower in the metformin arm after 6 and 12 cycles[103].

Furthermore, there are ongoing trials evaluating the role of metformin in CRC. We highlight, in adjuvant setting, a phase 3 trial (NCT02614339) with high-risk stage II and stage III CRC that aims to evaluate the impact of metformin for 48 mo on disease free survival. In refractory CRC setting, there is an interesting phase 2 trial is recruiting patients to explore the combination of the immune checkpoint inhibitors, such as nivolumab and metformin (NCT03800602).

### *Metformin and gastric cancer*

The effect of metformin alone or in combination with cisplatin or rapamycin was studied in a tumor xenograft model[104]. It demonstrated that metformin alone decreased tumor volume. The combination of metformin with cisplatin, rapamycin or both increase the effect of each drug alone and inhibited the peritoneal dissemination of gastric cancer (GC)[104]. In accordance, Wu performed an *in vitro* study with AGS cell lines that analyzed how the association of metformin with cisplatin or adriamycin or paclitaxel enhanced the effects of each drug alone[105]. In striking contrast, Lesan

**Table 2 Selected clinical studies of metformin on digestive system cancers treatment**

| Ref. | Study design and population | Inclusion criteria | Combined interventions /drugs | Main findings |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Colorectal cancer** | | | | |
| Ramjeesingh *et al*[99], 2016 | Retrospective cohort. 1394 all stages CRC patients | Patients with CRC | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | HR: 0.81 (0.60-1.08) |
| Skinner *et al*[100], 2013 | Retrospective cohort. 482 locally rectal cancer patients | Locally advanced rectal adenocarcinoma treated with chemoradiation and surgery | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | pCR: OR: 16.8 (1.6-181.1). OS at 5 and 10 years (metformin *vs* non): 81% and 79% *vs* 56% and 39% ($P$ = 0.022) |
| Miranda *et al*[101], 2016 | Phase 2 Clinical trial. 50 refractory CRC patients | Refractory CRC patients | Metformin 850 mg twice a day+ 5-FU 425 mg/m$^2$ weekly | PFS: 1.8 mo. OS: 7.9 mo. Obese *vs* lean: 12.4 *vs* 5.8 mo |
| Bragagnoli *et al*[102], 2021 | Phase 2 Clinical trial, 41 refractory CRC patients | Refractory CRC patients | Metformin 2500 mg a day+ Irinotecan 125 mg/m$^2$ D1, D8, every 21 d | PFS: 2.4 mo, CI 95%, 2.0-4.5 mo. OS: 8.4 mo, CI 95%, 5.9-10.8 mo |
| El-Fatatry *et al*[103], 2018 | Clinical Trial, 40 Stage III CRC patients | Stage III CRC patients | FOLFOX 4 12 cycles + metformin 500 mg 3 times a day | Neuropathy grade 2-3 (metformin *vs* non): 60% *vs* 95% ($P$ = 0.009) |
| **Gastric cancer** | | | | |
| Lee *et al*[118], 2016 | Retrospective Cohort, single center in Korea. 1974 GC resected patients: – 132 DM2 with metformin; –192 DM2 without metformin; –1648 non-diabetic | GC patients who underwent curative gastrectomy | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | OS-HR: 0.58 (0.37-0.93). RFS-HR: 0.63 (0.41-0.98) |
| Lacroix *et al*[120], 2018 | Retrospective Cohort. 371 Patients | Stage I to III GC patients | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | OS-HR: 0.73 (0.52-1.01); cancer specific mortality-HR: 0.86 (0.56-1.33) |
| Baglia *et al*[121], 2019 | Prospective cohort study in Shangai. 543 GC patients | Breast, CRC, lung and GC patients | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | OS-HR: 1.11 (0.81-1.53). Disease-specific survival-HR: 1.03 (0.73-1.43) |
| Seo *et al*[119], 2019 | Retrospective cohort study. 2187 GC resected patients: – 103 DM2 with metformin; –139 DM2 without metformin; –1945 non-diabetic | GC patients who underwent curative gastrectomy | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | HR: 0.45 (0.30-0.66) |
| **PDAC** | | | | |
| Sadeghi *et al*[128], 2012 | Retrospective cohort. $n$ = 302 | DM2 patients. All stages. United States single center | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | HR: 0.64 (0.48-0.86) |
| Chaiteerakij *et al*[129], 2016 | Retrospective cohort. $n$ = 980 | DM2 patients. All stages. United States single center | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | HR: 0.93 (0.81-1.07) |
| Lee *et al*[133], 2016 | Retrospective cohort. $n$ = 237 | DM2 patients. All stages. Korean single center | Use of metformin ≥ 1-mo post-diagnosis *vs* nonuser | HR: 0.61 (0.46-0.81) |
| Ambe *et al*[130], 2016 | Prospective cohort study $n$ = 44 | DM2 patients. Resected PDAC, stage I-II. United States single center | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | HR: 0.54 (0.16-1.86) |
| Cerullo *et al*[131], 2016 | Retrospective cohort. $n$ = 3393 | Resected PDAC United States population based | Metformin use after surgery *vs* nonuser | HR: 0.79 (0.67-0.93) |
| Jang *et al*[132], 2017 | Prospective cohort. $n$ = 764 | DM2, OHA user. Resected Korean population based | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | HR: 0.73 (0.61-0.87) |
| Hwang *et al*[135], 2013 | Retrospective cohort. $n$ = 516 | DM2 patients. Locally advanced and metastatic. United Kingdom population based | Use of metformin peridiagnosis *vs* nonuser | HR: 1.11 (0.89-1.38) |
| Choi *et al*[134], 2016 | Retrospective cohort. $n$ = 183 | DM2 patients. Locally advanced and metastatic. Korean single center | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | HR: 0.69 (0.49-0.97) |
| Kordes *et al*[137], 2015 | RCT, $n$ = 121 | Locally advanced and metastatic. Multicentric. Netherlands | Gemcitabine-everolimus (1000 mg/m$^2$ D1, 8, 15-every 28 d-1.000 mg/d) +/- metformin (2000 mg/d) | HR: 1.05 (0.72-1.55) |
| Reni *et al*[138], 2016 | RCT. $n$ = 60 | Metastatic. Single center. Italian | PEXG (cisplatin-epirubicin-capecitabine-gemcitabine: 30 mg/m$^2$ | HR: 1.56 (0.87-2.80) |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | D1,14- 30 mg/m$^2$ D1,14-2500 mg/m$^2$ D1–28 – 800 mg/m$^2$ D1–14) +/- metformin 2000 mg/d | |
| Zhou *et al*[136], 2017 | Meta-analysis12 cohort studies and 2 RCT. *n* = 94778 | Studies that investigated metformin exposition. All stages PDAC | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | HR: 0.77 (0.68-0.87) |
| Li *et al*[139], 2017 | Meta-analysis. 9 cohort study and 2 RCT. *n* = 8089 | Studies that investigated metformin exposition. All stages PDAC | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | HR: 0.86 (0.76-0.97) |
| Wan *et al*[140], 2018 | Meta-analysis 15 cohort studies and 2 RCT, *n* = 36791 | Studies that investigated metformin exposition. All stages PDAC | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | HR: 0.88 (0.80-0.97). Asians only HR: 0.74 (0.58-0.94); Stage I-II HR: 0.76 (0.68-0.86); Stage III-IV HR: 1.08 (0.82-1.43) |
| Braghiroli *et al*[141], 2015 | Single-arm phase II. *n* = 20 | Locally advanced or metastatic. 2$^{nd}$ line treatment. Single center. Brazilian | Paclitaxel (80 mg/m$^2$ D1, 8, 15 every 28 d) + metfomin 1750 mg/d | DCR at 8 wk 31, 6% |
| **Pancreatic neuroendocrine tumor** | | | | |
| Pusceddu *et al*[153], 2018 | Retrospective cohort. *n* = 445 | Locally advanced or metastatic. Multicentric. Italian | No DM2 *vs* DM2. Metformin user *vs* nonuser | HR: 0.45 (0.32-0.62). HR: 0.49 (0.34-0.69) |
| **Hepatocellular carcinoma** | | | | |
| Chen *et al*[163], 2011 | Retrospective cohort. *n* = 53 | DM2. Early-stage HCC. RFA treated. Single center. Taiwanese | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | HR: 0.24 (0.07-0.90) |
| Ma *et al*[164], 2016 | Meta-analysis. 11 cohort studies. *n* = 3452 | Studies that investigated metformin exposition. HCC patients | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | HR: 0.59 (0.42-0.83) |
| **Intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma** | | | | |
| Yang *et al*[169], 2016 | Retrospective cohort. *n* = 250 | DM2. Newly diagnosed ICC. United States single center | Metformin user *vs* nonuser | HR: 0.80 (0.60-1.20) |

PDAC: Pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma; ORC: Origin recognition complex; HR: Hazard ratio; PCR: Polymerase chain reaction; OS: Overall survival; PFS: Progression-free survival; RFS: Regarding refeeding syndrome; OHA: Oxidized hyaluronate; RCT: Randomized clinical trial; PEXG: Pseudoexfoliative glaucoma; DCR: Dacryocystorhinostomy; HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma; RAF: Rapidly accelerated fibrosarcoma; ICC: Intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma; CRC: Colorectal cancer; DM2: Diabetes mellitus type 2; GC: Gastric cancer.

*et al*[106] showed *in vitro* that metformin and cisplatin in combination decreased the effects of cisplatin alone[106].

In recent years, several observational studies have shown that metformin reduces the risk of GC[107-112]. The study of Tseng *et al*[107] demonstrated that GC risk was reduced using metformin, especially when the cumulative duration was more than 2 years[107]. In addition, metformin reduced the risk of GC, while opposite results were observed with sulfonylureas[108].

On the other hand, a study conducted in United Kingdom did not show a difference in GC incidence in patients receiving metformin compared to sulfonylureas[113]. Other reports also could not find any reduction in GC risk associated with metformin us[83,114,115]. Despite that, a meta-analysis showed a 21% reduction in the risk of GC with the use of metformin, in Asians the benefit was more prominent than in Westerners[116]. Another meta-analysis of cohort studies that included 591077 patients found a significantly lower incidence of GC with metformin therapy than other types of therapy (HR: 0.763; 95%CI: 0.642-0.905)[117].

Two retrospective studies conducted by Lee *et al*[118] and Seo *et al*[119] concluded that metformin reduced GC recurrence in patients undergoing gastrectomy[118,119]. Lacroix *et al*[120] showed that metformin improved OS but not cancer specific survival, in contrast, Baglia *et al*[121] observed that metformin use did not impact patient's survival[120,121].

More studies are needed to confirm the effect of metformin in GC treatment and chemoprevention. Unfortunately, there are few clinical trials that are ongoing to analyze this question. An interesting phase 2 randomized trial (NCT04114136) are ongoing to evaluate the synergistic effect of metformin, rosiglitazone and anti-PD-1 on

the treatment of refractory solid tumors including GC. Metformin could reduce tumor oxygen consumption creating a less hypoxic T cell environment leading to restore its anti-tumor cell function. The trial NCT04033107 analyze the combination of metformin and vitamin C in DS tumors including GC.

### Metformin and pancreatic cancer

Pancreatic cancer is the fourth leading cause of cancer death in the United States and its prognosis remains dismal, encouraging research to discover innovative agents active in its treatment is an urgent unmet need[122]. Pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma (PDAC) is its most common histologic type. An association between metformin use and decreased PDAC incidence in patients with DM2 was first recognized by two large clinical studies. In a large general practice retrospective cohort, Currie *et al*[123] reported risk reduction in metformin users related to sulfonylurea users (HR: 0.20; 95%CI: 0.11-0.36) and to insulin-based-treatment users (HR: 0.22; 95%CI: 0.12-0.38). Likewise, in a hospital-based case-control study, Li *et al*[124] encountered risk reduction in metformin users compared to those who did not use metformin (OR: 0.38; 95%CI: 0.21-0.67). Several meta-analyses have strongly reinforced PDAC risk reduction with metformin use in patients with DM2[18,125-127]. However, this effect should prospectively be confirmed in large prospective clinical trials.

Regarding survival, in a retrospective study, Sadeghi *et al*[128] reported a 36% lower risk of death (HR: 0.64; 95%CI: 0.48-0.86), OS benefit of 4 mo (15.2 mo *vs* 11.1 mo) and approximately 2-fold increase in 2-year survival rate (30.1% *vs* 15.4%) in patients who took metformin compared to those inpatients who did not take metformin. Interestingly, longer survival was only observed in non-metastatic disease, when stratified by disease stage[128]. Further evidence also encountered survival improvement in the subgroups of resected or locally advanced but not in patients with metastatic disease[129]. Specifically, among resected patients with PDAC, metformin use seemed to improve OS after 18 mo[130-132]. Related to locally advanced or metastatic disease, further evidence was contradictory on survival gains in patients with PDAC exposed to metformin with benefit being reported only in an Asian cohort[133-135]. A large meta-analysis analyzed data from 12 retrospective cohorts demonstrating OS improvement in metformin users at various stages (HR: 0.77; 95%CI: 0.68-0.87)[136].

Stimulated by this retrospective evidence, two European groups explored, in randomized clinical trials (RCTs), the association of metformin with gemcitabine-based chemotherapy as first-line treatment of advanced PDAC with negative results on OS improvement[137,138]. Recently, a meta-analysis, with inclusion of two RCTs, re-analyzed the improvement in OS and confirmed benefit in the whole population of diabetic patients with PDAC (HR: 0.86; 95%CI: 0.76-0.97)[139]. Analysis of subgroups in this study demonstrated improved survival in patients with resected or locally advanced tumors but not in the metastatic group. Similar results were observed in another group with a benefit in OS at various stages, which was more evident in the subgroups of less advanced stages and Asian patients[140]. Considering second-line treatment, a single arm prospective study did not reach survival gain of metformin associated to paclitaxel[141]. Results of ongoing clinical trials recently completed are expected with substantial interest. NCT01666730 explores overall survival improvement of metformin associated with modified FOLFOX6 in metastatic patients, NCT02005419 evaluates DFS at 1 year with the combination of metformin and gemcitabine in resected subjects and NCT02048384 analyses safety of metformin with or without rapamycin after disease stabilization on first line chemotherapy in metastatic individuals.

This clinical evidence is associated with the pre-clinical data that pancreatic cancer cells are sensitive to inhibition of oxidative phosphorylation, decreases in insulin-IGF signaling and inhibition of the mTOR pathway through AMPK activation, which are some of the major antineoplastic effects of metformin[39,142-145]. Identifying predictive or prognostic factors of response to metformin should be of relevance to select patients most likely to benefit from the effects of metformin[39]. Recent advances in molecular characterization might distinguish different biology and response to therapy in patients with morphologically similar PDAC and may be incorporated into clinical trials[146-148]. Moreover, the recently experienced challenge of standard of care in advanced pancreatic cancer treatment with polychemotherapy also brings new perspectives, as patients experience longer survival with the need to combine other active agents[149,150]. Future trials would include disease stage, identification of biomarkers and concentrations of metformin in neoplastic tissue to powerfully evaluate the benefit of metformin in the treatment of PDAC.

Another pancreatic neoplasm with rising incidence is pancreatic neuroendocrine tumors (panNETs)[151]. Few studies have evaluated the clinical benefit of metformin in the treatment of panNETs[152]. Pusceddu *et al*[153], in a multicentric retrospective cohort of patients receiving everolimus with or without somatostatin analogues, reported increased PFS in diabetic patients exposed to metformin compared to diabetic patients not exposed to metformin or non-diabetic patients [44.2 *vs* 20.8 mo (HR: 0.49; 95%CI: 0.34-0.69) or 15.1 mo (HR: 0.45; 95%CI: 0.32-0.62), respectively][153]. This result correlates with *in vitro* evidence that metformin decreases proliferation in human panNET cell lines[154,155]. A recent study demonstrated that the combination of metformin and everolimus strongly inhibited human panNET cell proliferation through mTOR suppression, compared to each agent used alone[156]. Results of the ongoing NCT02294006 prospective trial are expected to better evaluate the effects of this experimental treatment on PFS at 12 mo.

### Metformin and hepatocellular carcinoma

The incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) has strongly increased in last two decades, as well as the prevalence of its metabolic risk factors[156,157]. Hassan *et al*[158] and Donadon *et al*[159], in hospital-based case-control studies, first observed the strong association of metformin use and reduced risk of HCC in subjects with DM2 (HR: 0.15; 95%CI: 0.04-0.50) (HR: 0.30; 95%CI: 0.20-0.60)[156,158,159]. This protective effect was validated by accumulated evidence of observational studies including more than 0.5 million subjects (OR: 0.52; 95%CI: 0.40-0.68), being more evident in case-control than in cohort studies and without significance in the *post hoc* analysis of RCTs[160-162]. These data suggest an association between metformin use and reduced HCC incidence that needs to be confirmed in prospective clinical trials.

Improvement in HCC survival was first reported by Chen *et al*[163] in an early-stage cohort of patients treated with radiofrequency ablation with longer OS in metformin users compared to non-users (HR: 0.24; 95%CI: 0.07-0.90)[163]. A meta-analysis of 11 cohort studies was in accordance with better prognosis related to metformin use in patients with HCC related to their counterparts (HR: 0.59; 95%CI: 0.42-0.83)[164].

Although the antineoplastic effects of metformin in liver cancer are not completely understood, pre-clinical evidence observed inhibition of proliferation and induction of cell cycle arrest and apoptosis in HCC cells through AMPK activation[165,166]. Future prospective trials should explore the potential benefit of metformin in prevention and treatment of HCC.

### Metformin and intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma and gallbladder cancer

Intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma (ICC) is the second most common hepatic cancer, and its incidence has markedly increased in the last decades[167]. Chaiteerakij *et al*[168], in a clinic-hospital-based retrospective cohort, reported 60% reduced risk of ICC in patients with DM2 who used metformin related to non-users (OR: 0.4; 95%CI: 0.2-0.9)[168]. The same group, however, did not encounter better prognosis in patients with DM2 with ICC taking metformin (HR: 0.8; 95%CI: 0.6-1.2)[169]. Although gallbladder cancer (GBC) is the most common biliary tract cancer[170], no clinical data and scarce basic evidence have explored the antineoplastic effects of metformin and its potential mechanisms of action in GBC.

Regarding comprehension of the possible mechanistic effects of metformin on ICC and GBC there are some *in vitro* and *in vivo* evidence. Overall, the studies observed the induction of apoptosis and cell cycle arrest mediated by activation of the AMPK-mTOR axis[171-173]. The association of metformin in combination with gemcitabine and cisplatin (the standard of care for advanced ICC) enhanced the antiproliferative effects of treatment in a cell model through their effects on AMPK, cyclin D1 and caspase-3[174]. Furthermore, Liu *et al*[175] first observed the decreased survival of GBC cells *via* inhibition of phosphorylated Akt (p-Akt) and Bcl-2 signaling[175]. Likewise, metformin inhibited GBC cell proliferation *via* downregulation of HIF-1α and VEGF and promoted cell cycle arrest by reduction of cyclin D1 expression in different animal experiments[176,177]. The association of metformin with cisplatin also promoted reduced expression of p-Akt and cyclin D1 downregulation, resulting in a synergistic antiprolife-rative effect in GBC cells[178].

These pre-clinical and preliminary clinical evidence highlights the need for metformin to be more deeply explored in clinical studies of ICC and GBC prevention and treatment. Considering the rationale that metformin may be active in the prevention and treatment of ICC and limited clinical data, exploratory studies should address this issue for a better understanding of its benefit in these clinical settings.

## PERSPECTIVES

DS tumors are often associated to high morbidity and mortality and their incidence has increased over recent decades[179]. Recognition of its main risk factors and conditions of worse prognosis as well as development of strategies for prevention and treatment urges. In this context, projection of a worldwide burden of cancer attributable to diabetes and excess weight for the near future is an alarming public health concern[180]. Association of several cancers, including many DS tumors to diabetes and obesity have already been recognized (IARC, WCRF). Further strategies of prevention and treatment urge to be known. The large amount of evidence presented herein supports the idea of an important effect of metformin in decreasing risk and improving prognosis of several DS tumors.

Although most clinical studies presented here are retrospective that are often limited by immortal time and selection bias, recent discoveries of pre-clinical research on antineoplastic effects of metformin establish biological plausibility for the clinical data and reinforce the interest on its effects in carcinogenesis and cancer progression. These preclinical and clinical evidence supports running of adequately powered trials to investigate clinical use of metformin on DS tumors treatment. This should consider diabetic status, predictive biomarkers, disease stage and treatment setting. Concerning chemoprevention, safety, low cost, and widespread access are key to its feasibility. Therefore, repurposing metformin for DS cancer treatment is a scientific field of remarkable interest as it focuses on a global public health problem.

Currently, clinical research is considered a job with its inherent needed professional skills[181]. Taking in consideration that the low metformin cost does not impact the expensive process of drug repurposing, the development of this potential anti-cancer drug has been hampered. Moreover, the current stage of metformin clinical development needs testing in large, randomized, genome-guided, multicenter trials. These aspects explain, at least in part, the shortage of current studies on metformin in cancer prevention and treatment despite the large number of pre-clinical and clinical evidence indicating its potential benefit. We hope that this comprehensive review integrating the potential mechanisms, pre-clinical and clinical studies of metformin as anticancer agent alert the DS cancer community for the need of studying metformin effects in more specific clinical scenarios.

## CONCLUSION

The remarkable intracellular pathway change caused by oncogenesis and the potential mechanisms of the antitumoral action of metformin have been supported. They have revealed novel target molecules and newly discovered treatment possibilities. In connection with epidemiological, pre-clinical, and clinical research, data support that metformin benefits some patients with DS tumors, requiring strict clinical trials to identify those who might obtain advantage from metformin combinations. Given that the survival outcomes are affected by a multitude of factors, such as cancer type, differentiation, staging and treatment, for adequately repurposing the use of metformin in DS cancers it is essential to take into consideration patient characteristics that may serve as predictive biomarkers of metformin antitumoral effects, such as insulin resistance, diabetes, body composition, and chronic diseases related to inflammation, as well as the specific tumor driven oncogenic pathway, which may interfere with the direct and indirect antitumoral effects of metformin.

## REFERENCES


1 **Giovannucci E**, Harlan DM, Archer MC, Bergenstal RM, Gapstur SM, Habel LA, Pollak M, Regensteiner JG, Yee D. Diabetes and cancer: a consensus report. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2010; **60**: 207-221 [PMID: 20554718 DOI: 10.3322/caac.20078]

2 **Pollak M**. Insulin, insulin-like growth factors and neoplasia. *Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2008; **22**: 625-638 [PMID: 18971123 DOI: 10.1016/j.beem.2008.08.004]

3 **Iyengar NM**, Gucalp A, Dannenberg AJ, Hudis CA. Obesity and Cancer Mechanisms: Tumor Microenvironment and Inflammation. *J Clin Oncol* 2016; **34**: 4270-4276 [PMID: 27903155 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2016.67.4283]

4 **Wu L**, Zhu J, Prokop LJ, Murad MH. Pharmacologic Therapy of Diabetes and Overall Cancer Risk and Mortality: A Meta-Analysis of 265 Studies. *Sci Rep* 2015; **5**: 10147 [PMID: 26076034 DOI: 10.1038/srep10147]

5 **Giovannucci E**. Insulin and colon cancer. *Cancer Causes Control* 1995; **6**: 164-179 [PMID: 7749056 DOI: 10.1007/BF00052777]

6 **Lega IC**, Lipscombe LL. Review: Diabetes, Obesity, and Cancer-Pathophysiology and Clinical Implications. *Endocr Rev* 2020; **41** [PMID: 31722374 DOI: 10.1210/endrev/bnz014]

7 **Calle EE**, Rodriguez C, Walker-Thurmond K, Thun MJ. Overweight, obesity, and mortality from cancer in a prospectively studied cohort of U.S. adults. *N Engl J Med* 2003; **348**: 1625-1638 [PMID: 12711737 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa021423]

8 **Singh S**, Singh H, Singh PP, Murad MH, Limburg PJ. Antidiabetic medications and the risk of colorectal cancer in patients with diabetes mellitus: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2013; **22**: 2258-2268 [PMID: 24042261 DOI: 10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-13-0429]

9 **Osório-Costa F**, Rocha GZ, Dias MM, Carvalheira JB. Epidemiological and molecular mechanisms aspects linking obesity and cancer. *Arq Bras Endocrinol Metabol* 2009; **53**: 213-226 [PMID: 19466214]

10 **De Bruijn KM**, Arends LR, Hansen BE, Leeflang S, Ruiter R, van Eijck CH. Systematic review and meta-analysis of the association between diabetes mellitus and incidence and mortality in breast and colorectal cancer. *Br J Surg* 2013; **100**: 1421-1429 [PMID: 24037561 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.9229]

11 **Cunha Júnior AD**, Pericole FV, Carvalheira JBC. Metformin and blood cancers. *Clinics (Sao Paulo)* 2018; **73**: e412s [PMID: 30208162 DOI: 10.6061/clinics/2018/e412s]

12 **Ben Q**, Xu M, Ning X, Liu J, Hong S, Huang W, Zhang H, Li Z. Diabetes mellitus and risk of pancreatic cancer: A meta-analysis of cohort studies. *Eur J Cancer* 2011; **47**: 1928-1937 [PMID: 21458985 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2011.03.003]

13 **Luo W**, Cao Y, Liao C, Gao F. Diabetes mellitus and the incidence and mortality of colorectal cancer: a meta-analysis of 24 cohort studies. *Colorectal Dis* 2012; **14**: 1307-1312 [PMID: 23046351 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2012.02875.x]

14 **Chen J**, Han Y, Xu C, Xiao T, Wang B. Effect of type 2 diabetes mellitus on the risk for hepatocellular carcinoma in chronic liver diseases: a meta-analysis of cohort studies. *Eur J Cancer Prev* 2015; **24**: 89-99 [PMID: 24809655 DOI: 10.1097/CEJ.0000000000000038]

15 **Singh PP**, Shi Q, Foster NR, Grothey A, Nair SG, Chan E, Shields AF, Goldberg RM, Gill S, Kahlenberg MS, Sinicrope FA, Sargent DJ, Alberts SR. Relationship Between Metformin Use and Recurrence and Survival in Patients With Resected Stage III Colon Cancer Receiving Adjuvant Chemotherapy: Results From North Central Cancer Treatment Group N0147 (Alliance). *Oncologist* 2016; **21**: 1509-1521 [PMID: 27881709 DOI: 10.1634/theoncologist.2016-0153]

16 **Bailey CJ**. Metformin: its botanical background. *Pract Diab Int* 2004; 21 [DOI: 10.1002/pdi.606]

17 **Evans JM**, Donnelly LA, Emslie-Smith AM, Alessi DR, Morris AD. Metformin and reduced risk of cancer in diabetic patients. *BMJ* 2005; **330**: 1304-1305 [PMID: 15849206 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.38415.708634.F7]

18 **Decensi A**, Puntoni M, Goodwin P, Cazzaniga M, Gennari A, Bonanni B, Gandini S. Metformin and cancer risk in diabetic patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Cancer Prev Res (Phila)* 2010; **3**: 1451-1461 [PMID: 20947488 DOI: 10.1158/1940-6207.CAPR-10-0157]

19 **Noto H**, Goto A, Tsujimoto T, Noda M. Cancer risk in diabetic patients treated with metformin: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e33411 [PMID: 22448244 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0033411]

20 **Franciosi M**, Lucisano G, Lapice E, Strippoli GF, Pellegrini F, Nicolucci A. Metformin therapy and risk of cancer in patients with type 2 diabetes: systematic review. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e71583 [PMID: 23936520 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0071583]

21 **Gandini S**, Puntoni M, Heckman-Stoddard BM, Dunn BK, Ford L, DeCensi A, Szabo E. Metformin and cancer risk and mortality: a systematic review and meta-analysis taking into account biases and confounders. *Cancer Prev Res (Phila)* 2014; **7**: 867-885 [PMID: 24985407 DOI: 10.1158/1940-6207.CAPR-13-0424]

22 **Chen G**, Xu S, Renko K, Derwahl M. Metformin inhibits growth of thyroid carcinoma cells, suppresses self-renewal of derived cancer stem cells, and potentiates the effect of chemotherapeutic agents. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2012; **97**: E510-E520 [PMID: 22278418 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2011-1754]

23 **Bednar F**, Simeone DM. Metformin and cancer stem cells: old drug, new targets. *Cancer Prev Res (Phila)* 2012; **5**: 351-354 [PMID: 22389436 DOI: 10.1158/1940-6207.CAPR-12-0026]

24 **Gong J**, Kelekar G, Shen J, Kaur S, Mita M. The expanding role of metformin in cancer: an update on antitumor mechanisms and clinical development. *Target Oncol* 2016; **11**: 447-467 [PMID: 26864078 DOI: 10.1007/s11523-016-0423-z]

25 **Pollak MN**. Investigating metformin for cancer prevention and treatment: the end of the beginning. *Cancer Discov* 2012; **2**: 778-790 [PMID: 22926251 DOI: 10.1158/2159-8290.CD-12-0263]

26 **Algire C**, Amrein L, Zakikhani M, Panasci L, Pollak M. Metformin blocks the stimulative effect of a high-energy diet on colon carcinoma growth *in vivo* and is associated with reduced expression of fatty acid synthase. *Endocr Relat Cancer* 2010; **17**: 351-360 [PMID: 20228137 DOI: 10.1677/ERC-09-0252]

27 **Choi YK**, Park KG. Metabolic roles of AMPK and metformin in cancer cells. *Mol Cells* 2013; **36**: 279-287 [PMID: 23794020 DOI: 10.1007/s10059-013-0169-8]

28 **Zakikhani M**, Dowling R, Fantus IG, Sonenberg N, Pollak M. Metformin is an AMP kinase-dependent growth inhibitor for breast cancer cells. *Cancer Res* 2006; **66**: 10269-10273 [PMID:

17062558 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-06-1500]
29 **Verdura S**, Cuyàs E, Martin-Castillo B, Menendez JA. Metformin as an archetype immuno-metabolic adjuvant for cancer immunotherapy. *Oncoimmunology* 2019; **8**: e1633235 [PMID: 31646077 DOI: 10.1080/2162402X.2019.1633235]
30 **Rogers CJ**, Prabhu KS, Vijay-Kumar M. The microbiome and obesity-an established risk for certain types of cancer. *Cancer J* 2014; **20**: 176-180 [PMID: 24855004 DOI: 10.1097/PPO.0000000000000049]
31 **Bryrup T**, Thomsen CW, Kern T, Allin KH, Brandslund I, Jørgensen NR, Vestergaard H, Hansen T, Hansen TH, Pedersen O, Nielsen T. Metformin-induced changes of the gut microbiota in healthy young men: results of a non-blinded, one-armed intervention study. *Diabetologia* 2019; **62**: 1024-1035 [PMID: 30904939 DOI: 10.1007/s00125-019-4848-7]
32 **Zhou G**, Myers R, Li Y, Chen Y, Shen X, Fenyk-Melody J, Wu M, Ventre J, Doebber T, Fujii N, Musi N, Hirshman MF, Goodyear LJ, Moller DE. Role of AMP-activated protein kinase in mechanism of metformin action. *J Clin Invest* 2001; **108**: 1167-1174 [PMID: 11602624 DOI: 10.1172/JCI13505]
33 **Hawley SA**, Gadalla AE, Olsen GS, Hardie DG. The antidiabetic drug metformin activates the AMP-activated protein kinase cascade *via* an adenine nucleotide-independent mechanism. *Diabetes* 2002; **51**: 2420-2425 [PMID: 12145153]
34 **Pollak M**. The insulin and insulin-like growth factor receptor family in neoplasia: an update. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2012; **12**: 159-169 [PMID: 22337149 DOI: 10.1038/nrc3215]
35 **Martin M**, Marais R. Metformin: a diabetes drug for cancer, or a cancer drug for diabetics? *J Clin Oncol* 2012; **30**: 2698-2700 [PMID: 22565000 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2012.42.1677]
36 **Zakikhani M**, Bazile M, Hashemi S, Javeshghani S, Avizonis D, St Pierre J, Pollak MN. Alterations in cellular energy metabolism associated with the antiproliferative effects of the ATM inhibitor KU-55933 and with metformin. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e49513 [PMID: 23185347 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0049513]
37 **Janzer A**, German NJ, Gonzalez-Herrera KN, Asara JM, Haigis MC, Struhl K. Metformin and phenformin deplete tricarboxylic acid cycle and glycolytic intermediates during cell transformation and NTPs in cancer stem cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2014; **111**: 10574-10579 [PMID: 25002509 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1409844111]
38 **Nair V**, Pathi S, Jutooru I, Sreevalsan S, Basha R, Abdelrahim M, Samudio I, Safe S. Metformin inhibits pancreatic cancer cell and tumor growth and downregulates Sp transcription factors. *Carcinogenesis* 2013; **34**: 2870-2879 [PMID: 23803693 DOI: 10.1093/carcin/bgt231]
39 **Nair V**, Sreevalsan S, Basha R, Abdelrahim M, Abudayyeh A, Rodrigues Hoffman A, Safe S. Mechanism of metformin-dependent inhibition of mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR) and Ras activity in pancreatic cancer: role of specificity protein (Sp) transcription factors. *J Biol Chem* 2014; **289**: 27692-27701 [PMID: 25143389 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M114.592576]
40 **Blandino G**, Valerio M, Cioce M, Mori F, Casadei L, Pulito C, Sacconi A, Biagioni F, Cortese G, Galanti S, Manetti C, Citro G, Muti P, Strano S. Metformin elicits anticancer effects through the sequential modulation of DICER and c-MYC. *Nat Commun* 2012; **3**: 865 [PMID: 22643892 DOI: 10.1038/ncomms1859]
41 **Li W**, Yuan Y, Huang L, Qiao M, Zhang Y. Metformin alters the expression profiles of microRNAs in human pancreatic cancer cells. *Diabetes Res Clin Pract* 2012; **96**: 187-195 [PMID: 22245693 DOI: 10.1016/j.diabres.2011.12.028]
42 **Algire C**, Moiseeva O, Deschênes-Simard X, Amrein L, Petruccelli L, Birman E, Viollet B, Ferbeyre G, Pollak MN. Metformin reduces endogenous reactive oxygen species and associated DNA damage. *Cancer Prev Res (Phila)* 2012; **5**: 536-543 [PMID: 22262811 DOI: 10.1158/1940-6207.CAPR-11-0536]
43 **Nakamura M**, Ogo A, Yamura M, Yamaguchi Y, Nakashima H. Metformin suppresses sonic hedgehog expression in pancreatic cancer cells. *Anticancer Res* 2014; **34**: 1765-1769 [PMID: 24692708]
44 **Rios A**, Hsu SH, Blanco A, Buryanek J, Day AL, McGuire MF, Brown RE. Durable response of glioblastoma to adjuvant therapy consisting of temozolomide and a weekly dose of AMD3100 (plerixafor), a CXCR4 inhibitor, together with lapatinib, metformin and niacinamide. *Oncoscience* 2016; **3**: 156-163 [PMID: 27489862 DOI: 10.18632/oncoscience.311]
45 **Dirat B**, Ader I, Golzio M, Massa F, Mettouchi A, Laurent K, Larbret F, Malavaud B, Cormont M, Lemichez E, Cuvillier O, Tanti JF, Bost F. Inhibition of the GTPase Rac1 mediates the antimigratory effects of metformin in prostate cancer cells. *Mol Cancer Ther* 2015; **14**: 586-596 [PMID: 25527635 DOI: 10.1158/1535-7163.MCT-14-0102]
46 **Zhou J**, Wulfkuhle J, Zhang H, Gu P, Yang Y, Deng J, Margolick JB, Liotta LA, Petricoin E 3rd, Zhang Y. Activation of the PTEN/mTOR/STAT3 pathway in breast cancer stem-like cells is required for viability and maintenance. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2007; **104**: 16158-16163 [PMID: 17911267 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0702596104]
47 **Korkaya H**, Paulson A, Charafe-Jauffret E, Ginestier C, Brown M, Dutcher J, Clouthier SG, Wicha MS. Regulation of mammary stem/progenitor cells by PTEN/Akt/beta-catenin signaling. *PLoS Biol* 2009; **7**: e1000121 [PMID: 19492080 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pbio.1000121]
48 **Dowling RJ**, Niraula S, Stambolic V, Goodwin PJ. Metformin in cancer: translational challenges. *J Mol Endocrinol* 2012; **48**: R31-R43 [PMID: 22355097 DOI: 10.1530/JME-12-0007]
49 **Memmott RM**, Mercado JR, Maier CR, Kawabata S, Fox SD, Dennis PA. Metformin prevents

tobacco carcinogen--induced lung tumorigenesis. *Cancer Prev Res (Phila)* 2010; **3**: 1066-1076 [PMID: 20810672 DOI: 10.1158/1940-6207.CAPR-10-0055]

50 **Sarfstein R**, Friedman Y, Attias-Geva Z, Fishman A, Bruchim I, Werner H. Metformin downregulates the insulin/IGF-I signaling pathway and inhibits different uterine serous carcinoma (USC) cells proliferation and migration in p53-dependent or -independent manners. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e61537 [PMID: 23620761 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0061537]

51 **Zakikhani M**, Blouin MJ, Piura E, Pollak MN. Metformin and rapamycin have distinct effects on the AKT pathway and proliferation in breast cancer cells. *Breast Cancer Res Treat* 2010; **123**: 271-279 [PMID: 20135346 DOI: 10.1007/s10549-010-0763-9]

52 **El-Mir MY**, Nogueira V, Fontaine E, Avéret N, Rigoulet M, Leverve X. Dimethylbiguanide inhibits cell respiration *via* an indirect effect targeted on the respiratory chain complex I. *J Biol Chem* 2000; **275**: 223-228 [PMID: 10617608]

53 **Inoki K**, Zhu T, Guan KL. TSC2 mediates cellular energy response to control cell growth and survival. *Cell* 2003; **115**: 577-590 [PMID: 14651849]

54 **Cerezo M**, Tichet M, Abbe P, Ohanna M, Lehraiki A, Rouaud F, Allegra M, Giacchero D, Bahadoran P, Bertolotto C, Tartare-Deckert S, Ballotti R, Rocchi S. Metformin blocks melanoma invasion and metastasis development in AMPK/p53-dependent manner. *Mol Cancer Ther* 2013; **12**: 1605-1615 [PMID: 23741061 DOI: 10.1158/1535-7163.MCT-12-1226-T]

55 **Ben Sahra I**, Regazzetti C, Robert G, Laurent K, Le Marchand-Brustel Y, Auberger P, Tanti JF, Giorgetti-Peraldi S, Bost F. Metformin, independent of AMPK, induces mTOR inhibition and cell-cycle arrest through REDD1. *Cancer Res* 2011; **71**: 4366-4372 [PMID: 21540236 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-10-1769]

56 **Hirsch HA**, Iliopoulos D, Struhl K. Metformin inhibits the inflammatory response associated with cellular transformation and cancer stem cell growth. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2013; **110**: 972-977 [PMID: 23277563 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1221055110]

57 **Rattan R**, Giri S, Hartmann LC, Shridhar V. Metformin attenuates ovarian cancer cell growth in an AMP-kinase dispensable manner. *J Cell Mol Med* 2011; **15**: 166-178 [PMID: 19874425 DOI: 10.1111/j.1582-4934.2009.00954.x]

58 **Kalender A**, Selvaraj A, Kim SY, Gulati P, Brûlé S, Viollet B, Kemp BE, Bardeesy N, Dennis P, Schlager JJ, Marette A, Kozma SC, Thomas G. Metformin, independent of AMPK, inhibits mTORC1 in a rag GTPase-dependent manner. *Cell Metab* 2010; **11**: 390-401 [PMID: 20444419 DOI: 10.1016/j.cmet.2010.03.014]

59 **Kim SH**, Kim SC, Ku JL. Metformin increases chemo-sensitivity *via* gene downregulation encoding DNA replication proteins in 5-Fu resistant colorectal cancer cells. *Oncotarget* 2017; **8**: 56546-56557 [PMID: 28915611 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.17798]

60 **Rocha GZ**, Dias MM, Ropelle ER, Osório-Costa F, Rossato FA, Vercesi AE, Saad MJ, Carvalheira JB. Metformin amplifies chemotherapy-induced AMPK activation and antitumoral growth. *Clin Cancer Res* 2011; **17**: 3993-4005 [PMID: 21543517 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-10-2243]

61 **Wheaton WW**, Weinberg SE, Hamanaka RB, Soberanes S, Sullivan LB, Anso E, Glasauer A, Dufour E, Mutlu GM, Budigner GS, Chandel NS. Metformin inhibits mitochondrial complex I of cancer cells to reduce tumorigenesis. *Elife* 2014; **3**: e02242 [PMID: 24843020 DOI: 10.7554/eLife.02242]

62 **Son J**, Lyssiotis CA, Ying H, Wang X, Hua S, Ligorio M, Perera RM, Ferrone CR, Mullarky E, Shyh-Chang N, Kang Y, Fleming JB, Bardeesy N, Asara JM, Haigis MC, DePinho RA, Cantley LC, Kimmelman AC. Glutamine supports pancreatic cancer growth through a KRAS-regulated metabolic pathway. *Nature* 2013; **496**: 101-105 [PMID: 23535601 DOI: 10.1038/nature12040]

63 **Eikawa S**, Nishida M, Mizukami S, Yamazaki C, Nakayama E, Udono H. Immune-mediated antitumor effect by type 2 diabetes drug, metformin. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2015; **112**: 1809-1814 [PMID: 25624476 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1417636112]

64 **Pearce EL**, Walsh MC, Cejas PJ, Harms GM, Shen H, Wang LS, Jones RG, Choi Y. Enhancing CD8 T-cell memory by modulating fatty acid metabolism. *Nature* 2009; **460**: 103-107 [PMID: 19494812 DOI: 10.1038/nature08097]

65 **Prlic M**, Williams MA, Bevan MJ. Requirements for CD8 T-cell priming, memory generation and maintenance. *Curr Opin Immunol* 2007; **19**: 315-319 [PMID: 17433873 DOI: 10.1016/j.coi.2007.04.010]

66 **Zhang JJ**, Zhang QS, Li ZQ, Zhou JW, Du J. Metformin attenuates PD-L1 expression through activating Hippo signaling pathway in colorectal cancer cells. *Am J Transl Res* 2019; **11**: 6965-6976 [PMID: 31814900]

67 **Bridgeman SC**, Ellison GC, Melton PE, Newsholme P, Mamotte CDS. Epigenetic effects of metformin: From molecular mechanisms to clinical implications. *Diabetes Obes Metab* 2018; **20**: 1553-1562 [PMID: 29457866 DOI: 10.1111/dom.13262]

68 **White-Al Habeeb NM**, Garcia J, Fleshner N, Bapat B. Metformin Elicits Antitumor Effects and Downregulates the Histone Methyltransferase Multiple Myeloma SET Domain (MMSET) in Prostate Cancer Cells. *Prostate* 2016; **76**: 1507-1518 [PMID: 27404348 DOI: 10.1002/pros.23235]

69 **Zhang E**, Guo Q, Gao H, Xu R, Teng S, Wu Y. Metformin and Resveratrol Inhibited High Glucose-Induced Metabolic Memory of Endothelial Senescence through SIRT1/p300/p53/p21 Pathway. *PLoS One* 2015; **10**: e0143814 [PMID: 26629991 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0143814]

70 **DU Y**, Zheng H, Wang J, Ren Y, Li M, Gong C, Xu F, Yang C. Metformin inhibits histone H2B monoubiquitination and downstream gene transcription in human breast cancer cells. *Oncol Lett*

2014; **8**: 809-812 [PMID: 25009658 DOI: 10.3892/ol.2014.2158]
71 **Mogavero A**, Maiorana MV, Zanutto S, Varinelli L, Bozzi F, Belfiore A, Volpi CC, Gloghini A, Pierotti MA, Gariboldi M. Metformin transiently inhibits colorectal cancer cell proliferation as a result of either AMPK activation or increased ROS production. *Sci Rep* 2017; **7**: 15992 [PMID: 29167573 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-017-16149-z]
72 **Lan B**, Zhang J, Zhang P, Zhang W, Yang S, Lu D, Li W, Dai Q. Metformin suppresses CRC growth by inducing apoptosis *via* ADORA1. *Front Biosci (Landmark Ed)* 2017; **22**: 248-257 [PMID: 27814614 DOI: 10.2741/4484]
73 **Feng YH**, Wu CL, Shiau AL, Lee JC, Chang JG, Lu PJ, Tung CL, Feng LY, Huang WT, Tsao CJ. MicroRNA-21-mediated regulation of Sprouty2 protein expression enhances the cytotoxic effect of 5-fluorouracil and metformin in colon cancer cells. *Int J Mol Med* 2012; **29**: 920-926 [PMID: 22322462 DOI: 10.3892/ijmm.2012.910]
74 **Zhang Y**, Guan M, Zheng Z, Zhang Q, Gao F, Xue Y. Effects of metformin on CD133+ colorectal cancer cells in diabetic patients. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e81264 [PMID: 24278407 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0081264]
75 **Jeong YK**, Kim MS, Lee JY, Kim EH, Ha H. Metformin Radiosensitizes p53-Deficient Colorectal Cancer Cells through Induction of G2/M Arrest and Inhibition of DNA Repair Proteins. *PLoS One* 2015; **10**: e0143596 [PMID: 26599019 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0143596]
76 **Nangia-Makker P**, Yu Y, Vasudevan A, Farhana L, Rajendra SG, Levi E, Majumdar AP. Metformin: a potential therapeutic agent for recurrent colon cancer. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e84369 [PMID: 24465408 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0084369]
77 **Dilman VM**. Metabolic immunodepression which increases the risk of cancer. *Lancet* 1977; **2**: 1207-1209 [PMID: 73905 DOI: 10.1016/s0140-6736(77)90442-1]
78 **Tomimoto A**, Endo H, Sugiyama M, Fujisawa T, Hosono K, Takahashi H, Nakajima N, Nagashima Y, Wada K, Nakagama H, Nakajima A. Metformin suppresses intestinal polyp growth in ApcMin/+ mice. *Cancer Sci* 2008; **99**: 2136-2141 [PMID: 18803638 DOI: 10.1111/j.1349-7006.2008.00933.x]
79 **Hosono K**, Endo H, Takahashi H, Sugiyama M, Uchiyama T, Suzuki K, Nozaki Y, Yoneda K, Fujita K, Yoneda M, Inamori M, Tomatsu A, Chihara T, Shimpo K, Nakagama H, Nakajima A. Metformin suppresses azoxymethane-induced colorectal aberrant crypt foci by activating AMP-activated protein kinase. *Mol Carcinog* 2010; **49**: 662-671 [PMID: 20564343 DOI: 10.1002/mc.20637]
80 **Li W**, Wang QL, Liu X, Dong SH, Li HX, Li CY, Guo LS, Gao JM, Berger NA, Li L, Ma L, Wu YJ. Combined use of vitamin D3 and metformin exhibits synergistic chemopreventive effects on colorectal neoplasia in rats and mice. *Cancer Prev Res (Phila)* 2015; **8**: 139-148 [PMID: 25416412 DOI: 10.1158/1940-6207.CAPR-14-0128]
81 **Mohamed Suhaimi NA**, Phyo WM, Yap HY, Choy SHY, Wei X, Choudhury Y, Tan WJ, Tan LAPY, Foo RSY, Tan SHS, Tiang Z, Wong CF, Koh PK, Tan MH. Metformin Inhibits Cellular Proliferation and Bioenergetics in Colorectal Cancer Patient-Derived Xenografts. *Mol Cancer Ther* 2017; **16**: 2035-2044 [PMID: 28533437 DOI: 10.1158/1535-7163.MCT-16-0793]
82 **Cardel M**, Jensen SM, Pottegård A, Jørgensen TL, Hallas J. Long-term use of metformin and colorectal cancer risk in type II diabetics: a population-based case-control study. *Cancer Med* 2014; **3**: 1458-1466 [PMID: 25091592 DOI: 10.1002/cam4.306]
83 **Lee MS**, Hsu CC, Wahlqvist ML, Tsai HN, Chang YH, Huang YC. Type 2 diabetes increases and metformin reduces total, colorectal, liver and pancreatic cancer incidences in Taiwanese: a representative population prospective cohort study of 800,000 individuals. *BMC Cancer* 2011; **11**: 20 [PMID: 21241523 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2407-11-20]
84 **Sehdev A**, Shih YC, Vekhter B, Bissonnette MB, Olopade OI, Polite BN. Metformin for primary colorectal cancer prevention in patients with diabetes: a case-control study in a US population. *Cancer* 2015; **121**: 1071-1078 [PMID: 25424411 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.29165]
85 **Tseng CH**. Diabetes, metformin use, and colon cancer: a population-based cohort study in Taiwan. *Eur J Endocrinol* 2012; **167**: 409-416 [PMID: 22778198 DOI: 10.1530/EJE-12-0369]
86 **Zhang ZJ**, Zheng ZJ, Kan H, Song Y, Cui W, Zhao G, Kip KE. Reduced risk of colorectal cancer with metformin therapy in patients with type 2 diabetes: a meta-analysis. *Diabetes Care* 2011; **34**: 2323-2328 [PMID: 21949223 DOI: 10.2337/dc11-0512]
87 **Kowall B**, Stang A, Rathmann W, Kostev K. No reduced risk of overall, colorectal, lung, breast, and prostate cancer with metformin therapy in diabetic patients: database analyses from Germany and the UK. *Pharmacoepidemiol Drug Saf* 2015; **24**: 865-874 [PMID: 26132313 DOI: 10.1002/pds.3823]
88 **Lin CM**, Huang HL, Chu FY, Fan HC, Chen HA, Chu DM, Wu LW, Wang CC, Chen WL, Lin SH, Ho SY. Association between Gastroenterological Malignancy and Diabetes Mellitus and Anti-Diabetic Therapy: A Nationwide, Population-Based Cohort Study. *PLoS One* 2015; **10**: e0125421 [PMID: 25978841 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0125421]
89 **Smiechowski B**, Azoulay L, Yin H, Pollak MN, Suissa S. The use of metformin and colorectal cancer incidence in patients with type II diabetes mellitus. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2013; **22**: 1877-1883 [PMID: 23966577 DOI: 10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-13-0196]
90 **Bodmer M**, Becker C, Meier C, Jick SS, Meier CR. Use of metformin is not associated with a decreased risk of colorectal cancer: a case-control analysis. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2012; **21**: 280-286 [PMID: 22178569 DOI: 10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-11-0992-T]
91 **Knapen LM**, Dittrich ST, de Vries F, Starup-Linde J, Vestergaard P, Henry RM, Stolk LM, Neef C, Bazelier MT. Use of biguanides and the risk of colorectal cancer: a register-based cohort study. *Curr*

*Drug Saf* 2013; **8**: 349-356 [PMID: 24215310 DOI: 10.2174/15680266113136660068]
92 **Bradley MC**, Ferrara A, Achacoso N, Ehrlich SF, Quesenberry CP Jr, Habel LA. A Cohort Study of Metformin and Colorectal Cancer Risk among Patients with Diabetes Mellitus. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2018; **27**: 525-530 [PMID: 29716927 DOI: 10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-17-0424]
93 **Liu F**, Yan L, Wang Z, Lu Y, Chu Y, Li X, Liu Y, Rui D, Nie S, Xiang H. Metformin therapy and risk of colorectal adenomas and colorectal cancer in type 2 diabetes mellitus patients: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Oncotarget* 2017; **8**: 16017-16026 [PMID: 27926481 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.13762]
94 **Higurashi T**, Hosono K, Takahashi H, Komiya Y, Umezawa S, Sakai E, Uchiyama T, Taniguchi L, Hata Y, Uchiyama S, Hattori A, Nagase H, Kessoku T, Arimoto J, Matsuhashi N, Inayama Y, Yamanaka S, Taguri M, Nakajima A. Metformin for chemoprevention of metachronous colorectal adenoma or polyps in post-polypectomy patients without diabetes: a multicentre double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomised phase 3 trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2016; **17**: 475-483 [PMID: 26947328 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(15)00565-3]
95 **Garrett CR**, Hassabo HM, Bhadkamkar NA, Wen S, Baladandayuthapani V, Kee BK, Eng C, Hassan MM. Survival advantage observed with the use of metformin in patients with type II diabetes and colorectal cancer. *Br J Cancer* 2012; **106**: 1374-1378 [PMID: 22421948 DOI: 10.1038/bjc.2012.71]
96 **Meng F**, Song L, Wang W. Metformin Improves Overall Survival of Colorectal Cancer Patients with Diabetes: A Meta-Analysis. *J Diabetes Res* 2017; **2017**: 5063239 [PMID: 28271076 DOI: 10.1155/2017/5063239]
97 **He XK**, Su TT, Si JM, Sun LM. Metformin Is Associated With Slightly Reduced Risk of Colorectal Cancer and Moderate Survival Benefits in Diabetes Mellitus: A Meta-Analysis. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2016; **95**: e2749 [PMID: 26886616 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000002749]
98 **Petrera M**, Paleari L, Clavarezza M, Puntoni M, Caviglia S, Briata IM, Oppezzi M, Mislej EM, Stabuc B, Gnant M, Bachleitner-Hofmann T, Roth W, Scherer D, Haefeli WE, Ulrich CM, DeCensi A. The ASAMET trial: a randomized, phase II, double-blind, placebo-controlled, multicenter, 2 × 2 factorial biomarker study of tertiary prevention with low-dose aspirin and metformin in stage I-III colorectal cancer patients. *BMC Cancer* 2018; **18**: 1210 [PMID: 30514262 DOI: 10.1186/s12885-018-5126-7]
99 **Ramjeesingh R**, Orr C, Bricks CS, Hopman WM, Hammad N. A retrospective study on the role of diabetes and metformin in colorectal cancer disease survival. *Curr Oncol* 2016; **23**: e116-e122 [PMID: 27122979 DOI: 10.3747/co.23.2809]
100 **Skinner HD**, Crane CH, Garrett CR, Eng C, Chang GJ, Skibber JM, Rodriguez-Bigas MA, Kelly P, Sandulache VC, Delclos ME, Krishnan S, Das P. Metformin use and improved response to therapy in rectal cancer. *Cancer Med* 2013; **2**: 99-107 [PMID: 24133632 DOI: 10.1002/cam4.54]
101 **Miranda VC**, Braghiroli MI, Faria LD, Bariani G, Alex A, Bezerra Neto JE, Capareli FC, Sabbaga J, Lobo Dos Santos JF, Hoff PM, Riechelmann RP. Phase 2 Trial of Metformin Combined With 5-Fluorouracil in Patients With Refractory Metastatic Colorectal Cancer. *Clin Colorectal Cancer* 2016; **15**: 321-328. e1 [PMID: 27262895 DOI: 10.1016/j.clcc.2016.04.011]
102 **Bragagnoli AC**, Araujo RLC, Ferraz MW, Dos Santos LV, Abdalla KC, Comar F, Santos FA, Oliveira MA, Carvalheira JBC, Cárcano FM, da Silveira Nogueira Lima JP. Metformin plus Irinotecan in patients with refractory colorectal cancer: a phase 2 clinical trial. *Br J Cancer* 2021 [PMID: 33398062 DOI: 10.1038/s41416-020-01208-6]
103 **El-Fatatry BM**, Ibrahim OM, Hussien FZ, Mostafa TM. Role of metformin in oxaliplatin-induced peripheral neuropathy in patients with stage III colorectal cancer: randomized, controlled study. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2018; **33**: 1675-1683 [PMID: 29931409 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-018-3104-9]
104 **Yu G**, Fang W, Xia T, Chen Y, Gao Y, Jiao X, Huang S, Wang J, Li Z, Xie K. Metformin potentiates rapamycin and cisplatin in gastric cancer in mice. *Oncotarget* 2015; **6**: 12748-12762 [PMID: 25909163 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.3327]
105 **Wu X**. Effect of metformin combined with chemotherapeutic agents on gastric cancer cell line AGS. *Pak J Pharm Sci* 2017; **30**: 1833-1836 [PMID: 29084654]
106 **Lesan V**, Ghaffari SH, Salaramoli J, Heidari M, Rostami M, Alimoghaddam K, Ghavamzadeh A. Evaluation of antagonistic effects of metformin with Cisplatin in gastric cancer cells. *Int J Hematol Oncol Stem Cell Res* 2014; **8**: 12-19 [PMID: 25642303]
107 **Tseng CH**. Metformin reduces gastric cancer risk in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Aging (Albany NY)* 2016; **8**: 1636-1649 [PMID: 27587088 DOI: 10.18632/aging.101019]
108 **Dulskas A**, Patasius A, Kaceniene A, Linkeviciute-Ulinskiene D, Zabuliene L, Smailyte G. A Cohort Study of Antihyperglycemic Medication Exposure and Gastric Cancer Risk. *J Clin Med* 2020; **9** [PMID: 32033451 DOI: 10.3390/jcm9020435]
109 **Ruiter R**, Visser LE, van Herk-Sukel MP, Coebergh JW, Haak HR, Geelhoed-Duijvestijn PH, Straus SM, Herings RM, Stricker BH. Lower risk of cancer in patients on metformin in comparison with those on sulfonylurea derivatives: results from a large population-based follow-up study. *Diabetes Care* 2012; **35**: 119-124 [PMID: 22100960 DOI: 10.2337/dc11-0857]
110 **Kim YI**, Kim SY, Cho SJ, Park JH, Choi IJ, Lee YJ, Lee EK, Kook MC, Kim CG, Ryu KW, Kim YW. Long-term metformin use reduces gastric cancer risk in type 2 diabetics without insulin treatment: a nationwide cohort study. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2014; **39**: 854-863 [PMID: 24612291 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12660]
111 **Valent F**. Diabetes mellitus and cancer of the digestive organs: An Italian population-based cohort

study. *J Diabetes Complications* 2015; **29**: 1056-1061 [PMID: 26275864 DOI: 10.1016/j.jdiacomp.2015.07.017]

112 **Cheung KS**, Chan EW, Wong AYS, Chen L, Seto WK, Wong ICK, Leung WK. Metformin Use and Gastric Cancer Risk in Diabetic Patients After Helicobacter pylori Eradication. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2019; **111**: 484-489 [PMID: 30329127 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/djy144]

113 **Tsilidis KK**, Capothanassi D, Allen NE, Rizos EC, Lopez DS, van Veldhoven K, Sacerdote C, Ashby D, Vineis P, Tzoulaki I, Ioannidis JP. Metformin does not affect cancer risk: a cohort study in the U.K. Clinical Practice Research Datalink analyzed like an intention-to-treat trial. *Diabetes Care* 2014; **37**: 2522-2532 [PMID: 24898303 DOI: 10.2337/dc14-0584]

114 **de Jong RG**, Burden AM, de Kort S, van Herk-Sukel MP, Vissers PA, Janssen PK, Haak HR, Masclee AA, de Vries F, Janssen-Heijnen ML. No Decreased Risk of Gastrointestinal Cancers in Users of Metformin in The Netherlands; A Time-Varying Analysis of Metformin Exposure. *Cancer Prev Res (Phila)* 2017; **10**: 290-297 [PMID: 28274936 DOI: 10.1158/1940-6207.CAPR-16-0277]

115 **Zheng J**, Xie SH, Santoni G, Lagergren J. Metformin use and risk of gastric adenocarcinoma in a Swedish population-based cohort study. *Br J Cancer* 2019; **121**: 877-882 [PMID: 31591459 DOI: 10.1038/s41416-019-0598-z]

116 **Shuai Y**, Li C, Zhou X. The effect of metformin on gastric cancer in patients with type 2 diabetes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Clin Transl Oncol* 2020; **22**: 1580-1590 [PMID: 32060719 DOI: 10.1007/s12094-020-02304-y]

117 **Zhou XL**, Xue WH, Ding XF, Li LF, Dou MM, Zhang WJ, Lv Z, Fan ZR, Zhao J, Wang LX. Association between metformin and the risk of gastric cancer in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus: a meta-analysis of cohort studies. *Oncotarget* 2017; **8**: 55622-55631 [PMID: 28903449 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.16973]

118 **Lee CK**, Jung M, Jung I, Heo SJ, Jeong YH, An JY, Kim HI, Cheong JH, Hyung WJ, Noh SH, Kim HS, Rha SY, Chung HC. Cumulative Metformin Use and Its Impact on Survival in Gastric Cancer Patients After Gastrectomy. *Ann Surg* 2016; **263**: 96-102 [PMID: 25575260 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0000000000001086]

119 **Seo HS**, Jung YJ, Kim JH, Lee HH, Park CH. The Effect of Metformin on Prognosis in Patients With Locally Advanced Gastric Cancer Associated With Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus. *Am J Clin Oncol* 2019; **42**: 909-917 [PMID: 31693512 DOI: 10.1097/COC.0000000000000627]

120 **Lacroix O**, Couttenier A, Vaes E, Cardwell CR, De Schutter H, Robert A. Impact of metformin on gastric adenocarcinoma survival: A Belgian population based study. *Cancer Epidemiol* 2018; **53**: 149-155 [PMID: 29453032 DOI: 10.1016/j.canep.2018.02.001]

121 **Baglia ML**, Cui Y, Zheng T, Yang G, Li H, You M, Xu L, Murff H, Gao YT, Zheng W, Xiang YB, Shu XO. Diabetes Medication Use in Association with Survival among Patients of Breast, Colorectal, Lung, or Gastric Cancer. *Cancer Res Treat* 2019; **51**: 538-546 [PMID: 29986576 DOI: 10.4143/crt.2017.591]

122 **Siegel RL**, Miller KD, Jemal A. Cancer statistics, 2020. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2020; **70**: 7-30 [PMID: 31912902 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21590]

123 **Currie CJ**, Poole CD, Gale EA. The influence of glucose-lowering therapies on cancer risk in type 2 diabetes. *Diabetologia* 2009; **52**: 1766-1777 [PMID: 19572116 DOI: 10.1007/s00125-009-1440-6]

124 **Li D**, Yeung SC, Hassan MM, Konopleva M, Abbruzzese JL. Antidiabetic therapies affect risk of pancreatic cancer. *Gastroenterology* 2009; **137**: 482-488 [PMID: 19375425 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2009.04.013]

125 **Zhang P**, Li H, Tan X, Chen L, Wang S. Association of metformin use with cancer incidence and mortality: a meta-analysis. *Cancer Epidemiol* 2013; **37**: 207-218 [PMID: 23352629 DOI: 10.1016/j.canep.2012.12.009]

126 **Soranna D**, Scotti L, Zambon A, Bosetti C, Grassi G, Catapano A, La Vecchia C, Mancia G, Corrao G. Cancer risk associated with use of metformin and sulfonylurea in type 2 diabetes: a meta-analysis. *Oncologist* 2012; **17**: 813-822 [PMID: 22643536 DOI: 10.1634/theoncologist.2011-0462]

127 **Yu H**, Zhong X, Gao P, Shi J, Wu Z, Guo Z, Wang Z, Song Y. The Potential Effect of Metformin on Cancer: An Umbrella Review. *Front Endocrinol (Lausanne)* 2019; **10**: 617 [PMID: 31620081 DOI: 10.3389/fendo.2019.00617]

128 **Sadeghi N**, Abbruzzese JL, Yeung SC, Hassan M, Li D. Metformin use is associated with better survival of diabetic patients with pancreatic cancer. *Clin Cancer Res* 2012; **18**: 2905-2912 [PMID: 22465831 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-11-2994]

129 **Chaiteerakij R**, Petersen GM, Bamlet WR, Chaffee KG, Zhen DB, Burch PA, Leof ER, Roberts LR, Oberg AL. Metformin Use and Survival of Patients With Pancreatic Cancer: A Cautionary Lesson. *J Clin Oncol* 2016; **34**: 1898-1904 [PMID: 27069086 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2015.63.3511]

130 **Ambe CM**, Mahipal A, Fulp J, Chen L, Malafa MP. Effect of Metformin Use on Survival in Resectable Pancreatic Cancer: A Single-Institution Experience and Review of the Literature. *PLoS One* 2016; **11**: e0151632 [PMID: 26967162 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0151632]

131 **Cerullo M**, Gani F, Chen SY, Canner J, Pawlik TM. Metformin Use Is Associated with Improved Survival in Patients Undergoing Resection for Pancreatic Cancer. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2016; **20**: 1572-1580 [PMID: 27255657 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-016-3173-4]

132 **Jang WI**, Kim MS, Kang SH, Jo AJ, Kim YJ, Tchoe HJ, Park CM, Kim HJ, Choi JA, Choi HJ, Paik EK, Seo YS, Yoo HJ, Kang JK, Han CJ, Kim SB, Ko MJ. Association between metformin use and mortality in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus and localized resectable pancreatic cancer: a nationwide population-based study in korea. *Oncotarget* 2017; **8**: 9587-9596 [PMID: 28077783

DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.14525]
133 **Lee SH**, Yoon SH, Lee HS, Chung MJ, Park JY, Park SW, Song SY, Chung JB, Bang S. Can metformin change the prognosis of pancreatic cancer? *Dig Liver Dis* 2016; **48**: 435-440 [PMID: 26775128 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2015.12.006]
134 **Choi Y**, Kim TY, Oh DY, Lee KH, Han SW, Im SA, Bang YJ. The Impact of Diabetes Mellitus and Metformin Treatment on Survival of Patients with Advanced Pancreatic Cancer Undergoing Chemotherapy. *Cancer Res Treat* 2016; **48**: 171-179 [PMID: 25779362 DOI: 10.4143/crt.2014.292]
135 **Hwang AL**, Haynes K, Hwang WT, Yang YX. Metformin and survival in pancreatic cancer: a retrospective cohort study. *Pancreas* 2013; **42**: 1054-1059 [PMID: 24051965 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0b013e3182965a3c]
136 **Zhou DC**, Gong H, Tan CQ, Luo JQ. Prognostic significance of anti-diabetic medications in pancreatic cancer: A meta-analysis. *Oncotarget* 2017; **8**: 62349-62357 [PMID: 28977950 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.17728]
137 **Kordes S**, Pollak MN, Zwinderman AH, Mathôt RA, Weterman MJ, Beeker A, Punt CJ, Richel DJ, Wilmink JW. Metformin in patients with advanced pancreatic cancer: a double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled phase 2 trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2015; **16**: 839-847 [PMID: 26067687 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(15)00027-3]
138 **Reni M**, Dugnani E, Cereda S, Belli C, Balzano G, Nicoletti R, Liberati D, Pasquale V, Scavini M, Maggiora P, Sordi V, Lampasona V, Ceraulo D, Di Terlizzi G, Doglioni C, Falconi M, Piemonti L. (Ir)relevance of Metformin Treatment in Patients with Metastatic Pancreatic Cancer: An Open-Label, Randomized Phase II Trial. *Clin Cancer Res* 2016; **22**: 1076-1085 [PMID: 26459175 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-15-1722]
139 **Li X**, Li T, Liu Z, Gou S, Wang C. The effect of metformin on survival of patients with pancreatic cancer: a meta-analysis. *Sci Rep* 2017; **7**: 5825 [PMID: 28724893 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-017-06207-x]
140 **Wan G**, Sun X, Li F, Wang X, Li C, Li H, Yu X, Cao F. Survival Benefit of Metformin Adjuvant Treatment For Pancreatic Cancer Patients: a Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. *Cell Physiol Biochem* 2018; **49**: 837-847 [PMID: 30184547 DOI: 10.1159/000493214]
141 **Braghiroli MI**, de Celis Ferrari AC, Pfiffer TE, Alex AK, Nebuloni D, Carneiro AS, Caparelli F, Senna L, Lobo J, Hoff PM, Riechelmann RP. Phase II trial of metformin and paclitaxel for patients with gemcitabine-refractory advanced adenocarcinoma of the pancreas. *Ecancermedicalscience* 2015; **9**: 563 [PMID: 26316884 DOI: 10.3332/ecancer.2015.563]
142 **Viale A**, Pettazzoni P, Lyssiotis CA, Ying H, Sánchez N, Marchesini M, Carugo A, Green T, Seth S, Giuliani V, Kost-Alimova M, Muller F, Colla S, Nezi L, Genovese G, Deem AK, Kapoor A, Yao W, Brunetto E, Kang Y, Yuan M, Asara JM, Wang YA, Heffernan TP, Kimmelman AC, Wang H, Fleming JB, Cantley LC, DePinho RA, Draetta GF. Oncogene ablation-resistant pancreatic cancer cells depend on mitochondrial function. *Nature* 2014; **514**: 628-632 [PMID: 25119024 DOI: 10.1038/nature13611]
143 **Ming M**, Sinnett-Smith J, Wang J, Soares HP, Young SH, Eibl G, Rozengurt E. Dose-Dependent AMPK-Dependent and Independent Mechanisms of Berberine and Metformin Inhibition of mTORC1, ERK, DNA Synthesis and Proliferation in Pancreatic Cancer Cells. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e114573 [PMID: 25493642 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0114573]
144 **Kisfalvi K**, Eibl G, Sinnett-Smith J, Rozengurt E. Metformin disrupts crosstalk between G protein-coupled receptor and insulin receptor signaling systems and inhibits pancreatic cancer growth. *Cancer Res* 2009; **69**: 6539-6545 [PMID: 19679549 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-09-0418]
145 **Karnevi E**, Said K, Andersson R, Rosendahl AH. Metformin-mediated growth inhibition involves suppression of the IGF-I receptor signalling pathway in human pancreatic cancer cells. *BMC Cancer* 2013; **13**: 235 [PMID: 23663483 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2407-13-235]
146 **Moffitt RA**, Marayati R, Flate EL, Volmar KE, Loeza SG, Hoadley KA, Rashid NU, Williams LA, Eaton SC, Chung AH, Smyla JK, Anderson JM, Kim HJ, Bentrem DJ, Talamonti MS, Iacobuzio-Donahue CA, Hollingsworth MA, Yeh JJ. Virtual microdissection identifies distinct tumor- and stroma-specific subtypes of pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. *Nat Genet* 2015; **47**: 1168-1178 [PMID: 26343385 DOI: 10.1038/ng.3398]
147 **Collisson EA**, Bailey P, Chang DK, Biankin AV. Molecular subtypes of pancreatic cancer. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2019; **16**: 207-220 [PMID: 30718832 DOI: 10.1038/s41575-019-0109-y]
148 **Bailey P**, Chang DK, Nones K, Johns AL, Patch AM, Gingras MC, Miller DK, Christ AN, Bruxner TJ, Quinn MC, Nourse C, Murtaugh LC, Harliwong I, Idrisoglu S, Manning S, Nourbakhsh E, Wani S, Fink L, Holmes O, Chin V, Anderson MJ, Kazakoff S, Leonard C, Newell F, Waddell N, Wood S, Xu Q, Wilson PJ, Cloonan N, Kassahn KS, Taylor D, Quek K, Robertson A, Pantano L, Mincarelli L, Sanchez LN, Evers L, Wu J, Pinese M, Cowley MJ, Jones MD, Colvin EK, Nagrial AM, Humphrey ES, Chantrill LA, Mawson A, Humphris J, Chou A, Pajic M, Scarlett CJ, Pinho AV, Giry-Laterriere M, Rooman I, Samra JS, Kench JG, Lovell JA, Merrett ND, Toon CW, Epari K, Nguyen NQ, Barbour A, Zeps N, Moran-Jones K, Jamieson NB, Graham JS, Duthie F, Oien K, Hair J, Grützmann R, Maitra A, Iacobuzio-Donahue CA, Wolfgang CL, Morgan RA, Lawlor RT, Corbo V, Bassi C, Rusev B, Capelli P, Salvia R, Tortora G, Mukhopadhyay D, Petersen GM; Australian Pancreatic Cancer Genome Initiative, Munzy DM, Fisher WE, Karim SA, Eshleman JR, Hruban RH, Pilarsky C, Morton JP, Sansom OJ, Scarpa A, Musgrove EA, Bailey UM, Hofmann O, Sutherland RL, Wheeler DA, Gill AJ, Gibbs RA, Pearson JV, Biankin AV, Grimmond SM. Genomic analyses identify molecular subtypes of pancreatic cancer. *Nature* 2016; **531**: 47-52 [PMID: 26909576 DOI:

10.1038/nature16965]
149 **Vaccaro V**, Sperduti I, Vari S, Bria E, Melisi D, Garufi C, Nuzzo C, Scarpa A, Tortora G, Cognetti F, Reni M, Milella M. Metastatic pancreatic cancer: Is there a light at the end of the tunnel? *World J Gastroenterol* 2015; **21**: 4788-4801 [PMID: 25944992 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v21.i16.4788]
150 **Reni M**, Cereda S, Milella M, Novarino A, Passardi A, Mambrini A, Di Lucca G, Aprile G, Belli C, Danova M, Bergamo F, Franceschi E, Fugazza C, Ceraulo D, Villa E. Maintenance sunitinib or observation in metastatic pancreatic adenocarcinoma: a phase II randomised trial. *Eur J Cancer* 2013; **49**: 3609-3615 [PMID: 23899530 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2013.06.041]
151 **Hallet J**, Law CH, Cukier M, Saskin R, Liu N, Singh S. Exploring the rising incidence of neuroendocrine tumors: a population-based analysis of epidemiology, metastatic presentation, and outcomes. *Cancer* 2015; **121**: 589-597 [PMID: 25312765 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.29099]
152 **Pusceddu S**, Vernieri C, Prinzi N, Torchio M, Coppa J, Antista M, Niger M, Milione M, Giacomelli L, Corti F, Prisciandaro M, Monteleone M, Colombo E, Di Bartolomeo M, de Braud F. The potential role of metformin in the treatment of patients with pancreatic neuroendocrine tumors: a review of preclinical to clinical evidence. *Therap Adv Gastroenterol* 2020; **13**: 1756284820927271 [PMID: 32821286 DOI: 10.1177/1756284820927271]
153 **Pusceddu S**, Vernieri C, Di Maio M, Marconcini R, Spada F, Massironi S, Ibrahim T, Brizzi MP, Campana D, Faggiano A, Giuffrida D, Rinzivillo M, Cingarlini S, Aroldi F, Antonuzzo L, Berardi R, Catena L, De Divitiis C, Ermacora P, Perfetti V, Fontana A, Razzore P, Carnaghi C, Davì MV, Cauchi C, Duro M, Ricci S, Fazio N, Cavalcoli F, Bongiovanni A, La Salvia A, Brighi N, Colao A, Puliafito I, Panzuto F, Ortolani S, Zaniboni A, Di Costanzo F, Torniai M, Bajetta E, Tafuto S, Garattini SK, Femia D, Prinzi N, Concas L, Lo Russo G, Milione M, Giacomelli L, Buzzoni R, Delle Fave G, Mazzaferro V, de Braud F. Metformin Use Is Associated With Longer Progression-Free Survival of Patients With Diabetes and Pancreatic Neuroendocrine Tumors Receiving Everolimus and/or Somatostatin Analogues. *Gastroenterology* 2018; **155**: 479-489. e7 [PMID: 29655834 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2018.04.010]
154 **Vlotides G**, Tanyeri A, Spampatti M, Zitzmann K, Chourdakis M, Spttl C, Maurer J, Nölting S, Göke B, Auernhammer CJ. Anticancer effects of metformin on neuroendocrine tumor cells in vitro. *Hormones (Athens)* 2014; **13**: 498-508 [PMID: 25402373 DOI: 10.14310/horm.2002.1517]
155 **Herrera-Martínez AD**, Pedraza-Arevalo S, L-López F, Gahete MD, Gálvez-Moreno MA, Castaño JP, Luque RM. Type 2 Diabetes in Neuroendocrine Tumors: Are Biguanides and Statins Part of the Solution? *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2019; **104**: 57-73 [PMID: 30265346 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2018-01455]
156 **Vitali E**, Boemi I, Tarantola G, Piccini S, Zerbi A, Veronesi G, Baldelli R, Mazziotti G, Smiroldo V, Lavezzi E, Spada A, Mantovani G, Lania AG. Metformin and Everolimus: A Promising Combination for Neuroendocrine Tumors Treatment. *Cancers (Basel)* 2020; **12** [PMID: 32748870 DOI: 10.3390/cancers12082143]
157 **McGlynn KA**, Petrick JL, El-Serag HB. Epidemiology of Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2021; **73** Suppl 1: 4-13 [PMID: 32319693 DOI: 10.1002/hep.31288]
158 **Hassan MM**, Curley SA, Li D, Kaseb A, Davila M, Abdalla EK, Javle M, Moghazy DM, Lozano RD, Abbruzzese JL, Vauthey JN. Association of diabetes duration and diabetes treatment with the risk of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cancer* 2010; **116**: 1938-1946 [PMID: 20166205 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.24982]
159 **Donadon V**, Balbi M, Mas MD, Casarin P, Zanette G. Metformin and reduced risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in diabetic patients with chronic liver disease. *Liver Int* 2010; **30**: 750-758 [PMID: 20331505 DOI: 10.1111/j.1478-3231.2010.02223.x]
160 **Ma S**, Zheng Y, Xiao Y, Zhou P, Tan H. Meta-analysis of studies using metformin as a reducer for liver cancer risk in diabetic patients. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2017; **96**: e6888 [PMID: 28489794 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000006888]
161 **Cunha V**, Cotrim HP, Rocha R, Carvalho K, Lins-Kusterer L. Metformin in the prevention of hepatocellular carcinoma in diabetic patients: A systematic review. *Ann Hepatol* 2020; **19**: 232-237 [PMID: 31836424 DOI: 10.1016/j.aohep.2019.10.005]
162 **Home PD**, Kahn SE, Jones NP, Noronha D, Beck-Nielsen H, Viberti G; ADOPT Study Group; RECORD Steering Committee. Experience of malignancies with oral glucose-lowering drugs in the randomised controlled ADOPT (A Diabetes Outcome Progression Trial) and RECORD (Rosiglitazone Evaluated for Cardiovascular Outcomes and Regulation of Glycaemia in Diabetes) clinical trials. *Diabetologia* 2010; **53**: 1838-1845 [PMID: 20532476 DOI: 10.1007/s00125-010-1804-y]
163 **Chen TM**, Lin CC, Huang PT, Wen CF. Metformin associated with lower mortality in diabetic patients with early stage hepatocellular carcinoma after radiofrequency ablation. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2011; **26**: 858-865 [PMID: 21251068 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2011.06664.x]
164 **Ma SJ**, Zheng YX, Zhou PC, Xiao YN, Tan HZ. Metformin use improves survival of diabetic liver cancer patients: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Oncotarget* 2016; **7**: 66202-66211 [PMID: 27494848 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.11033]
165 **Zheng L**, Yang W, Wu F, Wang C, Yu L, Tang L, Qiu B, Li Y, Guo L, Wu M, Feng G, Zou D, Wang H. Prognostic significance of AMPK activation and therapeutic effects of metformin in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Clin Cancer Res* 2013; **19**: 5372-5380 [PMID: 23942093 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-13-0203]
166 **Cai X**, Hu X, Cai B, Wang Q, Li Y, Tan X, Hu H, Chen X, Huang J, Cheng J, Jing X. Metformin

suppresses hepatocellular carcinoma cell growth through induction of cell cycle G1/G0 phase arrest and p21CIP and p27KIP expression and downregulation of cyclin D1 *in vitro* and in vivo. *Oncol Rep* 2013; **30**: 2449-2457 [PMID: 24008375 DOI: 10.3892/or.2013.2718]

167 **Antwi SO**, Mousa OY, Patel T. Racial, Ethnic, and Age Disparities in Incidence and Survival of Intrahepatic Cholangiocarcinoma in the United States; 1995-2014. *Ann Hepatol* 2018; **17**: 604-614 [PMID: 29893702 DOI: 10.5604/01.3001.0012.0929]

168 **Chaiteerakij R**, Yang JD, Harmsen WS, Slettedahl SW, Mettler TA, Fredericksen ZS, Kim WR, Gores GJ, Roberts RO, Olson JE, Therneau TM, Roberts LR. Risk factors for intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma: association between metformin use and reduced cancer risk. *Hepatology* 2013; **57**: 648-655 [PMID: 23055147 DOI: 10.1002/hep.26092]

169 **Yang Z**, Zhang X, Roberts RO, Roberts LR, Chaiteerakij R. Metformin does not improve survival of cholangiocarcinoma patients with diabetes. *Hepatology* 2016; **63**: 667-668 [PMID: 25833233 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27821]

170 **Hundal R**, Shaffer EA. Gallbladder cancer: epidemiology and outcome. *Clin Epidemiol* 2014; **6**: 99-109 [PMID: 24634588 DOI: 10.2147/CLEP.S37357]

171 **Ling S**, Feng T, Ke Q, Fan N, Li L, Li Z, Dong C, Wang C, Xu F, Li Y, Wang L. Metformin inhibits proliferation and enhances chemosensitivity of intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma cell lines. *Oncol Rep* 2014; **31**: 2611-2618 [PMID: 24788596 DOI: 10.3892/or.2014.3151]

172 **Ling S**, Xie H, Yang F, Shan Q, Dai H, Zhuo J, Wei X, Song P, Zhou L, Xu X, Zheng S. Metformin potentiates the effect of arsenic trioxide suppressing intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma: roles of p38 MAPK, ERK3, and mTORC1. *J Hematol Oncol* 2017; **10**: 59 [PMID: 28241849 DOI: 10.1186/s13045-017-0424-0]

173 **Fujimori T**, Kato K, Fujihara S, Iwama H, Yamashita T, Kobayashi K, Kamada H, Morishita A, Kobara H, Mori H, Okano K, Suzuki Y, Masaki T. Antitumor effect of metformin on cholangiocarcinoma: In vitro and *in vivo* studies. *Oncol Rep* 2015; **34**: 2987-2996 [PMID: 26398221 DOI: 10.3892/or.2015.4284]

174 **Zhu HQ**, Ma JB, Song X, Gao HJ, Ma CQ, Chang H, Li HG, Liu FF, Lu J, Zhou X. Metformin potentiates the anticancer activities of gemcitabine and cisplatin against cholangiocarcinoma cells *in vitro* and in vivo. *Oncol Rep* 2016; **36**: 3488-3496 [PMID: 27779693 DOI: 10.3892/or.2016.5187]

175 **Liu Y**, Wang Z, Li M, Ye Y, Xu Y, Zhang Y, Yuan R, Jin Y, Hao Y, Jiang L, Hu Y, Chen S, Liu F, Wu W, Liu Y. Chloride intracellular channel 1 regulates the antineoplastic effects of metformin in gallbladder cancer cells. *Cancer Sci* 2017; **108**: 1240-1252 [PMID: 28378944 DOI: 10.1111/cas.13248]

176 **Ye J**, Chen K, Qi L, Li R, Tang H, Zhou C, Zhai W. Metformin suppresses hypoxiainduced migration *via* the HIF1α/VEGF pathway in gallbladder cancer in vitro and in vivo. *Oncol Rep* 2018; **40**: 3501-3510 [PMID: 30272364 DOI: 10.3892/or.2018.6751]

177 **Yamashita T**, Kato K, Fujihara S, Iwama H, Morishita A, Yamana H, Kobayashi K, Kamada H, Chiyo T, Kobara H, Tsutsui K, Okano K, Suzuki Y, Masaki T. Anti-diabetic drug metformin inhibits cell proliferation and tumor growth in gallbladder cancer *via* G0/G1 cell cycle arrest. *Anticancer Drugs* 2020; **31**: 231-240 [PMID: 31815765 DOI: 10.1097/CAD.0000000000000870]

178 **Bi T**, Zhu A, Yang X, Qiao H, Tang J, Liu Y, Lv R. Metformin synergistically enhances antitumor activity of cisplatin in gallbladder cancer *via* the PI3K/AKT/ERK pathway. *Cytotechnology* 2018; **70**: 439-448 [PMID: 29110119 DOI: 10.1007/s10616-017-0160-x]

179 **Sung H**, Ferlay J, Siegel RL, Laversanne M, Soerjomataram I, Jemal A, Bray F. Global cancer statistics 2020: GLOBOCAN estimates of incidence and mortality worldwide for 36 cancers in 185 countries. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2021 [PMID: 33538338 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21660]

180 **Lim SS**, Vos T, Flaxman AD, Danaei G, Shibuya K, Adair-Rohani H, Amann M, Anderson HR, Andrews KG, Aryee M, Atkinson C, Bacchus LJ, Bahalim AN, Balakrishnan K, Balmes J, Barker-Collo S, Baxter A, Bell ML, Blore JD, Blyth F, Bonner C, Borges G, Bourne R, Boussinesq M, Brauer M, Brooks P, Bruce NG, Brunekreef B, Bryan-Hancock C, Bucello C, Buchbinder R, Bull F, Burnett RT, Byers TE, Calabria B, Carapetis J, Carnahan E, Chafe Z, Charlson F, Chen H, Chen JS, Cheng AT, Child JC, Cohen A, Colson KE, Cowie BC, Darby S, Darling S, Davis A, Degenhardt L, Dentener F, Des Jarlais DC, Devries K, Dherani M, Ding EL, Dorsey ER, Driscoll T, Edmond K, Ali SE, Engell RE, Erwin PJ, Fahimi S, Falder G, Farzadfar F, Ferrari A, Finucane MM, Flaxman S, Fowkes FG, Freedman G, Freeman MK, Gakidou E, Ghosh S, Giovannucci E, Gmel G, Graham K, Grainger R, Grant B, Gunnell D, Gutierrez HR, Hall W, Hoek HW, Hogan A, Hosgood HD 3rd, Hoy D, Hu H, Hubbell BJ, Hutchings SJ, Ibeanusi SE, Jacklyn GL, Jasrasaria R, Jonas JB, Kan H, Kanis JA, Kassebaum N, Kawakami N, Khang YH, Khatibzadeh S, Khoo JP, Kok C, Laden F, Lalloo R, Lan Q, Lathlean T, Leasher JL, Leigh J, Li Y, Lin JK, Lipshultz SE, London S, Lozano R, Lu Y, Mak J, Malekzadeh R, Mallinger L, Marcenes W, March L, Marks R, Martin R, McGale P, McGrath J, Mehta S, Mensah GA, Merriman TR, Micha R, Michaud C, Mishra V, Mohd Hanafiah K, Mokdad AA, Morawska L, Mozaffarian D, Murphy T, Naghavi M, Neal B, Nelson PK, Nolla JM, Norman R, Olives C, Omer SB, Orchard J, Osborne R, Ostro B, Page A, Pandey KD, Parry CD, Passmore E, Patra J, Pearce N, Pelizzari PM, Petzold M, Phillips MR, Pope D, Pope CA 3rd, Powles J, Rao M, Razavi H, Rehfuess EA, Rehm JT, Ritz B, Rivara FP, Roberts T, Robinson C, Rodriguez-Portales JA, Romieu I, Room R, Rosenfeld LC, Roy A, Rushton L, Salomon JA, Sampson U, Sanchez-Riera L, Sanman E, Sapkota A, Seedat S, Shi P, Shield K, Shivakoti R, Singh GM, Sleet DA, Smith E, Smith KR, Stapelberg NJ, Steenland K, Stöckl H, Stovner LJ, Straif K, Straney L, Thurston GD, Tran JH, Van Dingenen R, van Donkelaar A, Veerman JL, Vijayakumar L, Weintraub R, Weissman

MM, White RA, Whiteford H, Wiersma ST, Wilkinson JD, Williams HC, Williams W, Wilson N, Woolf AD, Yip P, Zielinski JM, Lopez AD, Murray CJ, Ezzati M, AlMazroa MA, Memish ZA. A comparative risk assessment of burden of disease and injury attributable to 67 risk factors and risk factor clusters in 21 regions, 1990-2010: a systematic analysis for the Global Burden of Disease Study 2010. *Lancet* 2012; **380**: 2224-2260 [PMID: 23245609 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(12)61766-8]

181 **Laterre PF**, François B. Strengths and limitations of industry vs. academic randomized controlled trials. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2015; **21**: 906-909 [PMID: 26183298 DOI: 10.1016/j.cmi.2015.07.004]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

*World J Gastroenterol* 2021 May 7; 27(17): 1905-1919

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i17.1905

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

*REVIEW*

# Mesenchymal stromal cell secretome in liver failure: Perspectives on COVID-19 infection treatment

Cinzia Maria Chinnici, Giovanna Russelli, Matteo Bulati, Vitale Miceli, Alessia Gallo, Rosalia Busà, Rosaria Tinnirello, Pier Giulio Conaldi, Gioacchin Iannolo

**ORCID number:** Cinzia Maria Chinnici 0000-0001-9318-6606; Giovanna Russelli 0000-0002-1920-0892; Matteo Bulati 0000-0002-3269-935X; Vitale Miceli 0000-0001-8922-9909; Alessia Gallo 0000-0001-6737-9770; Rosalia Busà 0000-0002-7546-7209; Rosaria Tinnirello 0000-0002-4324-5097; Pier Giulio Conaldi 0000-0003-1994-8005; Gioacchin Iannolo 0000-0002-7710-4735.

**Author contributions:** Chinnici CM, Russelli G, Bulati M, Miceli V, Gallo A, Busà R, Tinnirello R, Conaldi PG and Iannolo G conducted the research and edited all drafts of the manuscript.

**Supported by** UPMC International, Pittsburg, United States, No. I0000026; Italian Ministry of Education, University and Research, Rome, Italy, No. CTN01_00177_888744; and PO FESR Sicilia 2014/2020 Azione 1.1.5 Project (Prometeo), No. 08PA8610200270.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** The authors declare having no conflicts of interest.



**Cinzia Maria Chinnici, Giovanna Russelli, Matteo Bulati, Vitale Miceli, Alessia Gallo, Rosalia Busà, Pier Giulio Conaldi, Gioacchin Iannolo,** Department of Research, Mediterranean Institute for Transplantation and Advanced Specialized Therapies (IRCCS-ISMETT), Palermo 90127, Italy

**Cinzia Maria Chinnici,** Department of Regenerative Medicine, Fondazione Ri.MED, Palermo 90127, Italy

**Rosaria Tinnirello,** Neuroscience Unit, CNR Institute of Biomedicine and Molecular Immunology, Palermo 90146, Italy

**Corresponding author:** Gioacchin Iannolo, PhD, Research Scientist, Department of Research, Mediterranean Institute for Transplantation and Advanced Specialized Therapies (IRCCS-ISMETT), Via Ernesto Tricomi, 5, Palermo 90127, Italy. giannolo@ismett.edu

## Abstract

Due to their immunomodulatory potential and release of trophic factors that promote healing, mesenchymal stromal cells (MSCs) are considered important players in tissue homeostasis and regeneration. MSCs have been widely used in clinical trials to treat multiple conditions associated with inflammation and tissue damage. Recent evidence suggests that most of the MSC therapeutic effects are derived from their secretome, including the extracellular vesicles, representing a promising approach in regenerative medicine application to treat organ failure as a result of inflammation/fibrosis. The recent outbreak of respiratory syndrome coronavirus, caused by the newly identified agent severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 (SARS-CoV-2), has forced scientists worldwide to use all available instruments to fight the infection, including the inflammatory cascade caused by this pandemic disease. The use of MSCs is a valid approach to combat organ inflammation in different compartments. In addition to the lungs, which are considered the main inflammatory target for this virus, other organs are compromised by the infection. In particular, the liver is involved in the inflammatory response to SARS-CoV-2 infection, which causes organ failure, leading to death in coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) patients. We herein summarize the current implications derived from the use of MSCs and their soluble derivatives in COVID-19 treatment, and emphasize the potential of MSC-based therapy in this clinical setting.

**Key Words:** Mesenchymal stromal cell; COVID-19; SARS-CoV-2; Organ failure;

**Manuscript source:** Invited manuscript

**Specialty type:** Gastroenterology and hepatology

**Country/Territory of origin:** Italy

**Peer-review report's scientific quality classification**

Grade A (Excellent): A
Grade B (Very good): 0
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

**Received:** January 27, 2021
**Peer-review started:** January 27, 2021
**First decision:** February 24, 2021
**Revised:** March 5, 2021
**Accepted:** April 5, 2021
**Article in press:** April 5, 2021
**Published online:** May 7, 2021

**P-Reviewer:** Li Q, Suzuki YJ
**S-Editor:** Gao CC
**L-Editor:** Filipodia
**P-Editor:** Liu JH

Inflammation; Transplantation



**Core Tip:** The recent coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) pandemic outbreak has forced scientists worldwide to use all available options to fight this disease, in particular the inflammatory cascade caused by this infection. Mesenchymal stromal cells, for their immunomodulatory potential, represent a valid approach to combat organ inflammation. The main targets for this virus are the lungs, while other organs such as the liver are compromised by the infection. Evaluation of the albumin role in COVID-19 patients, and the connection to the "capillary leak syndrome" have focused attention on liver dysfunction correlated with the infection.

**Citation:** Chinnici CM, Russelli G, Bulati M, Miceli V, Gallo A, Busà R, Tinnirello R, Conaldi PG, Iannolo G. Mesenchymal stromal cell secretome in liver failure: Perspectives on COVID-19 infection treatment. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; 27(17): 1905-1919
**URL:** https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v27/i17/1905.htm
**DOI:** https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v27.i17.1905

## INTRODUCTION

The liver can be damaged by various factors, including cytotoxic molecules, ischemia, metabolic alterations, or viral infections[1], which result in inflammatory responses contributing to further liver damage[2]. If the inflammation persists, a transition from acute to chronic injury can occur, inducing hepatic fibrosis[2]. Therefore, therapies that can reduce liver inflammation/fibrosis are crucial in order to avoid organ failure and the need for transplantation.

In recent years, the use of mesenchymal stromal cells (MSCs) has been considered a promising therapeutic approach to treat liver injuries[3]. MSCs can be isolated from different compartments including adipose tissue[4], umbilical cord[5], bone marrow[6], or placenta[7,8]. These cells have been successfully used in different therapeutic applications aimed at reducing inflammatory responses[9]. Moreover, the infusion of MSCs immediately after liver transplantation promotes organ regeneration and prolonged recipient survival by reducing acute inflammation[10].

Despite their beneficial properties, there are several limitations to the use of MSCs for cellular therapies; for example, their plasticity causes the potential risk of differentiation into undesired tissues and the possibility of malignant transformation is under debate[11,12]. To overcome these issues, the use of cell-free therapy is gaining considerable attention as a treatment for liver injury, an alternative to conventional cell transplantation[13]. Indeed, the regenerative properties of the MSC secretome include immunomodulatory effects mediated by growth factors and cytokines, such as transforming growth factor beta (TGF-β), prostaglandin E2, indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase, hepatocyte growth factor (HGF), interleukin-10 (IL-10), and tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF-α)[14,15], which can also attenuate fibrogenesis. In addition, the MSC therapeutic effects could also result from the released extracellular vesicles (EVs). EVs include a highly heterogeneous group of vesicles of different size able to modulate the immune responses[16,17]. Indeed, MSC-derived EVs can be selectively enriched with anti-fibrotic[18] and anti-apoptotic[19] factors, as well as specific non-coding RNA with therapeutic potential[20].

In December 2019, several cases of death from pneumonia were reported in Wuhan, later related to a new coronavirus-related disease called coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19). Analysis of its genome revealed it to be phylogenetically related to severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus (SARS-CoV)[21], and for this reason it was named SARS-CoV-2 by the World Health Organization (WHO). Due to its worldwide spread, the WHO declared COVID-19 a pandemic in March 2020. Angiotensin-converting enzyme 2 receptor (ACE2), highly expressed in the respiratory tract, was considered the main SARS-CoV-2 viral attachment for animal cells. Most likely for this reason, the lungs are the principal target organs for SARS-CoV-2[22,23]. This virus triggers an exacerbated immune reaction because large amounts of different

inflammatory factors, including cytokines and chemokines, are produced by immune reactive cells.

It has been hypothesized that MSC-based therapy for COVID-19 patients can prevent the development of a cytokine storm by activating the immune system and promoting organ repair[24,25]. Intravenously injected MSCs reach the lungs, where they engraft and secrete a variety of soluble factors including anti-inflammatory factors, angiogenic factors, and EVs[26,27]. Studies aimed toward reversing COVID-19 side effects through MSC treatment are ongoing. In this review, we summarize the therapeutic potentials of the MSC secretome for treating liver injuries associated with COVID-19.

## MSC SECRETOME AND EVS FOR ORGAN INJURY

The use of MSC-based therapy for regenerative medicine applications counts in the hundreds of registered clinical trials (www.clinicaltrial.gov) because of the ability of these cells to promote immunomodulation and organ regeneration[28]. The release of trophic factors has demonstrated that their action is in part attributable to their secretome and, in particular, to secreted EVs[29]. Because of their intrinsic therapeutic potential, EVs are a powerful tool of regenerative medicine for the treatment of a wide range of diseases[30]. Due to heterogeneity in size and contents, as well as lack of specific markers, distinguishing the various EV subtypes is an ongoing challenge. According to the International Society for Extracellular Vesicles (ISEV), the generic term EVs includes nano-sized particles naturally released into the extracellular space by all cell types; they are delimited by a lipid bilayer and cannot replicate[31]. The ISEV consensus suggests considering physical parameters (*e.g.*, size or density) to distinguish "small" EVs, often referred as "exosomes" (< 100-200 nm in diameter) from "medium/large" EVs or "microvesicles" (> 200 nm). EVs are replete with diverse proteins, lipids, carbohydrates, and nucleic acids, and exert many of their functions of intercellular communicators by transferring their cargo molecules among cells. The specific cargo composition of EVs is largely defined by the tissue/cell type from which they originate[32]. Similarly to EVs from other cell types, MSC-EVs can be characterized according to the guidelines indicated by the ISEV. The available data suggest that EVs may significantly contribute to the paracrine effects of MSCs on tissue regeneration[33]. Because of EVs' broad biological functions, as well as their ability to transfer molecules between cells, MSC-EV-based therapy represents an attractive alternative to cell-based therapy. Application of MSC-EVs as a cell-free therapy has several advantages over conventional cell therapy. Primarily, EV injection carries lower safety risks because of their minimal reactivity to the immune system, and seem to be generally well tolerated, even when used xenogenically[34]. Then, because of their small size compared to MSCs, the intravenous delivery of EVs presents lower risk of vascular obstructions. Finally, EVs can also be genetically manipulated to carry desired therapeutic cargo for a broad, expanding range of potential clinical applications. The number of studies demonstrating the therapeutic potential of MSC-EVs in different disease models is growing rapidly. The beneficial effects of MSC-EV-based treatment are evidenced especially in cardioprotection and angiogenesis[35].

Understanding the mechanisms of action behind the therapeutic effects of MSC-EVs are crucial in view of their future clinical applications. Despite increasing interest, this field is still in its infancy in identifying the relevant bioactive molecules released by MSC-EVs that play a role in tissue repair. Efforts to identify these molecules lead to the conclusion that MSC-EVs preferentially contain mRNAs and microRNAs (miRNAs) targeting genes that participate in several cellular pathways involved in tissue repair, such as angiogenesis, migration, proliferation, self-renewal, differentiation, cellular transport, and apoptosis[36,37]. The overexpression of certain miRNAs can contribute to enhancing the therapeutic efficacy of MSC-EVs. For example, MSC-EVs over-expressing miR-21 have neuroprotective effects by targeting several genes involved in the inhibition of cell apoptosis[38,39]. The list of miRNAs known to increase the therapeutic potential of MSC-EVs in numerous disease models is long, and their therapeutic effects range from tumor modulation, immune suppression, and angiogenesis to tissue regeneration[40].

In addition to miRNAs, the beneficial effect of EV-derived proteins has been explored in terms of tissue repair and anti-inflammatory effects as a treatment for liver fibrosis, ischemia, myocardial infarction, acute renal injury, neural regeneration, or in the context of bone and cartilage regeneration[40]. Proteins identified in MSC-EVs and

linked to tissue repair include glial-derived neurotrophic factor, vascular endothelial growth factor, fibroblast growth factor, HGF, and angiotensin 1[41].

Although the number of clinical studies is limited, growing evidence shows the beneficial effects of MSC-EVs on tissue injuries. The impact of MSC-EVs on tissue regeneration has been investigated in several animal models of neuronal, cardiac, bone, cartilage, kidney, muscle, wound healing, respiratory injury, and liver regeneration[41,42]. Interestingly, data from animal models indicate that MSC-EVs can exert therapeutic potential similar to their cellular origin[41,43-46]. The list of registered clinical trials (https://clinicaltrials.gov) reporting tissue injuries-treated with MSC-EVs is shown in Table 1.

MSC-EVs show great potential as a regenerative medicine treatment for liver diseases. The benefits of MSC-EVs in liver diseases are documented in animal models of both acute[20] and chronic[47] liver injuries. MSC-EVs exert a beneficial effect by alleviating fibrosis and improving regeneration of hepatocytes[46]. In particular, EVs from fetal MSCs promote hepatocyte proliferation and decrease hepatocyte apoptosis in liver injury induced by carbon tetrachloride[48], or ameliorate oxidative stress in ischemia reperfusion injury (IRI) models in rats[49] and mice[50]. Similarly, EVs of MSC-derived induced pluripotent stem cells have hepatoprotective effects on a rat model of IRI by inducing hepatocyte proliferation[51,52]. Finally, the anti-fibrotic effects of hydrogel-embedded MSC-EVs are documented in chronic liver failure[53]. The results from *in vivo* studies indicate EVs as essential contributors to MSC therapeutic efficacy, and suggest that MSC-EV-based therapy may be a successful alternative to cell-based treatments. Nevertheless, there are still many important questions to be answered before MSC-EVs can become a fully realized cell-free therapy. These challenges comprise studies establishing the exact contribution of EVs to MSC-based therapy, including the underlying molecule mechanisms, or identifying which EV population is the most therapeutically effective. In addition, a major ongoing debate in the field of MSC EV-based therapy concerns the purity of the obtained vesicles due to contamination of the samples with non-EV proteins, RNAs, and lipoproteins[41].

## LIVER FAILURE IN COVID-19 PATIENTS

SARS-CoV-2 is the etiological agent of the pandemic COVID-19, characterized by respiratory distress and/or hypoxemia, fever, fatigue, dry cough and, in severe cases, septic shock, metabolic acidosis, and death[54]. SARS-CoV-2, as with other corona viruses, enters the host cells by binding to the ACE-2 receptor[55], while the serine protease transmembrane serine protease 2 is required for S protein priming[56]. Despite the higher tropism for the respiratory tract, SARS-CoV-2 also targets other tissues, given that the ACE2 receptor is widely distributed in other tissues[57-61]. To shed light on the SARS-CoV-2 tropism, Nardo *et al*[62] analyzed, on the Human Protein Atlas, the expression levels of two proteins, ACE-2 receptor and TMPRSS2, in different human tissues, thus revealing a higher expression in the intestine and gall bladder, but their absence in the liver. A single-cell analysis, performed on healthy human liver samples, showed that while ACE-2 expression level in cholangiocytes is comparable to that of alveolar cells in the lungs, it is barely detectable in hepatocytes[63]. Interestingly, the liver cell line HuH7 is an established permissive cell type for both SARS-CoV and SARS-CoV-2 infection, and has recently been extensively used as a model in SARS-CoV-2 studies[64,65]. In addition, an *in vitro* study found that SARS-CoV-2 infection leads to a decrease of cholangiocellular tight junction protein claudin 1 mRNA expression, implying a reduced barrier function of cholangiocytes[66]. The presence of SARS-CoV-2 receptors in the gastrointestinal (GI) tract suggests an important role of the hepatobiliary tract in viral replication and excretion[67]. In fact, the virus has also been isolated from stool samples[68]. The involvement of the GI tract in COVID-19 disease is confirmed by the GI symptoms occurring in more than 60% of infected patients, as la ack of appetite, loss of smell and taste, anorexia, diarrhea, abdominal pain, nausea, and vomiting[69-74]. Moreover, post-mortem biopsies of SARS-CoV-2-infected patients showed the presence of the viral genome in hepatocytes and the GI tract by reverse transcription polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR)[75-77].

Though liver failure in COVID-19 patients has been considered marginal, the incidence of hepatic tissue injury in these patients ranges from 14.8% to 53%[78], while mortality ranges from 58.06% to 78%[79,80]. The liver is a key organ in nearly all metabolic processes, has immunologic functions, and is the main detoxifying organ.

**Table 1 List of registered clinical trials on the use of mesenchymal stromal cell-derived extracellular vesicles for tissue injury**

| Tissue injury disease | Condition | Treatment | Trial ID | Status |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Chronic lung disease | Pediatric bronchopulmonary dysplasia | BM-MSC-derived EVs | NCT03857841 | Phase I |
| Lung disease | Pneumonia, COVID-19 | BM-MSC-derived EVs | NCT04493242 | Not yet recruiting |
| Lung disease | Pneumonia, COVID-19 | Inhalation of mesenchymal stem cell exosomes | NCT04276987 | Phase I |
| Multiple organ failure | Multiple organ dysfunction syndrome | MSC exosomes | NCT04356300 | Not yet recruiting |
| Lung disease | Pulmonary infection | MSC exosomes | NCT04544215 | Recruiting |
| Dry eye | GVHD | UC-MSC exosomes | NCT04213248 | Recruiting |
| Cartilage injury | Osteoarthritis | Secretome or EVs from adipose MSCs | NCT04223622 | Not yet recruiting |
| Skin disease | Dystrophic epidermolysis bullosa | BM-MSC EVs | NCT04173650 | Phase II |
| Brain | Cerebrovascular disorders | Allogenic MSCs enriched with miR-124 | NCT03384433 | Phase II |

BM: Bone marrow; COVID-19: Coronavirus disease 2019; EV: Extracellular vesicle; GVHD: Graft-*vs*-host disease; MSC: Mesenchymal stromal cell; UC: Umbilical cord.

Moreover, because of the production of albumin, acute phase reactants and coagulation factors, the liver can strongly affect the multisystem manifestations of COVID-19[62]. In fact, modified levels of hepatic function indicators such as aspartate aminotransferase (AST), alanine aminotransferase (ALT), albumin, gamma-glutamyl transferase, and bilirubin have been observed in patients with COVID-19, and principally in severe diseases[59,81-84]. Many studies have shown that liver injury occurs in the early stage of the disease, with mild or moderate increase of ALT, AST, or bilirubin together with a decrease in albumin levels[79,85,86]. High AST levels have been associated with the highest mortality risk[57,87], while decreased albumin levels have been associated with severe infection and poor prognosis[88,89]. Since the specific pathogenetic mechanism by which the virus causes liver injury is still unclear, many hypotheses have been offered, including immune-mediated damage. The triggering of an exacerbated immune response to the viral infection leads to a massive release of cytokines and inflammation mediators known as cytokine storm, which is responsible for immune-mediated liver damage[89] (Figure 1).

High levels of cytokines and chemokines (*i.e.* IL-1β, Il-2, IL-6, IL-8, IL-10, Il-17, interferons [IFNs], IFN-induced protein 10, TNF-α, granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor [GM-CSF], monocyte chemoattractant protein-1, macrophage inflammatory protein-1α) and other inflammatory molecules (PCR, ferritin, lactate dehydrogenase, D-dimer) have been observed in severe SARS-CoV-2-infected patients[54,57,88,90-92]. This highly inflammatory milieu leads to multiorgan damage, including liver failure, and is strictly linked to poor prognosis and death in COVID-19 patients[88,90]. As confirmation, liver samples from COVID-19 patient autopsies have revealed micro-vesicular steatosis and inflammation[93-95]. In fact, SARS-CoV-2 infects both hepatic cells and bile duct epithelium, causing liver impairment by direct cytopathic effect, as demonstrated by high transaminase levels and post-mortem liver biopsy specimens showing moderate micro-vesicular steatosis and mild lobular and portal activity[79]. Furthermore, the presence of SARS-CoV-2 has been found in parenchymal cells and vascular endothelium of the liver in COVID-19 patients[76,77].

Additional causes of liver injury can include hypoxia, hypovolemia, and microvascular thrombosis. The hypoxic state associated with COVID-19 can induce ischemic/hypoxic liver injury[87-89]. Considering that COVID-19 patients suffer from severe hypoxia, with the induction of ACE2 receptor expression on hepatocytes[96], a direct infection of hepatocytes by SARS-CoV-2 in hypoxic conditions has been suggested[25]. Liver injury can also be drug-induced. Most of the drugs used against SARS-CoV-2 are potentially hepatotoxic: Antivirals (lopinavir/ritonavir, remdesivir, umifenovir), antibiotics (macrolides, quinolones), chloroquine, tocilizumab, and steroids as well as antipyretic drugs used for fever in COVID-19[79,90,97,98]. Moreover, it must be considered that the majority of COVID-19 patients developing liver complications have a pre-existing chronic liver disease, rendering them more susceptible to liver injury. Interestingly, it has been reported that liver fibrotic/cirrhotic conditions lead to an increase of ACE-2 receptor expression in hepatocytes[96], thus suggesting again a possible role of pre-existing pathological liver

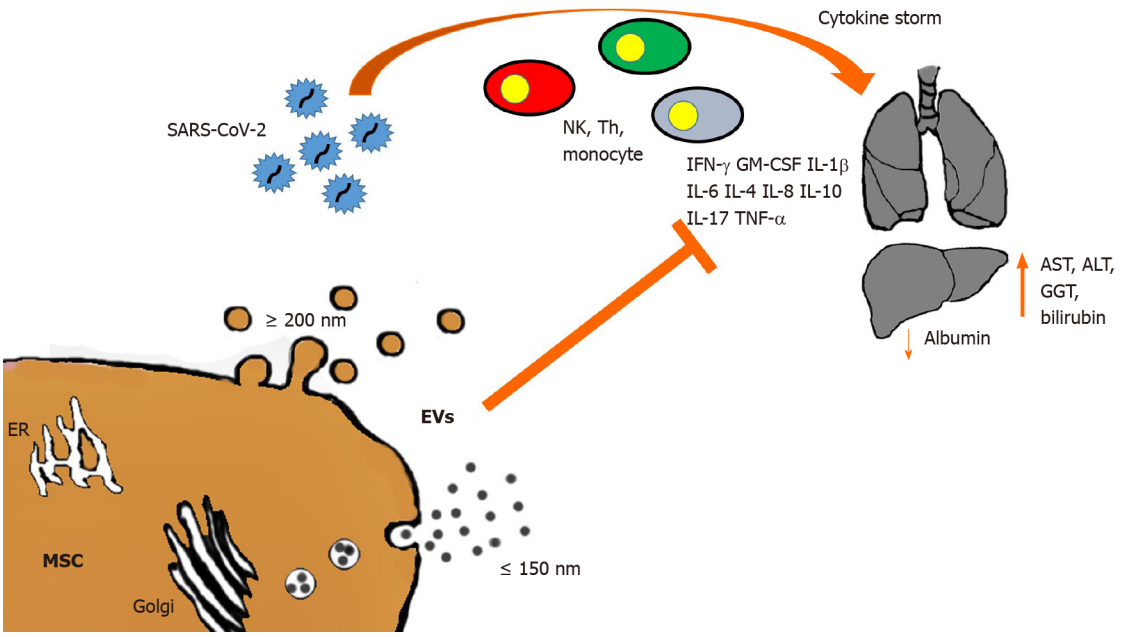



**Figure 1 Schematic representation of severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 impact on lungs and liver.** Cytokine storm with the cascade triggered by natural killer (NK) cells, T helper (Th) cell and monocytes, and the production of inflammatory cytokines (interleukin 1 beta [IL-1b], Il-2, IL-6, IL-8, IL-10, Il-17, interferons [IFNs], IFN-induced protein 10, tumor necrosis factor alpha, granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor [GM-CSF]). The infection in the liver causes an increase in aspartate aminotransferase (AST), alanine aminotransferase (ALT), gamma-glutamyl transferase (GGT) and bilirubin, and a decrease in albumin. Mesenchymal stromal cells (MSCs) can reduce the inflammatory response by extracellular vesicle (EV) release (large ≥ 200 nm and small ≤ 150 nm). ER: Endoplasmic reticulum; SARS-CoV-2: Severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2.

conditions in exacerbating SARS-CoV-2 hepatic tropism.

## MSCS AND IMMUNOMODULATION IN COVID-19

The immunomodulatory properties of MSCs represent a promising therapeutic approach for the treatment of autoimmune and inflammatory diseases[99]. The anti-inflammatory and regenerative properties of MSCs have been established in numerous preclinical models of immune-related disorders including graft-*vs*-host disease, sepsis, inflammatory bowel disease, and allergic airway disease[100-103]. Recent phase I/II clinical trials have shown that the infusion of MSCs immediately after liver transplantation promoted organ regeneration and prolonged recipient survival by reducing acute inflammation, thus suggesting that MSCs can be a promising candidate for cell-based immunotherapy in solid organ transplantation[10,104]. In addition, murine models of liver fibrosis showed that human MSC-derived EVs are able to reduce hepatic inflammation and fibrosis through a decrease of TGF-β, IFN-γ, IL-1, IL-2 and TNF-α levels, an increase of Treg numbers, and a reduction of collagen deposition, all acting together to combat necrosis in the liver[105-107] (Figure 1). Among others, liver injury has been reported as a common complication in SARS-CoV-2 infection, with the degree of liver damage strictly related to the severity of COVID-19[92,108-110]. Although the exact mechanism of liver injury in COVID-19 patients is still unknown, it has been suggested that either the progression of pre-existing hepatic diseases or a direct damage of the liver can be associated with the systemic inflammation caused by SARS-CoV-2 infection, toxicity of anti-viral drugs, or hypoxia-reperfusion injury[109,110].

Pathogenic T cells are rapidly activated after SARS-CoV-2 infection, thus producing GM-CSF, IL-6, and other proinflammatory factors. GM-CSF will further activate inflammatory monocytes ($CD14^+CD16^+$), which in turn produce a larger amount of IL-6 and other pro-inflammatory factors, triggering the cytokine storm, which is the main cause of the organ damage, such as in the lungs, kidney, and liver[110]. Recently, the use of MSCs has been proposed as a promising therapeutic approach for COVID-19 patients. The effectiveness and safety of MSC-based treatment are supported by several clinical studies, suggesting that MSC therapy may improve the clinical outcomes of COVID-19 patients through immunomodulation, regulation of

inflammatory response, and promotion of tissue repair[111-115]. Moreover, a vast number of clinical trials that use MSCs to treat COVID-19 have already been registered (http://www.chictr.org.cn; https://clinicaltrials.gov). According to their immunomodulatory properties, the use of MSC-based therapies could be a novel strategy to counteract the harmful effects on the liver caused by SARS-CoV-2 infection.

## DISCUSSION

Among the numerous drug treatments, which include antiviral therapy, cytokine inhibitors (*e.g.*, IL-6), and specific antibody treatment (serum/monoclonal)[116], MSCs represent a potential option for critical cases[117]. As discussed above, SARS-CoV-2 infection induces a cytokine storm, causing acute respiratory distress syndrome and multiple-organ failure. IL-6 inhibition by tocilizumab was positively tested in a randomized clinical trial (http://www.chictr.org.cn/showprojen.aspx?proj=49409). Likewise, in this inhibition MSCs can represent a valid alternative, and it has been shown that EV administration counteracts IL-6-induced acute liver injury (ALI) in rat models through the presence of miR-455-3p[118]. MSC treatment showed that the symptomatology of patients was relieved within 2-4 d after MSC infusion, with oxygen saturation increasing to 95% at rest[119]. Another study involved critically ill COVID-19 patients treated with an infusion of human umbilical cord MSCs. In this case, the patients were treated with three different infusions of cells at an interval of 3 d, displayed no observable side effects, and were able to walk within 4 d[115]. Leng *et al*[119] showed that after infusion of MSCs in COVID-19 patients, the number of peripheral lymphocytes increased, while the levels of C-reactive protein decreased. In addition, in MSC-treated COVID-19 patients compared with those treated with conventional therapy a clear reduction of the major pro-inflammatory cytokine TNF-α, and an increase of IL-10 concentration were observed[119]. Therefore, in an immune-mediated disease condition like COVID-19 infection, the anti-inflammatory activities of MSCs could contribute to improving the conditions of patients after their infusion.

Despite the limited published data, and based on various studies, it could be speculated that SARS-COV-2 induces ALI[79]. SARS-CoV-2 could insult the liver either directly, by the cytopathic effect of the virus after infections of the hepatocytes, or indirectly, by induction of uncontrolled immune reaction, oxidative stress, and/or by pharmacological treatments for COVID-19 that induce liver injury. However, the mechanisms underlying liver impairment in COVID-19 patients are still unknown. Tian *et al*[94] found sinusoidal dilatation and focal macrovesicular steatosis in liver biopsies obtained post-mortem from four patients with COVID-19 and, in one of these, SARS-CoV-2 RNA was isolated from liver tissue. Wang *et al*[73] found that four patients (2.9% of 138 patients hospitalized for COVID-19) had chronic liver disease. In another study, cases of ALI were reported in 13 of 274 patients (4.7%)[120]. Interestingly, Richardson *et al*[121] showed that, in a study including 5700 COVID-19 patients, 58.4% and 39% developed higher levels of ALT and AST, respectively. In addition, among these patients, 56 (1%) developed acute hepatic injury (32320003). Therefore, many COVID-19 patients showed higher levels of both ALT and AST, and mainly in patients with severe disease, liver impairment can occur[54,59,120].

The intravenous administration of MSCs lowered the elevated serum levels of AST and ALT, and increased the amount of HGF, resulting in reduction of ALI[122]. Moreover, in a rat model of ALI, MSCs inhibited neutrophil infiltration, oxidative stress, and hepatocyte apoptosis[123], showing that MSC treatment had significant systemic anti-inflammatory effects and reduction of hepatic inflammation. Moreover, MSCs can prevent lung damage not only directly, with anti-inflammatory activity, but also indirectly by supporting liver function in maintaining the plasma level of albumin (Figure 1). Johnson *et al*[124] recently underscored the interplay between albumin and SARS-CoV-2, while the importance of albumin in COVID-19 patients has also been strongly stressed by several research teams, who describe a "capillary leak syndrome" in infected patients. This extravascular leakage of intravascular fluids is induced by hypoglobulinemia[125]. A histological analysis of COVID-19 lungs in SARS-CoV-2-infected patients confirmed the presence of pulmonary vascular permeability where the endothelial cells appear swollen[126]. Hypoalbuminemia is an indication of liver dysfunction in the elderly, where it is, per se, an index of increased mortality[127]. The large amounts of extravascular fluid due to the resulting vascular permeability, require mechanical ventilation to overcome the problem.

## CONCLUSION

At present, there is no standardized therapy for COVID-19 patients. Though many innovative treatments have been rapidly approved, additional experimental therapies are necessary to treat the worse cases of infection. Despite the fact that all MSC clinical trials for COVID-19 treatment are currently focused on lung/respiratory function, and some of the exclusion criteria are liver disease/insufficiency, we believe, on the basis of current studies, that MSC-based therapy can also help liver dysfunction correlated with SARS-CoV-2 infection.

## REFERENCES


1 **Guicciardi ME**, Gores GJ. Apoptosis: a mechanism of acute and chronic liver injury. *Gut* 2005; **54**: 1024-1033 [PMID: 15951554 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2004.053850]
2 **Del Campo JA**, Gallego P, Grande L. Role of inflammatory response in liver diseases: Therapeutic strategies. *World J Hepatol* 2018; **10**: 1-7 [PMID: 29399273 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v10.i1.1]
3 **Wang YH**, Wu DB, Chen B, Chen EQ, Tang H. Progress in mesenchymal stem cell-based therapy for acute liver failure. *Stem Cell Res Ther* 2018; **9**: 227 [PMID: 30143052 DOI: 10.1186/s13287-018-0972-4]
4 **Zuk PA**, Zhu M, Ashjian P, De Ugarte DA, Huang JI, Mizuno H, Alfonso ZC, Fraser JK, Benhaim P, Hedrick MH. Human adipose tissue is a source of multipotent stem cells. *Mol Biol Cell* 2002; **13**: 4279-4295 [PMID: 12475952 DOI: 10.1091/mbc.e02-02-0105]
5 **Miranda JP**, Filipe E, Fernandes AS, Almeida JM, Martins JP, De la Fuente A, Abal M, Barcia RN, Cruz P, Cruz H, Castro M, Santos JM. The Human Umbilical Cord Tissue-Derived MSC Population UCX(®) Promotes Early Motogenic Effects on Keratinocytes and Fibroblasts and G-CSF-Mediated Mobilization of BM-MSCs When Transplanted In Vivo. *Cell Transplant* 2015; **24**: 865-877 [PMID: 24480602 DOI: 10.3727/096368913X676231]
6 **Colter DC**, Class R, DiGirolamo CM, Prockop DJ. Rapid expansion of recycling stem cells in cultures of plastic-adherent cells from human bone marrow. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2000; **97**: 3213-3218 [PMID: 10725391 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.070034097]
7 **Miceli V**, Pampalone M, Vella S, Carreca AP, Amico G, Conaldi PG. Comparison of Immunosuppressive and Angiogenic Properties of Human Amnion-Derived Mesenchymal Stem Cells between 2D and 3D Culture Systems. *Stem Cells Int* 2019; **2019**: 7486279 [PMID: 30911299 DOI: 10.1155/2019/7486279]
8 **Magatti M**, De Munari S, Vertua E, Gibelli L, Wengler GS, Parolini O. Human amnion mesenchyme harbors cells with allogeneic T-cell suppression and stimulation capabilities. *Stem Cells* 2008; **26**: 182-192 [PMID: 17901399 DOI: 10.1634/stemcells.2007-0491]
9 **Sargent A**, Miller RH. MSC Therapeutics in Chronic Inflammation. *Curr Stem Cell Rep* 2016; **2**: 168-173 [PMID: 28133600 DOI: 10.1007/s40778-016-0044-6]
10 **Wang W**, Du Z, Yan J, Ma D, Shi M, Zhang M, Peng C, Li H. Mesenchymal stem cells promote liver regeneration and prolong survival in small-for-size liver grafts: involvement of C-Jun N-terminal kinase, cyclin D1, and NF-κB. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e112532 [PMID: 25479410 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0112532]
11 **Volarevic V**, Markovic BS, Gazdic M, Volarevic A, Jovicic N, Arsenijevic N, Armstrong L, Djonov V, Lako M, Stojkovic M. Ethical and Safety Issues of Stem Cell-Based Therapy. *Int J Med Sci* 2018; **15**: 36-45 [PMID: 29333086 DOI: 10.7150/ijms.21666]
12 **Herberts CA**, Kwa MS, Hermsen HP. Risk factors in the development of stem cell therapy. *J Transl Med* 2011; **9**: 29 [PMID: 21418664 DOI: 10.1186/1479-5876-9-29]
13 **Hu C**, Zhao L, Zhang L, Bao Q, Li L. Mesenchymal stem cell-based cell-free strategies: safe and effective treatments for liver injury. *Stem Cell Res Ther* 2020; **11**: 377 [PMID: 32883343 DOI: 10.1186/s13287-020-01895-1]
14 **Alfaifi M**, Eom YW, Newsome PN, Baik SK. Mesenchymal stromal cell therapy for liver diseases. *J Hepatol* 2018; **68**: 1272-1285 [PMID: 29425678 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2018.01.030]
15 **Parekkadan B**, van Poll D, Megeed Z, Kobayashi N, Tilles AW, Berthiaume F, Yarmush ML. Immunomodulation of activated hepatic stellate cells by mesenchymal stem cells. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2007; **363**: 247-252 [PMID: 17869217 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2007.05.150]
16 **Bulati M**, Miceli V, Gallo A, Amico G, Carcione C, Pampalone M, Conaldi PG. The Immunomodulatory Properties of the Human Amnion-Derived Mesenchymal Stromal/Stem Cells Are Induced by INF-γ Produced by Activated Lymphomonocytes and Are Mediated by Cell-To-Cell Contact and Soluble Factors. *Front Immunol* 2020; **11**: 54 [PMID: 32117234 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2020.00054]
17 **Kordelas L**, Rebmann V, Ludwig AK, Radtke S, Ruesing J, Doeppner TR, Epple M, Horn PA, Beelen DW, Giebel B. MSC-derived exosomes: a novel tool to treat therapy-refractory graft-versus-host disease. *Leukemia* 2014; **28**: 970-973 [PMID: 24445866 DOI: 10.1038/leu.2014.41]
18 **Rong X**, Liu J, Yao X, Jiang T, Wang Y, Xie F. Human bone marrow mesenchymal stem cells-derived exosomes alleviate liver fibrosis through the Wnt/β-catenin pathway. *Stem Cell Res Ther* 2019; **10**: 98 [PMID: 30885249 DOI: 10.1186/s13287-019-1204-2]

19 **Lou G**, Chen Z, Zheng M, Liu Y. Mesenchymal stem cell-derived exosomes as a new therapeutic strategy for liver diseases. *Exp Mol Med* 2017; **49**: e346 [PMID: 28620221 DOI: 10.1038/emm.2017.63]

20 **Haga H**, Yan IK, Takahashi K, Matsuda A, Patel T. Extracellular Vesicles from Bone Marrow-Derived Mesenchymal Stem Cells Improve Survival from Lethal Hepatic Failure in Mice. *Stem Cells Transl Med* 2017; **6**: 1262-1272 [PMID: 28213967 DOI: 10.1002/sctm.16-0226]

21 **Lu R**, Zhao X, Li J, Niu P, Yang B, Wu H, Wang W, Song H, Huang B, Zhu N, Bi Y, Ma X, Zhan F, Wang L, Hu T, Zhou H, Hu Z, Zhou W, Zhao L, Chen J, Meng Y, Wang J, Lin Y, Yuan J, Xie Z, Ma J, Liu WJ, Wang D, Xu W, Holmes EC, Gao GF, Wu G, Chen W, Shi W, Tan W. Genomic characterisation and epidemiology of 2019 novel coronavirus: implications for virus origins and receptor binding. *Lancet* 2020; **395**: 565-574 [PMID: 32007145 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(20)30251-8]

22 **Jia HP**, Look DC, Shi L, Hickey M, Pewe L, Netland J, Farzan M, Wohlford-Lenane C, Perlman S, McCray PB Jr. ACE2 receptor expression and severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus infection depend on differentiation of human airway epithelia. *J Virol* 2005; **79**: 14614-14621 [PMID: 16282461 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.79.23.14614-14621.2005]

23 **Liu Z**, Xiao X, Wei X, Li J, Yang J, Tan H, Zhu J, Zhang Q, Wu J, Liu L. Composition and divergence of coronavirus spike proteins and host ACE2 receptors predict potential intermediate hosts of SARS-CoV-2. *J Med Virol* 2020; **92**: 595-601 [PMID: 32100877 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.25726]

24 **Glenn JD**, Whartenby KA. Mesenchymal stem cells: Emerging mechanisms of immunomodulation and therapy. *World J Stem Cells* 2014; **6**: 526-539 [PMID: 25426250 DOI: 10.4252/wjsc.v6.i5.526]

25 **Lizardo-Thiebaud MJ**, Cervantes-Alvarez E, Limon-de la Rosa N, Tejeda-Dominguez F, Palacios-Jimenez M, Méndez-Guerrero O, Delaye-Martinez M, Rodriguez-Alvarez F, Romero-Morales B, Liu WH, Huang CA, Kershenobich D, Navarro-Alvarez N. Direct or Collateral Liver Damage in SARS-CoV-2-Infected Patients. *Semin Liver Dis* 2020; **40**: 321-330 [PMID: 32886936 DOI: 10.1055/s-0040-1715108]

26 **Lee RH**, Pulin AA, Seo MJ, Kota DJ, Ylostalo J, Larson BL, Semprun-Prieto L, Delafontaine P, Prockop DJ. Intravenous hMSCs improve myocardial infarction in mice because cells embolized in lung are activated to secrete the anti-inflammatory protein TSG-6. *Cell Stem Cell* 2009; **5**: 54-63 [PMID: 19570514 DOI: 10.1016/j.stem.2009.05.003]

27 **Hu S**, Park J, Liu A, Lee J, Zhang X, Hao Q, Lee JW. Mesenchymal Stem Cell Microvesicles Restore Protein Permeability Across Primary Cultures of Injured Human Lung Microvascular Endothelial Cells. *Stem Cells Transl Med* 2018; **7**: 615-624 [PMID: 29737632 DOI: 10.1002/sctm.17-0278]

28 **Chinnici CM**, Pietrosi G, Iannolo G, Amico G, Cuscino N, Pagano V, Conaldi PG. Mesenchymal stromal cells isolated from human fetal liver release soluble factors with a potential role in liver tissue repair. *Differentiation* 2019; **105**: 14-26 [PMID: 30553176 DOI: 10.1016/j.diff.2018.12.001]

29 **Lai RC**, Arslan F, Lee MM, Sze NS, Choo A, Chen TS, Salto-Tellez M, Timmers L, Lee CN, El Oakley RM, Pasterkamp G, de Kleijn DP, Lim SK. Exosome secreted by MSC reduces myocardial ischemia/reperfusion injury. *Stem Cell Res* 2010; **4**: 214-222 [PMID: 20138817 DOI: 10.1016/j.scr.2009.12.003]

30 **Tsiapalis D**, O'Driscoll L. Mesenchymal Stem Cell Derived Extracellular Vesicles for Tissue Engineering and Regenerative Medicine Applications. *Cells* 2020; **9** [PMID: 32316248 DOI: 10.3390/cells9040991]

31 **Théry C**, Witwer KW, Aikawa E, Alcaraz MJ, Anderson JD, Andriantsitohaina R, Antoniou A, Arab T, Archer F, Atkin-Smith GK, Ayre DC, Bach JM, Bachurski D, Baharvand H, Balaj L, Baldacchino S, Bauer NN, Baxter AA, Bebawy M, Beckham C, Bedina Zavec A, Benmoussa A, Berardi AC, Bergese P, Bielska E, Blenkiron C, Bobis-Wozowicz S, Boilard E, Boireau W, Bongiovanni A, Borràs FE, Bosch S, Boulanger CM, Breakefield X, Breglio AM, Brennan MÁ, Brigstock DR, Brisson A, Broekman ML, Bromberg JF, Bryl-Górecka P, Buch S, Buck AH, Burger D, Busatto S, Buschmann D, Bussolati B, Buzás EI, Byrd JB, Camussi G, Carter DR, Caruso S, Chamley LW, Chang YT, Chen C, Chen S, Cheng L, Chin AR, Clayton A, Clerici SP, Cocks A, Cocucci E, Coffey RJ, Cordeiro-da-Silva A, Couch Y, Coumans FA, Coyle B, Crescitelli R, Criado MF, D'Souza-Schorey C, Das S, Datta Chaudhuri A, de Candia P, De Santana EF, De Wever O, Del Portillo HA, Demaret T, Deville S, Devitt A, Dhondt B, Di Vizio D, Dieterich LC, Dolo V, Dominguez Rubio AP, Dominici M, Dourado MR, Driedonks TA, Duarte FV, Duncan HM, Eichenberger RM, Ekström K, El Andaloussi S, Elie-Caille C, Erdbrügger U, Falcón-Pérez JM, Fatima F, Fish JE, Flores-Bellver M, Försönits A, Frelet-Barrand A, Fricke F, Fuhrmann G, Gabrielsson S, Gámez-Valero A, Gardiner C, Gärtner K, Gaudin R, Gho YS, Giebel B, Gilbert C, Gimona M, Giusti I, Goberdhan DC, Görgens A, Gorski SM, Greening DW, Gross JC, Gualerzi A, Gupta GN, Gustafson D, Handberg A, Haraszti RA, Harrison P, Hegyesi H, Hendrix A, Hill AF, Hochberg FH, Hoffmann KF, Holder B, Holthofer H, Hosseinkhani B, Hu G, Huang Y, Huber V, Hunt S, Ibrahim AG, Ikezu T, Inal JM, Isin M, Ivanova A, Jackson HK, Jacobsen S, Jay SM, Jayachandran M, Jenster G, Jiang L, Johnson SM, Jones JC, Jong A, Jovanovic-Talisman T, Jung S, Kalluri R, Kano SI, Kaur S, Kawamura Y, Keller ET, Khamari D, Khomyakova E, Khvorova A, Kierulf P, Kim KP, Kislinger T, Klingeborn M, Klinke DJ 2nd, Kornek M, Kosanović MM, Kovács ÁF, Krämer-Albers EM, Krasemann S, Krause M, Kurochkin IV, Kusuma GD, Kuypers S, Laitinen S, Langevin SM, Languino LR, Lannigan J, Lässer C, Laurent LC, Lavieu G, Lázaro-Ibáñez E, Le Lay S, Lee MS, Lee YXF, Lemos DS, Lenassi M, Leszczynska A, Li IT, Liao K, Libregts SF, Ligeti

E, Lim R, Lim SK, Linē A, Linnemannstöns K, Llorente A, Lombard CA, Lorenowicz MJ, Lörincz ÁM, Lötvall J, Lovett J, Lowry MC, Loyer X, Lu Q, Lukomska B, Lunavat TR, Maas SL, Malhi H, Marcilla A, Mariani J, Mariscal J, Martens-Uzunova ES, Martin-Jaular L, Martinez MC, Martins VR, Mathieu M, Mathivanan S, Maugeri M, McGinnis LK, McVey MJ, Meckes DG Jr, Meehan KL, Mertens I, Minciacchi VR, Möller A, Møller Jørgensen M, Morales-Kastresana A, Morhayim J, Mullier F, Muraca M, Musante L, Mussack V, Muth DC, Myburgh KH, Najrana T, Nawaz M, Nazarenko I, Nejsum P, Neri C, Neri T, Nieuwland R, Nimrichter L, Nolan JP, Nolte-'t Hoen EN, Noren Hooten N, O'Driscoll L, O'Grady T, O'Loghlen A, Ochiya T, Olivier M, Ortiz A, Ortiz LA, Osteikoetxea X, Østergaard O, Ostrowski M, Park J, Pegtel DM, Peinado H, Perut F, Pfaffl MW, Phinney DG, Pieters BC, Pink RC, Pisetsky DS, Pogge von Strandmann E, Polakovicova I, Poon IK, Powell BH, Prada I, Pulliam L, Quesenberry P, Radeghieri A, Raffai RL, Raimondo S, Rak J, Ramirez MI, Raposo G, Rayyan MS, Regev-Rudzki N, Ricklefs FL, Robbins PD, Roberts DD, Rodrigues SC, Rohde E, Rome S, Rouschop KM, Rughetti A, Russell AE, Saá P, Sahoo S, Salas-Huenuleo E, Sánchez C, Saugstad JA, Saul MJ, Schiffelers RM, Schneider R, Schøyen TH, Scott A, Shahaj E, Sharma S, Shatnyeva O, Shekari F, Shelke GV, Shetty AK, Shiba K, Siljander PR, Silva AM, Skowronek A, Snyder OL 2nd, Soares RP, Sódar BW, Soekmadji C, Sotillo J, Stahl PD, Stoorvogel W, Stott SL, Strasser EF, Swift S, Tahara H, Tewari M, Timms K, Tiwari S, Tixeira R, Tkach M, Toh WS, Tomasini R, Torrecilhas AC, Tosar JP, Toxavidis V, Urbanelli L, Vader P, van Balkom BW, van der Grein SG, Van Deun J, van Herwijnen MJ, Van Keuren-Jensen K, van Niel G, van Royen ME, van Wijnen AJ, Vasconcelos MH, Vechetti IJ Jr, Veit TD, Vella LJ, Velot É, Verweij FJ, Vestad B, Viñas JL, Visnovitz T, Vukman KV, Wahlgren J, Watson DC, Wauben MH, Weaver A, Webber JP, Weber V, Wehman AM, Weiss DJ, Welsh JA, Wendt S, Wheelock AM, Wiener Z, Witte L, Wolfram J, Xagorari A, Xander P, Xu J, Yan X, Yáñez-Mó M, Yin H, Yuana Y, Zappulli V, Zarubova J, Žėkas V, Zhang JY, Zhao Z, Zheng L, Zheutlin AR, Zickler AM, Zimmermann P, Zivkovic AM, Zocco D, Zuba-Surma EK. Minimal information for studies of extracellular vesicles 2018 (MISEV2018): a position statement of the International Society for Extracellular Vesicles and update of the MISEV2014 guidelines. *J Extracell Vesicles* 2018; **7**: 1535750 [PMID: 30637094 DOI: 10.1080/20013078.2018.1535750]

32 **Doyle LM**, Wang MZ. Overview of Extracellular Vesicles, Their Origin, Composition, Purpose, and Methods for Exosome Isolation and Analysis. *Cells* 2019; **8** [PMID: 31311206 DOI: 10.3390/cells8070727]

33 **Zhang B**, Tian X, Hao J, Xu G, Zhang W. Mesenchymal Stem Cell-Derived Extracellular Vesicles in Tissue Regeneration. *Cell Transplant* 2020; **29**: 963689720908500 [PMID: 32207341 DOI: 10.1177/0963689720908500]

34 **Saleh AF**, Lázaro-Ibáñez E, Forsgard MA, Shatnyeva O, Osteikoetxea X, Karlsson F, Heath N, Ingelsten M, Rose J, Harris J, Mairesse M, Bates SM, Clausen M, Etal D, Leonard E, Fellows MD, Dekker N, Edmunds N. Extracellular vesicles induce minimal hepatotoxicity and immunogenicity. *Nanoscale* 2019; **11**: 6990-7001 [PMID: 30916672 DOI: 10.1039/c8nr08720b]

35 **Amosse J**, Martinez MC, Le Lay S. Extracellular vesicles and cardiovascular disease therapy. *Stem Cell Investig* 2017; **4**: 102 [PMID: 29359141 DOI: 10.21037/sci.2017.11.07]

36 **Eirin A**, Riester SM, Zhu XY, Tang H, Evans JM, O'Brien D, van Wijnen AJ, Lerman LO. MicroRNA and mRNA cargo of extracellular vesicles from porcine adipose tissue-derived mesenchymal stem cells. *Gene* 2014; **551**: 55-64 [PMID: 25158130 DOI: 10.1016/j.gene.2014.08.041]

37 **Chinnici CM**, Amico G, Gallo A, Iannolo G, Cuscino N, Vella S, Carcione C, Nascari D, Conaldi PG. Small Extracellular Vesicles from Human Fetal Dermal Cells and Their MicroRNA Cargo: KEGG Signaling Pathways Associated with Angiogenesis and Wound Healing. *Stem Cells Int* 2020; **2020**: 8889379 [PMID: 32855639 DOI: 10.1155/2020/8889379]

38 **Zhang H**, Wang Y, Lv Q, Gao J, Hu L, He Z. MicroRNA-21 Overexpression Promotes the Neuroprotective Efficacy of Mesenchymal Stem Cells for Treatment of Intracerebral Hemorrhage. *Front Neurol* 2018; **9**: 931 [PMID: 30459705 DOI: 10.3389/fneur.2018.00931]

39 **Kang J**, Li Z, Zhi Z, Wang S, Xu G. MiR-21 derived from the exosomes of MSCs regulates the death and differentiation of neurons in patients with spinal cord injury. *Gene Ther* 2019; **26**: 491-503 [PMID: 31570818 DOI: 10.1038/s41434-019-0101-8]

40 **Park KS**, Bandeira E, Shelke GV, Lässer C, Lötvall J. Enhancement of therapeutic potential of mesenchymal stem cell-derived extracellular vesicles. *Stem Cell Res Ther* 2019; **10**: 288 [PMID: 31547882 DOI: 10.1186/s13287-019-1398-3]

41 **Varderidou-Minasian S**, Lorenowicz MJ. Mesenchymal stromal/stem cell-derived extracellular vesicles in tissue repair: challenges and opportunities. *Theranostics* 2020; **10**: 5979-5997 [PMID: 32483432 DOI: 10.7150/thno.40122]

42 **Abraham A**, Krasnodembskaya A. Mesenchymal stem cell-derived extracellular vesicles for the treatment of acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Stem Cells Transl Med* 2020; **9**: 28-38 [PMID: 31647191 DOI: 10.1002/sctm.19-0205]

43 **Kim DK**, Nishida H, An SY, Shetty AK, Bartosh TJ, Prockop DJ. Chromatographically isolated CD63+CD81+ extracellular vesicles from mesenchymal stromal cells rescue cognitive impairments after TBI. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2016; **113**: 170-175 [PMID: 26699510 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1522297113]

44 **Bruno S**, Grange C, Deregibus MC, Calogero RA, Saviozzi S, Collino F, Morando L, Busca A, Falda M, Bussolati B, Tetta C, Camussi G. Mesenchymal stem cell-derived microvesicles protect

against acute tubular injury. *J Am Soc Nephrol* 2009; **20**: 1053-1067 [PMID: 19389847 DOI: 10.1681/ASN.2008070798]

45 **Stone ML**, Zhao Y, Robert Smith J, Weiss ML, Kron IL, Laubach VE, Sharma AK. Mesenchymal stromal cell-derived extracellular vesicles attenuate lung ischemia-reperfusion injury and enhance reconditioning of donor lungs after circulatory death. *Respir Res* 2017; **18**: 212 [PMID: 29268735 DOI: 10.1186/s12931-017-0704-9]

46 **Rostom DM**, Attia N, Khalifa HM, Abou Nazel MW, El Sabaawy EA. The Therapeutic Potential of Extracellular Vesicles Versus Mesenchymal Stem Cells in Liver Damage. *Tissue Eng Regen Med* 2020; **17**: 537-552 [PMID: 32506351 DOI: 10.1007/s13770-020-00267-3]

47 **Mardpour S**, Hassani SN, Mardpour S, Sayahpour F, Vosough M, Ai J, Aghdami N, Hamidieh AA, Baharvand H. Extracellular vesicles derived from human embryonic stem cell-MSCs ameliorate cirrhosis in thioacetamide-induced chronic liver injury. *J Cell Physiol* 2018; **233**: 9330-9344 [PMID: 29266258 DOI: 10.1002/jcp.26413]

48 **Tan CY**, Lai RC, Wong W, Dan YY, Lim SK, Ho HK. Mesenchymal stem cell-derived exosomes promote hepatic regeneration in drug-induced liver injury models. *Stem Cell Res Ther* 2014; **5**: 76 [PMID: 24915963 DOI: 10.1186/scrt465]

49 **Yao J**, Zheng J, Cai J, Zeng K, Zhou C, Zhang J, Li S, Li H, Chen L, He L, Chen H, Fu H, Zhang Q, Chen G, Yang Y, Zhang Y. Extracellular vesicles derived from human umbilical cord mesenchymal stem cells alleviate rat hepatic ischemia-reperfusion injury by suppressing oxidative stress and neutrophil inflammatory response. *FASEB J* 2019; **33**: 1695-1710 [PMID: 30226809 DOI: 10.1096/fj.201800131RR]

50 **Haga H**, Yan IK, Borrelli DA, Matsuda A, Parasramka M, Shukla N, Lee DD, Patel T. Extracellular vesicles from bone marrow-derived mesenchymal stem cells protect against murine hepatic ischemia/reperfusion injury. *Liver Transpl* 2017; **23**: 791-803 [PMID: 28407355 DOI: 10.1002/lt.24770]

51 **Nong K**, Wang W, Niu X, Hu B, Ma C, Bai Y, Wu B, Wang Y, Ai K. Hepatoprotective effect of exosomes from human-induced pluripotent stem cell-derived mesenchymal stromal cells against hepatic ischemia-reperfusion injury in rats. *Cytotherapy* 2016; **18**: 1548-1559 [PMID: 27592404 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcyt.2016.08.002]

52 **Du Y**, Li D, Han C, Wu H, Xu L, Zhang M, Zhang J, Chen X. Exosomes from Human-Induced Pluripotent Stem Cell-Derived Mesenchymal Stromal Cells (hiPSC-MSCs) Protect Liver against Hepatic Ischemia/ Reperfusion Injury *via* Activating Sphingosine Kinase and Sphingosine-1-Phosphate Signaling Pathway. *Cell Physiol Biochem* 2017; **43**: 611-625 [PMID: 28934733 DOI: 10.1159/000480533]

53 **Mardpour S**, Ghanian MH, Sadeghi-Abandansari H, Mardpour S, Nazari A, Shekari F, Baharvand H. Hydrogel-Mediated Sustained Systemic Delivery of Mesenchymal Stem Cell-Derived Extracellular Vesicles Improves Hepatic Regeneration in Chronic Liver Failure. *ACS Appl Mater Interfaces* 2019; **11**: 37421-37433 [PMID: 31525863 DOI: 10.1021/acsami.9b10126]

54 **Huang C**, Wang Y, Li X, Ren L, Zhao J, Hu Y, Zhang L, Fan G, Xu J, Gu X, Cheng Z, Yu T, Xia J, Wei Y, Wu W, Xie X, Yin W, Li H, Liu M, Xiao Y, Gao H, Guo L, Xie J, Wang G, Jiang R, Gao Z, Jin Q, Wang J, Cao B. Clinical features of patients infected with 2019 novel coronavirus in Wuhan, China. *Lancet* 2020; **395**: 497-506 [PMID: 31986264 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(20)30183-5]

55 **Li W**, Moore MJ, Vasilieva N, Sui J, Wong SK, Berne MA, Somasundaran M, Sullivan JL, Luzuriaga K, Greenough TC, Choe H, Farzan M. Angiotensin-converting enzyme 2 is a functional receptor for the SARS coronavirus. *Nature* 2003; **426**: 450-454 [PMID: 14647384 DOI: 10.1038/nature02145]

56 **Hoffmann M**, Kleine-Weber H, Schroeder S, Krüger N, Herrler T, Erichsen S, Schiergens TS, Herrler G, Wu NH, Nitsche A, Müller MA, Drosten C, Pöhlmann S. SARS-CoV-2 Cell Entry Depends on ACE2 and TMPRSS2 and Is Blocked by a Clinically Proven Protease Inhibitor. *Cell* 2020; **181**: 271-280. e8 [PMID: 32142651 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2020.02.052]

57 **Zhou F**, Yu T, Du R, Fan G, Liu Y, Liu Z, Xiang J, Wang Y, Song B, Gu X, Guan L, Wei Y, Li H, Wu X, Xu J, Tu S, Zhang Y, Chen H, Cao B. Clinical course and risk factors for mortality of adult inpatients with COVID-19 in Wuhan, China: a retrospective cohort study. *Lancet* 2020; **395**: 1054-1062 [PMID: 32171076 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(20)30566-3]

58 **Hamming I**, Timens W, Bulthuis ML, Lely AT, Navis G, van Goor H. Tissue distribution of ACE2 protein, the functional receptor for SARS coronavirus. A first step in understanding SARS pathogenesis. *J Pathol* 2004; **203**: 631-637 [PMID: 15141377 DOI: 10.1002/path.1570]

59 **Zhang C**, Shi L, Wang FS. Liver injury in COVID-19: management and challenges. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **5**: 428-430 [PMID: 32145190 DOI: 10.1016/S2468-1253(20)30057-1]

60 **Yan R**, Zhang Y, Li Y, Xia L, Guo Y, Zhou Q. Structural basis for the recognition of SARS-CoV-2 by full-length human ACE2. *Science* 2020; **367**: 1444-1448 [PMID: 32132184 DOI: 10.1126/science.abb2762]

61 **Xu H**, Zhong L, Deng J, Peng J, Dan H, Zeng X, Li T, Chen Q. High expression of ACE2 receptor of 2019-nCoV on the epithelial cells of oral mucosa. *Int J Oral Sci* 2020; **12**: 8 [PMID: 32094336 DOI: 10.1038/s41368-020-0074-x]

62 **Nardo AD**, Schneeweiss-Gleixner M, Bakail M, Dixon ED, Lax SF, Trauner M. Pathophysiological mechanisms of liver injury in COVID-19. *Liver Int* 2021; **41**: 20-32 [PMID: 33190346 DOI: 10.1111/liv.14730]

63 **Chai X**, Hu L, Zhang Y, Han W, Lu Z, Ke A, Zhou J, Shi G, Fang N, Fan J, Cai J, Lan F. Specific

ACE2 Expression in Cholangiocytes May Cause Liver Damage After 2019-nCoV Infection. 2020 Preprint. Available from: bioRxiv:2020.2002.2003.931766 [DOI: 10.1101/2020.02.03.931766]

64 **Chu H**, Chan JF, Yuen TT, Shuai H, Yuan S, Wang Y, Hu B, Yip CC, Tsang JO, Huang X, Chai Y, Yang D, Hou Y, Chik KK, Zhang X, Fung AY, Tsoi HW, Cai JP, Chan WM, Ip JD, Chu AW, Zhou J, Lung DC, Kok KH, To KK, Tsang OT, Chan KH, Yuen KY. Comparative tropism, replication kinetics, and cell damage profiling of SARS-CoV-2 and SARS-CoV with implications for clinical manifestations, transmissibility, and laboratory studies of COVID-19: an observational study. *Lancet Microbe* 2020; **1**: e14-e23 [PMID: 32835326 DOI: 10.1016/S2666-5247(20)30004-5]

65 **Yang L**, Han Y, Nilsson-Payant BE, Gupta V, Wang P, Duan X, Tang X, Zhu J, Zhao Z, Jaffré F, Zhang T, Kim TW, Harschnitz O, Redmond D, Houghton S, Liu C, Naji A, Ciceri G, Guttikonda S, Bram Y, Nguyen DT, Cioffi M, Chandar V, Hoagland DA, Huang Y, Xiang J, Wang H, Lyden D, Borczuk A, Chen HJ, Studer L, Pan FC, Ho DD, tenOever BR, Evans T, Schwartz RE, Chen S. A Human Pluripotent Stem Cell-based Platform to Study SARS-CoV-2 Tropism and Model Virus Infection in Human Cells and Organoids. *Cell Stem Cell* 2020; **27**: 125-136. e7 [PMID: 32579880 DOI: 10.1016/j.stem.2020.06.015]

66 **Zhao B**, Ni C, Gao R, Wang Y, Yang L, Wei J, Lv T, Liang J, Zhang Q, Xu W, Xie Y, Wang X, Yuan Z, Zhang R, Lin X. Recapitulation of SARS-CoV-2 infection and cholangiocyte damage with human liver ductal organoids. *Protein Cell* 2020; **11**: 771-775 [PMID: 32303993 DOI: 10.1007/s13238-020-00718-6]

67 **Xu Z**, Shi L, Wang Y, Zhang J, Huang L, Zhang C, Liu S, Zhao P, Liu H, Zhu L, Tai Y, Bai C, Gao T, Song J, Xia P, Dong J, Zhao J, Wang FS. Pathological findings of COVID-19 associated with acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Lancet Respir Med* 2020; **8**: 420-422 [PMID: 32085846 DOI: 10.1016/S2213-2600(20)30076-X]

68 **Xiao F**, Tang M, Zheng X, Liu Y, Li X, Shan H. Evidence for Gastrointestinal Infection of SARS-CoV-2. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **158**: 1831-1833. e3 [PMID: 32142773 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2020.02.055]

69 **Luo S**, Zhang X, Xu H. Don't Overlook Digestive Symptoms in Patients With 2019 Novel Coronavirus Disease (COVID-19). *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **18**: 1636-1637 [PMID: 32205220 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2020.03.043]

70 **Guan WJ**, Ni ZY, Hu Y, Liang WH, Ou CQ, He JX, Liu L, Shan H, Lei CL, Hui DSC, Du B, Li LJ, Zeng G, Yuen KY, Chen RC, Tang CL, Wang T, Chen PY, Xiang J, Li SY, Wang JL, Liang ZJ, Peng YX, Wei L, Liu Y, Hu YH, Peng P, Wang JM, Liu JY, Chen Z, Li G, Zheng ZJ, Qiu SQ, Luo J, Ye CJ, Zhu SY, Zhong NS; China Medical Treatment Expert Group for Covid-19. Clinical Characteristics of Coronavirus Disease 2019 in China. *N Engl J Med* 2020; **382**: 1708-1720 [PMID: 32109013 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa2002032]

71 **Zhou Z**, Zhao N, Shu Y, Han S, Chen B, Shu X. Effect of Gastrointestinal Symptoms in Patients With COVID-19. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **158**: 2294-2297 [PMID: 32199880 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2020.03.020]

72 **Redd WD**, Zhou JC, Hathorn KE, McCarty TR, Bazarbashi AN, Thompson CC, Shen L, Chan WW. Prevalence and Characteristics of Gastrointestinal Symptoms in Patients With Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome Coronavirus 2 Infection in the United States: A Multicenter Cohort Study. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **159**: 765-767. e2 [PMID: 32333911 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2020.04.045]

73 **Wang D**, Hu B, Hu C, Zhu F, Liu X, Zhang J, Wang B, Xiang H, Cheng Z, Xiong Y, Zhao Y, Li Y, Wang X, Peng Z. Clinical Characteristics of 138 Hospitalized Patients With 2019 Novel Coronavirus-Infected Pneumonia in Wuhan, China. *JAMA* 2020; **323**: 1061-1069 [PMID: 32031570 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2020.1585]

74 **Schmulson M**, Dávalos MF, Berumen J. Beware: Gastrointestinal symptoms can be a manifestation of COVID-19. *Rev Gastroenterol Mex* 2020; **85**: 282-287 [PMID: 32376072 DOI: 10.1016/j.rgmx.2020.04.001]

75 **Lin L**, Jiang X, Zhang Z, Huang S, Fang Z, Gu Z, Gao L, Shi H, Mai L, Liu Y, Lin X, Lai R, Yan Z, Li X, Shan H. Gastrointestinal symptoms of 95 cases with SARS-CoV-2 infection. *Gut* 2020; **69**: 997-1001 [PMID: 32241899 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2020-321013]

76 **Ding Y**, He L, Zhang Q, Huang Z, Che X, Hou J, Wang H, Shen H, Qiu L, Li Z, Geng J, Cai J, Han H, Li X, Kang W, Weng D, Liang P, Jiang S. Organ distribution of severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) associated coronavirus (SARS-CoV) in SARS patients: implications for pathogenesis and virus transmission pathways. *J Pathol* 2004; **203**: 622-630 [PMID: 15141376 DOI: 10.1002/path.1560]

77 **Farcas GA**, Poutanen SM, Mazzulli T, Willey BM, Butany J, Asa SL, Faure P, Akhavan P, Low DE, Kain KC. Fatal severe acute respiratory syndrome is associated with multiorgan involvement by coronavirus. *J Infect Dis* 2005; **191**: 193-197 [PMID: 15609228 DOI: 10.1086/426870]

78 **Zhang J**, Wang S, Xue Y. Fecal specimen diagnosis 2019 novel coronavirus-infected pneumonia. *J Med Virol* 2020; **92**: 680-682 [PMID: 32124995 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.25742]

79 **Xu L**, Liu J, Lu M, Yang D, Zheng X. Liver injury during highly pathogenic human coronavirus infections. *Liver Int* 2020; **40**: 998-1004 [PMID: 32170806 DOI: 10.1111/liv.14435]

80 **Zhang B**, Zhou X, Qiu Y, Song Y, Feng F, Feng J, Song Q, Jia Q, Wang J. Clinical characteristics of 82 cases of death from COVID-19. *PLoS One* 2020; **15**: e0235458 [PMID: 32645044 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0235458]

81 **Kulkarni AV**, Kumar P, Tevethia HV, Premkumar M, Arab JP, Candia R, Talukdar R, Sharma M, Qi X, Rao PN, Reddy DN. Systematic review with meta-analysis: liver manifestations and outcomes

in COVID-19. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2020; **52**: 584-599 [PMID: 32638436 DOI: 10.1111/apt.15916]

82 **Yadav DK**, Singh A, Zhang Q, Bai X, Zhang W, Yadav RK, Zhiwei L, Adhikari VP, Liang T. Involvement of liver in COVID-19: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Gut* 2021; **70**: 807-809 [PMID: 32669289 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2020-322072]

83 **Kumar-M P**, Mishra S, Jha DK, Shukla J, Choudhury A, Mohindra R, Mandavdhare HS, Dutta U, Sharma V. Coronavirus disease (COVID-19) and the liver: a comprehensive systematic review and meta-analysis. *Hepatol Int* 2020; **14**: 711-722 [PMID: 32623633 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-020-10071-9]

84 **Liu C**, Jiang ZC, Shao CX, Zhang HG, Yue HM, Chen ZH, Ma BY, Liu WY, Huang HH, Yang J, Wang Y, Liu HY, Xu D, Wang JT, Yang JY, Pan HQ, Zou SQ, Li FJ, Lei JQ, Li X, He Q, Gu Y, Qi XL. [Preliminary study of the relationship between novel coronavirus pneumonia and liver function damage: a multicenter study]. *Zhonghua Gan Zang Bing Za Zhi* 2020; **28**: 107-111 [PMID: 32077660 DOI: 10.3760/cma.j.issn.1007-3418.2020.02.003]

85 **Duan ZP**, Chen Y, Zhang J, Zhao J, Lang ZW, Meng FK, Bao XL. [Clinical characteristics and mechanism of liver injury in patients with severe acute respiratory syndrome]. *Zhonghua Ganzang Bing Zazhi* 2003; **11**: 493-496 [PMID: 12939186]

86 **Duan XF**, Liu Z, Hao R, Luo L, Zhang YN. [The dynamic change of liver injury in patients with severe acute respiratory syndrome]. *Zhonghua Ganzang Bing Zazhi* 2004; **12**: 439 [PMID: 15268817]

87 **Wang Y**, Liu S, Liu H, Li W, Lin F, Jiang L, Li X, Xu P, Zhang L, Zhao L, Cao Y, Kang J, Yang J, Li L, Liu X, Li Y, Nie R, Mu J, Lu F, Zhao S, Lu J, Zhao J. SARS-CoV-2 infection of the liver directly contributes to hepatic impairment in patients with COVID-19. *J Hepatol* 2020; **73**: 807-816 [PMID: 32437830 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.05.002]

88 **Zhong P**, Xu J, Yang D, Shen Y, Wang L, Feng Y, Du C, Song Y, Wu C, Hu X, Sun Y. COVID-19-associated gastrointestinal and liver injury: clinical features and potential mechanisms. *Signal Transduct Target Ther* 2020; **5**: 256 [PMID: 33139693 DOI: 10.1038/s41392-020-00373-7]

89 **Bangash MN**, Patel J, Parekh D. COVID-19 and the liver: little cause for concern. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **5**: 529-530 [PMID: 32203680 DOI: 10.1016/S2468-1253(20)30084-4]

90 **Lozano-Sepulveda SA**, Galan-Huerta K, Martínez-Acuña N, Arellanos-Soto D, Rivas-Estilla AM. SARS-CoV-2 another kind of liver aggressor, how does it do that? *Ann Hepatol* 2020; **19**: 592-596 [PMID: 32858226 DOI: 10.1016/j.aohep.2020.08.062]

91 **Chen G**, Wu D, Guo W, Cao Y, Huang D, Wang H, Wang T, Zhang X, Chen H, Yu H, Zhang M, Wu S, Song J, Chen T, Han M, Li S, Luo X, Zhao J, Ning Q. Clinical and immunological features of severe and moderate coronavirus disease 2019. *J Clin Invest* 2020; **130**: 2620-2629 [PMID: 32217835 DOI: 10.1172/JCI137244]

92 **Li J**, Fan JG. Characteristics and Mechanism of Liver Injury in 2019 Coronavirus Disease. *J Clin Transl Hepatol* 2020; **8**: 13-17 [PMID: 32274341 DOI: 10.14218/JCTH.2020.00019]

93 **Barton LM**, Duval EJ, Stroberg E, Ghosh S, Mukhopadhyay S. COVID-19 Autopsies, Oklahoma, USA. *Am J Clin Pathol* 2020; **153**: 725-733 [PMID: 32275742 DOI: 10.1093/ajcp/aqaa062]

94 **Tian S**, Xiong Y, Liu H, Niu L, Guo J, Liao M, Xiao SY. Pathological study of the 2019 novel coronavirus disease (COVID-19) through postmortem core biopsies. *Mod Pathol* 2020; **33**: 1007-1014 [PMID: 32291399 DOI: 10.1038/s41379-020-0536-x]

95 **Hanley B**, Lucas SB, Youd E, Swift B, Osborn M. Autopsy in suspected COVID-19 cases. *J Clin Pathol* 2020; **73**: 239-242 [PMID: 32198191 DOI: 10.1136/jclinpath-2020-206522]

96 **Paizis G**, Tikellis C, Cooper ME, Schembri JM, Lew RA, Smith AI, Shaw T, Warner FJ, Zuilli A, Burrell LM, Angus PW. Chronic liver injury in rats and humans upregulates the novel enzyme angiotensin converting enzyme 2. *Gut* 2005; **54**: 1790-1796 [PMID: 16166274 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2004.062398]

97 **Lee WM**, Hynan LS, Rossaro L, Fontana RJ, Stravitz RT, Larson AM, Davern TJ 2nd, Murray NG, McCashland T, Reisch JS, Robuck PR; Acute Liver Failure Study Group. Intravenous N-acetylcysteine improves transplant-free survival in early stage non-acetaminophen acute liver failure. *Gastroenterology* 2009; **137**: 856-864, 864. e1 [PMID: 19524577 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2009.06.006]

98 **Grein J**, Ohmagari N, Shin D, Diaz G, Asperges E, Castagna A, Feldt T, Green G, Green ML, Lescure FX, Nicastri E, Oda R, Yo K, Quiros-Roldan E, Studemeister A, Redinski J, Ahmed S, Bernett J, Chelliah D, Chen D, Chihara S, Cohen SH, Cunningham J, D'Arminio Monforte A, Ismail S, Kato H, Lapadula G, L'Her E, Maeno T, Majumder S, Massari M, Mora-Rillo M, Mutoh Y, Nguyen D, Verweij E, Zoufaly A, Osinusi AO, DeZure A, Zhao Y, Zhong L, Chokkalingam A, Elboudwarej E, Telep L, Timbs L, Henne I, Sellers S, Cao H, Tan SK, Winterbourne L, Desai P, Mera R, Gaggar A, Myers RP, Brainard DM, Childs R, Flanigan T. Compassionate Use of Remdesivir for Patients with Severe Covid-19. *N Engl J Med* 2020; **382**: 2327-2336 [PMID: 32275812 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa2007016]

99 **Rad F**, Ghorbani M, Mohammadi Roushandeh A, Habibi Roudkenar M. Mesenchymal stem cell-based therapy for autoimmune diseases: emerging roles of extracellular vesicles. *Mol Biol Rep* 2019; **46**: 1533-1549 [PMID: 30623280 DOI: 10.1007/s11033-019-04588-y]

100 **Polchert D**, Sobinsky J, Douglas G, Kidd M, Moadsiri A, Reina E, Genrich K, Mehrotra S, Setty S, Smith B, Bartholomew A. IFN-gamma activation of mesenchymal stem cells for treatment and prevention of graft *vs* host disease. *Eur J Immunol* 2008; **38**: 1745-1755 [PMID: 18493986 DOI:

10.1002/eji.200738129]
101 **Ren G**, Zhang L, Zhao X, Xu G, Zhang Y, Roberts AI, Zhao RC, Shi Y. Mesenchymal stem cell-mediated immunosuppression occurs *via* concerted action of chemokines and nitric oxide. *Cell Stem Cell* 2008; **2**: 141-150 [PMID: 18371435 DOI: 10.1016/j.stem.2007.11.014]
102 **Kavanagh H**, Mahon BP. Allogeneic mesenchymal stem cells prevent allergic airway inflammation by inducing murine regulatory T cells. *Allergy* 2011; **66**: 523-531 [PMID: 21091718 DOI: 10.1111/j.1398-9995.2010.02509.x]
103 **Akiyama K**, Chen C, Wang D, Xu X, Qu C, Yamaza T, Cai T, Chen W, Sun L, Shi S. Mesenchymal-stem-cell-induced immunoregulation involves FAS-ligand-/FAS-mediated T cell apoptosis. *Cell Stem Cell* 2012; **10**: 544-555 [PMID: 22542159 DOI: 10.1016/j.stem.2012.03.007]
104 **English K**, Wood KJ. Mesenchymal stromal cells in transplantation rejection and tolerance. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med* 2013; **3**: a015560 [PMID: 23637312 DOI: 10.1101/cshperspect.a015560]
105 **Tamura R**, Uemoto S, Tabata Y. Immunosuppressive effect of mesenchymal stem cell-derived exosomes on a concanavalin A-induced liver injury model. *Inflamm Regen* 2016; **36**: 26 [PMID: 29259699 DOI: 10.1186/s41232-016-0030-5]
106 **Li T**, Yan Y, Wang B, Qian H, Zhang X, Shen L, Wang M, Zhou Y, Zhu W, Li W, Xu W. Exosomes derived from human umbilical cord mesenchymal stem cells alleviate liver fibrosis. *Stem Cells Dev* 2013; **22**: 845-854 [PMID: 23002959 DOI: 10.1089/scd.2012.0395]
107 **Bulut Ö**, GÜrsel İ. Mesenchymal stem cell derived extracellular vesicles: promising immunomodulators against autoimmune, autoinflammatory disorders and SARS-CoV-2 infection. *Turk J Biol* 2020; **44**: 273-282 [PMID: 32595362 DOI: 10.3906/biy-2002-79]
108 **Portincasa P**, Krawczyk M, Machill A, Lammert F, Di Ciaula A. Hepatic consequences of COVID-19 infection. Lapping or biting? *Eur J Intern Med* 2020; **77**: 18-24 [PMID: 32507608 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejim.2020.05.035]
109 **Huang C**, Li Q, Xu W, Chen L. Molecular and cellular mechanisms of liver dysfunction in COVID-19. *Discov Med* 2020; **30**: 107-112 [PMID: 33382966]
110 **Zhao JN**, Fan Y, Wu SD. Liver injury in COVID-19: A minireview. *World J Clin Cases* 2020; **8**: 4303-4310 [PMID: 33083389 DOI: 10.12998/wjcc.v8.i19.4303]
111 **Golchin A**, Farahany TZ, Khojasteh A, Soleimanifar F, Ardeshirylajimi A. The Clinical Trials of Mesenchymal Stem Cell Therapy in Skin Diseases: An Update and Concise Review. *Curr Stem Cell Res Ther* 2019; **14**: 22-33 [PMID: 30210006 DOI: 10.2174/1574888X13666180913123424]
112 **Matthay MA**, Calfee CS, Zhuo H, Thompson BT, Wilson JG, Levitt JE, Rogers AJ, Gotts JE, Wiener-Kronish JP, Bajwa EK, Donahoe MP, McVerry BJ, Ortiz LA, Exline M, Christman JW, Abbott J, Delucchi KL, Caballero L, McMillan M, McKenna DH, Liu KD. Treatment with allogeneic mesenchymal stromal cells for moderate to severe acute respiratory distress syndrome (START study): a randomised phase 2a safety trial. *Lancet Respir Med* 2019; **7**: 154-162 [PMID: 30455077 DOI: 10.1016/S2213-2600(18)30418-1]
113 **Chen J**, Hu C, Chen L, Tang L, Zhu Y, Xu X, Gao H, Lu X, Yu L, Dai X, Xiang C, Li L. Clinical Study of Mesenchymal Stem Cell Treatment for Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome Induced by Epidemic Influenza A (H7N9) Infection: A Hint for COVID-19 Treatment. *Engineering (Beijing)* 2020; **6**: 1153-1161 [PMID: 32292627 DOI: 10.1016/j.eng.2020.02.006]
114 **Namba F**. Mesenchymal stem cells for the prevention of bronchopulmonary dysplasia. *Pediatr Int* 2019; **61**: 945-950 [PMID: 31487104 DOI: 10.1111/ped.14001]
115 **Liang B**, Chen J, Li T, Wu H, Yang W, Li Y, Li J, Yu C, Nie F, Ma Z, Yang M, Xiao M, Nie P, Gao Y, Qian C, Hu M. Clinical remission of a critically ill COVID-19 patient treated by human umbilical cord mesenchymal stem cells: A case report. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2020; **99**: e21429 [PMID: 32756149 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000021429]
116 **Ye Q**, Wang B, Mao J. The pathogenesis and treatment of the `Cytokine Storm' in COVID-19. *J Infect* 2020; **80**: 607-613 [PMID: 32283152 DOI: 10.1016/j.jinf.2020.03.037]
117 **Shah TG**, Predescu D, Predescu S. Mesenchymal stem cells-derived extracellular vesicles in acute respiratory distress syndrome: a review of current literature and potential future treatment options. *Clin Transl Med* 2019; **8**: 25 [PMID: 31512000 DOI: 10.1186/s40169-019-0242-9]
118 **Shao M**, Xu Q, Wu Z, Chen Y, Shu Y, Cao X, Chen M, Zhang B, Zhou Y, Yao R, Shi Y, Bu H. Exosomes derived from human umbilical cord mesenchymal stem cells ameliorate IL-6-induced acute liver injury through miR-455-3p. *Stem Cell Res Ther* 2020; **11**: 37 [PMID: 31973730 DOI: 10.1186/s13287-020-1550-0]
119 **Leng Z**, Zhu R, Hou W, Feng Y, Yang Y, Han Q, Shan G, Meng F, Du D, Wang S, Fan J, Wang W, Deng L, Shi H, Li H, Hu Z, Zhang F, Gao J, Liu H, Li X, Zhao Y, Yin K, He X, Gao Z, Wang Y, Yang B, Jin R, Stambler I, Lim LW, Su H, Moskalev A, Cano A, Chakrabarti S, Min KJ, Ellison-Hughes G, Caruso C, Jin K, Zhao RC. Transplantation of ACE2$^{-}$ Mesenchymal Stem Cells Improves the Outcome of Patients with COVID-19 Pneumonia. *Aging Dis* 2020; **11**: 216-228 [PMID: 32257537 DOI: 10.14336/AD.2020.0228]
120 **Chen T**, Wu D, Chen H, Yan W, Yang D, Chen G, Ma K, Xu D, Yu H, Wang H, Wang T, Guo W, Chen J, Ding C, Zhang X, Huang J, Han M, Li S, Luo X, Zhao J, Ning Q. Clinical characteristics of 113 deceased patients with coronavirus disease 2019: retrospective study. *BMJ* 2020; **368**: m1091 [PMID: 32217556 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.m1091]
121 **Richardson S**, Hirsch JS, Narasimhan M, Crawford JM, McGinn T, Davidson KW; the Northwell COVID-19 Research Consortium, Barnaby DP, Becker LB, Chelico JD, Cohen SL, Cookingham J, Coppa K, Diefenbach MA, Dominello AJ, Duer-Hefele J, Falzon L, Gitlin J, Hajizadeh N, Harvin

TG, Hirschwerk DA, Kim EJ, Kozel ZM, Marrast LM, Mogavero JN, Osorio GA, Qiu M, Zanos TP. Presenting Characteristics, Comorbidities, and Outcomes Among 5700 Patients Hospitalized With COVID-19 in the New York City Area. *JAMA* 2020; **323**: 2052-2059 [PMID: 32320003 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2020.6775]

122 **Hwang Y**, Kim JC, Tae G. Significantly enhanced recovery of acute liver failure by liver targeted delivery of stem cells *via* heparin functionalization. *Biomaterials* 2019; **209**: 67-78 [PMID: 31026612 DOI: 10.1016/j.biomaterials.2019.04.019]

123 **Wang Y**, Wang JL, Ma HC, Tang ZT, Ding HR, Shi XL. Mesenchymal stem cells increase heme oxygenase 1-activated autophagy in treatment of acute liver failure. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2019; **508**: 682-689 [PMID: 30528392 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2018.11.146]

124 **Johnson AS**, Fatemi R, Winlow W. SARS-CoV-2 Bound Human Serum Albumin and Systemic Septic Shock. *Front Cardiovasc Med* 2020; **7**: 153 [PMID: 33088822 DOI: 10.3389/fcvm.2020.00153]

125 **Wu MA**, Fossali T, Pandolfi L, Carsana L, Ottolina D, Frangipane V, Rech R, Tosoni A, Lopez G, Agarossi A, Cogliati C, Meloni F, Marchini B, Nebuloni M, Catena E, Colombo R. Hypoalbuminemia in COVID-19: assessing the hypothesis for underlying pulmonary capillary leakage. *J Intern Med* 2021 [PMID: 33411411 DOI: 10.1111/joim.13208]

126 **Bahloul M**, Ketata W, Lahyeni D, Mayoufi H, Kotti A, Smaoui F, Kallel N, Daoud E, Bouaziz M, Kammoun S. Pulmonary capillary leak syndrome following COVID-19 virus infection. *J Med Virol* 2021; **93**: 94-96 [PMID: 32519786 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.26152]

127 **Corti MC**, Guralnik JM, Salive ME, Sorkin JD. Serum albumin level and physical disability as predictors of mortality in older persons. *JAMA* 1994; **272**: 1036-1042 [PMID: 8089886]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

*World J Gastroenterol* 2021 May 7; 27(17): 1920-1935

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i17.1920

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

*MINIREVIEWS*

# Artificial intelligence applications in inflammatory bowel disease: Emerging technologies and future directions

John Gubatan, Steven Levitte, Akshar Patel, Tatiana Balabanis, Mike T Wei, Sidhartha R Sinha

**ORCID number:** John Gubatan 0000-0001-6037-2883; Steven Levitte 0000-0002-3324-5464; Akshar Patel 0000-0002-2524-6061; Tatiana Balabanis 0000-0002-9475-6989; Mike T Wei 0000-0003-4756-9010; Sidhartha R Sinha 0000-0001-5104-6410.

**Author contributions:** Gubatan J organized and led the literature review; Levitte S, Balabanis T and Patel A performed the primary literature and data extraction; Gubatan J reviewed literature search results and extracted data for inclusion; Gubatan J drafted the manuscript; Wei MT and Sinha SR provided critical review of the manuscript; all authors interpreted the results and contributed to critical review of the manuscript; Gubatan J had full access to the study data and takes responsibility for the integrity of the data and accuracy of the analysis.

**Supported by** Chan Zuckerberg Biohub Physician Scientist Scholar Award; and National Institutes of Health NIDDK Loan Repayment Program Award, No. GTQR5718.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** The authors have no conflicts of interests or financial disclosures relevant to this manuscript.



**John Gubatan, Steven Levitte, Akshar Patel, Tatiana Balabanis, Mike T Wei, Sidhartha R Sinha,** Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Stanford University School of Medicine, Redwood City, CA 94063, United States

**Corresponding author:** John Gubatan, MD, Academic Research, Consultant Physician-Scientist, Postdoctoral Fellow, Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Stanford University School of Medicine, 420 Broadway Street Pavilion D, 2nd Floor, Redwood City, CA 94063, United States. jgubatan@stanford.edu

## Abstract

Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) is a complex and multifaceted disorder of the gastrointestinal tract that is increasing in incidence worldwide and associated with significant morbidity. The rapid accumulation of large datasets from electronic health records, high-definition multi-omics (including genomics, proteomics, transcriptomics, and metagenomics), and imaging modalities (endoscopy and endomicroscopy) have provided powerful tools to unravel novel mechanistic insights and help address unmet clinical needs in IBD. Although the application of artificial intelligence (AI) methods has facilitated the analysis, integration, and interpretation of large datasets in IBD, significant heterogeneity in AI methods, datasets, and clinical outcomes and the need for unbiased prospective validations studies are current barriers to incorporation of AI into clinical practice. The purpose of this review is to summarize the most recent advances in the application of AI and machine learning technologies in the diagnosis and risk prediction, assessment of disease severity, and prediction of clinical outcomes in patients with IBD.

**Key Words:** Artificial intelligence; Machine learning; Inflammatory bowel disease; Crohn's disease; Ulcerative colitis; Clinical outcomes



**Core Tip:** The application of artificial intelligence (AI) in the field of inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) has grown significantly in the past decade. AI has been used to analyze genomic datasets, construct IBD risk prediction models, and increase IBD diagnosis precision. Machine learning has been used to analyze endoscopic images to

**Manuscript source:** Invited manuscript

**Specialty type:** Gastroenterology and hepatology

**Country/Territory of origin:** United States

**Peer-review report's scientific quality classification**

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B, B
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

**Received:** January 26, 2021
**Peer-review started:** January 26, 2021
**First decision:** February 27, 2021
**Revised:** March 4, 2021
**Accepted:** April 13, 2021
**Article in press:** April 13, 2021
**Published online:** May 7, 2021

**P-Reviewer:** Rath T, Schmidt PT
**S-Editor:** Gao CC
**L-Editor:** A
**P-Editor:** Ma YJ

improve disease severity grading. AI has enabled the integration of large clinical and laboratory datasets with gene expression profiles to predict clinical outcomes such as therapy response. Future studies will need to validate these findings in independent cohorts and determine whether applying these AI-derived prediction models improves clinical outcomes in IBD.

**Citation:** Gubatan J, Levitte S, Patel A, Balabanis T, Wei MT, Sinha SR. Artificial intelligence applications in inflammatory bowel disease: Emerging technologies and future directions. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; 27(17): 1920-1935
**URL:** https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v27/i17/1920.htm
**DOI:** https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v27.i17.1920

## INTRODUCTION

Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), which includes Crohn's disease (CD) and ulcerative colitis (UC), is a chronic inflammatory disorder of the gastrointestinal tract. IBD has emerged as a global disease with increasing incidence worldwide and associated with significant healthcare utilization[1,2]. The pathogenesis of IBD is complex and is thought to involve an interplay between loss of tolerance to commensal gut bacteria, intestinal epithelial barrier dysfunction, and immune dysregula-tion[3-7]. The diagnosis of IBD is based on a combination of factors including clinical data (*e.g.*, chronicity of gastrointestinal symptoms), laboratory values (elevated inflammatory markers such as C-reactive protein and fecal calprotectin), imaging, endoscopy, and histology (gastrointestinal inflammation with architectural distortion)[8]. Although treatment algorithms based on clinical trials and experience have been developed to inform clinical management in IBD[9], there is significant heterogeneity among patients with IBD with regards to presentation, response to therapy, and long-term clinical outcomes such development of strictures and need for surgery[10,11]. There is a great need for precision medicine strategies to improve diagno-stic and therapeutic approaches in IBD.

Precision medicine efforts in IBD have led to more in-depth phenotyping of patients with IBD using large scale databases from clinical trials and cohort studies, deep immunophenotyping using whole genome gene expression datasets, proteomics, transcriptomics, and metagenomics of gut microbiota, and complex predictive models incorporating computer-assisted analysis of endoscopic images and histology[12-14]. This has inevitably led to vast arrays of high dimensional data that pose significant challenges with traditional statistical and computational methods[15]. Technological advances in artificial intelligence (AI) have revolutionized the ability of clinicians and researchers to process, analyze, and interpret high dimensional data and large datasets.

AI is a broad and multidisciplinary field incorporating concepts from computer science, engineering, philosophy, and linguistics aimed at understanding and designing systems that display or mimic human intelligence. The term was first coined in 1965 by McCarthy J[16,17]. Machine learning (ML) is a subdiscipline of AI where computer algorithms apply statistical models to learn associations of predictive power from examples in provided datasets (*e.g.*, Dragon dictation, SPAM, Netflix). ML may be programmed through supervised learning or unsupervised learning. In supervising learning, computer programs are trained to learn associations between inputs and outputs in data through analysis of predefined outputs of interest (by human operator). Once associations have been learned using existing data, supervised ML classifiers could then be used to predict future examples using different datasets. Examples of supervised ML include random forest (RF) and support vector machines (SVM). In unsupervised learning, computer programs learn associations in data without external definitions of associations of interest. This method allows for the identification of previously undiscovered predictors. Deep learning, commonly known as neural networks, includes newer techniques that are based on models with fewer assumptions, rely on multiple layers of representation of the data with successive transformations that amplify aspects of the input which improves discrimination power and thus able to handle more complex data (*e.g.*, Facebook face recognition, credit card fraud)[17]. There has been increased interest in use of AI in IBD in recent

years with many prior groups applying ML methods to identify meaningful insights in diagnostics and prediction models in IBD. The purpose of this review is to provide a comprehensive summary of advances in the application of AI and ML technologies in the diagnosis and risk prediction, assessment of disease severity, and prediction of clinical outcomes in patients with IBD.

## LITERATURE SEARCH

We performed a literature review using PubMed (MEDLINE) from inception to December 15, 2020 of studies applying AI in IBD. Our search strategy included the following combinations: ((((((((inflammatory bowel disease[Title])) OR (ulcerative colitis[Title])) OR (Crohn's disease[Title])) AND (artificial intelligence[Title])) OR (computer-assisted[Title])) OR (computer-aided[Title])) OR (neural network[Title])) OR (machine learning[Title])) OR (deep learning[Title]). We included studies that used AI in the (1) diagnosis or risk prediction of IBD, (2) assessment of disease severity in IBD, and (3) prediction of therapy response and clinical outcomes in IBD. We excluded reviews, studies with non-human subjects (animal models), or studies that did not provide objective measures of the efficacy of AI applications (*e.g.*, measures of precision, accuracy, area under the curve (AUC), sensitivity, specificity, *etc.*).

## RESULTS

Our search strategy yielded 98 studies evaluating AI in IBD of which 58 studies[18-74] met inclusion criteria and were included in the final review. About 86.2% (50/58) of studies were published within the past 5 years (2015 and later). There were 23 studies[18-39] that focused on IBD diagnosis and risk prediction, 19 studies[40-58] which evaluated disease activity, and 17 studies[45,59-74] which predicted IBD clinical outcomes (response to therapy, colonic neoplasia, post-surgical complications, quality of life, IBD well-being and emotional content). There were 22 studies with combined IBD cohorts (CD and UC), 16 studies with UC patients only, 18 studies with CD only, and 5 pediatric IBD cohorts. The most common AI classifications used were neural networks (convolutional and deep) at 32.7% (19/58 studies), RF at 29.3% (17/58 studies), and SVM at 29.3% (17/58 studies).

### *AI in diagnosis and risk prediction of IBD*

Table 1 summarizes studies included which applied AI in the diagnosis and risk prediction of IBD. There were 17 studies focused on IBD diagnosis, whereas 5 studies focused on predicting risk of IBD. Data modalities included genetic/genomic datasets ($n$ = 16 studies), imaging and endoscopic datasets ($n$ = 4), and protein expression/proteomics ($n$ = 2 studies). Some groups have used ML to develop IBD risk prediction models based on gene expression datasets. In a cross-sectional study of 180 CD patients, 149 UC patients and 90 healthy controls by Isakov *et al*[21], RF and SVM used microarray and RNA-seq data sets to classify a list of 16390 genes. Their combined IBD risk prediction model demonstrated an AUC, sensitivity, specificity, and accuracy values of 0.829, 0.577, 0.880, and 0.808, respectively. In another cross-sectional study of 18227 CD patients and 34050 healthy controls, Romagnoni *et al*[20] used gradient boosted trees and artificial neural networks to analyze gene expression profiles. Using single nucleotide polymorphisms, their final predictive model for CD achieved AUC of 0.80. Likewise, a cross-sectional study of 20 UC patients and 20 healthy controls by Duttagupta *et al*[33] used SVM to analyze microRNA profiles. Their SVM classifier measurements revealed a predictive score accuracy of 92.8%, specificity of 96.2%, and sensitivity of 89.5% in distinguishing UC patients from normal individuals.

A major challenge in IBD diagnosis is the distinction between CD and UC which is based on clinical features such as the distribution of inflammation along the gastrointestinal tract. The misdiagnosis of IBD subtype is not uncommon[74]. Distinguishing between CD and UC is clinically important as IBD subtype informs clinical management. AI has been employed to analyze molecular data to distinguish between CD and UC. In a cross-sectional study of 59 CD patients, 26 UC patients, and 42 healthy controls applying deep belief networks (DBNs) and SVM to gene expression datasets, Smolander *et al*[25] explored the diagnosis UC from CD. Using DBN only, the accuracy for diagnosis of UC was 97.06% and CD was 97.07%. Using both DBN and SVM, accuracy for diagnosis of UC was 97.06% and CD was 97.03%. In

**Table 1 Artificial intelligence in diagnosis and risk prediction of inflammatory bowel disease**

| Ref. | AI classifier *vs* comparator | IBD type | Study design and sample size | Modality | Outcome | Study results/validation cohort |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Mossotto *et al* [18], 2017 | Support vector machines (SVM) *vs* linear discriminant | Peds CD/UC | Prospective cohort, 287 IBD patients | Endoscopic and histologic inflammation | Diagnosis of IBD | Diagnostic accuracy of 82.7% with an AUC of 0.87 in diagnosing Crohn's disease or ulcerative colitis. Validation cohort included |
| Wei *et al*[19], 2013 | SVM with gradient boosted trees (GBT) *vs* simple log odds method | CD/UC | Cross-sectional, 30000 IBD patients, 22000 healthy controls | Genetics, ImmunoChip | Risk of IBD | The SVM demonstrated very comparable performance (AUC 0.862 and 0.826 for CD and UC, respectively), whereas GBT showed inferior performance (AUC 0.802 and0.782 for CD and UC, respectively. Validation cohort included |
| Romagnoni *et al*[20], 2019 | Artificial neural networks (ANNs) *vs* penalized logistic regression (LR), and GBT | CD | Cross-sectional, 18227 CD patients, 34050 healthy controls | Genetics, ImmunoChip | Risk of IBD | Using single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs), final predictive model achieved AUC of 0.80. Validation cohort included |
| Isakov *et al*[21], 2017 | Random forest (RF), SVM with svmPoly), extreme gradient boosting *vs* elastic net regularized generalized linear model (glmnet) | CD/UC | Cross-sectional, 180 CD patients, 149 UC patients, 90 healthy controls | Expression data (microarray and RNA-seq) | Risk of IBD | The method was used to classify a list of 16390 genes. Each gene received a score that was used to prioritize it according to its predicted association to IBD. The combined model demonstrated AUC, sensitivity, specificity, and accuracy values of 0.829, 0.577, 0.88, and 0.808, respectively. Validation cohort included |
| Yuan *et al*[22], 2017 | Sequential minimal optimization *vs* DisGeNET (Version 4.0) | CD/UC | Cross-sectional, 59 CD patients, 26 UC patients, 42 healthy controls | Gene Expression datasets | Risk of IBD | By analyzing the gene expression profiles using minimum redundancy maximum relevance and incremental feature selection, 21 genes were obtained that could effectively distinguish samples from IBD and the non-IBD samples. Highest total prediction accuracy was 97.64% using the 1170$^{th}$ feature set. Validation cohort included |
| Hübenthal *et al*[23], 2015 | SVM *vs* RF | CD/UC | Cross-sectional, 40 CD patients, 36 UC patients, 38 healthy controls | MicroRNAs | Diagnosis of IBD | Measured by the AUC the corresponding median holdout-validated accuracy was estimated as ranging from 0.75 to 1.00 and 0.89 to 0.98, respectively. In combination, the corresponding models provide tools for the distinction of CD and UC as well as CD, UC and healthy control with expected classification error rates of 3.1 and 3.3%, respectively. Validation cohort included |
| Tong *et al*[24], 2020 | RF *vs* convolutional neural network (CNN) | CD/UC | Retrospective Cohort, 875 CD patients, 5128 UC patients | Colonoscopy Endoscopic Images | Diagnosis of IBD | RF sensitivities/specificities of UC/CD were 0.89/0.84, 0.83/0.82, and 0.72/0.77, respectively, while the values for the CNN of CD was 0.90/0.77. The precisions/recalls of UC-CD when employing RF were 0.97/0.97, 0.65/0.53, respectively, and when employing the CNN were 0.99/0.97 and 0.87/0.83, respectively. Validation cohort included |
| Smolander *et al*[25], 2019 | Deep belief networks (DBNs) *vs* SVM | CD/UC | Cross-sectional, 59 CD patients, 26 UC patients, 42 healthy controls | Gene Expression datasets | Diagnosis of IBD | Using DBN only, accuracy for diagnosis of UC was 97.06% and CD was 97.07%. Using both DBN and SVM, accuracy for diagnosis of UC was 97.06% and CD was 97.03%. Validation cohort included |
| Abbas *et al*[26], 2019 | RF *vs* network-based biomarker discovery | Peds CD/UC | Cross-sectional, 657 IBD patients, 316 healthy controls | Large dataset of new-onset pediatric IBD metagenomics biopsy samples | Diagnosis of IBD | For the diagnosis of IBD, highest AUC attained by top Random Forest classifiers was 0.77. No validation cohort included |
| Khorasani *et al*[27], 2020 | SVM *vs* recently developed feature selection algorithm (robustness-performance tradeoff, RPT) | UC | Cross-sectional, 146 UC patients, 60 healthy controls | Gene Expression dataset | Diagnosis of IBD | Our model perfectly detected all active cases and had an average precision of 0.62 in the inactive cases. Validation cohort included |
| Rubin *et al*[28], 2019 | CITRUS supervised machine learning algorithm. No comparator | CD/UC | Cross-sectional, 68 IBD patients | Peripheral blood mononuclear cells and intestinal biopsies mass cytometry | Diagnosis of IBD | An 8-parameter immune signature distinguished Crohn's disease from ulcerative colitis with an AUC = 0.845 (95%CI: 0.742-0.948). No validation cohort included |

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Pal *et al*[29], 2017 | Naïve Bayes and with a consensus machine learning method *vs* Critical Assessment of Genome Interpretation (CAGI) 4 method | CD | Cross-sectional, 64 CD patients, 47 healthy controls | Genotypes from Exome Sequencing Data | Risk of IBD | The AUC for predicting risk of Crohn's disease using the SNP model was 0.72. No validation cohort included |
| Aoki *et al*[30], 2019 | Deep CNN. No comparator | CD | Retrospective Cohort, 115 IBD patients | Wireless capsule endoscopy images | Diagnosis of IBD | The AUC for the detection of erosions and ulcerations was 0.958 (95%CI: 0.947-0.968). The sensitivity, specificity, and accuracy of the CNN were 88.2% (95%CI: 84.8-91.0), 90.9% (95%CI: 90.3-91.4), and 90.8% (95%CI: 90.2-91.3), respectively. Validation cohort included |
| Bielecki *et al*[31], 2012 | SVM *vs* human reader (pathologist) | CD/UC | Cross-sectional, 14 CD patients, 13 UC patients, 11 healthy controls | Raman spectroscopic imaging of epithelium cells | Diagnosis of IBD | Raman maps of human colon tissue sections were analyzed by utilizing innovative chemometric approaches. Using SVM, it was possible to separate between healthy control patients, patients with Crohn's Disease, and patients with ulcerative colitis with an accuracy of 98.90%. No validation cohort included |
| Cui *et al*[32], 2013 | Recursive SVM *vs* unsupervised learning strategy | CD/UC | Cross-sectional, 124 IBD patients, 99 healthy controls | 16S rRNA gene analysis | Diagnosis of IBD | Selection level of 200 features results in the best leave-one-out cross-validation result (accuracy = 88%, sensitivity = 92%, specificity = 84%). Validation cohort included |
| Duttagupta *et al*[33], 2012 | SVM. No comparator | UC | Cross-sectional, 20 UC patients, 20 healthy controls | MicroRNAs | Diagnosis of IBD | SVM classifier measurements revealed a predictive score of 92.8% accuracy, 96.2% specificity and 89.5% sensitivity in distinguishing ulcerative colitis patients from normal individuals. Validation cohort included |
| Daneshjou *et al*[34], 2017 | Naïve bayes, neural networks, random forests *vs* CAGI methods | CD | Cross-sectional, 64 ICD patients, 47 healthy controls | Exome Sequencing | Diagnosis of IBD | In CAGI4, 111 exomes were derived from a mix of 64 Crohn's disease patients. Top performing methods had an AUC of 0.87. Validation cohort included |
| Geurts *et al* [35], 2005 | RF *vs* SVM | CD/UC | Prospective cohort, 30 CD patients, 30 CD patients | Proteomic Mass Spectrometry | Diagnosis of IBD | Random forest model to diagnosis IBD had a sensitivity of 81.67%, specificity of 81.17%. Support vector machine model to diagnosis IBD had a sensitivity of 87.92%, specificity of 87.87%. Validation cohort included |
| Li *et al*[36], 2020 | RF *vs* ANN | UC | Cross-sectional, 193 UC patients, 21 healthy controls | Gene Expression Profiles | Diagnosis of IBD | The random forest algorithm was introduced to determine 1 downregulated and 29 upregulated differentially expressed genes contributing highest to ulcerative colitis occurrence. ANN was developed to calculate differentially expressed genes weights to ulcerative colitis. Prediction results agreed with that of an independent data set (AUC = 0.9506/PR-AUC = 0.9747). Validation cohort included |
| Wingfield *et al*[37], 2019 | RF *vs* SVM | CD | Cross-sectional, 668 CD patients | Metagenomic Data | Diagnosis of IBD | Highest RPT measure for Crohn's disease was random forest 0.60 and SVM 0.58. For ulcerative colitis, RPT was random forest 0.70 and SVM 0.48. Validation cohort included |
| Han *et al*[38], 2018 | RF *vs* LR, CORG | CD/UC | Cross-sectional, 24 CD patients, 59 UC patients, 76 healthy controls | Gene Expression Profiles | Diagnosis of IBD | The gene-based feature sets had median AUC on the validation sets ranging from 0.6 to 0.76). Validation cohort included |
| Wang *et al*[39], 2019 | AVADx (Analysis of Variation for Association with Disease) *vs* two GWAS-based CD evaluation methods | CD | Cross-sectional, 64 CD patients, 47 healthy controls | Whole Exome or Genome Sequencing Data | Diagnosis of IBD | AVADx highlighted known CD genes including NOD2and new potential CD genes. AVADx identified 16% (at strict cutoff) of CD patients at 99% precision and 58% of the patients (at default cutoff) with 82% precision in over 3000 individuals from separately sequenced panels. Validation cohort included |

AI: Artificial intelligence; IBD: Inflammatory bowel disease; CD: Crohn's disease; UC: Ulcerative colitis; AUC: Area under the curve.

a cross-sectional study of 68 IBD patients using a CITRUS supervised ML algorithm to analyze single cell immunophenotyping of peripheral blood mononuclear cells by mass cytometry, Rubin *et al*[28] demonstrated that an 8-parameter immune signature distinguished CD from UC with an AUC = 0.845 [95% confidence interval (CI): 0.742-0.948]. ML algorithms have also been applied to analyze large arrays of endoscopic images to differentiate between UC and CD. In a recent retrospective cohort study of 875 CD patients and 5128 UC patients by Tong *et al*[24] using RF and convolutional neural networks (CNNs) on endoscopic images, the precision of diagnosing UC/CD with RF and CNNs were 0.97/0.65 and 0.99/0.87, respectively. Taken together, these studies suggest that AI classifiers have high performance in diagnosing or predicting risk of IBD but have some variability with type of AI classifier and modality of data (molecular *vs* endoscopic).

### AI in assessment of disease severity in IBD

The assessment of disease activity and grading of severity in IBD could be accomplished using validated clinical symptom scores (*e.g.*, Harvey Bradshaw Index for CD, Mayo Score for UC)[75,76], biomarkers of inflammation (*e.g.*, C-reactive protein, fecal calprotectin)[77,78], endoscopic inflammation indices (*e.g.*, Mayo endoscopic score, simple endoscopic score)[79,80], and histologic scoring systems (*e.g.*, Geboes Score, Robarts Histopathology Index)[81,82]. However, these systems may be subject to recall bias, heterogeneity in patient clinical presentation, and intraobserver and interobserver variability[83]. AI has been applied to these existing systems to improve precision and accuracy of quantifying disease severity in IBD.

Table 2 summarizes studies included which applied AI in the assessment of disease severity in IBD. There were 2 studies that assessed clinical disease activity, 2 studies that assessed disease activity by biomarker (C-reactive protein), 13 studies that focused on endoscopic inflammation, and 3 studies that focused on histologic inflammation. Data modalities included electronic health records ($n$ = 2), molecular datasets ($n$ = 3), endoscopic datasets ($n$ = 11 studies), and histologic datasets *via* endomicroscopy/endocytoscopy ($n$ = 2). Using RF to integrate and analyze clinical and laboratory data from publicly available clinical trials (UNITI-1, UNITI-2, and IM-UNITI) data consisting of 401 CD patients, Waljee *et al*[42] constructed a CD remission prediction model using the week 6 albumin to C-reactive protein ratio with an AUC of 0.76 (95%CI: 0.71-0.82). Reddy *et al*[44] applied gradient boosting machines to electronic health records and predicted inflammation severity in a retrospective cohort of 3335 CD patients with a very high accuracy (AUC) = 92.82%. In a CNN analysis of colonoscopy images from a retrospective cohort of 841 UC patients by Ozawa *et al*[55], the CNN-based computer aided diagnostic system showed a high level of performance with AUC of 0.86 and 0.98 to identify Mayo 0 and 0-1, respectively. The performance of the CNN was better for the rectum than for the right side and left side of the colon when identifying Mayo 0 (AUC = 0.92, 0.83, and 0.83, respectively). Likewise, in an ordinal CNN analysis of wireless capsule endoscopy images in a retrospective cohort of 49 CD patients by Barash *et al*[50], the classification accuracy of the algorithm was 0.91 for grade 1 *vs* grade 3 ulcers, 0.78 for grade 2 *vs* grade 3, and 0.624 for grade 1 *vs* grade 2. The role of AI in grading severity of histologic inflammation in IBD has also been explored. For example, in a retrospective cohort study of 187 UC patients by Maeda *et al*[46], application of SVM to data derived from endocytoscopy to assess histologic inflammation provided diagnostic sensitivity, specificity, and accuracy of 74% (95%CI: 65-81), 97% (95%CI: 95-99), and 91% (95%CI: 83-95), respectively. These examples highlight the clinical utility, versatility, and performance of AI classifiers in grading the disease activity of IBD patients at the clinical, endoscopic, and histologic level. AI performance may be affected by location of inflammation and may be limited by ability to discriminate between subtle differences.

### AI in prediction of therapy response and clinical outcomes in IBD

The armamentarium of therapies in IBD have expanded significantly in recent years with diverse mechanisms of action ranging from biologics that inhibit proinflammatory cytokines (anti-tumor necrosis factor-α, anti-interleukin-12/23) and leukocyte trafficking to the gut (anti-α4β7) to small molecule inhibitors of the JAK-STAT signaling pathway[84-86]. Despite several IBD treatment options available to clinicians, there are no effective biomarkers or tools to predict response to therapy or to guide selection of alternative therapies after a failed response. Likewise, there is also an unmet clinical need to predict long term clinical outcomes in IBD such as colon cancer. To address these challenges, several groups have applied AI and ML algorithms to existing clinical and molecular datasets.

**Table 2 Artificial Intelligence in assessment of disease severity in inflammatory bowel disease**

| Ref. | AI classifier *vs* comparator | IBD type | Study design and sample size | Modality | Outcomes | Study results/validation cohort |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Kumar *et al*[40], 2012 | Support vector machines (SVM) *vs* human observers | CD | Cross-sectional, 50000 images (number of patients not given) | Small bowel capsule endoscopy | Endoscopic Inflammation | Database of 47 studies including 50000 capsule endoscopy images evaluating severity of small bowel lesions. Method had good precision (> 90% for lesion detection) and recall (> 90%) for lesions of varying severity. Validation cohort included |
| Biasci *et al*[41], 2019 | Logistic regression with an adaptive Elastic-Net penalty. No comparator | CD/UC | Prospective cohort, 118 IBD patients | Transcriptomics from purified CD8 T cells and/or whole blood | Disease severity, medication escalation | A 17-gene qPCR-based classifier stratified patients into two distinct subgroups. IBDhi patients experienced significantly more aggressive disease than IBDlo patients (analogous to IBD2), with earlier need for treatment escalation [HR 2.65 (CD), 3.12 (UC)] and more escalations over time [for multiple escalations within 18 months: sensitivity=72.7% (CD), 100% (UC); negative predictive value = 90.9% (CD), 100% (UC)]. Validation cohort included |
| Waljee *et al*[42], 2019 | RF. No comparator | CD | Post-hoc analysis of prospective clinical trials, 401 CD patients | Clinical and laboratory data from publicly available clinical trials (UNITI-1, UNITI-2, and IM-UNITI) | Crohn's disease remission, C-reactive protein < 5 mg/L | A prediction model using the week-6 albumin to C-reactive protein ratio had an AUC of 0.76 [95% confidence interval (CI): 0.71-0.82]. Validation cohort included |
| Mahapatra *et al*[43], 2016 | RF. No comparator | CD | Cross-sectional, 35 CD patients | Abdominal magnetic resonance imaging | Segmentation of diseased colon (intestinal inflammation) | Model segmentation accuracy ranged from 82.7% to 92.2%. Validation cohort included |
| Reddy *et al*[44], 2019 | Gradient boosting machines *vs* logistic regression | CD | Retrospective, 3335 CD patients | Electronic medical record | Severity of intestinal inflammation (by C-reactive protein) | Machine-learning-based analytic methods such as gradient boosting machines can predict the inflammation severity with a very high accuracy (AUC) = 92.82%. Validation cohort included |
| Douglas *et al*[45], 2018 | RF. No comparator | Peds CD | Cross-sectional, 20 CD patients, 20 healthy controls | Shotgun metagenomics (MGS), 16S rRNA gene sequencing | Disease State (Relapse/Remission) | MGS modules significantly classified samples by disease state (accuracy = 68.4%, $P$ = 0.043 and accuracy = 65.8%, $P$ = 0.03, respectively), 16S datasets had a maximum accuracy of 68.4% and $P$ = 0.016 based on strain level for disease state. Validation cohort included |
| Maeda *et al*[46], 2019 | SVM *vs* human reader | UC | Retrospective cohort, 187 UC patients | Endocytoscopy | Histologic inflammation | Computer aided diagnosis (CAD) of histologic inflammation provided diagnostic sensitivity, specificity, and accuracy as follows: 74% (95%CI: 65-81), 97% (95%CI: 95-99), and 91% (95%CI: 83-95), respectively. Its reproducibility was perfect ($k$ = 1). Validation cohort included |
| Charisis *et al*[47], 2016 | SVM *vs* human reader | CD | Retrospective cohort, 13 CD patients | Wireless capsule endoscopy (WCE) images | Endoscopic Inflammation | Experimental results, along with comparison with other related efforts, have shown that the hybrid adaptive filtering [HAF-Differential Lacunarity (DLac) analysis (HAF-DLac)] *via* SVM approach evidently outperforms them in the field of WCE image analysis for automated lesion detection, providing higher classification results, up to 93.8% (accuracy), 95.2% (sensitivity), 92.4% (specificity) and 92.6% (precision). Validation cohort included |
| Klang *et al*[48], 2020 | Convolutional neural network (CNN) *vs* human reader | CD | Retrospective cohort, 49 CD patients | WCE images | Endoscopic Inflammation | Dataset included 17640 CE images from 49 patients: 7391 images with mucosal ulcers and 10249 images of normal mucosa. For randomly split images results, AUC was 0.99 with accuracies ranging from 95.4% to 96.7%. For individual patient-level experiments, the AUCs were 0.94-0.99. Validation cohort included |
| Ungaro *et al*[49], 2021 | Random survival forest. No comparator | Peds CD | Retrospective case-control, 265 peds CD patients | Protein biomarkers using a proximity extension assay (Olink Proteomics) | Penetrating and stricturing complications | A model with 5 protein markers predicted penetrating complications with an AUC of 0.79 (95%CI: 0.76-0.82) compared to 0.69 (95%CI: 0.66-0.72) for serologies and 0.74 (95%CI: 0.71-0.77) for clinical variables. A model with 4 protein markers predicted structuring complications with an AUC of 0.68 (95%CI: 0.65-0.71) compared to 0.62 (95%CI: 0.59-0.65) for serologies and 0.52 (95%CI: 0.50-0.55) for clinical variables. Validation cohort included |

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Barash *et al*[50], 2021 | Ordinal CNN. No comparator | CD | Retrospective cohort, 49 CD patients | WCE images | Ulcer Severity Grading | The classification accuracy of the algorithm was 0.91 (95%CI: 0.867-0.954) for grade 1 *vs* grade 3 ulcers, 0.78 (95%CI: 0.716-0.844) for grade 2 *vs* grade 3, and 0.624 (95%CI: 0.547-0.701) for grade 1 *vs* grade 2. Validation cohort included |
| Lamash *et al*[51], 2019 | CNN *vs* semi-supervised and active learning models | CD | Retrospective cohort, 23 CD patients | Magnetic resonance imaging | Active Crohn's Disease | CNN exhibited Dice similarity coefficient of 75% ± 18%, 81% ± 8%, and 97% ± 2% for the lumen, wall, and background, respectively. The extracted markers of wall thickness at the location of min radius ($P$ = 0.0013) and the median value of relative contrast enhancement ($P$ = 0.0033) could differentiate active and nonactive disease segments. Other extracted markers could differentiate between segments with strictures and segments without strictures ($P$ < 0.05). Validation cohort included |
| Takenaka *et al*[52], 2020 | Deep neural networks *vs* human reader (endoscopist) | UC | Prospective cohort, 2012 UC patients | Colonoscopy images | Endoscopic inflammation | Deep neural network identified patients with endoscopic remission with 90.1% accuracy (95%CI: 89.2-90.9) and a kappa coefficient of 0.798 (95%CI: 0.780-0.814), using findings reported by endoscopists as the reference standard. Validation cohort included |
| Bossuyt *et al* [53], 2020 | Computer algorithm based on red density (RD) *vs* blinded central readers | UC | Prospective cohort, 29 UC patients, 6 healthy controls | Colonoscopy Images | Endoscopic and histologic inflammation | In the construction cohort, RD correlated with rhi ($r$ = 0.74, $P$ < 0.0001), Mayo endoscopic subscores ($r$ = 0.76, $P$ < 0.0001) and Endoscopic index of severity scores ($r$ = 0.74, $P$ < 0.0001). The RD sensitivity to change had a standardized effect size of 1.16. in the validation set, RD correlated with rhi ($r$ = 0.65, $P$ = 0.00002). Validation cohort included |
| Bhambhvani *et al*[54], 2021 | CNN *vs* human reader (endoscopist) | UC | Retrospective cohort, 777 UC patients | Colonoscopy images | Mayo Endoscopic Scores (MES) | The final model classified MES 3 disease with an AUC of 0.96, MES 2 disease with an AUC of 0.86, and MES 1 disease with an AUC 0.89. Overall accuracy was 77.2%. Across MES 1, 2, and 3, average specificity was 85.7%, average sensitivity was 72.4%, average PPV was 77.7%, and the average NPV was 87.0%. Validation cohort included |
| Ozawa *et al* [55], 2019 | CNN *vs* human reader (endoscopist) | UC | Retrospective cohort, 841 UC patients | Colonoscopy images | MES | The CNN-based CAD system showed a high level of performance with AUC of 0.86 and 0.98 to identify Mayo 0 and 0-1, respectively. The performance of the CNN was better for the rectum than for the right side and left side of the colon when identifying Mayo 0 (AUC = 0.92, 0.83, and 0.83, respectively). Validation cohort included |
| Bossuyt *et al*[56], 2021 | Automated CAD Algorithm *vs* human reader | UC | Prospective cohort, 48 UC patients | Colonoscopy images with confocal laser endomicroscopy | Histologic Remission | The current automated CAD algorithm detects histologic remission with a high performance (sensitivity of 0.79 and specificity of 0.90) compared with the UCEIS (sensitivity of 0.95 and specificity of 0.69) and MES (sensitivity of 0.98 and specificity of 0.61). No validation cohort included |
| Stidham *et al*[57], 2019 | CNN *vs* human reader | UC | Retrospective cohort, 3082 UC patients | Colonoscopy images | Endoscopy severity | The CNN was excellent for distinguishing endoscopic remission from moderate-to-severe disease with an AUC of 0.966 (95%CI: 0.967-0.972); a PPV of 0.87 (95%CI: 0.85-0.88) with a sensitivity of 83.0% (95%CI: 80.8-85.4) and specificity of96.0% (95%CI: 95.1-97.1); and NPV of 0.94 (95%CI: 0.93-0.95). No validation cohort included |
| Gottlieb *et al*[58], 2021 | Neural network *vs* human central reader | UC | Prospective cohort, 249 UC patients | Colonoscopy images | Endoscopy severity | The model's agreement metric was excellent, with a quadratic weighted kappa of 0.844 (95%CI: 0.787-0.901) for endoscopic Mayo Score and 0.855 (95%CI: 0.80-0.91) for UCEIS. No validation cohort included |

AI: Artificial intelligence; IBD: Inflammatory bowel disease; CD: Crohn's disease; UC: Ulcerative colitis; AUC: Area under the curve; NPV: Negative predictive value; PPV: Positive predictive value; qPCR: Quantitative real-time polymerase chain reaction; HR: Hazard ratio.

Table 3 summarizes studies included which applied AI in the prediction of therapy response and clinical outcomes in IBD. There were 9 studies that predicted therapy response, 2 studies that predicted presence of extraintestinal manifestations of IBD, 1 study predicting colonic neoplasia, and 1 study predicting post-surgical complications after colectomy. Data modalities included electronic health records ($n$ = 11), molecular

**Table 3 Artificial intelligence in prediction of therapy response and clinical outcomes in inflammatory bowel disease**

| Ref. | AI classifier *vs* comparator | IBD type | Study design and sample size | Modality | Outcomes | Study results/validation cohort |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Waljee *et al*[59], 2018 | Random forest (RF). No comparator | CD/UC | Post-hoc analysis of prospective clinical trial, 594 CD patients | Veteran's Health Administration Electronic Health Record (EHR) | Outpatient corticosteroids prescribed for IBD and inpatient hospitalizations associated with a diagnosis of IBD | AUC for the RF longitudinal model was 0.85 [95% confidence interval (CI): 0.84–0.85]. AUC for the RF longitudinal model using previous hospitalization or steroid use was 0.87 (95%CI: 0.87-0.88). Validation cohort included |
| Uttam *et al*[60], 2019 | Support vector machines (SVM) *vs* nanoscale nuclear architecture mapping (NanoNAM) | CD/UC | Prospective cohort, 103 IBD patients | 3-dimensional NanoNAM of normal-appearing rectal biopsies | Colonic neoplasia | NanoNAM detects colonic neoplasia with an AUC of 0.87 ± 0.04, sensitivity of 0.81 ± 0.09, and specificity of 0.82 ± 0.07 in the independent validation set. Validation cohort included |
| Waljee *et al*[61], 2017 | RF. No comparator | CD/UC | Retrospective cohort, 1080 IBD patients | EHR, lab values | Remission and clinical outcomes with thiopurines | AUC for algorithm-predicted remission in the validation set was 0.79 *vs* 0.49 for 6-TGN. The mean number of clinical events per year in patients with sustained algorithm-predicted remission (APR) was 1.08 *vs* 3.95 in those that did not have sustained APR ($P < 1 \times 10^{-5}$). Validation cohort included |
| Popa *et al*[62], 2020 | Neural network model. No comparator | UC | Prospective cohort, 55 UC patients | Clinical and biological parameters and the endoscopic Mayo score | Disease activity after one year of anti-TNF treatment | The classifier achieved an excellent performance predicting the disease activity at one year with an accuracy of 90% and AUC 0.92 on the test set and an accuracy of 100% and an AUC of 1 on the validation set. Validation cohort included |
| Douglas *et al*[45], 2018 | RF. No comparator | Peds CD | Cross-sectional, 20 CD patients, 20 healthy controls | Shotgun metagenomics (MGS), 16S rRNA gene sequencing | Response to induction therapy | 16S genera were again the top dataset (accuracy = 77.8%; $P = 0.008$) for predicting response to therapy. MGS strain ($P = 0.029$), genus ($P = 0.013$), and KEGG pathway ($P = 0.018$) datasets could also classify patients according to therapy response with accuracy = 72.2% for all three. Validation cohort included |
| Waljee *et al*[63], 2010 | RF *vs* boosted trees, RuleFit | CD/UC | Cross-sectional, 774 IBD patients | EHR, lab values (thiopurine metabolites) | Response to thiopurine therapy | A RF algorithm using laboratory values and patient age differentiated clinical response from nonresponse in the model validation data set with an AUC of 0.856 (95%CI: 0.793-0.919). Validation cohort included |
| Menti *et al*[64], 2016 | Naïve bayes *vs* Bayesian additive regression trees *vs* Bayesian networks | CD/UC | Retrospective cohort, 152 CD patients | Genomic DNA, genetic polymorphism | Presence of extra-intestinal manifestations in IBD patients | Bayesian networks achieved accuracy of 82% when considering only clinical factors and 89% when considering also genetic information, outperforming the other techniques. Validation cohort included |
| Waljee *et al*[65], 2017 | RF *vs* baseline regression model | CD/UC | Retrospective cohort, 20368 IBD patients | EHR, lab values | Corticosteroid-free biologic remission with vedolizumab | The AUC for corticosteroid-free biologic remission at week 52 using baseline data was only 0.65 (95%CI: 0.53-0.77), but was 0.75 (95%CI: 0.64-0.86) with data through week 6 of vedolizumab. Validation cohort included |
| Morilla *et al*[66], 2019 | Deep neural networks. No comparator | UC | Retrospective cohort, 47 UC patients | Colonic microrna profiles | Responses to therapy | A deep neural network-based classifier identified 9 microRNAs plus 5 clinical factors, routinely recorded at time of hospital admission, that were associated with responses of patients to treatment. This panel discriminated responders to steroids from non-responders with 93% accuracy (AUC, 0.91). Three algorithms, based on microRNA levels, identified responders to infliximab *vs* non-responders (84% accuracy, AUC 0.82) and responders to cyclosporine *vs* non-responders (80% accuracy, AUC 0.79). Validation cohort included |
| Wang *et al*[67], 2020 | Back-propagation neural network (BPNN), SVM *vs* logistic regression | CD | Cross-sectional, 446 CD patients | EHR | Medication nonadherence to maintenance therapy | The average classification accuracy and AUC of the three models were 85.9% and 0.912 for BPNN, and 87.7% and 0.930 for SVM, respectively. Validation cohort included |
| Bottigliengo | Bayesian machine | CD/UC | Retrospective cohort, | EHR, genetic | Presence of extra-intestinal | BMLTs had an AUC of 0.50 for classifying the presence of extra-intestinal manifestations. Validation |

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *et al*[68], 2019 | learning techniques (BMLTs) *vs* logistic regression | | 142 IBD patients | polymorphisms | manifestations in IBD patients | cohort included |
| Ghoshal *et al*[69], 2020 | Nonlinear artificial neural network (ANN) *vs* multivariate linear PCA | UC | Prospective cohort, 263 UC patients | EHR | Responses to therapy | The multilayer perceptron neural network was trained by back-propagation algorithm (10 networks retained out of 16 tested). The classification accuracy rate was 73% in correctly classifying response to medical treatment in UC patients. No validation cohort included |
| Sofo *et al*[70], 2020 | SVM leave-one-out cross-validation. No comparator | UC | Retrospective cohort, 32 UC patients | EHR | Post-surgical complications after colectomy | Evaluating only preoperative features, machine learning algorithms were able to predict minor postoperative complications with a high strike rate (84.3%), high sensitivity (87.5%) and high specificity (83.3%) during the testing phase. Validation cohort included |
| Kang *et al*[71], 2017 | ANN *vs* logistic regression | UC | Cross-sectional, 24 UC patients | Gene expression profiles | Response to anti-TNF | Balanced accuracy in cross validation test for predicting response to anti-TNF therapy in ulcerative colitis patient was 82%. Validation cohort included |
| Babic *et al*[72], 1997 | CART *vs* back propagation neural network (BPNN) | CD/UC | Cross-sectional, 200 IBD patients | EHR | Quality of life | Best reached classification accuracy did not exceed 80% in any case. Other classifiers namely, K-nearest-neighbor, learning vector quantization and BPNN confirmed that outcome. Validation cohort included |
| Dong *et al*[73], 2019 | RF, SVM, ANN *vs* logistic regression | CD | Retrospective cohort, 239 CD patients | EHR, laboratory tests | Crohn's related surgery | The results revealed that RF predictive model performed better than LR model in terms of accuracy (93.11% *vs* 91.15%), precision (53.42% *vs* 44.81%), F1 score (0.6016 *vs* 0.5763), TN rate (95.08% *vs* 92.00%), and the AUC (0.8926 *vs* 0.8809). The AUCs were excellent at 0.9864 in RF,0.9538 in LR, 0.8809 in DT, 0.9497 in SVM, and 0.9059 in ANN, respectively. Validation cohort included |
| Lerrigo *et al*[74], 2019 | Latent Dirichlet allocation, unsupervised machine learning algorithm. No comparator | CD/UC | Retrospective cohort, 28623 IBD patients | Online posts from the Crohn's and colitis foundation community forum | Impact of online community forums on well-being and their emotional content | 10702 (20.8%) posts were identified expressing: gratitude (40%), anxiety/fear (20.8%), empathy (18.2%), anger/frustration (13.4%), hope (13.2%), happiness (10.0%), sadness/depression (5.8%), shame/guilt (2.5%), and/or loneliness (2.5%). A common subtheme was the importance of fostering social support. No validation cohort included |

AI: Artificial intelligence; IBD: Inflammatory bowel disease; CD: Crohn's disease; UC: Ulcerative colitis; AUC: Area under the curve; TNF: Tumor necrosis factor.

datasets ($n$ = 4), and histologic data ($n$ = 1). Waljee *et al*[59,65] and Popa *et al*[62] have previously applied RF classifiers to clinical data from electronic health records and laboratory values to predict response to various IBD therapies. In one study using data from a prospective clinical trial consisting of 594 CD patients[59], the AUC for a RF longitudinal model for predicting inpatient hospitalizations in IBD patients prescribed outpatient corticosteroids was 0.85 (95%CI: 0.84-0.85). Using a similar RF approach for predicting remission with thiopurine therapy in a prospective cohort of 55 UC patients yielded an AUC of 0.79[62]. Applying RF to data from a retrospective cohort of 20368 IBD patients with vedolizumab use yielded an AUC of 0.65 (95%CI: 0.53-0.77) for corticosteroid-free vedolizumab remission at week 52 using baseline data and an AUC of 0.75 (95%CI: 0.64-0.86) with data through week 6 of vedolizumab[65]. Molecular datasets have also been used to differentiate between responders and non-responders to various IBD therapies. For example, Morilla *et al*[66] used a deep neural network classifier to construct a predictive panel of colonic microRNAs for IBD therapies in a retrospective cohort of 47 UC patients. Their panel discriminated responders to steroids from non-responders with 93% accuracy (AUC, 0.91). In addition, three

algorithms, based on microRNA levels, identified responders to infliximab *vs* non-responders (84% accuracy, AUC 0.82) and responders to cyclosporine *vs* non-responders (80% accuracy, AUC 0.79). A more recent prospective cohort study of 55 UC patients by Popa *et al*[62] integrated clinical, laboratory, and endoscopic (Mayo scores) datasets using a neural network classifier to predict disease activity after one year of anti-tumor necrosis factor therapy in patients with UC. This classifier achieved an AUC of 0.92 for predicting the disease activity at one year on the test set and an AUC of 1.00 on the validation set. These studies suggest that AI classifiers may play a role in predicting clinical outcomes and response to specific therapies in patients with IBD. However, future clinical trials are needed to compare the efficacy of AI applications in IBD clinical management *vs* standard of care before incorporation into real life clinical practice.

Finally, AI algorithms have been previously applied to enhance the detection of colonic polyps[87] and distinguish among subtypes of neoplastic colorectal lesions[88] in the general population. Although patients with IBD who have extensive colitis have a significantly greater risk of colorectal cancer compared to the general population [89,90], there have been limited studies applying AI technologies to improve colorectal cancer surveillance or develop prediction risk models in patients with IBD. Most studies evaluating polyp detection have excluded IBD patients[91-93]. Our literature search yielded only one study applying AI for the detection of colonic neoplasia in IBD. Uttam *et al*[60] employed support SVM to analyze 3-dimensional nanoscale nuclear architecture mapping (NanoNAM) of normal-appearing rectal biopsies in a prospective cohort of 103 IBD patients. In their study, NanoNAM detected colonic neoplasia with an AUC of 0.87 ± 0.04, sensitivity of 0.81 ± 0.09, and specificity of 0.82 ± 0.07 in the independent validation set. Further studies should focus on determining the clinical utility of incorporating AI methods to enhance standard of cancer surveillance in patients with IBD such as chromoendoscopy[94] and to develop predictive models for risks of colorectal malignancy in IBD patient populations.

## CONCLUSION

In conclusion, our literature review has revealed that the applications of AI in IBD have significantly increased in recent years. Our review also highlighted that various AI classifiers may be applied to analyze and integrate large datasets ranging from clinical data from electronic health records, molecular data including gene expression and protein-based studies to a wide array of datasets consisting of endoscopic and histologic images. The application of AI has the potential to improve the accuracy and precision of predicting risk and diagnosis of IBD, assessing disease severity, and predicting outcomes with various IBD therapies. Currently, the application of AI methods in IBD has been limited to the research setting and has not yet been adopted in real life clinical practice. Furthermore, studies applying AI in the context of colorectal cancer surveillance or prediction in IBD are much needed. Given the current status of the field of AI in IBD, future directions should include: (1) Prospective validation of AI applications in IBD in independent cohorts as there is a risk of bias from internal training cohorts and potential limitations with generalizability; (2) Standardization of AI methods and comparative studies evaluating effect of heterogeneity from using different types of datasets on outcomes of interest; (3) Randomized controlled trials to determine whether application of AI in the clinical management of IBD improves clinical outcomes and could be translated into clinical practice; and (4) Randomized controlled trials to determine whether application of AI leads to greater clinical efficacy and cost-effectiveness compared to standard of care in IBD.

## REFERENCES

1 **Ng SC**, Shi HY, Hamidi N, Underwood FE, Tang W, Benchimol EI, Panaccione R, Ghosh S, Wu JCY, Chan FKL, Sung JJY, Kaplan GG. Worldwide incidence and prevalence of inflammatory bowel disease in the 21st century: a systematic review of population-based studies. *Lancet* 2017; **390**: 2769-2778 [PMID: 29050646 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(17)32448-0]

2 **Click B**, Ramos Rivers C, Koutroubakis IE, Babichenko D, Anderson AM, Hashash JG, Dunn MA, Schwartz M, Swoger J, Baidoo L, Barrie A 3rd, Regueiro M, Binion DG. Demographic and Clinical Predictors of High Healthcare Use in Patients with Inflammatory Bowel Disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2016; **22**: 1442-1449 [PMID: 26950309 DOI: 10.1097/MIB.0000000000000763]

3 **Ananthakrishnan AN**, Bernstein CN, Iliopoulos D, Macpherson A, Neurath MF, Ali RAR, Vavricka SR, Fiocchi C. Environmental triggers in IBD: a review of progress and evidence. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2018; **15**: 39-49 [PMID: 29018271 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2017.136]

4 **de Souza HSP**, Fiocchi C, Iliopoulos D. The IBD interactome: an integrated view of aetiology, pathogenesis and therapy. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2017; **14**: 739-749 [PMID: 28831186 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2017.110]

5 **Shouval DS**, Rufo PA. The Role of Environmental Factors in the Pathogenesis of Inflammatory Bowel Diseases: A Review. *JAMA Pediatr* 2017; **171**: 999-1005 [PMID: 28846760 DOI: 10.1001/jamapediatrics.2017.2571]

6 **van der Sloot KWJ**, Amini M, Peters V, Dijkstra G, Alizadeh BZ. Inflammatory Bowel Diseases: Review of Known Environmental Protective and Risk Factors Involved. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2017; **23**: 1499-1509 [PMID: 28777099 DOI: 10.1097/MIB.0000000000001217]

7 **Danese S**, Sans M, Fiocchi C. Inflammatory bowel disease: the role of environmental factors. *Autoimmun Rev* 2004; **3**: 394-400 [PMID: 15288007 DOI: 10.1016/j.autrev.2004.03.002]

8 **Tontini GE**, Vecchi M, Pastorelli L, Neurath MF, Neumann H. Differential diagnosis in inflammatory bowel disease colitis: state of the art and future perspectives. *World J Gastroenterol* 2015; **21**: 21-46 [PMID: 25574078 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v21.i1.21]

9 **Panaccione R**, Rutgeerts P, Sandborn WJ, Feagan B, Schreiber S, Ghosh S. Review article: treatment algorithms to maximize remission and minimize corticosteroid dependence in patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2008; **28**: 674-688 [PMID: 18532990 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2008.03753.x]

10 **Bettenworth D**, Lopez R, Hindryckx P, Levesque BG, Rieder F. Heterogeneity in endoscopic treatment of Crohn's disease-associated strictures: An international inflammatory bowel disease specialist survey. *J Gastroenterol* 2016; **51**: 939-948 [PMID: 26831355 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-016-1172-6]

11 **Ananthakrishnan AN**, Shi HY, Tang W, Law CC, Sung JJ, Chan FK, Ng SC. Systematic Review and Meta-analysis: Phenotype and Clinical Outcomes of Older-onset Inflammatory Bowel Disease. *J Crohns Colitis* 2016; **10**: 1224-1236 [PMID: 26928965 DOI: 10.1093/ecco-jcc/jjw054]

12 **Anderson AJ**, Click B, Ramos-Rivers C, Babichenko D, Koutroubakis IE, Hartman DJ, Hashash JG, Schwartz M, Swoger J, Barrie AM 3rd, Dunn MA, Regueiro M, Binion DG. Development of an Inflammatory Bowel Disease Research Registry Derived from Observational Electronic Health Record Data for Comprehensive Clinical Phenotyping. *Dig Dis Sci* 2016; **61**: 3236-3245 [PMID: 27619390 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-016-4278-z]

13 **Weersma RK**, Xavier RJ; IBD Multi Omics Consortium, Vermeire S, Barrett JC. Multiomics Analyses to Deliver the Most Effective Treatment to Every Patient With Inflammatory Bowel Disease. *Gastroenterology* 2018; **155**: e1-e4 [PMID: 30077628 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2018.07.039]

14 **Syed S**, Stidham RW. Potential for Standardization and Automation for Pathology and Endoscopy in Inflammatory Bowel Disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2020; **26**: 1490-1497 [PMID: 32869844 DOI: 10.1093/ibd/izaa211]

15 **Johnstone IM**, Titterington DM. Statistical challenges of high-dimensional data. *Philos Trans A Math Phys Eng Sci* 2009; **367**: 4237-4253 [PMID: 19805443 DOI: 10.1098/rsta.2009.0159]

16 **Wang W**, Siau K. Artificial intelligence, machine learning, automation, robotics, future of work and future of humanity: a review and research agenda. *J Database Manag* 2019; **30**: 61-79 [DOI: 10.4018/JDM.2019010104]

17 **Panch T**, Szolovits P, Atun R. Artificial intelligence, machine learning and health systems. *J Glob Health* 2018; **8**: 020303 [PMID: 30405904 DOI: 10.7189/jogh.08.020303]

18 **Mossotto E**, Ashton JJ, Coelho T, Beattie RM, MacArthur BD, Ennis S. Classification of Paediatric Inflammatory Bowel Disease using Machine Learning. *Sci Rep* 2017; **7**: 2427 [PMID: 28546534 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-017-02606-2]

19 **Wei Z**, Wang W, Bradfield J, Li J, Cardinale C, Frackelton E, Kim C, Mentch F, Van Steen K, Visscher PM, Baldassano RN, Hakonarson H; International IBD Genetics Consortium. Large sample size, wide variant spectrum, and advanced machine-learning technique boost risk prediction for inflammatory bowel disease. *Am J Hum Genet* 2013; **92**: 1008-1012 [PMID: 23731541 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajhg.2013.05.002]

20 **Romagnoni A**, Jégou S, Van Steen K, Wainrib G, Hugot JP; International Inflammatory Bowel Disease Genetics Consortium (IIBDGC). Comparative performances of machine learning methods for classifying Crohn Disease patients using genome-wide genotyping data. *Sci Rep* 2019; **9**: 10351 [PMID: 31316157 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-019-46649-z]

21 **Isakov O**, Dotan I, Ben-Shachar S. Machine Learning-Based Gene Prioritization Identifies Novel Candidate Risk Genes for Inflammatory Bowel Disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2017; **23**: 1516-1523 [PMID: 28795970 DOI: 10.1097/MIB.0000000000001222]

22 **Yuan F**, Zhang YH, Kong XY, Cai YD. Identification of Candidate Genes Related to Inflammatory Bowel Disease Using Minimum Redundancy Maximum Relevance, Incremental Feature Selection, and the Shortest-Path Approach. *Biomed Res Int* 2017; **2017**: 5741948 [PMID: 28293637 DOI: 10.1155/2017/5741948]

23 **Hübenthal M**, Hemmrich-Stanisak G, Degenhardt F, Szymczak S, Du Z, Elsharawy A, Keller A, Schreiber S, Franke A. Sparse Modeling Reveals miRNA Signatures for Diagnostics of Inflammatory Bowel Disease. *PLoS One* 2015; **10**: e0140155 [PMID: 26466382 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0140155]

24 **Tong Y**, Lu K, Yang Y, Li J, Lin Y, Wu D, Yang A, Li Y, Yu S, Qian J. Can natural language processing help differentiate inflammatory intestinal diseases in China? *BMC Med Inform Decis Mak* 2020; **20**: 248 [PMID: 32993636 DOI: 10.1186/s12911-020-01277-w]

25 **Smolander J**, Dehmer M, Emmert-Streib F. Comparing deep belief networks with support vector machines for classifying gene expression data from complex disorders. *FEBS Open Bio* 2019; **9**: 1232-1248 [PMID: 31074948 DOI: 10.1002/2211-5463.12652]

26 **Abbas M**, Matta J, Le T, Bensmail H, Obafemi-Ajayi T, Honavar V, El-Manzalawy Y. Biomarker discovery in inflammatory bowel diseases using network-based feature selection. *PLoS One* 2019; **14**: e0225382 [PMID: 31756219 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0225382]

27 **Khorasani HM**, Usefi H, Peña-Castillo L. Detecting ulcerative colitis from colon samples using efficient feature selection and machine learning. *Sci Rep* 2020; **10**: 13744 [PMID: 32792678 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-020-70583-0]

28 **Rubin SJS**, Bai L, Haileselassie Y, Garay G, Yun C, Becker L, Streett SE, Sinha SR, Habtezion A. Mass cytometry reveals systemic and local immune signatures that distinguish inflammatory bowel diseases. *Nat Commun* 2019; **10**: 2686 [PMID: 31217423 DOI: 10.1038/s41467-019-10387-7]

29 **Pal LR**, Kundu K, Yin Y, Moult J. CAGI4 Crohn's exome challenge: Marker SNP *vs* exome variant models for assigning risk of Crohn disease. *Hum Mutat* 2017; **38**: 1225-1234 [PMID: 28512778 DOI: 10.1002/humu.23256]

30 **Aoki T**, Yamada A, Aoyama K, Saito H, Tsuboi A, Nakada A, Niikura R, Fujishiro M, Oka S, Ishihara S, Matsuda T, Tanaka S, Koike K, Tada T. Automatic detection of erosions and ulcerations in wireless capsule endoscopy images based on a deep convolutional neural network. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2019; **89**: 357-363. e2 [PMID: 30670179 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2018.10.027]

31 **Bielecki C**, Bocklitz TW, Schmitt M, Krafft C, Marquardt C, Gharbi A, Knösel T, Stallmach A, Popp J. Classification of inflammatory bowel diseases by means of Raman spectroscopic imaging of epithelium cells. *J Biomed Opt* 2012; **17**: 076030 [PMID: 22894513 DOI: 10.1117/1.JBO.17.7.076030]

32 **Cui H**, Zhang X. Alignment-free supervised classification of metagenomes by recursive SVM. *BMC Genomics* 2013; **14**: 641 [PMID: 24053649 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2164-14-641]

33 **Duttagupta R**, DiRienzo S, Jiang R, Bowers J, Gollub J, Kao J, Kearney K, Rudolph D, Dawany NB, Showe MK, Stamato T, Getts RC, Jones KW. Genome-wide maps of circulating miRNA biomarkers for ulcerative colitis. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e31241 [PMID: 22359580 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0031241]

34 **Daneshjou R**, Wang Y, Bromberg Y, Bovo S, Martelli PL, Babbi G, Lena PD, Casadio R, Edwards M, Gifford D, Jones DT, Sundaram L, Bhat RR, Li X, Pal LR, Kundu K, Yin Y, Moult J, Jiang Y, Pejaver V, Pagel KA, Li B, Mooney SD, Radivojac P, Shah S, Carraro M, Gasparini A, Leonardi E, Giollo M, Ferrari C, Tosatto SCE, Bachar E, Azaria JR, Ofran Y, Unger R, Niroula A, Vihinen M, Chang B, Wang MH, Franke A, Petersen BS, Pirooznia M, Zandi P, McCombie R, Potash JB, Altman RB, Klein TE, Hoskins RA, Repo S, Brenner SE, Morgan AA. Working toward precision medicine: Predicting phenotypes from exomes in the Critical Assessment of Genome Interpretation (CAGI) challenges. *Hum Mutat* 2017; **38**: 1182-1192 [PMID: 28634997 DOI: 10.1002/humu.23280]

35 **Geurts P**, Fillet M, de Seny D, Meuwis MA, Malaise M, Merville MP, Wehenkel L. Proteomic mass spectra classification using decision tree based ensemble methods. *Bioinformatics* 2005; **21**: 3138-3145 [PMID: 15890743 DOI: 10.1093/bioinformatics/bti494]

36 **Li H**, Lai L, Shen J. Development of a susceptibility gene based novel predictive model for the diagnosis of ulcerative colitis using random forest and artificial neural network. *Aging (Albany NY)* 2020; **12**: 20471-20482 [PMID: 33099536 DOI: 10.18632/aging.103861]

37 **Wingfield B**, Coleman S, McGinnity TM, Bjourson AJ. Robust Microbial Markers for Non-Invasive Inflammatory Bowel Disease Identification. *IEEE/ACM Trans Comput Biol Bioinform* 2019; **16**: 2078-2088 [PMID: 29994028 DOI: 10.1109/TCBB.2018.2831212]

38 **Han L**, Maciejewski M, Brockel C, Gordon W, Snapper SB, Korzenik JR, Afzelius L, Altman RB. A probabilistic pathway score (PROPS) for classification with applications to inflammatory bowel disease. *Bioinformatics* 2018; **34**: 985-993 [PMID: 29048458 DOI: 10.1093/bioinformatics/btx651]

39 **Wang Y**, Miller M, Astrakhan Y, Petersen BS, Schreiber S, Franke A, Bromberg Y. Identifying Crohn's disease signal from variome analysis. *Genome Med* 2019; **11**: 59 [PMID: 31564248 DOI: 10.1186/s13073-019-0670-6]

40 **Kumar R**, Zhao Q, Seshamani S, Mullin G, Hager G, Dassopoulos T. Assessment of Crohn's disease lesions in wireless capsule endoscopy images. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng* 2012; **59**: 355-362 [PMID: 22020661 DOI: 10.1109/TBME.2011.2172438]

41 **Biasci D**, Lee JC, Noor NM, Pombal DR, Hou M, Lewis N, Ahmad T, Hart A, Parkes M, McKinney EF, Lyons PA, Smith KGC. A blood-based prognostic biomarker in IBD. *Gut* 2019; **68**: 1386-1395 [PMID: 31030191 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2019-318343]

42 **Waljee AK**, Wallace BI, Cohen-Mekelburg S, Liu Y, Liu B, Sauder K, Stidham RW, Zhu J, Higgins PDR. Development and Validation of Machine Learning Models in Prediction of Remission in Patients With Moderate to Severe Crohn Disease. *JAMA Netw Open* 2019; **2**: e193721 [PMID: 31074823 DOI: 10.1001/jamanetworkopen.2019.3721]

43 **Mahapatra D**, Vos FM, Buhmann JM. Active learning based segmentation of Crohns disease from abdominal MRI. *Comput Methods Programs Biomed* 2016; **128**: 75-85 [PMID: 27040833 DOI: 10.1016/j.cmpb.2016.01.014]

44 **Reddy BK**, Delen D, Agrawal RK. Predicting and explaining inflammation in Crohn's disease

patients using predictive analytics methods and electronic medical record data. *Health Informatics J* 2019; **25**: 1201-1218 [PMID: 29320910 DOI: 10.1177/1460458217751015]

45 **Douglas GM**, Hansen R, Jones CMA, Dunn KA, Comeau AM, Bielawski JP, Tayler R, El-Omar EM, Russell RK, Hold GL, Langille MGI, Van Limbergen J. Multi-omics differentially classify disease state and treatment outcome in pediatric Crohn's disease. *Microbiome* 2018; **6**: 13 [PMID: 29335008 DOI: 10.1186/s40168-018-0398-3]

46 **Maeda Y**, Kudo SE, Mori Y, Misawa M, Ogata N, Sasanuma S, Wakamura K, Oda M, Mori K, Ohtsuka K. Fully automated diagnostic system with artificial intelligence using endocytoscopy to identify the presence of histologic inflammation associated with ulcerative colitis (with video). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2019; **89**: 408-415 [PMID: 30268542 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2018.09.024]

47 **Charisis VS**, Hadjileontiadis LJ. Potential of hybrid adaptive filtering in inflammatory lesion detection from capsule endoscopy images. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; **22**: 8641-8657 [PMID: 27818583 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i39.8641]

48 **Klang E**, Barash Y, Margalit RY, Soffer S, Shimon O, Albshesh A, Ben-Horin S, Amitai MM, Eliakim R, Kopylov U. Deep learning algorithms for automated detection of Crohn's disease ulcers by video capsule endoscopy. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2020; **91**: 606-613. e2 [PMID: 31743689 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2019.11.012]

49 **Ungaro RC**, Hu L, Ji J, Nayar S, Kugathasan S, Denson LA, Hyams J, Dubinsky MC, Sands BE, Cho JH. Machine learning identifies novel blood protein predictors of penetrating and stricturing complications in newly diagnosed paediatric Crohn's disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2021; **53**: 281-290 [PMID: 33131065]

50 **Barash Y**, Azaria L, Soffer S, Margalit Yehuda R, Shlomi O, Ben-Horin S, Eliakim R, Klang E, Kopylov U. Ulcer severity grading in video capsule images of patients with Crohn's disease: an ordinal neural network solution. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2021; **93**: 187-192 [PMID: 32535191 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2020.05.066]

51 **Lamash Y**, Kurugol S, Freiman M, Perez-Rossello JM, Callahan MJ, Bousvaros A, Warfield SK. Curved planar reformatting and convolutional neural network-based segmentation of the small bowel for visualization and quantitative assessment of pediatric Crohn's disease from MRI. *J Magn Reson Imaging* 2019; **49**: 1565-1576 [PMID: 30353957 DOI: 10.1002/jmri.26330]

52 **Takenaka K**, Ohtsuka K, Fujii T, Negi M, Suzuki K, Shimizu H, Oshima S, Akiyama S, Motobayashi M, Nagahori M, Saito E, Matsuoka K, Watanabe M. Development and Validation of a Deep Neural Network for Accurate Evaluation of Endoscopic Images From Patients With Ulcerative Colitis. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **158**: 2150-2157 [PMID: 32060000 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2020.02.012]

53 **Bossuyt P**, Nakase H, Vermeire S, de Hertogh G, Eelbode T, Ferrante M, Hasegawa T, Willekens H, Ikemoto Y, Makino T, Bisschops R. Automatic, computer-aided determination of endoscopic and histological inflammation in patients with mild to moderate ulcerative colitis based on red density. *Gut* 2020; **69**: 1778-1786 [PMID: 31915237 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2019-320056]

54 **Bhambhvani HP**, Zamora A. Deep learning enabled classification of Mayo endoscopic subscore in patients with ulcerative colitis. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2021; **33**: 645-649 [PMID: 33079775 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0000000000001952]

55 **Ozawa T**, Ishihara S, Fujishiro M, Saito H, Kumagai Y, Shichijo S, Aoyama K, Tada T. Novel computer-assisted diagnosis system for endoscopic disease activity in patients with ulcerative colitis. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2019; **89**: 416-421. e1 [PMID: 30367878 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2018.10.020]

56 **Bossuyt P**, De Hertogh G, Eelbode T, Vermeire S, Bisschops R. Computer-Aided Diagnosis With Monochromatic Light Endoscopy for Scoring Histologic Remission in Ulcerative Colitis. *Gastroenterology* 2021; **160**: 23-25 [PMID: 33058863 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2020.09.053]

57 **Stidham RW**, Liu W, Bishu S, Rice MD, Higgins PDR, Zhu J, Nallamothu BK, Waljee AK. Performance of a Deep Learning Model *vs* Human Reviewers in Grading Endoscopic Disease Severity of Patients With Ulcerative Colitis. *JAMA Netw Open* 2019; **2**: e193963 [PMID: 31099869 DOI: 10.1001/jamanetworkopen.2019.3963]

58 **Gottlieb K**, Requa J, Karnes W, Chandra Gudivada R, Shen J, Rael E, Arora V, Dao T, Ninh A, McGill J. Central Reading of Ulcerative Colitis Clinical Trial Videos Using Neural Networks. *Gastroenterology* 2021; **160**: 710-719. e2 [PMID: 33098883 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2020.10.024]

59 **Waljee AK**, Liu B, Sauder K, Zhu J, Govani SM, Stidham RW, Higgins PDR. Predicting Corticosteroid-Free Biologic Remission with Vedolizumab in Crohn's Disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2018; **24**: 1185-1192 [PMID: 29668915 DOI: 10.1093/ibd/izy031]

60 **Uttam S**, Hashash JG, LaFace J, Binion D, Regueiro M, Hartman DJ, Brand RE, Liu Y. Three-Dimensional Nanoscale Nuclear Architecture Mapping of Rectal Biopsies Detects Colorectal Neoplasia in Patients with Inflammatory Bowel Disease. *Cancer Prev Res (Phila)* 2019; **12**: 527-538 [PMID: 31164345 DOI: 10.1158/1940-6207.CAPR-19-0024]

61 **Waljee AK**, Sauder K, Patel A, Segar S, Liu B, Zhang Y, Zhu J, Stidham RW, Balis U, Higgins PDR. Machine Learning Algorithms for Objective Remission and Clinical Outcomes with Thiopurines. *J Crohns Colitis* 2017; **11**: 801-810 [PMID: 28333183 DOI: 10.1093/ecco-jcc/jjx014]

62 **Popa IV**, Burlacu A, Mihai C, Prelipcean CC. A Machine Learning Model Accurately Predicts Ulcerative Colitis Activity at One Year in Patients Treated with Anti-Tumour Necrosis Factor α Agents. *Medicina (Kaunas)* 2020; **56** [PMID: 33233514 DOI: 10.3390/medicina56110628]

63 **Waljee AK**, Joyce JC, Wang S, Saxena A, Hart M, Zhu J, Higgins PD. Algorithms outperform metabolite tests in predicting response of patients with inflammatory bowel disease to thiopurines.

*Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **8**: 143-150 [PMID: 19835986 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2009.09.031]

64 **Menti E**, Lanera C, Lorenzoni G, Giachino DF, Marchi M, Gregori D, Berchialla P; Piedmont Study Group on the Genetics of IBD. Bayesian Machine Learning Techniques for revealing complex interactions among genetic and clinical factors in association with extra-intestinal Manifestations in IBD patients. *AMIA Annu Symp Proc* 2016; **2016**: 884-893 [PMID: 28269885]

65 **Waljee AK**, Lipson R, Wiitala WL, Zhang Y, Liu B, Zhu J, Wallace B, Govani SM, Stidham RW, Hayward R, Higgins PDR. Predicting Hospitalization and Outpatient Corticosteroid Use in Inflammatory Bowel Disease Patients Using Machine Learning. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2017; **24**: 45-53 [PMID: 29272474 DOI: 10.1093/ibd/izx007]

66 **Morilla I**, Uzzan M, Laharie D, Cazals-Hatem D, Denost Q, Daniel F, Belleannee G, Bouhnik Y, Wainrib G, Panis Y, Ogier-Denis E, Treton X. Colonic MicroRNA Profiles, Identified by a Deep Learning Algorithm, That Predict Responses to Therapy of Patients With Acute Severe Ulcerative Colitis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2019; **17**: 905-913 [PMID: 30223112 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2018.08.068]

67 **Wang L**, Fan R, Zhang C, Hong L, Zhang T, Chen Y, Liu K, Wang Z, Zhong J. Applying Machine Learning Models to Predict Medication Nonadherence in Crohn's Disease Maintenance Therapy. *Patient Prefer Adherence* 2020; **14**: 917-926 [PMID: 32581518 DOI: 10.2147/PPA.S253732]

68 **Bottigliengo D**, Berchialla P, Lanera C, Azzolina D, Lorenzoni G, Martinato M, Giachino D, Baldi I, Gregori D. The Role of Genetic Factors in Characterizing Extra-Intestinal Manifestations in Crohn's Disease Patients: Are Bayesian Machine Learning Methods Improving Outcome Predictions? *J Clin Med* 2019; **8** [PMID: 31212952 DOI: 10.3390/jcm8060865]

69 **Ghoshal UC**, Rai S, Kulkarni A, Gupta A. Prediction of outcome of treatment of acute severe ulcerative colitis using principal component analysis and artificial intelligence. *JGH Open* 2020; **4**: 889-897 [PMID: 33102760 DOI: 10.1002/jgh3.12342]

70 **Sofo L**, Caprino P, Schena CA, Sacchetti F, Potenza AE, Ciociola A. New perspectives in the prediction of postoperative complications for high-risk ulcerative colitis patients: machine learning preliminary approach. *Eur Rev Med Pharmacol Sci* 2020; **24**: 12781-12787 [PMID: 33378027 DOI: 10.26355/eurrev_202012_24178]

71 **Kang T**, Ding W, Zhang L, Ziemek D, Zarringhalam K. A biological network-based regularized artificial neural network model for robust phenotype prediction from gene expression data. *BMC Bioinformatics* 2017; **18**: 565 [PMID: 29258445 DOI: 10.1186/s12859-017-1984-2]

72 **Babic A**, Ster B, Pavesic N, Wigertz O. Machine learning for the quality of life in inflammatory bowel disease. *Stud Health Technol Inform* 1997; **43** Pt B: 661-665 [PMID: 10179749]

73 **Dong Y**, Xu L, Fan Y, Xiang P, Gao X, Chen Y, Zhang W, Ge Q. A novel surgical predictive model for Chinese Crohn's disease patients. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2019; **98**: e17510 [PMID: 31725605 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000017510]

74 **Lerrigo R**, Coffey JT, Kravitz JL, Jadhav P, Nikfarjam A, Shah NH, Jurafsky D, Sinha SR. The Emotional Toll of Inflammatory Bowel Disease: Using Machine Learning to Analyze Online Community Forum Discourse. *Crohn's & Colitis 360* 2019; **1**: otz011 [DOI: 10.1093/crocol/otz011]

75 **Papadakis KA**, Tabibzadeh S. Diagnosis and misdiagnosis of inflammatory bowel disease. *Gastrointest Endosc Clin N Am* 2002; **12**: 433-449 [PMID: 12486937 DOI: 10.1016/s1052-5157(02)00005-3]

76 **Best WR**. Predicting the Crohn's disease activity index from the Harvey-Bradshaw Index. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2006; **12**: 304-310 [PMID: 16633052 DOI: 10.1097/01.MIB.0000215091.77492.2a]

77 **Lewis JD**, Chuai S, Nessel L, Lichtenstein GR, Aberra FN, Ellenberg JH. Use of the noninvasive components of the Mayo score to assess clinical response in ulcerative colitis. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2008; **14**: 1660-1666 [PMID: 18623174 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.20520]

78 **Jones J**, Loftus EV Jr, Panaccione R, Chen LS, Peterson S, McConnell J, Baudhuin L, Hanson K, Feagan BG, Harmsen SW, Zinsmeister AR, Helou E, Sandborn WJ. Relationships between disease activity and serum and fecal biomarkers in patients with Crohn's disease. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **6**: 1218-1224 [PMID: 18799360 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2008.06.010]

79 **Schoepfer AM**, Beglinger C, Straumann A, Safroneeva E, Romero Y, Armstrong D, Schmidt C, Trummler M, Pittet V, Vavricka SR. Fecal calprotectin more accurately reflects endoscopic activity of ulcerative colitis than the Lichtiger Index, C-reactive protein, platelets, hemoglobin, and blood leukocytes. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2013; **19**: 332-341 [PMID: 23328771 DOI: 10.1097/MIB.0b013e3182810066]

80 **Xie T**, Zhang T, Ding C, Dai X, Li Y, Guo Z, Wei Y, Gong J, Zhu W, Li J. Ulcerative Colitis Endoscopic Index of Severity (UCEIS) *vs* Mayo Endoscopic Score (MES) in guiding the need for colectomy in patients with acute severe colitis. *Gastroenterol Rep (Oxf)* 2018; **6**: 38-44 [PMID: 29479441 DOI: 10.1093/gastro/gox016]

81 **Daperno M**, D'Haens G, Van Assche G, Baert F, Bulois P, Maunoury V, Sostegni R, Rocca R, Pera A, Gevers A, Mary JY, Colombel JF, Rutgeerts P. Development and validation of a new, simplified endoscopic activity score for Crohn's disease: the SES-CD. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2004; **60**: 505-512 [PMID: 15472670 DOI: 10.1016/s0016-5107(04)01878-4]

82 **Novak G**, Parker CE, Pai RK, MacDonald JK, Feagan BG, Sandborn WJ, D'Haens G, Jairath V, Khanna R. Histologic scoring indices for evaluation of disease activity in Crohn's disease. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2017; **7**: CD012351 [PMID: 28731502 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD012351.pub2]

83 **Mosli MH**, Feagan BG, Sandborn WJ, D'haens G, Behling C, Kaplan K, Driman DK, Shackelton LM, Baker KA, Macdonald JK, Vandervoort MK, Geboes K, Levesque BG. Histologic evaluation of

ulcerative colitis: a systematic review of disease activity indices. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2014; **20**: 564-575 [PMID: 24412993 DOI: 10.1097/01.MIB.0000437986.00190.71]

84 **Falvey JD**, Hoskin T, Meijer B, Ashcroft A, Walmsley R, Day AS, Gearry RB. Disease activity assessment in IBD: clinical indices and biomarkers fail to predict endoscopic remission. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2015; **21**: 824-831 [PMID: 25738372 DOI: 10.1097/MIB.0000000000000341]

85 **Neurath MF**. Current and emerging therapeutic targets for IBD. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2017; **14**: 269-278 [PMID: 28144028 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2016.208]

86 **Weisshof R**, El Jurdi K, Zmeter N, Rubin DT. Emerging Therapies for Inflammatory Bowel Disease. *Adv Ther* 2018; **35**: 1746-1762 [PMID: 30374806 DOI: 10.1007/s12325-018-0795-9]

87 **Luo Y**, Zhang Y, Liu M, Lai Y, Liu P, Wang Z, Xing T, Huang Y, Li Y, Li A, Wang Y, Luo X, Liu S, Han Z. Artificial Intelligence-Assisted Colonoscopy for Detection of Colon Polyps: a Prospective, Randomized Cohort Study. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2020 [PMID: 32968933 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-020-04802-4]

88 **Selaru FM**, Xu Y, Yin J, Zou T, Liu TC, Mori Y, Abraham JM, Sato F, Wang S, Twigg C, Olaru A, Shustova V, Leytin A, Hytiroglou P, Shibata D, Harpaz N, Meltzer SJ. Artificial neural networks distinguish among subtypes of neoplastic colorectal lesions. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **122**: 606-613 [PMID: 11874992 DOI: 10.1053/gast.2002.31904]

89 **Gillen CD**, Walmsley RS, Prior P, Andrews HA, Allan RN. Ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease: a comparison of the colorectal cancer risk in extensive colitis. *Gut* 1994; **35**: 1590-1592 [PMID: 7828978 DOI: 10.1136/gut.35.11.1590]

90 **Bernstein CN**, Blanchard JF, Kliewer E, Wajda A. Cancer risk in patients with inflammatory bowel disease: a population-based study. *Cancer* 2001; **91**: 854-862 [PMID: 11241255 DOI: 10.1002/1097-0142(20010215)91:4<854::aid-cncr1073>3.0.co;2-z]

91 **Misawa M**, Kudo SE, Mori Y, Cho T, Kataoka S, Yamauchi A, Ogawa Y, Maeda Y, Takeda K, Ichimasa K, Nakamura H, Yagawa Y, Toyoshima N, Ogata N, Kudo T, Hisayuki T, Hayashi T, Wakamura K, Baba T, Ishida F, Itoh H, Roth H, Oda M, Mori K. Artificial Intelligence-Assisted Polyp Detection for Colonoscopy: Initial Experience. *Gastroenterology* 2018; **154**: 2027-2029. e3 [PMID: 29653147 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2018.04.003]

92 **Wang P**, Berzin TM, Glissen Brown JR, Bharadwaj S, Becq A, Xiao X, Liu P, Li L, Song Y, Zhang D, Li Y, Xu G, Tu M, Liu X. Real-time automatic detection system increases colonoscopic polyp and adenoma detection rates: a prospective randomised controlled study. *Gut* 2019; **68**: 1813-1819 [PMID: 30814121 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2018-317500]

93 **Wang P**, Liu X, Berzin TM, Glissen Brown JR, Liu P, Zhou C, Lei L, Li L, Guo Z, Lei S, Xiong F, Wang H, Song Y, Pan Y, Zhou G. Effect of a deep-learning computer-aided detection system on adenoma detection during colonoscopy (CADe-DB trial): a double-blind randomised study. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **5**: 343-351 [PMID: 31981517 DOI: 10.1016/S2468-1253(19)30411-X]

94 **Ogawa R**, Nishikawa J, Hideura E, Goto A, Koto Y, Ito S, Unno M, Yamaoka Y, Kawasato R, Hashimoto S, Okamoto T, Ogihara H, Hamamoto Y, Sakaida I. Objective Assessment of the Utility of Chromoendoscopy with a Support Vector Machine. *J Gastrointest Cancer* 2019; **50**: 386-391 [PMID: 29504086 DOI: 10.1007/s12029-018-0083-6]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

*World J Gastroenterol* 2021 May 7; 27(17): 1936-1942

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i17.1936

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

# Post-pancreatitis diabetes mellitus and excess intra-pancreatic fat deposition as harbingers of pancreatic cancer

Maxim S Petrov

**ORCID number:** Maxim S Petrov 0000-0002-5923-9062.

**Author contributions:** Petrov MS conceived and wrote the paper.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** The author has no conflict of interest.



**Manuscript source:** Invited manuscript

**Specialty type:** Gastroenterology and hepatology

**Country/Territory of origin:** New Zealand

**Peer-review report's scientific quality classification**

Grade A (Excellent): A, A

Grade B (Very good): 0

**Maxim S Petrov,** School of Medicine, The University of Auckland, Auckland 1142, New Zealand

**Corresponding author:** Maxim S Petrov, MD, MPH, PhD, Professor, School of Medicine, The University of Auckland, 28 Park Avenue, Auckland 1142, New Zealand.
m.petrov@auckland.ac.nz

## Abstract

Progress in the fight against pancreatic cancer has been hampered by many factors. One of them is the inability to detect the disease early in overwhelming majority of patients. The present paper outlines a novel way in which progress could be accelerated. This includes a focus on two harbingers—post-pancreatitis diabetes mellitus and excess intra-pancreatic fat deposition—that converge at affecting the tumor macroenvironment and microenvironment specifically in the pancreas, not other organs. The two entities have the potential to be incorporated into future screening strategies with a view to early detecting of pancreatic cancer.

**Key Words:** Pancreatic cancer; Post-pancreatitis diabetes mellitus; Intra-pancreatic fat; Pancreatitis; Early detection; Screening



**Core Tip:** Identification of harbingers of pancreatic cancer that are specifically related to the pancreas is necessary to enable cost-effective and achievement-appropriate screening for this disease. Post-pancreatitis diabetes mellitus and excess intra-pancreatic fat deposition are positioned well to serve the purpose.

**Citation:** Petrov MS. Post-pancreatitis diabetes mellitus and excess intra-pancreatic fat deposition as harbingers of pancreatic cancer. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; 27(17): 1936-1942
**URL:** https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v27/i17/1936.htm
**DOI:** https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v27.i17.1936

Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

**Received:** January 20, 2021
**Peer-review started:** January 20, 2021
**First decision:** February 23, 2021
**Revised:** March 2, 2021
**Accepted:** April 9, 2021
**Article in press:** April 9, 2021
**Published online:** May 7, 2021

**P-Reviewer:** Dubois-Silva Á
**S-Editor:** Gao CC
**L-Editor:** A
**P-Editor:** Ma YJ

## INTRODUCTION

Pancreatic cancer incidence rates are on the rise since the 1990s[1]. Given that around 90% of pancreatic cancer is unresectable at the time of diagnosis, early detection of pancreatic cancer is critical with a view to lessening the burden of this disease[2]. The development of an accurate test for early detection of sporadic pancreatic cancer would considerably improve the survival of these patients[3]. However, while more than 2500 putative biomarkers (genomics, transcriptomics, proteomics) were found to be overexpressed at the messenger RNA or protein level in pancreatic cancer[4], translating biomarker discoveries into clinical applications has been a litany of failures in the setting of pancreatic cancer. Identification of harbingers of sporadic pancreatic cancer and development of screening policies based on them is another avenue towards lessening the burden of this disease. New-onset diabetes and obesity became recognized as one of the most prominent risk factors for pancreatic cancer[5-7]. The present review focuses on how that knowledge has crystallized over the past 5 years or so to consider post-pancreatitis diabetes mellitus (PPDM) and excess intra-pancreatic fat deposition (IPFD) as the specific harbingers of pancreatic cancer that are superior to general risk factors such as new-onset diabetes mellitus and obesity.

## PERSISTENT HYPERGLYCEMIA

A 2011 meta-analysis of 35 cohort studies showed that people with prevalent diabetes had a 1.9-times higher risk for pancreatic cancer as compared with those without diabetes (Figure 1)[8]. Later, a 2018 study from the Mayo clinic demonstrated that not any diabetes but only incident diabetes holds promise as a harbinger of pancreatic cancer[9]. A 60-mo temporal fasting plasma glucose profile was constructed for patients diagnosed with pancreatic cancer (as well as matched controls). The authors showed that hyperglycemia first occurred 30-36 mo prior to pancreatic cancer diagnosis and reached the diabetes threshold 6-12 mo prior to cancer diagnosis. Moreover, fasting plasma glucose concentrations increased with tumor volume, with the smallest tumor volume associated with hyperglycemia being 1.1-2.0 mL (which is considerably smaller than the average tumor volume of 11.5 mL at diagnosis of pancreatic cancer)[9]. In theory, diagnosing pancreatic cancer when it is that small could markedly increase cure rates and long-term survival. In practice, however, hyperglycemia alone cannot be implemented as a cost-effective screening strategy because pancreatic cancer is rare whereas hyperglycemia is very common. Further, hyperglycemia in the context of pancreatic cancer represents a paraneoplastic syndrome and therefore is not specific. For example, data from two large prospective cohorts (494078 person-years of follow-up) in the United States published in 2020 confirmed that incident diabetes is a significant risk factor for pancreatic cancer (adjusted hazard ratio 2.07; 95% confidence interval 1.70 to 2.52)[10]. However, the study also showed that incident diabetes is a significant risk factor for cancer in 7 other organs (breast, large intestine, endome-trium, esophagus, liver, lung, and thyroid). Combining incident diabetes with weight loss was shown to increase the ability to predict the occurrence of pancreatic cancer in a 2018 retrospective study[11]. However, weight loss is another non-specific symptom and therefore is unlikely to be much more useful in determination of pancreatic cancer risk (as compared with cancer in the 7 organs mentioned above).

It is conceivable that accurate determination of pancreatic cancer risk among people with persistent hyperglycemia can only be achieved when factors related specifically to the pancreas are considered. One such factor is inflammation of the pancreas prior to new-onset diabetes (*i.e.*, PPDM). PPDM is a sub-type of diabetes of the exocrine pancreas and is caused by acute pancreatitis in four out of five people and chronic pancreatitis in one out of five people[12]. Its epidemiology, risk factors, pathogenesis, and management were comprehensively reviewed elsewhere[12]. A large 2020 cohort study by Cho *et al*[13] compared the risks of developing pancreatic cancer in PPDM *vs* type 2 diabetes mellitus without history of pancreatitis and showed that PPDM was associated with a 7-times significantly higher risk for pancreatic cancer (adjusted hazard ratio 6.94; 95% confidence interval 4.09 to 11.77). This held true after adjustment for age, sex, ethnicity, social deprivation index, alcohol abuse, tobacco smoking, history of gallstones, cholecystectomy, and Charlson comorbidity index. When a 12-mo lag period between diabetes diagnosis and pancreatic cancer diagnosis was introduced (to minimize the possibility of reverse causality), the results did not change materially (adjusted hazard ratio 7.93; 95% confidence interval 3.53 to 17.81).

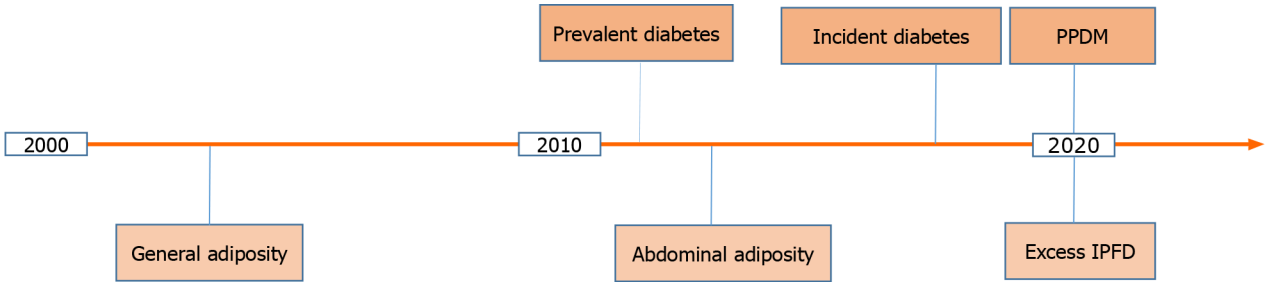



**Figure 1 A timeline of the major developments in regards to persistent hyperglycemia and excess body fat as harbingers of pancreatic cancer in the 21st century to date.** IPFD: Intra-pancreatic fat deposition; PPDM: Post-pancreatitis diabetes mellitus.

Also, people with history of pancreatitis (without diabetes mellitus) had a 4.8-times significantly higher risk of pancreatic cancer (95% confidence interval 3.38 to 6.99) than those with type 2 diabetes mellitus without history of pancreatitis[13]. This suggests that diabetes mellitus without history of pancreatitis is not a major risk factor for pancreatic cancer; rather it is pancreatitis that is a major risk factor for pancreatic cancer in individuals with diabetes. Moreover, the study showed that an attack of pancreatitis in individuals with diabetes had a differential effect on the subsequent risk of pancreatic cancer depending on whether it occurred before or after diabetes. Specifically, it found that people with PPDM had a 2.3-times significantly higher risk of pancreatic cancer (95% confidence interval 1.12 to 4.93) than those with type 2 diabetes mellitus that precedes pancreatitis, after adjustment for the above-mentioned covariates[13]. This suggests that the increased risk of pancreatic cancer in individuals with PPDM is not due to merely the effect of pancreatitis as a comorbidity in individuals with type 2 diabetes mellitus but rather pancreatitis exerts an effect beyond being a comorbidity in individuals with PPDM.

The 2018 Mayo clinic study[9] and the 2020 COSMOS study[13] are highly complemen-tary in nature, paving the way to identification of population at high risk of pancreatic cancer within a cohort of people with diabetes, which has the potential to enrich the cohort for pancreatic cancer. The 3-year incidence of pancreatic cancer in the Mayo clinic study was 1.0% among individuals with diabetes, which is in line with the 0.7% estimate in individuals with diabetes in the entire cohort of the COSMOS study. The Mayo clinic developed a model using the data of 1516 individuals with first diagnosis of diabetes (based on fasting blood glucose and/or estimated average glucose) and the incidence of pancreatic cancer increased to 3.6% after applying the model[11]. The model requires five variables: age at first diagnosis of diabetes, blood glucose levels at two time points (approximately 12 mo prior to and at first diagnosis of diabetes), and weight at two time points (approximately 12 mo prior to and at first diagnosis of diabetes). The COMSOS study of 139843 individuals offered a complementary non-overlapping approach, in which the consideration of history of pancreatitis prior to first diagnosis of diabetes (regardless of changes in glycemia and weight prior to diabetes) enabled the enrichment of the cohort of people with diabetes for pancreatic cancer to the extent the Mayo clinic study did (from 0.7% to 3.1% in the COSMOS study as compared with from 1.0% to 3.6% in the Mayo clinic study)[13]. Interestingly, the COSMOS study found that resected pancreatic cancer yielded the highest risk (hazard ratio 16.2) in individuals with PPDM[13]. This likely reflects the higher likelihood of detection of pancreatic cancer at earlier stages in individuals with PPDM *vs* type 2 diabetes mellitus, which may be attributable to the fact that individuals with PPDM are more likely to undergo more intensive work-up during hospitalization for pancreatitis (*e.g.*, earlier abdominal imaging and carbohydrate antigen 19-9, possibly resulting in a lead time) and are more closely monitored after hospital discharge. This is not dissimilar to the notion of 'incidentaloma'—incidental abnormal finding from imaging test. Based on the above findings, it is reasonable to suggest that taking into account history of pancreatitis (in addition to age at diabetes diagnosis and changes in glycemia and body composition prior to diabetes) will further enrich cohorts of people with diabetes for pancreatic cancer. Purposely-designed studies are warranted to operationalize the combined approach. But, in principal, it could be applied to all middle-aged and older adults after an attack of pancreatitis who develop new-onset diabetes and unintentional changes in body composition during follow-up. This might ultimately make screening for pancreatic cancer cost-effective and achievement-appropriate.

## EXCESS BODY FAT

In a 2003 prospective cohort study of more than 900000 adults, the relative risk of pancreatic cancer for people with morbid obesity (body mass index > 40 kg/m$^2$) was 2.76 (95% confidence interval 1.74 to 4.36) for women and 2.61 (95% confidence interval 1.30 to 5.40) for men (Figure 1)[14]. A 2009 prospective cohort study of more than 450416 adults estimated that general overweight or obesity (body mass index ≥ 25 kg/m$^2$) explained 8% of the population attributable risk for pancreatic cancer, which made it the second largest population attributable risk (following tobacco smoking) among all the modifiable factors studied[15]. Later, visceral adiposity (as evidenced by waist circumference) became acknowledged as a more accurate measure of excess body fat (Figure 1). Several prospective studies showed a significant association between risk of pancreatic cancer and visceral adiposity. These studies (encompassing 787356 adults) were meta-analyzed in 2012 and the risk of pancreatic cancer was estimated to increase 1.1-times (95% confidence interval 1.05 to 1.18) with every 10-cm increase in waist circumference[16]. Based on the best available evidence in regards to both body mass index and waist circumference, the World Cancer Research Fund and the American Institute for Cancer Research concluded that the association between excess adiposity and pancreatic cancer is causal[17]. However, the causality was also postulated in relation to excess adiposity and cancer in several other organs (esophagus, liver, colorectum, breast, endometrium, kidney). Given that both general adiposity and abdominal adiposity have a low specificity, these are not useful specifically for the purpose of early detection of pancreatic cancer.

More recently, local fat contained within the pancreas—termed IPFD—has emerged as an early specific factor contributing to the formation of pancreatic tumorigenesis (Figure 1). The relationship between IPFD and pancreatic cancer or premalignant lesions had been investigated in several studies that were systematically reviewed in a 2020 systematic review and meta-analysis by Sreedhar *et al*[18]. A total of 13 retrospective studies (encompassing 2178 individuals) were included. The pooled prevalence of fatty pancreas disease in individuals with pancreatic cancer was 52% (95% confidence interval 38 to 66%). Further, there was a 2.8-times higher prevalence of fatty pancreas disease among individuals with pancreatic cancer or pre-malignant lesions compared with controls (risk ratio 2.78; 95% confidence interval 1.56 to 4.94)[18]. High IPFD was also associated with dissemination and increased mortality of the disease in two single-center studies[19,20]. Besides, there was an evidence of a consistent association between the presence of pancreatic pre-malignant lesions and high IPFD, independent of fatty liver disease, abdominal adiposity, and general adiposity. In particular, one study showed a significantly increased IPFD in individuals with intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasm ($n$ = 85), as compared with age-, sex-, and diabetes status-matched individuals with no pancreatic cyst ($n$ = 85)[21]. Taking into account that two types of pancreatic cancer can develop in individuals with intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasm (invasive carcinoma within the index lesion and concomitant pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma arising at a site other than intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasm) and taking into account that progression to high-grade dysplasia within the index lesion is relatively easy to detect and follow up[22,23], an increased IPFD during follow-up could be particularly helpful in identifying individuals with intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasm who harbor concomitant pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma.

IPFD was also investigated in the setting of pancreatitis—a major risk factor for pancreatic cancer[13,24-27]. A cross-sectional study by Stuart *et al*[28] investigated 119 individuals after an attack of pancreatitis and 38 healthy volunteers. It found that IPFD (determined with the use of chemical shift-encoded magnetic resonance imaging) was significantly greater in individuals after an attack of pancreatitis (both acute and chronic) than healthy volunteers, in both crude analysis and after adjustment for age, sex, ethnicity, visceral-to-subcutaneous fat volume ratio, glycated hemoglobin, triglycerides. Notably, two other common ectopic fat phenotypes—liver fat and skeletal muscle fat deposition—did not differ significantly between the groups[28]. Several other cross-sectional studies showed that excess IPFD is associated with worse outcomes during hospitalization for acute pancreatitis[29-31]. Individuals with chronic pancreatitis alone ($n$ = 58) had a significantly greater IPFD in comparison with controls ($n$ = 60) in a cross-sectional study from the United States (determined with the use of chemical shift-encoded magnetic resonance imaging)[32]. Also, the severity of pancreatic ductal changes (based on the Cambridge classification) in individuals with chronic pancreatitis was not associated with IPFD[32]. It is worth noting that the study groups were compared in crude analysis only in that study, despite the fact that there were significant differences between the groups in terms of age, body composition,

alcohol consumption, and tobacco smoking. An earlier study from the United States found that individuals with chronic pancreatitis alone ($n$ = 35) had a significantly greater IPFD in comparison with controls ($n$ = 50) in a post-hoc analysis constrained to non-obese people only (body mass index < 30 kg/m$^2$)[33]. A longitudinal study from Japan sought to investigate the temporal relationship between IPFD and chronic pancreatitis[34]. A total of 9933 individuals without pancreatitis were examined in 2008 and followed up for 4 years as part of their medical check-up. The presence of fatty pancreas disease at baseline was associated with a 3.9-times higher risk of incident pancreatitis during follow-up (odds ratio 3.9; 95% confidence interval 2.0 to 7.7), after adjustment for age, sex, body mass index, glycated hemoglobin, systolic blood pressure, alcohol abuse, tobacco smoking, and other covariates[34]. However, it is worth noting that transabdominal ultrasound was used in this study, which is suboptimal for diagnosing of both chronic pancreatitis and fatty pancreas disease.

Beyond people with pancreatic premalignant lesions or history of pancreatitis, it is tempting to speculate that people with incidentally found fatty pancreas disease could benefit from a regular follow-up with a view to early detecting of pancreatic cancer. However, given that fatty pancreas disease is very common in the general population (prevalence 16.1%; 95% confidence interval 13.3 to 18.8)[35] and taking into account that the state-of-the-art sequential assessment of the pancreas (*i.e.*, the use of magnetic resonance imaging) is costly[36], screening of unselected people with fatty pancreas disease for pancreatic cancer is unlikely to reach current cost-effectiveness standards. However, it is envisaged that future studies will identify a subgroup of people with fatty pancreas disease in the general population that is at high risk for sporadic pancreatic cancer.

## CONCLUSION

The complex nature and the relative rarity of pancreatic cancer make it challenging to implement screening in people with no family history of the disease[37,38]. In fact, a 2019 evidence-based report by the United States Preventive Services Task Force deemed screening for pancreatic cancer in asymptomatic adults not to be cost-effective[39]. However, to date, the cost-effectiveness of only conventional non-specific risk factors has been considered. A 2021 microsimulation screening analysis model investigated the impact of relevant uncertainties on the effectiveness of pancreatic cancer screening and showed that test specificity had higher influence than sensitivity[40]. Growing evidence compels a consideration of middle-aged and older adults with PPDM and/or incidentally found fatty pancreas disease as specific populations at very high risk of developing pancreatic cancer. Comprehensive understanding of the intricate relationship between PPDM and IPFD will offer actionable insights into early detection of pancreatic cancer.

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Professor Petrov M, MD, MPH, PhD is the Principal Investigator of the COSMOS group, currently hosted at the School of Medicine, University of Auckland (New Zealand).

## REFERENCES

1 **Gordon-Dseagu VL**, Devesa SS, Goggins M, Stolzenberg-Solomon R. Pancreatic cancer incidence trends: Evidence from the Surveillance, Epidemiology and End Results (SEER) population-based data. *Int J Epidemiol* 2018; **47**: 427-439 [PMID: 29149259 DOI: 10.1093/ije/dyx232]

2 **McGuigan A**, Kelly P, Turkington RC, Jones C, Coleman HG, McCain RS. Pancreatic cancer: A review of clinical diagnosis, epidemiology, treatment and outcomes. *World J Gastroenterol* 2018; **24**: 4846-4861 [PMID: 30487695 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v24.i43.4846]

3 **Nannini G**, Meoni G, Amedei A, Tenori L. Metabolomics profile in gastrointestinal cancers: Update and future perspectives. *World J Gastroenterol* 2020; **26**: 2514-2532 [PMID: 32523308 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v26.i20.2514]

4 **Harsha HC**, Kandasamy K, Ranganathan P, Rani S, Ramabadran S, Gollapudi S, Balakrishnan L, Dwivedi SB, Telikicherla D, Selvan LD, Goel R, Mathivanan S, Marimuthu A, Kashyap M, Vizza RF, Mayer RJ, Decaprio JA, Srivastava S, Hanash SM, Hruban RH, Pandey A. A compendium of potential biomarkers of pancreatic cancer. *PLoS Med* 2009; **6**: e1000046 [PMID: 19360088 DOI:

10.1371/journal.pmed.1000046]
5 **Molina-Montes E**, Coscia C, Gómez-Rubio P, Fernández A, Boenink R, Rava M, Márquez M, Molero X, Löhr M, Sharp L, Michalski CW, Farré A, Perea J, O'Rorke M, Greenhalf W, Iglesias M, Tardón A, Gress TM, Barberá VM, Crnogorac-Jurcevic T, Muñoz-Bellvís L, Dominguez-Muñoz JE, Renz H, Balcells J, Costello E, Ilzarbe L, Kleeff J, Kong B, Mora J, O'Driscoll D, Poves I, Scarpa A, Yu J, Hidalgo M, Lawlor RT, Ye W, Carrato A, Real FX, Malats N; PanGenEU Study Investigators. Deciphering the complex interplay between pancreatic cancer, diabetes mellitus subtypes and obesity/BMI through causal inference and mediation analyses. *Gut* 2021; **70**: 319-329 [PMID: 32409590 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2019-319990]
6 **Pothuraju R**, Rachagani S, Junker WM, Chaudhary S, Saraswathi V, Kaur S, Batra SK. Pancreatic cancer associated with obesity and diabetes: an alternative approach for its targeting. *J Exp Clin Cancer Res* 2018; **37**: 319 [PMID: 30567565 DOI: 10.1186/s13046-018-0963-4]
7 **Paternoster S**, Falasca M. The intricate relationship between diabetes, obesity and pancreatic cancer. *Biochim Biophys Acta Rev Cancer* 2020; **1873**: 188326 [PMID: 31707038 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbcan.2019.188326]
8 **Ben Q**, Xu M, Ning X, Liu J, Hong S, Huang W, Zhang H, Li Z. Diabetes mellitus and risk of pancreatic cancer: A meta-analysis of cohort studies. *Eur J Cancer* 2011; **47**: 1928-1937 [PMID: 21458985 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2011.03.003]
9 **Sharma A**, Smyrk TC, Levy MJ, Topazian MA, Chari ST. Fasting blood glucose levels provide estimate of duration and progression of pancreatic cancer before diagnosis. *Gastroenterology* 2018; **155**: 490-500. e2 [PMID: 29723506 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2018.04.025]
10 **Hu Y**, Zhang X, Ma Y, Yuan C, Wang M, Wu K, Tabung FK, Tobias D, Hu FB, Giovannucci E, Song M. Incident type 2 diabetes duration and cancer risk: a prospective study in two us cohorts. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2021; **113**: 381-389 [PMID: 33225344 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/djaa141]
11 **Sharma A**, Kandlakunta H, Nagpal SJS, Feng Z, Hoos W, Petersen GM, Chari ST. Model to determine risk of pancreatic cancer in patients with new-onset diabetes. *Gastroenterology* 2018; **155**: 730-739. e3 [PMID: 29775599 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2018.05.023]
12 **Petrov MS**. Post-pancreatitis diabetes mellitus: prime time for secondary disease. *Eur J Endocrinol* 2021; **184**: R137-R149 [PMID: 33460393 DOI: 10.1530/EJE-20-0468]
13 **Cho J**, Scragg R, Petrov MS. Postpancreatitis diabetes confers higher risk for pancreatic cancer than type 2 diabetes: results from a nationwide cancer registry. *Diabetes Care* 2020; **43**: 2106-2112 [PMID: 32616613 DOI: 10.2337/dc20-0207]
14 **Calle EE**, Rodriguez C, Walker-Thurmond K, Thun MJ. Overweight, obesity, and mortality from cancer in a prospectively studied cohort of U.S. adults. *N Engl J Med* 2003; **348**: 1625-1638 [PMID: 12711737 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa021423]
15 **Jiao L**, Mitrou PN, Reedy J, Graubard BI, Hollenbeck AR, Schatzkin A, Stolzenberg-Solomon R. A combined healthy lifestyle score and risk of pancreatic cancer in a large cohort study. *Arch Intern Med* 2009; **169**: 764-770 [PMID: 19398688 DOI: 10.1001/archinternmed.2009.46]
16 **Aune D**, Greenwood DC, Chan DS, Vieira R, Vieira AR, Navarro Rosenblatt DA, Cade JE, Burley VJ, Norat T. Body mass index, abdominal fatness and pancreatic cancer risk: A systematic review and non-linear dose-response meta-analysis of prospective studies. *Ann Oncol* 2012; **23**: 843-852 [PMID: 21890910 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdr398]
17 **World Cancer Research Fund/American Institute for Cancer Research**. Body fatness & weight gain. Continuous update project expert report 2020. [cited 1 March 2021]. In: World Cancer Research Fund International [Internet]. Available from: https://www.wcrf.org/dietandcancer/exposures/body-fatness
18 **Sreedhar UL**, DeSouza SV, Park B, Petrov MS. A systematic review of intra-pancreatic fat deposition and pancreatic carcinogenesis. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2020; **24**: 2560-2569 [PMID: 31749093 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-019-04417-4]
19 **Mathur A**, Zyromski NJ, Pitt HA, Al-Azzawi H, Walker JJ, Saxena R, Lillemoe KD. Pancreatic steatosis promotes dissemination and lethality of pancreatic cancer. *J Am Coll Surg* 2009; **208**: 989-94; discussion 994 [PMID: 19476877 DOI: 10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2008.12.026]
20 **Mathur A**, Hernandez J, Shaheen F, Shroff M, Dahal S, Morton C, Farrior T, Kedar R, Rosemurgy A. Preoperative computed tomography measurements of pancreatic steatosis and visceral fat: prognostic markers for dissemination and lethality of pancreatic adenocarcinoma. *HPB (Oxford)* 2011; **13**: 404-410 [PMID: 21609373 DOI: 10.1111/j.1477-2574.2011.00304.x]
21 **Kashiwagi K**, Seino T, Fukuhara S, Minami K, Horibe M, Iwasaki E, Takaishi H, Itoh K, Sugino Y, Inoue N, Iwao Y, Kanai T. Pancreatic fat content detected by computed tomography and its significant relationship with intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasm. *Pancreas* 2018; **47**: 1087-1092 [PMID: 30028443 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0000000000001103]
22 **Tanaka M**, Fernández-Del Castillo C, Kamisawa T, Jang JY, Levy P, Ohtsuka T, Salvia R, Shimizu Y, Tada M, Wolfgang CL. Revisions of international consensus Fukuoka guidelines for the management of IPMN of the pancreas. *Pancreatology* 2017; **17**: 738-753 [PMID: 28735806 DOI: 10.1016/j.pan.2017.07.007]
23 **Kanno A**, Masamune A, Hanada K, Maguchi H, Shimizu Y, Ueki T, Hasebe O, Ohtsuka T, Nakamura M, Takenaka M, Kitano M, Kikuyama M, Gabata T, Yoshida K, Sasaki T, Serikawa M, Furukawa T, Yanagisawa A, Shimosegawa T; Japan Study Group on the Early Detection of Pancreatic Cancer (JEDPAC). Multicenter study of early pancreatic cancer in Japan. *Pancreatology* 2018; **18**: 61-67 [PMID: 29170051 DOI: 10.1016/j.pan.2017.11.007]

24 **Feng Q**, Li C, Zhang S, Tan CL, Mai G, Liu XB, Chen YH. Recurrence and survival after surgery for pancreatic cancer with or without acute pancreatitis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2019; **25**: 6006-6015 [PMID: 31660036 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v25.i39.6006]

25 **Syed A**, Babich O, Thakkar P, Patel A, Abdul-Baki H, Farah K, Morrissey S, Mitre M, Dhawan M, Kochhar G, Kulkarni A, Thakkar S. Defining pancreatitis as a risk factor for pancreatic cancer: the role, incidence, and timeline of development. *Pancreas* 2019; **48**: 1098-1101 [PMID: 31404017 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0000000000001367]

26 **Gayam V**, Sidhu JS, Mandal A, Garlapati P, Adapa S, Konala VM, Naramala S, Then EO, Maddika S, Gaduputi V. National trends and hospitalizations related to pancreatic cancer in acute pancreatitis patients: a nationwide inpatient sample study. *Cureus* 2019; **11**: e5155 [PMID: 31523582 DOI: 10.7759/cureus.5155]

27 **Sadr-Azodi O**, Oskarsson V, Discacciati A, Videhult P, Askling J, Ekbom A. Pancreatic cancer following acute pancreatitis: A population-based matched cohort study. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2018; **113**: 1711-1719 [PMID: 30315287 DOI: 10.1038/s41395-018-0255-9]

28 **Stuart CE**, Ko J, Modesto AE, Alarcon Ramos GC, Bharmal SH, Cho J, Singh RG, Petrov MS. Implications of tobacco smoking and alcohol consumption on ectopic fat deposition in individuals after pancreatitis. *Pancreas* 2020; **49**: 924-934 [PMID: 32658076 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0000000000001600]

29 **Navina S**, Acharya C, DeLany JP, Orlichenko LS, Baty CJ, Shiva SS, Durgampudi C, Karlsson JM, Lee K, Bae KT, Furlan A, Behari J, Liu S, McHale T, Nichols L, Papachristou GI, Yadav D, Singh VP. Lipotoxicity causes multisystem organ failure and exacerbates acute pancreatitis in obesity. *Sci Transl Med* 2011; **3**: 107ra110 [PMID: 22049070 DOI: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3002573]

30 **Durgampudi C**, Noel P, Patel K, Cline R, Trivedi RN, DeLany JP, Yadav D, Papachristou GI, Lee K, Acharya C, Jaligama D, Navina S, Murad F, Singh VP. Acute lipotoxicity regulates severity of biliary acute pancreatitis without affecting its initiation. *Am J Pathol* 2014; **184**: 1773-1784 [PMID: 24854864 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajpath.2014.02.015]

31 **Xie J**, Xu L, Pan Y, Li P, Liu Y, Shan K, Zhang Y. Nonalcoholic fatty pancreas disease is related independently to the severity of acute pancreatitis. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2019; **31**: 973-978 [PMID: 31233410 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0000000000001477]

32 **Tirkes T**, Jeon CY, Li L, Joon AY, Seltman TA, Sankar M, Persohn SA, Territo PR. Association of pancreatic steatosis with chronic pancreatitis, obesity, and type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Pancreas* 2019; **48**: 420-426 [PMID: 30747825 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0000000000001252]

33 **Acharya C**, Cline RA, Jaligama D, Noel P, Delany JP, Bae K, Furlan A, Baty CJ, Karlsson JM, Rosario BL, Patel K, Mishra V, Dugampudi C, Yadav D, Navina S, Singh VP. Fibrosis reduces severity of acute-on-chronic pancreatitis in humans. *Gastroenterology* 2013; **145**: 466-475 [PMID: 23684709 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2013.05.012]

34 **Fujii M**, Ohno Y, Yamada M, Kamada Y, Miyoshi E. Impact of fatty pancreas and lifestyle on the development of subclinical chronic pancreatitis in healthy people undergoing a medical checkup. *Environ Health Prev Med* 2019; **24**: 10 [PMID: 30732577 DOI: 10.1186/s12199-019-0763-2]

35 **Wong VW**, Wong GL, Yeung DK, Abrigo JM, Kong AP, Chan RS, Chim AM, Shen J, Ho CS, Woo J, Chu WC, Chan HL. Fatty pancreas, insulin resistance, and β-cell function: a population study using fat-water magnetic resonance imaging. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2014; **109**: 589-597 [PMID: 24492753 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2014.1]

36 **Siddiqui N**, Vendrami CL, Chatterjee A, Miller FH. Advanced MR imaging techniques for pancreas imaging. *Magn Reson Imaging Clin N Am* 2018; **26**: 323-344 [PMID: 30376973 DOI: 10.1016/j.mric.2018.03.002]

37 **Chhoda A**, Lu L, Clerkin BM, Risch H, Farrell JJ. Current approaches to pancreatic cancer screening. *Am J Pathol* 2019; **189**: 22-35 [PMID: 30558719 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajpath.2018.09.013]

38 **Das KK**, Early D. Pancreatic cancer screening. *Curr Treat Options Gastroenterol* 2017; **15**: 562-575 [PMID: 28879469 DOI: 10.1007/s11938-017-0149-8]

39 **Henrikson NB**, Aiello Bowles EJ, Blasi PR, Morrison CC, Nguyen M, Pillarisetty VG, Lin JS. Screening for pancreatic cancer: Updated evidence report and systematic review for the us preventive services task force. *JAMA* 2019; **322**: 445-454 [PMID: 31386140 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2019.6190]

40 **Koopmann BD**, Harinck F, Kroep S, Konings IC, Naber SK, Lansdorp-Vogelaar I, Fockens P, van Hooft JE, Cahen DL, van Ballegooijen M, Bruno MJ, de Kok IM. Identifying key factors for the effectiveness of pancreatic cancer screening: A model-based analysis. *Int J Cancer* 2021 [PMID: 33644856 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.33540]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

*World J Gastroenterol* 2021 May 7; 27(17): 1943-1958

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i17.1943

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

*MINIREVIEWS*

# *BRCA* mutated pancreatic cancer: A change is coming

Michael N Rosen, Rachel A Goodwin, Michael M Vickers

**ORCID number:** Michael N Rosen 0000-0002-6625-2230; Rachel A Goodwin 0000-0002-0250-8479; Michael M Vickers 0000-0002-2587-2265.

**Author contributions:** Rosen MN, Goodwin RA and Vickers MM made contributions to the conception and design of the study; Rosen MN was involved in drafting and revising the manuscript; all authors reviewed the review and approved the final version of the manuscript.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** Michael N Rosen and Michael M Vickers declare no conflict of interest for this topic. Rachel A Goodwin has received compensation for an advisory role with AstraZeneca.



**Michael N Rosen, Rachel A Goodwin,** Faculty of Medicine, The University of Ottawa, Ottawa K1H 8L6, Ontario, Canada

**Michael M Vickers,** The Ottawa Hospital Cancer Center, The University of Ottawa, Ottawa K1H 8L6, Ontario, Canada

**Corresponding author:** Michael M Vickers, FRCPC, MD, Assistant Professor, Doctor, The Ottawa Hospital Cancer Center, The University of Ottawa, 501 Smyth Road, Ottawa K1H 8L6, Ontario, Canada. mvickers@toh.ca

## Abstract

Pancreatic cancer remains a leading cause of cancer-related death with few available therapies for advanced disease. Recently, patients with germline *BRCA* mutations have received increased attention due to advances in the management of *BRCA* mutated ovarian and breast tumors. Germline *BRCA* mutations significantly increase risk of developing pancreatic cancer and can be found in up to 8% of patients with sporadic pancreatic cancer. In patients with germline *BRCA* mutations, platinum-based chemotherapies and poly (ADP-ribose) polymerase inhibitors are effective treatment options which may offer survival benefits. This review will focus on the molecular biology, epidemiology, and management of *BRCA*-mutated pancreatic cancer. Further-more, we will discuss future directions for this area of research and promising active areas of research.

**Key Words:** Pancreatic cancer; Systemic therapy; Platinum chemotherapy; *BRCA*; Deoxyribonucleic acid repair; Poly (ADP-ribose) polymerase inhibitors



**Core Tip:** Recent advances in the field of *BRCA*-mutated pancreatic cancer suggest that these patients benefit from platinum-based chemotherapy regimens. In light of new findings from the Pancreas Cancer Olaparib Ongoing trial, patients with germline *BRCA* mutations may benefit from maintenance treatment with olaparib, a Poly (ADP-ribose) polymerase inhibitors following response to platinum-based chemotherapy. Based on these important findings, all pancreatic cancer patients should be offered early access to genetic screening in order to identify patients who will benefit from these therapies.

**Manuscript source:** Invited manuscript

**Specialty type:** Oncology

**Country/Territory of origin:** Canada

**Peer-review report's scientific quality classification**
Grade A (Excellent): A
Grade B (Very good): 0
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

**Received:** January 25, 2021
**Peer-review started:** January 25, 2021
**First decision:** February 27, 2021
**Revised:** March 4, 2021
**Accepted:** April 13, 2021
**Article in press:** April 13, 2021
**Published online:** May 7, 2021

**P-Reviewer:** de Bree E
**S-Editor:** Zhang L
**L-Editor:** A
**P-Editor:** Ma YJ

**Citation:** Rosen MN, Goodwin RA, Vickers MM. *BRCA* mutated pancreatic cancer: A change is coming. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; 27(17): 1943-1958
**URL:** https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v27/i17/1943.htm
**DOI:** https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v27.i17.1943

## INTRODUCTION

Pancreatic cancer (PC) remains one of the most aggressive malignancies, with a 5-year survival rate of 8%[1,2]. Incidence of PC has increased over the past 4 decades, making it a leading cause of cancer-related mortality in North America[1-3]. The vast majority of pancreatic cancers are ductal adenocarcinomas (PDAC) of the exocrine pancreatic glands, occurring most commonly in the head of the pancreas[4]. Most cases of PDAC are considered sporadic, however 5%-10% are estimated to be familial with patients having a family history of PDAC[5]. Several genetic syndromes are known to cause familial PDAC including mutations of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) mismatch repair genes (Lynch syndrome), *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* (hereditary breast cancer syndrome); however, in the vast majority of cases a genetic cause cannot be identified[5-7].

Currently, the only potentially curative treatment for PC is surgical resection which is only possible in the early stages of the disease (locoregional) and highly dependent on the degree of invasion of surrounding critical structures such as vessels and bile ducts. Unfortunately, only 15%-20% of PDAC cases are considered resectable, and of these, over 75% will have recurrence within 5 years of their resection[4]. Recent data suggests that in patients with good performance status, treatment with a combination regimen of fluorouracil, oxaliplatin, leucovorin and irinotecan (FOLFIRINOX) is the optimal adjuvant therapy following resection[8]. Because early stage PC is usually asymptomatic, the vast majority of patients present with either locally advanced (involvement of local vasculature) or metastatic disease[4]. In these patients chemotherapy and occasionally radiotherapy form the backbone of treatment and are used to relieve symptoms and modestly prolong life.

In the advanced setting of disease, the two standard of care palliative chemotherapy options include gemcitabine plus albumin-bound paclitaxel (nab-paclitaxel) and FOLFIRINOX. In the first-line setting, both have been shown to prolong overall survival (OS) relative to gemcitabine monotherapy in prospective, randomized clinical trials[9,10]. Even with these treatments, 2-year survival remains at 10% and median OS ranges from 8-11 mo[4].

Recent genomic evidence suggests that PDAC is a genetically heterogenous disease with different molecular subtypes, potentially explaining the failure of many novel therapies when trialled in unselected populations[11,12]. Currently, efforts are ongoing to identify select PDAC patient populations who would benefit from targeted therapies. A patient group which has garnered much interest are those with mutations of *BRCA1* and *BRCA2*. These genes are important players in the homologous DNA repair (HR) pathway and mutations of both genes are strong risk factors for the development of several cancers including, breast, ovarian, prostate and pancreatic cancer[13,14]. Importantly, *BRCA* mutations also have implications for treatment as they may increase tumor susceptibility to both DNA-damaging chemotherapies such as platinum chemotherapy (PtCh), as well as poly (ADP-ribose) polymerase (PARP) inhibitors in breast and ovarian cancers. More recently, work has been done to determine if these clinical features translate to BRCA-mutated pancreatic cancer. This review will discuss the biology, epidemiology and clinical implications of *BRCA* mutations in PDAC, and will discuss future directions for this area of research.

## MOLECULAR BIOLOGY OF HOMOLOGOUS REPAIR

Several reviews have previously described the biology of the HR system and the specific roles of *BRCA1/2*[15,16]. Briefly, DNA damage can occur as either a single-stranded DNA break (SSB) or double-stranded DNA break (DSB). HR along with non-homologous end joining (NHEJ) are the two major pathways that respond to DSB. HR has the highest fidelity and precision of the DSB repair pathways, therefore defects in this pathway (homologous repair deficiency, HRD) lead to error-prone repair and genomic instability, increasing cancer risk. Important proteins in the HR system include BRCA1, BRCA2, PALB2, ATM and RAD51[15]. Following DSB, BRCA1

negatively regulates factors involved in the NHEJ pathway (53BP1) and promotes end resection, an important first step in the HR pathway. BRCA1 directly interacts with PALB2 to bind BRCA2 which facilitates formation of RAD51 filaments later in the pathway[15]. RAD51 filament form along ssDNA created earlier by BRCA1-mediated end resection, allowing formation of homologous DNA and repair of the DSB (Figure 1)[15]. Notably, other proteins involved in the HR pathways such as PALB2 and ATM are also mutated in PC, highlighting the importance of HR pathway integrity in determining PDAC risk[11,17].

While *BRCA* mutations confer increased cancer risk, emerging evidence suggests they also may be important markers for personalized medicine. *In vitro* and *in vivo* evidence suggests that both platinum-based chemotherapies and PARP inhibitors are more effective in patients harboring *BRCA* mutations[11].

## EPIDEMIOLOGY AND DIAGNOSIS OF *BRCA*-MUTATED PDAC

### *Incidence of pathogenic BRCA mutations in sporadic and familial PDAC*

Mutations of the *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* genes were first identified as breast and ovarian cancer risk factors in the mid-1990s during studies aimed at characterizing the genes responsible for familial clustering of breast and ovarian cancers[18,19]. Early studies by the Breast Cancer Linkage Consortium identified a 2.3-fold and 3.5-fold increased risk of PC in carriers of *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* gene mutations, respectively[13,14]. In the general population, germline *BRCA* mutations occur at a rate between 1/300 and 1/800[20]. However, incidence varies based on population as certain ethnic groups harbor founder mutations, increasing the incidence of *BRCA* mutations in these subgroups. The strongest example of the founder effect in *BRCA* is the Ashkenazi Jewish (AJ) population, where the presence of 3 founder mutations have increased rates of *BRCA* mutation to 1/40[21]. Other groups with founder *BRCA* mutations who are therefore at increased risk include Dutch, Norwegian and French-Canadian populations[22].

Among unselected PC patient cohorts, multiple studies have aimed to estimate the incidence of germline pathogenic *BRCA* mutations. Prevalence estimates ranged from 0.7%-5.7% for *BRCA2* and 0.3%-2.3% for BRCA1 (Summarized in Table 1)[6,23-26]. Notably, the cohorts in these studies varied widely based on several factors which could influence estimates of prevalence, including, number of AJ PC patients included, the number of patients with family histories of cancer, and median patient age[23]. For example, in AJ PDAC patients, studies have found that up to 19% of patients harbour germline *BRCA* mutations[23,27,28].

In familial PC, *BRCA* mutations, especially *BRCA2* are also at increased frequency. In the case of *BRCA2* mutations, studies have found germline mutations in 3.7%-19% of patients with strong familial histories of PDAC[29-32]. This range in estimates is likely a result of different criteria for familial pancreatic cancer (FPC), and different studies methodologies. Studies finding higher rates of *BRCA2* mutation tended to have smaller sample sizes and included patients with three or more first- or second-degree relatives with PC, therefore included higher risk patients. Conversely, more recent studies have included larger sample sizes of patients, who met the more moderate FPC case definition (two first- or second- degree relatives with PC), finding more conservative estimates of prevalence (3.7% and 6%)[31,32]. Therefore, in patients with a stronger family history of PC, *BRCA* carrier status is more likely. The incidence of *BRCA1* mutations in FPC has not been studied as well as *BRCA2*, however a recent study by Zhen *et al*[31] found that germline *BRCA1* mutations were present in 1.2% of patients with FPC.

### *Diagnosis of BRCA-mutated PDAC and screening guidelines*

While the identification of patients carrying *BRCA* mutations has been important in determining cancer risk, the discovery of personalized medicine options for this population has increased the clinical importance of identifying *BRCA* carriers. Genetic testing guidelines vary by region however, are primarily based on cancer phenotype which includes family history of breast, ovarian, prostate and pancreatic cancer, AJ ancestry and clinical presentation. Recently, genetic testing guidelines are being increasingly questioned as evidence accumulates to suggest that they would miss a large proportion of patients harboring *BRCA* mutations who may benefit from PARP inhibitors or platinum chemotherapies. In 2007, a Norwegian study tested breast and ovarian cancer patients for germline mutations in *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* and identified that 50% of patients with germline *BRCA* mutations do not have family histories of

**Table 1 Summary of studies of incidence of germline *BRCA* mutations in unselected pancreatic cancer cohorts**

| Ref. | Year | Population | Cohort size (Number AJ) | Germline *BRCA1* pathogenic mutation incidence (%) | Germline *BRCA2* pathogenic mutation incidence (%) | Combined germline *BRCA* mutation Incidence |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Holter *et al*[23] | 2015 | North American | 306 (33) | 1.0% | 3.6% | 4.6% |
| Brand *et al*[24] | 2018 | North American | 298 (26) | 1.3% | 1.3% | 2.6% |
| Mizukami *et al*[25] | 2020 | Japanese | 1005 (-) | 1.7% | 2.5% | 4.2% |
| Grant *et al*[6] | 2015 | North American | 290 (13) | 0.3% | 0.7% | 1% |
| Lowery *et al*[26] | 2018 | North American | 615 (111) | 2.3% | 5.7% | 8% |

AJ: Ashkenazi Jewish; *BRCA:* Breast cancer susceptibility gene.

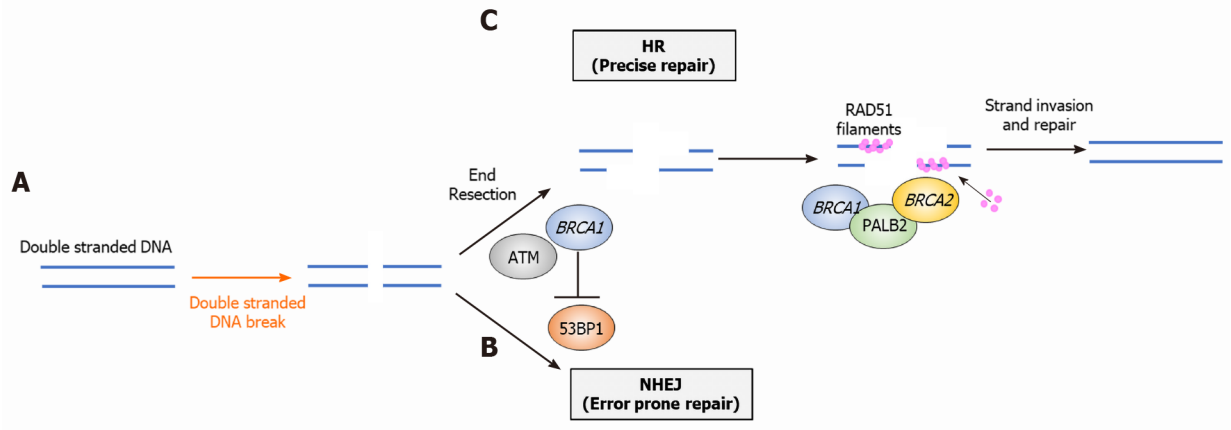



**Figure 1 Overview of the homologous repair pathway and roles of key proteins.** A: Following double strand break, BRCA 1 binds to the site of damage, mediating end resection and initiating homologous repair. This prevents repair *via* non-homologous end joining; B: *BRCA1* binds with PALB2 and *BRCA2* which facilitates assembly of RAD51 filaments; and C: RAD51 filaments form along ssDNA, subsequently leading to strand invasion and repair. DSB: Double strand break; HR: Homologous repair; NHEJ: Non-homologous end joining; BRCA: Breast cancer susceptibility gene.

*BRCA*-associated cancers[33]. Since then, multiple studies in different populations including patients with PDAC have confirmed these findings, showing poor associations between presence of *BRCA* mutations and expected family histories [23,34-38]. Furthermore, a recent study using data from 23&Me, a direct-to-consumer genetic test identified that 20% of carriers of the AJ founder variants don't identify as AJ, and therefore would be excluded from screening criteria that include AJ ancestry[39]. They also found that of 393 *BRCA* mutation carriers with available data on family cancer history, 44% had no family history of *BRCA*-associated cancers, and therefore, given a diagnosis of PDAC, would not meet screening requirements. The recent IMPACT trial by the Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Centre provided strong evidence in favour of increased testing access. Investigators tested 1040 patients (176 PDAC) with advanced cancer and identified germline mutations in 21.5% of the PDAC patients. Notably, they found that across all cancers, 55% of clinically actionable mutations would not have been detected under current phenotype-based screening guidelines[40]. Together, this evidence strongly supports calls for increased access to genetic testing for PC patients. In early 2020, the National Comprehensive Cancer Network updated their recommenda-tions to suggest universal genetic testing for all PC patients as early as possible due to the rapid progression of the disease, and potential for early personalized therapy[41].

## CLINICAL FEATURES OF *BRCA*-MUTATED PDAC AND PROGNOSTIC IMPLICATIONS

While the ability of *BRCA* mutations to increase risk of PDAC is well established, their impact on the clinical features of the disease is less clear. Multiple cohort studies have shown in PDAC patients with germline mutations including *BRCA1, BRCA2, PALB2, CDKN2A* and *ATM*, are diagnosed earlier with PDAC than PDAC patients without germline mutations[31,42]. Conversely, a 2009 study comparing Jewish PDAC patients with and without germline *BRCA* mutations found no significant differences between age at diagnosis or any other clinicopathologic feature studied[28]. From a prognostic perspective, studies have shown mixed results. The largest cohort study to date including 71 *BRCA*-positive PDAC patients found a median OS of 14 mo for the whole cohort and 12 mo for patients with stage 3/4 disease. At time of publication, the median OS for early stage disease had not been reached as 52% of patients were still alive at 60 mo[43]. These findings suggest that *BRCA*-mutated PDAC patients may have a considerably better prognosis than the general PDAC population. On the contrary, more recent case-control studies by Blair *et al*[44] compared PDAC patients with *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* mutations to age-matched controls and showed that both OS and disease-free survival (DFS) were lower in carriers than controls. Another case-control study comparing *BRCA* mutation-positive, early-stage PDAC patients undergoing surgical resection to age-matched *BRCA*-wildtype controls found no significant differences in median OS or DFS between the groups and concluded that *BRCA* mutations were not prognostic in early PDAC[45]. Authors have suggested that early findings of improved prognosis in this population may have been a result of ascertainment bias as patients surviving longer were more likely to receive genetic testing and participate in the study. Another factor that may lead to improved prognosis in this patient population is increased susceptibility to treatments such as PtCh. Most recently, a study using data from the Know Your Tumor program aimed to assess whether mutations of HRD and other DNA-damage response (DDR) genes conferred a survival benefit or whether observed benefits were a result of increased PtCh-sensitivity[46]. The authors found that patients with advanced PDAC and HR/DDR mutations had improved survival but only if treated with PtCh. In PtCh-naïve patients, there was no survival benefit in this patient population[46].

Overall, identifying clinical differences between *BRCA*-mutated PDAC and wildtype PDAC has been difficult due to the relative rarity of these patients. Furthermore, the increasing use of personalized therapies (PARP inhibitors and platinum chemotherapy) in this population will make determining the prognostic implications of *BRCA* mutations more challenging.

## MANAGEMENT OF BRCA-MUTATED PDAC: SYSTEMIC THERAPY

### *Platinum chemotherapy*

While both FOLFIRINOX and gemcitabine/nab-paclitaxel chemotherapy regimens are more effective than gemcitabine monotherapy, there is yet to be a comparative randomized clinical trial to provide data on which regimen is more effective. In the locally advanced setting, a recent case series of 485 consecutive patients suggested that FOLFIRINOX was associated with a higher response rate (19% *vs* 6%, $P = 0.001$), however OS was not different with either treatment[47]. Retrospective studies in metastatic PDAC are inconclusive, with some studies reporting survival improvement on FOLFIRINOX while others report no difference between the two regimens[47,48]. Given the increased toxicity associated with FOLFIRINOX and potential survival benefits, identifying subsets of patients who are more likely to benefit from this regimen will be an important advancement in PC management.

The HRD phenotype of *BRCA*-mutated cancers appears to render them more sensitive to chemotherapies that induce DNA damage, such as PtCh. Early studies found that cells lacking *BRCA1* are more sensitive to treatment with cisplatin[49]. In the presence of HRD, these cells are unable to appropriately repair the DNA damage, leading to genomic instability and cell death[50]. Clinical studies in breast cancer have found that platinum-chemotherapy improves objective response rates (ORRs) for metastatic breast cancer patients only in *BRCA*-mutated cancers. Based on genomic studies in PDAC, it appears that tumors with *BRCA*-mutations have "unstable" molecular phenotypes and are more likely to be sensitive to genotoxic therapies such as PtCh[11].

In PC, several large retrospective studies have investigated the efficacy of PtCh such as FOLFIRINOX in patients with *BRCA* mutations or other genetic mutations leading to HRD (Table 2). To date, the largest cohort study was conducted by Golan *et al*[43] This multi-institution cohort study included 71 PC patients with germline *BRCA* mutations and found that among patients with advanced PDAC, OS was significantly longer in patients treated with PtCh (22 *vs* 9 mo). Since this study, several other retrospective cohort studies have reported improved outcomes [ORR, progression free survival (PFS)] in patients with germline mutations to HR-related genes who were treated with PtCh in both resectable and non-resectable PDAC[35,44,51,52]. For example, Blair *et al*[44] showed that median survival was significantly improved in resected PDAC patients with germline *BRCA* mutations who were treated with adjuvant PtCh compared to non-PtCh (31.0 *vs* 17.8 mo). Reiss *et al*[52] showed significant improvement in mOS in patients with unresectable PDAC and mutations in *BRCA1*, *BRCA2* or *PALB2* who were treated with PtCh compared to patients treated with non-PtCh (median follow-up of 20.1 mo *vs* mOS of 15.5 mo). Several studies have also compared the effectiveness of PtCh between patients with and without HRD mutations. In a cohort study of platinum-treated PDAC patients, patients found to have tumor-level mutations to 12 HR-related genes (including *BRCA1*, *BRCA2*, *ATM* and *PALB2*) had significantly improved median PFS compared to platinum-treated patient without HR-related gene mutations[35]. Similarly, two recent case-control studies reported improved PFS and ORR in platinum-treated patients who carried mutations to *BRCA1*, *BRCA2* and *PALB2*[53,54]. Wattenberg *et al*[53] showed an ORR of 58% in mutation carriers treated with PtCh compared to 21% non-mutated PDAC patients. In resected PDAC treated with perioperative PtCh, Yu *et al*[54] reported that mutation carriers had significantly greater survival (mOS not met *vs* 23.1 mo, HR = 0.12).

While these studies are promising, the retrospective nature introduces several limitations. Firstly, outcomes are widely subdivided as PtCh *vs* non-PtCh, however the PtCh groups generally include a variety of regimens such as gemcitabine + cisplatin, gemcitabine + oxaliplatin, FOLFOX and FOLFIRINOX. Seeing as oxaliplatin and cisplatin exert DNA damage through different mechanisms of action, it is unclear how well these findings will translate to modern clinics where patients are typically treated with FOLFIRINOX as a first-line therapy[52]. One study reported that there was no significant difference in survival for mutation-positive patients on different PtCh regimens, however in the mutation-negative group, patients only responded to FOLFIRINOX[53]. This suggests that there is potentially a role for PtCh regimens in *BRCA*-mutated patients that did not show benefit when tested in unselected PDAC populations, in situations when FOLFIRINOX cannot be tolerated. Another limitation is the current practices with respect to treatment selection. Because of the toxicity associated with PtCh such as FOLFIRINOX, these regimens are generally used in younger patients with better performance status. Therefore, in retrospective analyses of *BRCA*-mutated PDAC cohorts, it is unclear whether survival benefits seen are because of increased activity of PtCh in this patient population or because the patients treated with PtCh are younger and have better performance status. Few studies have reported data on patient age in these analyses and none have reported patient performance status. In light of this, these retrospective analyses are difficult to interpret. Lastly, retrospective studies may be affected by survival bias. Most studies compared confirmed mutation carriers to untested cohorts. It is possible that patients who survive longer are more likely to undergo genetic testing and be classified as carriers. In light of these limitations, a recent meta-analysis concluded that the current available evidence suggests PtCh is more effective in *BRCA*-mutated patients, however the quality of evidence is low[55].

To date, there have been few prospective studies assessing the effectiveness of platinum-chemotherapies in this population. A recent phase II randomized controlled trial investigated cisplatin and gemcitabine with or without Veliparib, a PARP inhibitor in patients with untreated advanced PDAC and a germline mutation of *BRCA* or *PALB2*[56]. While the primary endpoint (response rate) was not significantly different with Veliparib, the authors reported unprecedented survival rates, with a 2-year survival rate of 30.6% and a 3-year survival rate of 17.8%[56]. Response rates were also high for both arms of the study (74% with Veliparib, 65.2% without veliparib)[56]. While this data provides compelling evidence for the use of PtCh in this patient population, the study lacks a control group treated with non-PtCh for comparison. This study adds to the literature as all patients were on the same PtCh regimen (gemcitabine + cisplatin) which showed impressive responses and survival rates. Notably, the patients included in this study all had a good performance status (ECOG 0-1) and therefore these results may not translate as well to real-world PDAC patients

**Table 2 Retrospective studies of platinum-chemotherapies in *BRCA*-mutated pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma**

| Ref. | Year | Study design | Patient population | Findings |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Golan *et al*[43] | 2014 | Multi-institution cohort study | 71 patients with germline *BRCA* mutations (21 *BRCA1*, 49 *BRCA2*, 1 both) | Superior mOS in stage 3/4 patients treated with platinum compared to non-platinum chemotherapy (22 *vs* 9 mo, $P$ = 0.039) |
| Vyas *et al*[51] | 2015 | Cohort study | 10 patients with *BRCA2* mutation and known PDAC | Duration of response on platinum agents ranged from 8-32 wk, mean of 19.3 wk |
| Blair *et al*[44] | 2018 | Combined case control cohort study | 22 patients with resected sporadic PDAC and germline *BRCA* mutations (1 *BRCA1*, 18 *BRCA2*) | Improved OS in *BRCA*-mutated patients treated with adjuvant PtCh compared to patients treated with alternative chemotherapies or no adjuvant therapy (31.0 *vs* 17.8 *vs* 9.3 mo, $P$ < 0.001) |
| Reiss *et al*[52] | 2018 | Cohort study | 29 patients with unresectable PDAC and germline mutations of *BRCA1*, *BRCA2* or *PALB2*(12 *BRCA1*, 15 *BRCA2*, 2 *PALB2*) | Superior mOS in platinum-treated patients (undefined mOS (median follow up 21 mo) *vs* 15.5 mo, $P$ = 0.02) |
| Kondo *et al*[35] | 2018 | Cohort study | 28 patients with advanced PDAC (13 had HR-related gene mutations, 15 without mutations to HR-related genes) | Superior median PFS in HR-mutated PDAC patients treated with platinum chemotherapy compared to PDAC patients without HR mutations treated with platinum therapy (20.8 mo *vs* 1.7 mo, $P$ = 0.049) |
| Yu *et al*[54] | 2019 | Case control study | 32 resected PC patients with germline *BRCA1*, *BRCA2*, or *PALB2* mutation, 64 resected PC patient controls without germline mutations | With peri-operative platinum exposure, mOS was longer in mutation-positive group that mutation negative group (mOS not yet met *vs* 23.1 mo, HR= 0.12) |
| Wattenberg *et al*[53] | 2020 | Case control study | 26 platinum-treated patients with advanced stage PDAC and mutations of *BRCA1, BRCA2* or *PALB2*, 52 platinum-treated, wildtype, age-matched controls | Improved ORR in patients with mutations compared to controls (58% *vs* 21%, $P$ = 0.0022). Improved real world PFS in mutation carriers (10.1 mo *vs* 6.9 mo, HR = 0.43, $P$ = 0.0068) |

HR: Homologous Repair; mOS: Median overall survival; ORR: Objective response rate; PDAC: Pancreatic adenocarcinoma; PtCh: Platinum chemotherapy; *BRCA:* Breast cancer susceptibility gene.

where performance status may be lower.

Overall, there is evidence in favour of the use of PtCh as a first-line treatment for *BRCA*-mutated PDAC, however, most data is retrospective and the quality of the evidence in favour of this treatment is low. There is yet to be a randomized controlled trial confirming the observations that PtCh is preferable to other chemotherapy regimens in this population, however enrollment to such a study may be difficult due to current management practice. Furthermore, it is unclear whether or not FOLFIRINOX or gemcitabine plus cisplatin should be used for this patient population.

### *PARP inhibitors*

The sensitivity of BRCA-deficient cancers to PARP inhibition was first reported in 2005, in which researchers identified that loss of function of both *BRCA* and PARP is synthetically lethal[57,58]. PARP is an important family of enzymes involved in responding to SSB the other prominent form of DNA damage other than DSB. This combined loss of SSB repair in HRD cells is thought to lead to synthetic lethality (Figure 2). While the exact mechanism of action is still unclear, the earliest theory was that PARP inhibition prevents the repair of single-stranded DNA breaks (SSBs), leading to accumulation of replication-associated DSBs[59]. In HRD cells which have defective DSB repair, DSBs are repaired *via* error-prone NHEJ, leading to genomic instability and cell death. More recent evidence suggests that the biology of BRCA and PARP deficient synthetic lethality is more complex, however the detailed mechanisms are outside the scope of this review[60].

Therapeutic inhibitors of this pathway were evaluated in a phase I study of olaparib and confirmed activity in several different tumor types harboring *BRCA* mutations[61]. In ovarian cancer, PARP inhibitors are FDA-approved for use as a maintenance therapy in patients with recurrent ovarian cancer who demonstrated a complete or partial response to PtCh, regardless of HRD biomarker status[62]. This approval came following three phase III trials which demonstrated significant improvements in PFS in patients treated with oral PARP inhibitors as maintenance therapy following chemotherapy[63-65]. More recently, emerging data from several randomized clinical trials reporting efficacy of PARP inhibitors as a front-line treatment for newly diagnosed ovarian cancer[62]. In advanced breast cancer, PARP inhibitors have demonstrated improvements in PFS relative to chemotherapy in patients with HER2-negative, *BRCA*-mutation positive tumors[66,67]. However, there

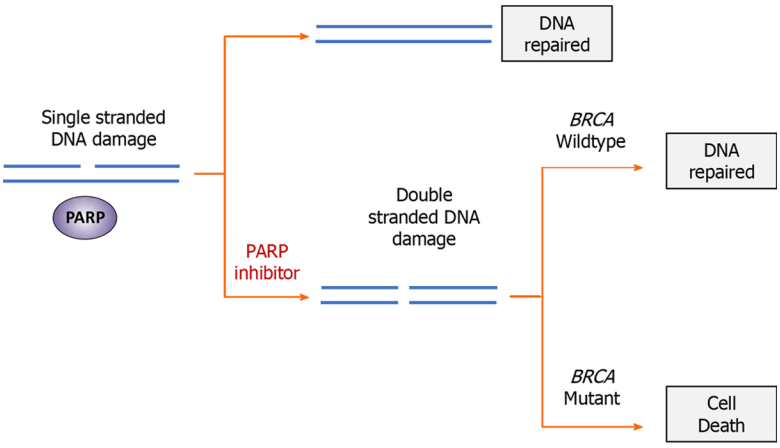



**Figure 2 Mechanism of synthetic lethality in *BRCA*-mutated cells treated with poly (ADP-ribose) polymerase inhibitors.** While neither a breast cancer susceptibility (*BRCA*) mutation or treatment with Poly (ADP-ribose) polymerase (PARP) inhibitors alone is lethal to cancer cells, dual-inhibition of both systems through mutation and pharmacological inhibition is incompatible with survival. Following PARP inhibition, single-stranded deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) breaks are unable to be repaired. During replication, replication forks stall at unrepaired DNA damage, resulting in formation of double-stranded DNA break. In cells with defective homologous repair (*BRCA* mutations), double-stranded damage is repaired through non-homologous end joining, resulting in genomic instability and cell death. Poly (ADP-Ribose) Polymerase. PARP: Poly (ADP-ribose) polymerase; *BRCA*: Breast cancer susceptibility gene.

is yet to be a clinical trial demonstrating improvements in OS with PARP inhibitor use in advanced breast cancer[68]. Recently, PARP inhibitors have also demonstrated effectiveness in metastatic prostate cancer[69].

With the success of PARP inhibitors in other *BRCA*-associated cancers, focus has shifted to translating these findings to *BRCA*-associated PDAC. To date multiple phase II studies have evaluated the efficacy of PARP inhibitors in PDAC patients with germline *BRCA* mutations[56,70,71]. In a phase II study by Kaufman *et al*[71], 298 patients with advanced cancer (23 with pancreas cancer) and germline *BRCA1/2* mutations were treated with oral olaparib. The response rate among PC patients was 21.7% in patients who had received two prior lines of chemotherapy[71]. Conversely, another phase II study evaluated the efficacy of Veliparib in 16 advanced PDAC patients with known germline mutations of *BRCA1/2* or *PALB2* who had undergone 1-2 previous lines of treatment, finding no objective responses[70]. Authors suggested potential differences between olaparib and veliparib as a potential explanation for the difference in response rates between the two trials. Furthermore, the high rates of pre-treatment with PtCh (88% of study population) coupled with a high disease progression rate (64% of those on PtCh) may indicate a high-level of platinum-resistance in this study population, which may in turn lead to PARP inhibitor resistance[70]. This is a plausible explanation given the known association between platinum-sensitivity and PARP inhibitor sensitivity seen in ovarian cancer. Due to the tendency of cancers to develop resistance to PARP inhibitors, another approach that has been tried is combination regimens involving chemotherapy and PARP inhibitors. A recent phase II trial compared a combination regimen of gemcitabine plus cisplatin with or without veliparib as first line therapy for advanced PDAC patients with germline mutations of *BRCA1/2* or *PALB2*[56]. Veliparib did not improve response rates over gemcitabine plus cisplatin alone (74.1% *vs* 65.2%, $P$ = 0.55), however as discussed earlier, the response rates in both arms both exceeded pre-study thresholds of efficacy and therefore, the high response rate to gemcitabine plus cisplatin may have obscured any signal of benefit from veliparib.

With the relative success of combination chemotherapy regimens in PDAC (FOLFIRINOX, Gemcitabine-Abraxane), focus has been placed on the development of maintenance therapies which can prolong PFS and improve quality of life (QOL) in responders. Most recently, data from the Pancreas Cancer Olaparib Ongoing (POLO) trial has supported the use of PARP inhibitors as a maintenance therapy in this patient population following response to platinum-chemotherapy[72]. The POLO trial was an international phase III, double-blind, placebo-controlled randomized clinical trial investigating oral olaparib maintenance therapy in metastatic PDAC patients with germline *BRCA1/2* mutations who had not progressed during first-line PtCh (minimum of 16 wk of chemotherapy). Patients were randomized to either olaparib or placebo maintenance therapy. PFS was significantly longer in the olaparib group (7.4 *vs* 3.8 mo). At the time of publication, data on OS was not yet mature but preliminary

results indicated no significant difference in OS between the two groups (18.9 *vs* 18.1 mo)[72]. 18 patients (20%) in the olaparib and 6 patients (11%) in the placebo group achieved a tumor response, and the median duration of responses were 24.9 mo and 3.7 mo, respectively. Other evidence for maintenance therapy comes from the phase II study by O'Reilly *et al*[56] who reported exploratory analyses for 10 patients with germline *BRCA* or *PALB2* mutations who underwent at least 4 mo of PtCh without progression and subsequently were switched to a PARP inhibitor as maintenance therapy, finding a median PFS of 23.4 mo in this subset of patients.

In the context of maintenance therapy, preservation of quality of life and minimization of adverse effects are important goals of treatment. In the POLO trial, Grade ≥ 3 adverse events occurred in 40% of the olaparib group and 23% of the placebo group[43]. The most frequently reported adverse events in the treatment group were fatigue or anesthesia, nausea and anemia, with the majority of these cases being low grade. Only 15% and 5% of patients on olaparib underwent dose reductions or discontinued treatment because of adverse events, respectively. More recently, secondary outcomes of health-related QOL were reported, showing that olaparib treatment did not lead to a reduction in quality of life scores, a concern in the context of maintenance therapy meant to preserve functioning and QOL[73].

In light of these findings, the FDA has approved olaparib for maintenance therapy in patients with metastatic PDAC patients with germline mutations of *BRCA1/2* who have not progressed on at least 16 wk of first-line PtCh. This approval is not without controversy as there are several criticisms of the POLO trial and unanswered questions in regards to this therapy[74]. For example, the lack of improvement in OS puts the validity of the finding of improved PFS into question[74]. However, this may be because of the high rates of therapy in the placebo group following disease progression, including 15% of the patients who received a PARP inhibitor. In addition, it should be stated that the OS results were from an interim analysis with only 46% data maturity. Furthermore, concern has been raised that the discontinuation of PtCh after 16 wk in patients who were responding is incongruent with clinical practice guidelines for first-line platinum chemotherapy[74]. However, in the POLO trial, the majority of patients received FOLFIRINOX (> 80%) with a median duration of first line PtCh of 5 mo and 33% of patients receiving > 6 mo prior to randomization[72]. In addition, the PRODIGE 4/ACCORD 11 trial recommended a total of 6 mo of palliative chemotherapy[10], therefore, the duration of therapy of 1$^{st}$ line PtCh may not be out of keeping with other clinical trials in this setting of disease. Furthermore, use of placebo alone in the control group has come under criticism as evidence has emerged in favour of the continuation of 5-FU as maintenance therapy in patients who respond to FOLFIRINOX[75]. That being said, the accumulating side effects of > 4 mo of FOLFIRINOX may justify a treatment break, especially if there is no evidence of progression on imaging. Lastly, POLO only included patients with germline mutations of *BRCA1/BRCA2*, therefore it remains unclear if there is a broader population of PDAC patients who would benefit from olaparib as well, such as patients with germline mutations to other components of the HR system (*PALB2*, *ATM*) or patients with other positive biomarkers of HRD.

### *Immunotherapies*

While immunotherapies such as checkpoint inhibitors (anti-PD1/PDL1 and CTLA-4) have revolutionized the management of many cancers, they have had limited efficacy in PDAC. The genomic instability and increased total mutational load of *BRCA*-mutated and other HRD tumors results in neoantigens which may increase efficacy of immunotherapy in these tumors[11]. Recent translational studies have showed that specifically *BRCA2*-mutated tumors show increased sensitivity to immune checkpoint blockade as a result of their effect on the tumor immune microenvironment[76]. This is in line with previous findings of associations between *BRCA* mutations and PD-L1 expression in PDAC, a predictive marker for immunotherapy[77,78].

An emerging strategy for *BRCA*-mutated cancers is combination therapy with immune check point inhibitors and PARP inhibitors[79]. Given that treatment with PARP inhibitors also increases expression of PD-L1 and total mutational burden (potential biomarkers of response), combining these two therapies may act synergistically against HRD tumors[79]. In *BRCA*-mutated ovarian and breast cancers, several clinical trials are currently exploring the clinical efficacy of PARP inhibitor/immune checkpoint blockade combination therapy with early trials showing promising results[80]. In the maintenance setting, the ATHENA trial is currently testing a combination therapy consisting of rucaparib with nivolumab as a therapy for ovarian cancer following response to PtCh (NCT03522246). In PDAC, there are several ongoing Phase II trials investigating combination regimens involving PARP inhibitors

and immune checkpoint inhibitors (Table 3). The PARPVAX study is investigating combination therapy of niraparib + either ipilimumab or nivolumab as maintenance therapy following response to PtCh (NCT03404960). Another phase II study is investigating combination therapy regimens including olaparib plus durvalumab in PDAC with a primary outcomes of changes in genomic and immune markers (NCT03851614). Most recently, a study has been initiated comparing olaparib with and without pembrolizumab as maintenance therapy for *BRCA1/BRCA2* mutated-PDAC patients who responded to first-line PtCh (NCT04548752). Given the recent evidence for PARP inhibitors in PDAC, the use of immune checkpoint blockade for PDAC remains an active field of research.

## BIOMARKERS OF HRD

In the context of both PtCh and PARP inhibitors, the development of biomarkers for HRD will be an important step in implementing these therapies broadly in clinical practice. While most research to date has focused on germline mutations of *BRCA1/2* and *PALB2*, combined these represent less than 10% of all PDAC cases. While this is an important mechanism of HRD, HRD can also arise through somatic mutations or epigenetic modification of DDR genes potentially resulting in sensitivity to PtCh and PARP inhibitors. Therefore, relying solely on germline mutations of these three genes for treatment selection will likely miss patients who would otherwise benefit from targeted therapy. For example, in advanced pancreatic cancer, tumor-level mutations to HRR genes such as *BRCA1/2, ATM, PALB2, RAD51* were highly predictive of response to PtCh[35]. Recently a meta-analysis compared outcomes (ORR, survival) in PARP inhibitor trials and found that similar outcomes between patients with germline and patients with somatic *BRCA* mutations[81]. Interestingly, out of 99 studies of PARP inhibitors screened, only 18 included patients with somatic mutations, indicating that this is an understudied area of research[81]. Specifically in PDAC, only two studies investigated PARP inhibitors in patients with somatic *BRCA* mutations and both reported a non-significant increase in response rate in patients with somatic mutations, relative to germline[81]. No trials to date have evaluated the efficacy of maintenance olaparib, the only FDA-approved PARP inhibitor indication in PDAC in patients with somatic HR mutations. Two active trials of olaparib in PDAC are including patients with BRCA-associated family history or somatic HRD mutations, but explicitly excluding patients with germline *BRCA* mutations (NCT02677038, NCT02511223). However, these trials are not using olaparib in the maintenance setting. Given the efficacy of PARP inhibitors and PtCh in somatic *BRCA*-mutated ovarian cancer[63,82] this is an important area for future investigation in PDAC.

In addition to mutations of *BRCA* and other HR-related genes, genomic signatures of HRD have emerged as a promising biomarker of the HRD phenotype and subsequent treatment response[11]. These biomarkers will allow the identification sub-populations of PDAC patients who would benefit from PtCh or PARP inhibitors, and therefore expand the scope of use for these agents in PDAC. Multiple commercial assays now exist which can assess tumor tissues and assign an HRD score[62]. Examples of these assays include MyChoice CDx Assay (Myriad Genetics) and the FoundationOne CDx (Foundation Medicine) which are both FDA-approved for the evaluation of HRD. These tests combine loss-of heterozygosity scores with other markers of genomic instability (telomeric-allelic imbalance, large-scale transition) in order to quantify HRD and identify patients who would benefit from HRD-targeting therapies. These assays have been used in several clinical trials in breast and ovarian cancer and have been validated as useful biomarkers for response to PARP inhibitors[64,83,84]. Confirmation of HRD by assay is now an FDA-approved biomarker for the use of several treatment regimens including combined olaparib with bevacizumab for ovarian cancer. Furthermore, olaparib was recently approved for metastatic prostate cancer in patients with BRCA mutations or HRD. Investigating these biomarkers in PDAC will aid in identifying *BRCA*-wildtype patients who may benefit from PARP inhibitors and PtCh, an important prospect considering the poor prognosis in advanced PC.

## CONCLUSION

The field of HRD in PDAC is in its infancy relative to ovarian and breast cancers, however promising advances have been made in recent years. Currently, the available

**Table 3 Ongoing phase II clinical trials investigating poly (ADP-ribose) polymerase inhibitor/Immune Checkpoint blockade combination therapy in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma**

| Study identifier | Patient population | Immunotherapy | PARP inhibitor | Phase and design | Estimated completion date |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| NCT03404960 | Advanced PDAC patients who did not progress on PtCh | Nivolumab or Ipilimumab | Niraparib | Phase Ib/II trial evaluating effectiveness of olaparib with either nivolumab or ipilimumab | June 2021 |
| NCT03851614 | Advanced PDAC, leiomyosarcoma or mismatch repair-proficient colorectal cancer | Durvalumab | Olaparib | Phase II trial evaluating impact of combination therapy on genomic and immune biomarkers | March 2022 |
| NCT04493060 | Metastatic PDAC with mutations of *BRCA1/2* or *PALB2*, previously treated with 1-2 lines of chemotherapy including a PtCh agent | Dostarlimab | Niraparib | Phase II, evaluating the disease control rate at 12 weeks (DCR12) with combination therapy | December 2022 |
| NCT04548752 | Metastatic PDAC with germline *BRCA1* or *BRCA2* mutation treated with first-line PtCh | Pembrolizumab | Olaparib | Phase II trial comparing combination therapy to olaparib alone as maintenance therapy | March 2025 |

PDAC: Pancreatic adenocarcinoma; PtCh: Platinum chemotherapy; *BRCA*: Breast cancer susceptibility gene.

data from retrospective studies suggests that first-line PtCh is preferred however the PtCh regimen is yet to be defined. Olaparib maintenance therapy is a standard of care option in patients with *BRCA1/2* mutations and offers the benefit of ongoing anti-cancer therapy without traditional cytotoxic therapy toxicities. Important next steps include investigating these PtCh regimens and PARP inhibitors in the neoadjuvant setting, and determining if patients with somatic HR mutations or HRD as detected by genomic assays will also benefit from these treatments.

## REFERENCES


1 **Canadian Cancer Society**. Canadian Cancer Statistics 2019 [cited 1 March 2021]. Available from: https://www.cancer.ca/~/media/cancer.ca/CW/cancer%20information/cancer%20101/Canadian%20cancer%20statistics/Canadian-Cancer-Statistics-2019-EN.pdf?la=en

2 **American Cancer Society**. Cancer Facts and Figures 2020 [cited 1 March 2021]. Available from: https://www.cancer.org/content/dam/cancer-org/research/cancer-facts-and-statistics/annual-cancer-facts-and-figures/2020/cancer-facts-and-figures-2020.pdf

3 **Saad AM**, Turk T, Al-Husseini MJ, Abdel-Rahman O. Trends in pancreatic adenocarcinoma incidence and mortality in the United States in the last four decades; a SEER-based study. *BMC Cancer* 2018; **18**: 688 [PMID: 29940910 DOI: 10.1186/s12885-018-4610-4]

4 **Ryan DP**, Hong TS, Bardeesy N. Pancreatic adenocarcinoma. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **371**: 1039-1049 [PMID: 25207767 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra1404198]

5 **Petersen GM**. Familial pancreatic cancer. *Semin Oncol* 2016; **43**: 548-553 [PMID: 27899186 DOI: 10.1053/j.seminoncol.2016.09.002]

6 **Grant RC**, Selander I, Connor AA, Selvarajah S, Borgida A, Briollais L, Petersen GM, Lerner-Ellis J, Holter S, Gallinger S. Prevalence of germline mutations in cancer predisposition genes in patients with pancreatic cancer. *Gastroenterology* 2015; **148**: 556-564 [PMID: 25479140 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2014.11.042]

7 **Klein AP**, Brune KA, Petersen GM, Goggins M, Tersmette AC, Offerhaus GJ, Griffin C, Cameron JL, Yeo CJ, Kern S, Hruban RH. Prospective risk of pancreatic cancer in familial pancreatic cancer kindreds. *Cancer Res* 2004; **64**: 2634-2638 [PMID: 15059921 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.can-03-3823]

8 **Conroy T**, Hammel P, Hebbar M, Ben Abdelghani M, Wei AC, Raoul JL, Choné L, Francois E, Artru P, Biagi JJ, Lecomte T, Assenat E, Faroux R, Ychou M, Volet J, Sauvanet A, Breysacher G, Di Fiore F, Cripps C, Kavan P, Texereau P, Bouhier-Leporrier K, Khemissa-Akouz F, Legoux JL, Juzyna B, Gourgou S, O'Callaghan CJ, Jouffroy-Zeller C, Rat P, Malka D, Castan F, Bachet JB; Canadian Cancer Trials Group and the Unicancer-GI–PRODIGE Group. FOLFIRINOX or Gemcitabine as Adjuvant Therapy for Pancreatic Cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2018; **379**: 2395-2406 [PMID: 30575490 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1809775]

9 **Von Hoff DD**, Ervin T, Arena FP, Chiorean EG, Infante J, Moore M, Seay T, Tjulandin SA, Ma WW, Saleh MN, Harris M, Reni M, Dowden S, Laheru D, Bahary N, Ramanathan RK, Tabernero J, Hidalgo M, Goldstein D, Van Cutsem E, Wei X, Iglesias J, Renschler MF. Increased survival in pancreatic cancer with nab-paclitaxel plus gemcitabine. *N Engl J Med* 2013; **369**: 1691-1703 [PMID: 24131140 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1304369]

10 **Conroy T**, Desseigne F, Ychou M, Bouché O, Guimbaud R, Bécouarn Y, Adenis A, Raoul JL, Gourgou-Bourgade S, de la Fouchardière C, Bennouna J, Bachet JB, Khemissa-Akouz F, Péré-Vergé D, Delbaldo C, Assenat E, Chauffert B, Michel P, Montoto-Grillot C, Ducreux M; Groupe Tumeurs Digestives of Unicancer; PRODIGE Intergroup. FOLFIRINOX *vs* gemcitabine for metastatic pancreatic cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 1817-1825 [PMID: 21561347 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1011923]

11 **Waddell N**, Pajic M, Patch AM, Chang DK, Kassahn KS, Bailey P, Johns AL, Miller D, Nones K, Quek K, Quinn MC, Robertson AJ, Fadlullah MZ, Bruxner TJ, Christ AN, Harliwong I, Idrisoglu S, Manning S, Nourse C, Nourbakhsh E, Wani S, Wilson PJ, Markham E, Cloonan N, Anderson MJ, Fink JL, Holmes O, Kazakoff SH, Leonard C, Newell F, Poudel B, Song S, Taylor D, Waddell N, Wood S, Xu Q, Wu J, Pinese M, Cowley MJ, Lee HC, Jones MD, Nagrial AM, Humphris J, Chantrill LA, Chin V, Steinmann AM, Mawson A, Humphrey ES, Colvin EK, Chou A, Scarlett CJ, Pinho AV, Giry-Laterriere M, Rooman I, Samra JS, Kench JG, Pettitt JA, Merrett ND, Toon C, Epari K, Nguyen NQ, Barbour A, Zeps N, Jamieson NB, Graham JS, Niclou SP, Bjerkvig R, Grützmann R, Aust D, Hruban RH, Maitra A, Iacobuzio-Donahue CA, Wolfgang CL, Morgan RA, Lawlor RT, Corbo V, Bassi C, Falconi M, Zamboni G, Tortora G, Tempero MA; Australian Pancreatic Cancer Genome Initiative, Gill AJ, Eshleman JR, Pilarsky C, Scarpa A, Musgrove EA, Pearson JV, Biankin AV, Grimmond SM. Whole genomes redefine the mutational landscape of pancreatic cancer. *Nature* 2015; **518**: 495-501 [PMID: 25719666 DOI: 10.1038/nature14169]

12 **Hall BR**, Cannon A, Atri P, Wichman CS, Smith LM, Ganti AK, Are C, Sasson AR, Kumar S, Batra SK. Advanced pancreatic cancer: a meta-analysis of clinical trials over thirty years. *Oncotarget* 2018; **9**: 19396-19405 [PMID: 29721211 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.25036]

13 **Breast Cancer Linkage Consortium**. Cancer risks in BRCA2 mutation carriers. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 1999; **91**: 1310-1316 [PMID: 10433620 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/91.15.1310]

14 **Thompson D**, Easton DF; Breast Cancer Linkage Consortium. Cancer Incidence in BRCA1 mutation carriers. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2002; **94**: 1358-1365 [PMID: 12237281 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/94.18.1358]

15 **Chen CC**, Feng W, Lim PX, Kass EM, Jasin M. Homology-Directed Repair and the Role of BRCA1, BRCA2, and Related Proteins in Genome Integrity and Cancer. *Annu Rev Cancer Biol* 2018; **2**: 313-336 [PMID: 30345412 DOI: 10.1146/annurev-cancerbio-030617-050502]

16 **Prakash R**, Zhang Y, Feng W, Jasin M. Homologous recombination and human health: the roles of BRCA1, BRCA2, and associated proteins. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol* 2015; **7**: a016600 [PMID: 25833843 DOI: 10.1101/cshperspect.a016600]

17 **Hu C**, Hart SN, Polley EC, Gnanaolivu R, Shimelis H, Lee KY, Lilyquist J, Na J, Moore R, Antwi SO, Bamlet WR, Chaffee KG, DiCarlo J, Wu Z, Samara R, Kasi PM, McWilliams RR, Petersen GM, Couch FJ. Association Between Inherited Germline Mutations in Cancer Predisposition Genes and Risk of Pancreatic Cancer. *JAMA* 2018; **319**: 2401-2409 [PMID: 29922827 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2018.6228]

18 **Miki Y**, Swensen J, Shattuck-Eidens D, Futreal PA, Harshman K, Tavtigian S, Liu Q, Cochran C, Bennett LM, Ding W. A strong candidate for the breast and ovarian cancer susceptibility gene BRCA1. *Science* 1994; **266**: 66-71 [PMID: 7545954 DOI: 10.1126/science.7545954]

19 **Wooster R**, Bignell G, Lancaster J, Swift S, Seal S, Mangion J, Collins N, Gregory S, Gumbs C, Micklem G. Identification of the breast cancer susceptibility gene BRCA2. *Nature* 1995; **378**: 789-792 [PMID: 8524414 DOI: 10.1038/378789a0]

20 **Paluch-Shimon S**, Cardoso F, Sessa C, Balmana J, Cardoso MJ, Gilbert F, Senkus E; ESMO Guidelines Committee. Prevention and screening in BRCA mutation carriers and other breast/ovarian hereditary cancer syndromes: ESMO Clinical Practice Guidelines for cancer prevention and screening. *Ann Oncol* 2016; **27**: v103-v110 [PMID: 27664246 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdw327]

21 **Roa BB**, Boyd AA, Volcik K, Richards CS. Ashkenazi Jewish population frequencies for common mutations in BRCA1 and BRCA2. *Nat Genet* 1996; **14**: 185-187 [PMID: 8841191 DOI: 10.1038/ng1096-185]

22 **Janavičius R**. Founder BRCA1/2 mutations in the Europe: implications for hereditary breast-ovarian cancer prevention and control. *EPMA J* 2010; **1**: 397-412 [PMID: 23199084 DOI: 10.1007/s13167-010-0037-y]

23 **Holter S**, Borgida A, Dodd A, Grant R, Semotiuk K, Hedley D, Dhani N, Narod S, Akbari M, Moore M, Gallinger S. Germline BRCA Mutations in a Large Clinic-Based Cohort of Patients With Pancreatic Adenocarcinoma. *J Clin Oncol* 2015; **33**: 3124-3129 [PMID: 25940717 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2014.59.7401]

24 **Brand R**, Borazanci E, Speare V, Dudley B, Karloski E, Peters MLB, Stobie L, Bahary N, Zeh H, Zureikat A, Hogg M, Lee K, Tsung A, Rhee J, Ohr J, Sun W, Lee J, Moser AJ, DeLeonardis K, Krejdovsky J, Dalton E, LaDuca H, Dolinsky J, Colvin A, Lim C, Black MH, Tung N. Prospective study of germline genetic testing in incident cases of pancreatic adenocarcinoma. *Cancer* 2018; **124**: 3520-3527 [PMID: 30067863 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.31628]

25 **Mizukami K**, Iwasaki Y, Kawakami E, Hirata M, Kamatani Y, Matsuda K, Endo M, Sugano K, Yoshida T, Murakami Y, Nakagawa H, Spurdle AB, Momozawa Y. Genetic characterization of pancreatic cancer patients and prediction of carrier status of germline pathogenic variants in cancer-predisposing genes. *EBioMedicine* 2020; **60**: 103033 [PMID: 32980694 DOI: 10.1016/j.ebiom.2020.103033]

26 **Lowery MA**, Wong W, Jordan EJ, Lee JW, Kemel Y, Vijai J, Mandelker D, Zehir A, Capanu M, Salo-Mullen E, Arnold AG, Yu KH, Varghese AM, Kelsen DP, Brenner R, Kaufmann E,

Ravichandran V, Mukherjee S, Berger MF, Hyman DM, Klimstra DS, Abou-Alfa GK, Tjan C, Covington C, Maynard H, Allen PJ, Askan G, Leach SD, Iacobuzio-Donahue CA, Robson ME, Offit K, Stadler ZK, O'Reilly EM. Prospective Evaluation of Germline Alterations in Patients With Exocrine Pancreatic Neoplasms. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2018; **110**: 1067-1074 [PMID: 29506128 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/djy024]

27 **Lucas AL**, Shakya R, Lipsyc MD, Mitchel EB, Kumar S, Hwang C, Deng L, Devoe C, Chabot JA, Szabolcs M, Ludwig T, Chung WK, Frucht H. High prevalence of BRCA1 and BRCA2 germline mutations with loss of heterozygosity in a series of resected pancreatic adenocarcinoma and other neoplastic lesions. *Clin Cancer Res* 2013; **19**: 3396-3403 [PMID: 23658460 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-12-3020]

28 **Ferrone CR**, Levine DA, Tang LH, Allen PJ, Jarnagin W, Brennan MF, Offit K, Robson ME. BRCA germline mutations in Jewish patients with pancreatic adenocarcinoma. *J Clin Oncol* 2009; **27**: 433-438 [PMID: 19064968 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2008.18.5546]

29 **Murphy KM**, Brune KA, Griffin C, Sollenberger JE, Petersen GM, Bansal R, Hruban RH, Kern SE. Evaluation of candidate genes MAP2K4, MADH4, ACVR1B, and BRCA2 in familial pancreatic cancer: deleterious BRCA2 mutations in 17%. *Cancer Res* 2002; **62**: 3789-3793 [PMID: 12097290]

30 **Hahn SA**, Greenhalf B, Ellis I, Sina-Frey M, Rieder H, Korte B, Gerdes B, Kress R, Ziegler A, Raeburn JA, Campra D, Grützmann R, Rehder H, Rothmund M, Schmiegel W, Neoptolemos JP, Bartsch DK. BRCA2 germline mutations in familial pancreatic carcinoma. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2003; **95**: 214-221 [PMID: 12569143 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/95.3.214]

31 **Zhen DB**, Rabe KG, Gallinger S, Syngal S, Schwartz AG, Goggins MG, Hruban RH, Cote ML, McWilliams RR, Roberts NJ, Cannon-Albright LA, Li D, Moyes K, Wenstrup RJ, Hartman AR, Seminara D, Klein AP, Petersen GM. BRCA1, BRCA2, PALB2, and CDKN2A mutations in familial pancreatic cancer: a PACGENE study. *Genet Med* 2015; **17**: 569-577 [PMID: 25356972 DOI: 10.1038/gim.2014.153]

32 **Couch FJ**, Johnson MR, Rabe KG, Brune K, de Andrade M, Goggins M, Rothenmund H, Gallinger S, Klein A, Petersen GM, Hruban RH. The prevalence of BRCA2 mutations in familial pancreatic cancer. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2007; **16**: 342-346 [PMID: 17301269 DOI: 10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-06-0783]

33 **Møller P**, Hagen AI, Apold J, Maehle L, Clark N, Fiane B, Løvslett K, Hovig E, Vabø A. Genetic epidemiology of BRCA mutations--family history detects less than 50% of the mutation carriers. *Eur J Cancer* 2007; **43**: 1713-1717 [PMID: 17574839 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2007.04.023]

34 **Shindo K**, Yu J, Suenaga M, Fesharakizadeh S, Cho C, Macgregor-Das A, Siddiqui A, Witmer PD, Tamura K, Song TJ, Navarro Almario JA, Brant A, Borges M, Ford M, Barkley T, He J, Weiss MJ, Wolfgang CL, Roberts NJ, Hruban RH, Klein AP, Goggins M. Deleterious Germline Mutations in Patients With Apparently Sporadic Pancreatic Adenocarcinoma. *J Clin Oncol* 2017; **35**: 3382-3390 [PMID: 28767289 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2017.72.3502]

35 **Kondo T**, Kanai M, Kou T, Sakuma T, Mochizuki H, Kamada M, Nakatsui M, Uza N, Kodama Y, Masui T, Takaori K, Matsumoto S, Miyake H, Okuno Y, Muto M. Association between homologous recombination repair gene mutations and response to oxaliplatin in pancreatic cancer. *Oncotarget* 2018; **9**: 19817-19825 [PMID: 29731985 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.24865]

36 **Gabai-Kapara E**, Lahad A, Kaufman B, Friedman E, Segev S, Renbaum P, Beeri R, Gal M, Grinshpun-Cohen J, Djemal K, Mandell JB, Lee MK, Beller U, Catane R, King MC, Levy-Lahad E. Population-based screening for breast and ovarian cancer risk due to BRCA1 and BRCA2. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2014; **111**: 14205-14210 [PMID: 25192939 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1415979111]

37 **Manchanda R**, Loggenberg K, Sanderson S, Burnell M, Wardle J, Gessler S, Side L, Balogun N, Desai R, Kumar A, Dorkins H, Wallis Y, Chapman C, Taylor R, Jacobs C, Tomlinson I, McGuire A, Beller U, Menon U, Jacobs I. Population testing for cancer predisposing BRCA1/BRCA2 mutations in the Ashkenazi-Jewish community: a randomized controlled trial. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2015; **107**: 379 [PMID: 25435541 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/dju379]

38 **Metcalfe KA**, Poll A, Royer R, Llacuachaqui M, Tulman A, Sun P, Narod SA. Screening for founder mutations in BRCA1 and BRCA2 in unselected Jewish women. *J Clin Oncol* 2010; **28**: 387-391 [PMID: 20008623 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2009.25.0712]

39 **Tennen RI**, Laskey SB, Koelsch BL, McIntyre MH, Tung JY. Identifying Ashkenazi Jewish BRCA1/2 founder variants in individuals who do not self-report Jewish ancestry. *Sci Rep* 2020; **10**: 7669 [PMID: 32376921 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-020-63466-x]

40 **Mandelker D**, Zhang L, Kemel Y, Stadler ZK, Joseph V, Zehir A, Pradhan N, Arnold A, Walsh MF, Li Y, Balakrishnan AR, Syed A, Prasad M, Nafa K, Carlo MI, Cadoo KA, Sheehan M, Fleischut MH, Salo-Mullen E, Trottier M, Lipkin SM, Lincoln A, Mukherjee S, Ravichandran V, Cambria R, Galle J, Abida W, Arcila ME, Benayed R, Shah R, Yu K, Bajorin DF, Coleman JA, Leach SD, Lowery MA, Garcia-Aguilar J, Kantoff PW, Sawyers CL, Dickler MN, Saltz L, Motzer RJ, O'Reilly EM, Scher HI, Baselga J, Klimstra DS, Solit DB, Hyman DM, Berger MF, Ladanyi M, Robson ME, Offit K. Mutation Detection in Patients With Advanced Cancer by Universal Sequencing of Cancer-Related Genes in Tumor and Normal DNA *vs* Guideline-Based Germline Testing. *JAMA* 2017; **318**: 825-835 [PMID: 28873162 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2017.11137]

41 **Daly MB**, Pilarski R, Yurgelun MB, Berry MP, Buys SS, Dickson P, Domchek SM, Elkhanany A, Friedman S, Garber JE, Goggins M, Hutton ML, Khan S, Klein C, Kohlmann W, Kurian AW, Laronga C, Litton JK, Mak JS, Menendez CS, Merajver SD, Norquist BS, Offit K, Pal T, Pederson HJ, Reiser G, Shannon KM, Visvanathan K, Weitzel JN, Wick MJ, Wisinski KB, Dwyer MA, Darlow

SD. NCCN Guidelines Insights: Genetic/Familial High-Risk Assessment: Breast, Ovarian, and Pancreatic, Version 1.2020. *J Natl Compr Canc Netw* 2020; **18**: 380-391 [PMID: 32259785 DOI: 10.6004/jnccn.2020.0017]

42 **Smith AL**, Wong C, Cuggia A, Borgida A, Holter S, Hall A, Connor AA, Bascuñana C, Asselah J, Bouganim N, Poulin V, Jolivet J, Vafiadis P, Le P, Martel G, Lemay F, Beaudoin A, Rafatzand K, Chaudhury P, Barkun J, Metrakos P, Marcus V, Omeroglu A, Chong G, Akbari MR, Foulkes WD, Gallinger S, Zogopoulos G. Reflex Testing for Germline BRCA1 , BRCA2 , PALB2 , and ATM Mutations in Pancreatic Cancer: Mutation Prevalence and Clinical Outcomes From Two Canadian Research Registries. *JCO Precis Oncol* 2018; **2**: 1-16 [DOI: 10.1200/PO.17.00098]

43 **Golan T**, Kanji ZS, Epelbaum R, Devaud N, Dagan E, Holter S, Aderka D, Paluch-Shimon S, Kaufman B, Gershoni-Baruch R, Hedley D, Moore MJ, Friedman E, Gallinger S. Overall survival and clinical characteristics of pancreatic cancer in BRCA mutation carriers. *Br J Cancer* 2014; **111**: 1132-1138 [PMID: 25072261 DOI: 10.1038/bjc.2014.418]

44 **Blair AB**, Groot VP, Gemenetzis G, Wei J, Cameron JL, Weiss MJ, Goggins M, Wolfgang CL, Yu J, He J. BRCA1/BRCA2 Germline Mutation Carriers and Sporadic Pancreatic Ductal Adenocarcinoma. *J Am Coll Surg* 2018; **226**: 630-637. e1 [PMID: 29309945 DOI: 10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2017.12.021]

45 **Golan T**, Sella T, O'Reilly EM, Katz MH, Epelbaum R, Kelsen DP, Borgida A, Maynard H, Kindler H, Friedmen E, Javle M, Gallinger S. Overall survival and clinical characteristics of BRCA mutation carriers with stage I/II pancreatic cancer. *Br J Cancer* 2017; **116**: 697-702 [PMID: 28183138 DOI: 10.1038/bjc.2017.19]

46 **Pishvaian MJ**, Blais EM, Brody JR, Lyons E, DeArbeloa P, Hendifar A, Mikhail S, Chung V, Sahai V, Sohal DPS, Bellakbira S, Thach D, Rahib L, Madhavan S, Matrisian LM, Petricoin EF 3rd. Overall survival in patients with pancreatic cancer receiving matched therapies following molecular profiling: a retrospective analysis of the Know Your Tumor registry trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2020; **21**: 508-518 [PMID: 32135080 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(20)30074-7]

47 **Perri G**, Prakash L, Qiao W, Varadhachary GR, Wolff R, Fogelman D, Overman M, Pant S, Javle M, Koay EJ, Herman J, Kim M, Ikoma N, Tzeng CW, Lee JE, Katz MHG. Response and Survival Associated With First-line FOLFIRINOX *vs* Gemcitabine and nab-Paclitaxel Chemotherapy for Localized Pancreatic Ductal Adenocarcinoma. *JAMA Surg* 2020; **155**: 832-839 [PMID: 32667641 DOI: 10.1001/jamasurg.2020.2286]

48 **Williet N**, Saint A, Pointet AL, Tougeron D, Pernot S, Pozet A, Bechade D, Trouilloud I, Lourenco N, Hautefeuille V, Locher C, Desrame J, Artru P, Thirot Bidault A, Le Roy B, Pezet D, Phelip JM, Taieb J. Folfirinox *versus* gemcitabine/nab-paclitaxel as first-line therapy in patients with metastatic pancreatic cancer: a comparative propensity score study. *Therap Adv Gastroenterol* 2019; **12**: 1756284819878660 [PMID: 31598136 DOI: 10.1177/1756284819878660]

49 **Bhattacharyya A**, Ear US, Koller BH, Weichselbaum RR, Bishop DK. The breast cancer susceptibility gene BRCA1 is required for subnuclear assembly of Rad51 and survival following treatment with the DNA cross-linking agent cisplatin. *J Biol Chem* 2000; **275**: 23899-23903 [PMID: 10843985 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.C000276200]

50 **Mylavarapu S**, Das A, Roy M. Role of BRCA Mutations in the Modulation of Response to Platinum Therapy. *Front Oncol* 2018; **8**: 16 [PMID: 29459887 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2018.00016]

51 **Vyas O**, Leung K, Ledbetter L, Kaley K, Rodriguez T, Garcon MC, Saif MW. Clinical outcomes in pancreatic adenocarcinoma associated with BRCA-2 mutation. *Anticancer Drugs* 2015; **26**: 224-226 [PMID: 25304989 DOI: 10.1097/CAD.0000000000000178]

52 **Reiss KA**, Yu S, Judy R, Symecko H, Nathanson KL, Domchek SM. Retrospective Survival Analysis of Patients With Advanced Pancreatic Ductal Adenocarcinoma and Germline BRCA or PALB2 Mutations. *JCO Precis Oncol* 2018; **2**: 1-9 [DOI: 10.1200/PO.17.00152]

53 **Wattenberg MM**, Asch D, Yu S, O'Dwyer PJ, Domchek SM, Nathanson KL, Rosen MA, Beatty GL, Siegelman ES, Reiss KA. Platinum response characteristics of patients with pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma and a germline BRCA1, BRCA2 or PALB2 mutation. *Br J Cancer* 2020; **122**: 333-339 [PMID: 31787751 DOI: 10.1038/s41416-019-0582-7]

54 **Yu S**, Agarwal P, Mamtani R, Symecko H, Spielman K, O'Hara M, O'Dwyer PJ, Schneider C, Teitelbaum U, Nathanson KL, Domchek SM, Reiss KA. Retrospective Survival Analysis of Patients With Resected Pancreatic Ductal Adenocarcinoma and a Germline BRCA or PALB2 Mutation. *JCO Precis Oncol* 2019; **2**: 1-11 [DOI: 10.1200/PO.18.00271]

55 **Rebelatto TF**, Falavigna M, Pozzari M, Spada F, Cella CA, Laffi A, Pellicori S, Fazio N. Should platinum-based chemotherapy be preferred for germline BReast CAncer genes (BRCA) 1 and 2-mutated pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma (PDAC) patients? *Cancer Treat Rev* 2019; **80**: 101895 [PMID: 31542591 DOI: 10.1016/j.ctrv.2019.101895]

56 **O'Reilly EM**, Lee JW, Zalupski M, Capanu M, Park J, Golan T, Tahover E, Lowery MA, Chou JF, Sahai V, Brenner R, Kindler HL, Yu KH, Zervoudakis A, Vemuri S, Stadler ZK, Do RKG, Dhani N, Chen AP, Kelsen DP. Randomized, Multicenter, Phase II Trial of Gemcitabine and Cisplatin With or Without Veliparib in Patients With Pancreas Adenocarcinoma and a Germline *BRCA/PALB2* Mutation. *J Clin Oncol* 2020; **38**: 1378-1388 [PMID: 31976786 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.19.02931]

57 **Bryant HE**, Schultz N, Thomas HD, Parker KM, Flower D, Lopez E, Kyle S, Meuth M, Curtin NJ, Helleday T. Specific killing of BRCA2-deficient tumours with inhibitors of poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase. *Nature* 2005; **434**: 913-917 [PMID: 15829966 DOI: 10.1038/nature03443]

58 **Farmer H**, McCabe N, Lord CJ, Tutt AN, Johnson DA, Richardson TB, Santarosa M, Dillon KJ, Hickson I, Knights C, Martin NM, Jackson SP, Smith GC, Ashworth A. Targeting the DNA repair

defect in BRCA mutant cells as a therapeutic strategy. *Nature* 2005; **434**: 917-921 [PMID: 15829967 DOI: 10.1038/nature03445]

59 **Keung MYT**, Wu Y, Vadgama JV. PARP Inhibitors as a Therapeutic Agent for Homologous Recombination Deficiency in Breast Cancers. *J Clin Med* 2019; **8** [PMID: 30934991 DOI: 10.3390/jcm8040435]

60 **Helleday T**. The underlying mechanism for the PARP and BRCA synthetic lethality: clearing up the misunderstandings. *Mol Oncol* 2011; **5**: 387-393 [PMID: 21821475 DOI: 10.1016/j.molonc.2011.07.001]

61 **Fong PC**, Boss DS, Yap TA, Tutt A, Wu P, Mergui-Roelvink M, Mortimer P, Swaisland H, Lau A, O'Connor MJ, Ashworth A, Carmichael J, Kaye SB, Schellens JH, de Bono JS. Inhibition of poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase in tumors from BRCA mutation carriers. *N Engl J Med* 2009; **361**: 123-134 [PMID: 19553641 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0900212]

62 **Mirza MR**, Coleman RL, González-Martín A, Moore KN, Colombo N, Ray-Coquard I, Pignata S. The forefront of ovarian cancer therapy: update on PARP inhibitors. *Ann Oncol* 2020; **31**: 1148-1159 [PMID: 32569725 DOI: 10.1016/j.annonc.2020.06.004]

63 **Mirza MR**, Monk BJ, Herrstedt J, Oza AM, Mahner S, Redondo A, Fabbro M, Ledermann JA, Lorusso D, Vergote I, Ben-Baruch NE, Marth C, Mądry R, Christensen RD, Berek JS, Dørum A, Tinker AV, du Bois A, González-Martín A, Follana P, Benigno B, Rosenberg P, Gilbert L, Rimel BJ, Buscema J, Balser JP, Agarwal S, Matulonis UA; ENGOT-OV16/NOVA Investigators. Niraparib Maintenance Therapy in Platinum-Sensitive, Recurrent Ovarian Cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2016; **375**: 2154-2164 [PMID: 27717299 DOI: 10.1056/nejmoa1611310]

64 **Coleman RL**, Oza AM, Lorusso D, Aghajanian C, Oaknin A, Dean A, Colombo N, Weberpals JI, Clamp A, Scambia G, Leary A, Holloway RW, Gancedo MA, Fong PC, Goh JC, O'Malley DM, Armstrong DK, Garcia-Donas J, Swisher EM, Floquet A, Konecny GE, McNeish IA, Scott CL, Cameron T, Maloney L, Isaacson J, Goble S, Grace C, Harding TC, Raponi M, Sun J, Lin KK, Giordano H, Ledermann JA; ARIEL3 investigators. Rucaparib maintenance treatment for recurrent ovarian carcinoma after response to platinum therapy (ARIEL3): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, phase 3 trial. *Lancet* 2017; **390**: 1949-1961 [PMID: 28916367 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(17)32440-6]

65 **Pujade-Lauraine E**, Ledermann JA, Selle F, Gebski V, Penson RT, Oza AM, Korach J, Huzarski T, Poveda A, Pignata S, Friedlander M, Colombo N, Harter P, Fujiwara K, Ray-Coquard I, Banerjee S, Liu J, Lowe ES, Bloomfield R, Pautier P; SOLO2/ENGOT-Ov21 investigators. Olaparib tablets as maintenance therapy in patients with platinum-sensitive, relapsed ovarian cancer and a BRCA1/2 mutation (SOLO2/ENGOT-Ov21): a double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled, phase 3 trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2017; **18**: 1274-1284 [PMID: 28754483 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(17)30469-2]

66 **Robson M**, Im SA, Senkus E, Xu B, Domchek SM, Masuda N, Delaloge S, Li W, Tung N, Armstrong A, Wu W, Goessl C, Runswick S, Conte P. Olaparib for Metastatic Breast Cancer in Patients with a Germline BRCA Mutation. *N Engl J Med* 2017; **377**: 523-533 [PMID: 28578601 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1706450]

67 **Litton JK**, Rugo HS, Ettl J, Hurvitz SA, Gonçalves A, Lee KH, Fehrenbacher L, Yerushalmi R, Mina LA, Martin M, Roché H, Im YH, Quek RGW, Markova D, Tudor IC, Hannah AL, Eiermann W, Blum JL. Talazoparib in Patients with Advanced Breast Cancer and a Germline BRCA Mutation. *N Engl J Med* 2018; **379**: 753-763 [PMID: 30110579 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1802905]

68 **Robson ME**, Tung N, Conte P, Im SA, Senkus E, Xu B, Masuda N, Delaloge S, Li W, Armstrong A, Wu W, Goessl C, Runswick S, Domchek SM. OlympiAD final overall survival and tolerability results: Olaparib *vs* chemotherapy treatment of physician's choice in patients with a germline BRCA mutation and HER2-negative metastatic breast cancer. *Ann Oncol* 2019; **30**: 558-566 [PMID: 30689707 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdz012]

69 **de Bono J**, Mateo J, Fizazi K, Saad F, Shore N, Sandhu S, Chi KN, Sartor O, Agarwal N, Olmos D, Thiery-Vuillemin A, Twardowski P, Mehra N, Goessl C, Kang J, Burgents J, Wu W, Kohlmann A, Adelman CA, Hussain M. Olaparib for Metastatic Castration-Resistant Prostate Cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2020; **382**: 2091-2102 [PMID: 32343890 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1911440]

70 **Lowery MA**, Kelsen DP, Capanu M, Smith SC, Lee JW, Stadler ZK, Moore MJ, Kindler HL, Golan T, Segal A, Maynard H, Hollywood E, Moynahan M, Salo-Mullen EE, Do RKG, Chen AP, Yu KH, Tang LH, O'Reilly EM. Phase II trial of veliparib in patients with previously treated BRCA-mutated pancreas ductal adenocarcinoma. *Eur J Cancer* 2018; **89**: 19-26 [PMID: 29223478 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2017.11.004]

71 **Kaufman B**, Shapira-Frommer R, Schmutzler RK, Audeh MW, Friedlander M, Balmaña J, Mitchell G, Fried G, Stemmer SM, Hubert A, Rosengarten O, Steiner M, Loman N, Bowen K, Fielding A, Domchek SM. Olaparib monotherapy in patients with advanced cancer and a germline BRCA1/2 mutation. *J Clin Oncol* 2015; **33**: 244-250 [PMID: 25366685 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2014.56.2728]

72 **Golan T**, Hammel P, Reni M, Van Cutsem E, Macarulla T, Hall MJ, Park JO, Hochhauser D, Arnold D, Oh DY, Reinacher-Schick A, Tortora G, Algül H, O'Reilly EM, McGuinness D, Cui KY, Schlienger K, Locker GY, Kindler HL. Maintenance Olaparib for Germline *BRCA*-Mutated Metastatic Pancreatic Cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2019; **381**: 317-327 [PMID: 31157963 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1903387]

73 **Hammel P**, Kindler HL, Reni M, Van Cutsem E, Macarulla T, Hall MJ, Park JO, Hochhauser D, Arnold D, Oh DY, Reinacher-Schick A, Tortora G, Algül H, O'Reilly EM, McGuinness D, Cui KY, Joo S, Yoo HK, Patel N, Golan T; POLO Investigators. Health-related quality of life in patients with

a germline BRCA mutation and metastatic pancreatic cancer receiving maintenance olaparib. *Ann Oncol* 2019; **30**: 1959-1968 [PMID: 31562758 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdz406]

74 **Nishikawa G**, Booth C, Prasad V. Olaparib for BRCA mutant pancreas cancer: Should the POLO trial change clinical practice? *Cancer* 2020; **126**: 4087-4088 [PMID: 32459369 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.32979]

75 **Hammel P**, Vitellius C, Boisteau É, Wisniewski M, Colle E, Hilmi M, Dengremont C, Granier S, Turpin A, de Mestier L, Neuzillet C. Maintenance therapies in metastatic pancreatic cancer: present and future with a focus on PARP inhibitors. *Ther Adv Med Oncol* 2020; **12**: 1758835920937949 [PMID: 32695234 DOI: 10.1177/1758835920937949]

76 **Samstein RM**, Krishna C, Ma X, Pei X, Lee KW, Makarov V, Kuo F, Chung J, Srivastava RM, Purohit TA, Hoen DR, Mandal R, Setton J, Wu W, Shah R, Qeriqi B, Chang Q, Kendall S, Braunstein L, Weigelt B, Blecua Carrillo Albornoz P, Morris LGT, Mandelker DL, Reis-Filho JS, de Stanchina E, Powell SN, Chan TA, Riaz N. Mutations in BRCA1 and BRCA2 differentially affect the tumor microenvironment and response to checkpoint blockade immunotherapy. *Nat Cancer* 2020; **1**: 1188-1203 [DOI: 10.1038/s43018-020-00139-8]

77 **Sato H**, Niimi A, Yasuhara T, Permata TBM, Hagiwara Y, Isono M, Nuryadi E, Sekine R, Oike T, Kakoti S, Yoshimoto Y, Held KD, Suzuki Y, Kono K, Miyagawa K, Nakano T, Shibata A. DNA double-strand break repair pathway regulates PD-L1 expression in cancer cells. *Nat Commun* 2017; **8**: 1751 [PMID: 29170499 DOI: 10.1038/s41467-017-01883-9]

78 **Seeber A**, Zimmer K, Kocher F, Puccini A, Xiu J, Nabhan C, Elliott A, Goldberg RM, Grothey A, Shields AF, Battaglin F, El-Deiry WS, Philip PA, Marshall JL, Hall M, Korn WM, Lenz HJ, Wolf D, Feistritzer C, Spizzo G. Molecular characteristics of *BRCA1/2* and *PALB2* mutations in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. *ESMO Open* 2020; **5**: e000942 [PMID: 33229504 DOI: 10.1136/esmoopen-2020-000942]

79 **Peyraud F**, Italiano A. Combined PARP Inhibition and Immune Checkpoint Therapy in Solid Tumors. *Cancers (Basel)* 2020; **12** [PMID: 32526888 DOI: 10.3390/cancers12061502]

80 **Vikas P**, Borcherding N, Chennamadhavuni A, Garje R. Therapeutic Potential of Combining PARP Inhibitor and Immunotherapy in Solid Tumors. *Front Oncol* 2020; **10**: 570 [PMID: 32457830 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2020.00570]

81 **Mohyuddin GR**, Aziz M, Britt A, Wade L, Sun W, Baranda J, Al-Rajabi R, Saeed A, Kasi A. Similar response rates and survival with PARP inhibitors for patients with solid tumors harboring somatic *vs* Germline BRCA mutations: a Meta-analysis and systematic review. *BMC Cancer* 2020; **20**: 507 [PMID: 32493233 DOI: 10.1186/s12885-020-06948-5]

82 **Pennington KP**, Walsh T, Harrell MI, Lee MK, Pennil CC, Rendi MH, Thornton A, Norquist BM, Casadei S, Nord AS, Agnew KJ, Pritchard CC, Scroggins S, Garcia RL, King MC, Swisher EM. Germline and somatic mutations in homologous recombination genes predict platinum response and survival in ovarian, fallopian tube, and peritoneal carcinomas. *Clin Cancer Res* 2014; **20**: 764-775 [PMID: 24240112 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-13-2287]

83 **Hoppe MM**, Sundar R, Tan DSP, Jeyasekharan AD. Biomarkers for Homologous Recombination Deficiency in Cancer. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2018; **110**: 704-713 [PMID: 29788099 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/djy085]

84 **Ray-Coquard I**, Pautier P, Pignata S, Pérol D, González-Martín A, Berger R, Fujiwara K, Vergote I, Colombo N, Mäenpää J, Selle F, Sehouli J, Lorusso D, Guerra Alía EM, Reinthaller A, Nagao S, Lefeuvre-Plesse C, Canzler U, Scambia G, Lortholary A, Marmé F, Combe P, de Gregorio N, Rodrigues M, Buderath P, Dubot C, Burges A, You B, Pujade-Lauraine E, Harter P; PAOLA-1 Investigators. Olaparib plus Bevacizumab as First-Line Maintenance in Ovarian Cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2019; **381**: 2416-2428 [PMID: 31851799 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1911361]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

*World J Gastroenterol* 2021 May 7; 27(17): 1959-1972

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i17.1959

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

*MINIREVIEWS*

# Metabolic and cardiovascular complications after virological cure in hepatitis C: What awaits beyond

Mohamed Shengir, Mohamed Elgara, Giada Sebastiani

**ORCID number:** Mohamed Shengir 0000-0001-8421-0379; Mohamed Elgara 0000-0001-5449-2133; Giada Sebastiani 0000-0003-2655-8283.

**Author contributions:** Shengir M wrote the paper; Elgara M participated in writing the paper; Sebastiani G reviewed and critically revised the manuscript.

**Supported by** Junior 1 and 2 Salary Award from Fonds de la Recherche en Santé du Québec, No. 27127; Junior 1 and 2 Salary Award from Fonds de la Recherche en Santé du Québec, No. 267806; Research Salary from the Department of Medicine of McGill University; and Pfizer *via* Unrestricted Educational Grant.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** Sebastiani G has acted as speaker for Merck, Gilead, Abbvie, Novonordisk, Novartis, Pfizer, served as an advisory board member for Merck, Intercept, Novartis, Gilead, Allergan, Pfizer and has received research funding from Merck and Theratec Inc. Shengir M has received honoraria from Gilead. Elgara M has nothing to declare.



**Mohamed Shengir,** Department of Medicine, McGill University, Montreal, Quebec H3A0G4, Canada

**Mohamed Elgara,** Department of Internal Medicine, Hamad Medical Corporation, Doha 3050, Qatar

**Giada Sebastiani,** Department of Medicine, McGill University Health Center, Montreal, Quebec H4A3J1, Canada

**Corresponding author:** Giada Sebastiani, MD, Associate Professor, Department of Medicine, McGill University Health Center, 1001 Blvd. Decarie, Montreal, Quebec H4A3J1, Canada. giada.sebastiani@mcgill.ca

## Abstract

The association between chronic hepatitis C (CHC) infection and extrahepatic manifestations (EHMs), particularly cardiometabolic diseases, has been extensively examined. However, there has still been insufficient evaluation for these EHMs after virological cure. Several multidirectional mechanisms have been proposed explaining the ability of hepatitis C virus (HCV) developing EHMs, cardiometabolic ones, as well as the effect of antiviral therapy to resolve these EHMs. Data on these manifestations after achieving sustained virologic response (SVR) are still conflicting. However, current evidence suggests that reversal of hepatic steatosis and its coexistent hypocholesterolemia after successful viral eradication led to unfavorable lipid profile, which increases cardiovascular disease (CVD) risk. Additionally, most observations showed that metabolic alterations, such as insulin resistance and diabetes mellitus (DM), undergo some degree of reduction after viral clearance. These changes seem HCV-genotype dependent. Interferon-based antiviral therapy and direct acting antiviral drugs were shown to minimize incidence of DM. Large epidemiological studies that investigated the effect of SVR on CVD showed great discrepancies in terms of results, with predominant findings indicating that CVD events decreased in patients with SVR compared to non-responders or untreated ones. In this review, we present a summary of the current knowledge regarding extrahepatic sequelae of CHC following SVR, which may have an impact on healthcare providers' clinical practice.

**Key Words:** Chronic hepatitis C; Sustained virologic response; Hepatic steatosis; Diabetes mellitus; Cardiovascular disease

**Manuscript source:** Invited manuscript

**Specialty type:** Gastroenterology and hepatology

**Country/Territory of origin:** Canada

**Peer-review report's scientific quality classification**

Grade A (Excellent): A
Grade B (Very good): 0
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

**Received:** January 25, 2021
**Peer-review started:** January 25, 2021
**First decision:** February 27, 2021
**Revised:** March 6, 2021
**Accepted:** April 12, 2021
**Article in press:** April 12, 2021
**Published online:** May 7, 2021

**P-Reviewer:** Masaki N
**S-Editor:** Fan JR
**L-Editor:** A
**P-Editor:** Liu JH



**Core Tip:** The implementation of direct acting antiviral drugs has dramatically changed the landscape of hepatitis C virus (HCV) treatment, with over 95% of patients achieving sustained virologic response (SVR). Although consistent evidence demonstrated better outcomes for both hepatic and extrahepatic complications after viral clearance, data on cardiometabolic manifestation showed inconsistent results. In this review, we are shading light on the latest findings about cardiometabolic extrahepatic manifestations post-SVR. These updates may guide clinicians engaged in HCV care to integrate in their management post-viral eradication risks and subsequent long-term care.

**Citation:** Shengir M, Elgara M, Sebastiani G. Metabolic and cardiovascular complications after virological cure in hepatitis C: What awaits beyond. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; 27(17): 1959-1972
**URL:** https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v27/i17/1959.htm
**DOI:** https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v27.i17.1959

## INTRODUCTION

Chronic hepatitis C (CHC) infection caused by hepatitis C virus (HCV) is associated with substantial morbidity and mortality globally, affecting approximately 2.5% individuals (equivalent to 177.5 million) worldwide[1]. It is currently one of the leading etiologies for hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) and decompensated cirrhosis requiring liver transplantation in Western countries[2,3]. The primary goal of treatment is to achieve the cure of the infection or sustained virologic response (SVR), defined as undetectable HCV RNA in the serum 12 or 24 wk after the end of treatment[4,5]. Since the introduction of first-generation direct acting antiviral agents (DAAs), boceprevir and telaprevir, in 2011, there has been a rapidly expanding population of CHC patients achieving SVR[6]. Viral eradication has been associated with marked reduction in the risk of end-stage liver disease, need for liver transplantation, and decrease in both liver-related and overall mortality[7].

Although HCV is a hepatotropic virus, for two decades several studies described the association between HCV and a heterogeneous array of extrahepatic manifestations (EHMs)[8-10] (Figure 1). Yet, the mechanism by which the virus evokes the systemic diseases remain to be elucidated. Endocrine-metabolic alterations, which are most frequently found in CHC patients, are thought to be caused by direct and indirect effects of disturbing host lipid and glucose metabolism[11,12], as well as alteration in adipocytokines released from adipose tissue[13,14]. Likewise, CHC infection has also been identified as an independent predictor for cardiovascular events such as carotid artery atherosclerosis, stroke, myocardial ischemia and heart failure, all of which are linked with poor outcomes[12]. Nevertheless, the impact on cardiovascular disease (CVD) is not fully established[15]. In clinical settings, the prognosis of CHC is not only depending on liver-related outcomes but also on extrahepatic sequelae.

Recently, much attention is drawn toward EHMs that occur following viral cure. Nonetheless, whether the development of such manifestations is a long-term consequence of the viral infection itself or an effect of HCV medications remains unknown. In this context, various reports have shown ample evidence for high prevalence of CVD and metabolic alterations such as dyslipidemia, hepatic steatosis, insulin resistance (IR), obesity and diabetes mellitus (DM)[16-19] (Table 1). While the impact of CHC infection on liver-related outcomes pre- and post-treatment has been well studied, extrahepatic sequelae, especially in post-SVR setting, are less well known. This review article highlights the current knowledge regarding the effect of SVR on EHMs.

**Table 1 Summary of studies investigated cardiometabolic manifestations of chronic hepatitis C after viral cure**

| Ref. | Antiviral regimen | The studied HCV-associated cardiometabolic manifestations | Post SVR outcomes |
|---|---|---|---|
| Fernández-Rodríguez *et al*[28], 2006 | NA[1] | Lipid disturbances. Hepatic steatosis | Hypercholesterolemia in patients with genotype 3 |
| | | | No change in genotype 3 non-responders and in patients with genotype 1 regardless of response |
| | | | Decrease in steatosis |
| Giordanino *et al*[71], 2008 | IFN monotherapy or Peg-IFN + RBV (24-48 wk) | Glucose abnormalities (IFG or DM) | No significant reduction in the risk of glucose intolerance in long-term responders and non-responders |
| Arase *et al*[70], 2009 | IFN monotherapy or IFN + RBV[2] | DM | Decreased incidence of DM in sustained responders. However, its development is associated with advanced liver disease |
| Corey *et al*[18], 2009 | NA[1] | Lipid abnormalities | Increased LDL and total cholesterol from baseline compared to non-responders |
| | | Risk of CVD | Increased CVD risk profile |
| Conjeevaram *et al*[67], 2011 | Peg-IFN + RBV (24-48 wk) | IR | Decreased IR |
| | | Obesity | Decreased in BMI |
| Kuo *et al*[27], 2011 | Peg-IFN + RBV (24 wk) | Change in serum lipid | Total cholesterol and triglycerides levels significantly increased |
| | | | No evident change in lipid profile occurred in non-SVR group |
| Aghemo *et al*[68], 2012 | Peg-IFN + RBV[2] | IR in non-diabetic CHC patients | Baseline and posttreatment HOMA-IR values were similar in SVR patients |
| | | | Significant increase in HOMA-IR was noted in non-SVR patients |
| Clark *et al*[25], 2012 | Albinterferon α-2b + RBV | Lipid abnormalities in genotypes 2,3 | Hypercholesterolemia |
| Thompson *et al*[66], 2012 | Albinterferon α-2b *vs* Peg-IFN + RBV (24-48 wk) | IR in genotypes 1,2,3 | Reduced IR in genotype 1 responders |
| | | | No change in genotype 1 non-responders and genotype 2 and 3 regardless of the response |
| Chang *et al*[29], 2014 | eg-IFN + RBV (24/48 wk) | Lipids and IR in genotypes 2, 3 | Increased total cholesterol and triglycerides in sustained responders |
| | | | Decreased HOMA-IR in patients with SVR and baseline IR |
| | | | High HOMA-IR was found in patients without baseline IR (only in genotype 1) |
| Hsu *et al*[88], 2015 | Peg-IFN + RBV (16-48 wk) | Acute coronary syndrome and ischemic stroke | Improvement in both studied circulatory outcomes |
| Innes *et al*[89], 2015 | NA[1] | CVD | Reduced hazard and absolute risk for CVD |
| Meissner *et al*[24], 2015 | SOF + RBV (24 wk) | Lipid disturbances in genotype 1 | Increased LDL level and particle size and decreased triglycerides concentration and VLDL particle size irrespective to treatment response |
| | | | Increased intrahepatic lipid-related genes in sustained responders |
| Leone *et al*[72], 2016 | IFN-based regimen | DM and CVD | No significant risk reduction in DM and CVD in SVR group as opposed to non SVR |
| Yair-Sabag *et al*[39], 2016 | Peg-IFN + RBV (24-48 wk) | IFG and DM. Triglycerides. Hepatic steatosis | Lower IFG and DM, and higher triglycerides in sustained responders |
| | | | Improvement in hepatic steatosis |
| Chang *et al*[16], 2017 | NA[1] | Cardiovascular complications | An increased adipokine PAI-1 in SVR group, which accelerates cardiovascular risk, especially in vulnerable cases |
| Mahale *et al*[69], 2018 | IFN-based regimen[2] | DM and CVD | Antiviral therapy associated with lower risk of DM and stroke whereas no significant effect on CVD |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Nahon *et al*[90], 2017 | Peg-IFN + RBV (16-48 wk) or combination therapies[3] | CVD | Lower risk of CVD in SVR subjects in comparison to non SVR |
| Stine *et al*[74], 2017 | DAAs[2,3] | DM in genotypes 1, 2, 3 | Glycosylated hemoglobin was not affected in known diabetic patients<br>1/3 of patients required escalation of anti-diabetic therapy during antiviral treatment |
| Carvalho *et al*[11], 2018 | SOF + LDV ± RBV (group 1) *vs* Peg-IFN + RBV (group 2) | Lipid levels. Serum glucose. IR | While total cholesterol increased in both groups, triglycerides levels decreased in group 1 and increased in group 2<br>LDL elevated in group 1 and No change in group 2<br>No significant variation in serum glucose<br>Significant increase in HOMA-IR only in group 2 |
| Kawagishi *et al*[17], 2018 | DAAs[3] | Hepatic steatosis. Lipid abnormalities | Decrease in CAP and LDL in patients with high baseline values<br>Elevated sdLDL in patients who had dyslipidemia and hepatic steatosis at 24 wk |
| Li *et al*[73], 2018 | DAAs[4] | DM | Lower risk of DM in SVR patients than in treatment failure group |
| Noureddin *et al*[46], 2018 | DAAs[3] | Hepatic steatosis and fibrosis | High prevalence of fatty liver<br>Although fibrosis has been reduced in patients with and without steatosis compared to baseline, patients with steatosis continued to have clinically significant liver stiffness |
| Li *et al*[10], 2019 | IFN + RBV (48 wk) | Serum glucose level and IR | Reduced glucose level<br>Improved IR |
| Butt *et al*[87], 2019 | IFN + RBV[2,3].DAAs[2,3] | CVD | Lower incidence in treatment group, compared to controls<br>DAAs showed greater risk reduction than interferon-based regimen<br>SVR associated with decreased CVD risk |
| Abdo *et al*[75], 2020 | SOF + DCV (12-24 wk) | Glycemic status, IR, and lipid profile in CHC patients with DM | Improvement of glycemic state and HOMA-IR<br>Global worsening of lipid profile |
| Graf *et al*[45], 2020 | DAAs[3] | IR, lipid perturbations, body weight changes, and hepatic steatosis | Lower HOMA-IR compared to baseline<br>Higher total cholesterol, LDL, and HDL<br>Higher CAP relative to baseline<br>BMI did not significantly change over time |
| Huang *et al*[31], 2020 | DAAs[4] | Lipids and cardiovascular events | Increased total cholesterol and LDL<br>Higher cardio-cerebral diseases |

[1]No data available on antiviral therapy.
[2]Data on course of treatment is not available.
[3]Various regimens were used.
[4]No data available neither on types of direct acting antiviral agents nor on treatment duration. BMI: Body mass index; CAP: Controlled attenuation parameter; CHC: Chronic hepatitis C; CVD: Cardiovascular disease; DAAs: Direct acting antiviral agents; DCV: Daclatasvir; DM: Diabetes mellitus; HDL: High density lipoprotein cholesterol; HOMA-IR: Homeostatic model assessment of insulin resistance; IFG: Impaired fasting glucose; IFN: Interferon; IR: Insulin resistance; LDL: Low-density lipoprotein cholesterol; LDV: Ledipasvir; NA: Not available; PAI-1: Plasminogen activator inhibitor-1; Peg-IFN: Pegylated interferon; RBV: Ribavirin; sdLDL: Small-dense low-density lipoprotein; SOF: Sofosbuvir; SVR: Sustained virologic response; VLDL: Very low-density lipoprotein cholesterol; HCV: Hepatitis C virus.

## DYSLIPIDEMIA

It has been known that HCV possesses a mutual relationship with host lipids and lipoproteins metabolisms, which the virus uses for multiple key steps in its life cycle[20,21]. HCV circulates as a lipid-rich particle, utilizing lipoprotein cell receptors to gain entry into the hepatocyte[22,23]. Within hepatocytes, it influences three mechanisms in lipid metabolism: It upregulates lipid biosynthesis, impairs

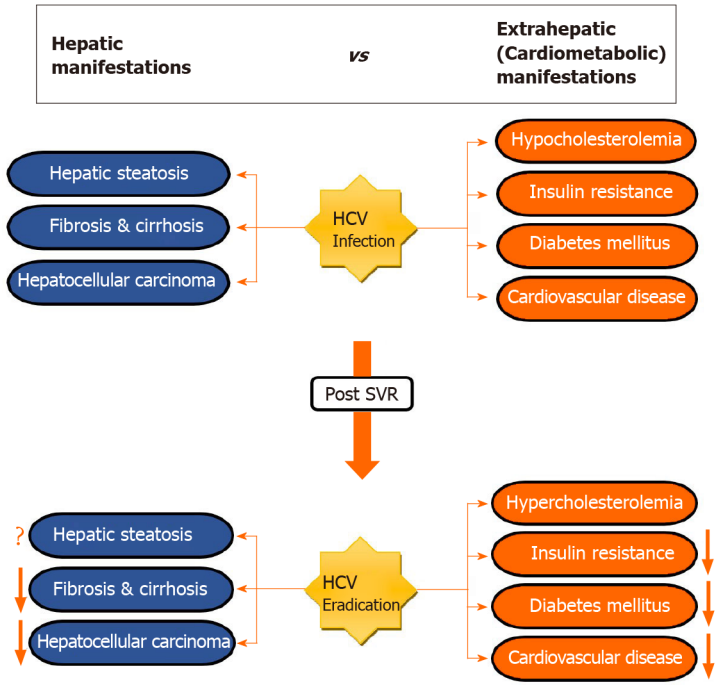



**Figure 1 Hepatic and extrahepatic (cardiometabolic) manifestations associated with hepatitis C virus infection and the effect of sustained virologic response on the cardiometabolic manifestations based on most of the evidence.** HCV: Hepatitis C virus; SVR: Sustained virologic response.

mitochondrial β-oxidation and thus lipid degradation, and reduces apolipoprotein exportation, in particular very low-density lipoprotein cholesterol (LDL), resulting in significant intracellular lipid accumulation and circulating hypocholesterolemia and hypolipoproteinemia[13].

Several studies have linked successful HCV eradication with rebound rise in lipid levels. Meissner *et al*[24], who investigated the influence of DAAs, sofosbuvir and ribavirin, on serum lipid profiles and intrahepatic lipid-related genes expression in patients with genotype 1 CHC, reported that serum LDL level and molecular size increased early in therapy, whereas triglycerides concentration and very low-density lipoprotein cholesterol (VLDL) particle size decreased concomitantly, irrespective of treatment outcome. This observation likely reflects a direct effect on lipid metabolism associated with the inhibition of HCV replication[24]. This notion was further supported in several reports. Clark *et al*[25], used cholesterol metabolites as an indicator to evaluate the impact of HCV on lipid metabolism. In this study, genotype 3 but not genotype 2 showed a selected interference with late cholesterol synthesis pathway, resulting in hypocholesterolemia. However, this interference was resolved after SVR. Another Japanese study that included 100 subjects showed early rebound (within 28 d) in LDL level in CHC patients who underwent interferon-free DAA treatment. However, the elevation was regimen-specific, more prominent in the group who received daclatasvir and asunaprevir for 24 wk than in those received ledipasvir and sofosbuvir for 12 wk[26]. In addition, many reports correlated the rebound in lipid profile with treatment response status[27-29]. This was clearly demonstrated by Corey *et al*[18], which conducted a 2 steps study to evaluate the relationship between CHC infection and its treatment with lipid levels. After confirming that HCV infection is associated with significantly lower LDL concentrations in the first step, they found that remarkable hyperlipidemia was developed in patients who achieved viral clearance, compared to non-responders or those who relapsed. In the same context, some studies have further investigated the role HCV genotype on post-SVR hypercholesterolemia. In a study that included 215 patients, Fernández-Rodríguez *et al*[28] observed that increased serum cholesterol levels were associated with genotype 3 in patients who achieved SVR. In contrast, un-changed serum cholesterol figures were noted in genotype 3 non-responders and genotype 1 regardless of response[28]. Although the reversal of both hepatic steatosis and hypolipidemia has been reported only in genotype 3 in this study, there is accumulating evidence demonstrating that the reversal of hypolipidemia is not HCV-genotype specific[29,30].

Many reports proposed that atherosclerotic CVD risk increases after successful eradication of HCV due to the unfavorable lipid profile, which is a result of reversed hypolipidemia, represented in high serum LDL and small dense LDL. The latter has greater atherogenic potential and is a better marker for prediction of CVD than LDL[31,32]. The important question at this point is whether these patients require lipid-lowering treatment. According to the National Cholesterol Education Program Adult Treatment Plan Guideline III, patients should be put on lipid lowering agents for: (1) an LDL >100 mg/dL, if they have coronary heart disease or its equivalents[1]; (2) an LDL >130 mg/dL, if they have two or more major coronary heart disease risk factors[2]; and (3) an LDL >190 mg/dL, with none or one major risk factor[33]. Corey and his colleagues have found that 13% of their studied cohort had post-SVR LDL levels requiring lipid lowering therapy as these patients had values > 130 mg/dL plus presence of two or more major coronary heart disease risk factors. Nonetheless, before antiviral therapy, none of these patients had LDL readings requiring medications. Post-treatment lipid profile deterioration may reach clinically meaningful level requiring the consideration for cholesterol lowering therapy.

## HEPATIC STEATOSIS

Hepatic steatosis is a frequent histological liver finding in patients with CHC[34]. Since HCV is known to hijack lipid metabolic pathways for virion maturation and secretion, several possible mechanisms of HCV-induced liver steatosis have been suggested. HCV induces lipogenesis by increasing intrahepatic fat milieu through sterol regulatory element binding protein 1c, which is a protein that overexpresses LDL receptors which in turn facilitates fatty acid uptake by hepatocytes, leading to higher intrahepatic fat content[35]. In contrast, HCV inhibits lipolysis by disturbing mitochondrial β-oxidation[36], either directly by the virus itself or indirectly *via* downregulation of the enzyme carnitine palmitoyltransferase-1, which regulates fatty acids oxidation[37,38]. These two mechanisms further potentiated by HCV-induced IR[39]. Moreover, HCV core protein suppresses the activity of microsomal triacylglycerol transfer protein, which is used for the assembly and secretion of VLDL, resulting in increased intracytoplasmic lipid droplets and therefore steatosis[40]. Miyoshi *et al*[41], who studied the role of HCV core protein in development of steatosis in HCV genotype 2, revealed that core protein activates the enzyme δ-9 desaturase, fatty acid metabolizing enzyme, and therefore leads to accumulation of triglycerides. This lipid metabolism disorder was also associated with mitochondrial dysfunction[41].

Hepatic steatosis is commonly reported among patients with HCV genotype 1 and genotype 3. Its occurrence in the latter has been correlated mainly to the previously mentioned mechanisms. Therefore, resolution of steatosis observed after successful viral eradication suggests a direct steatogenic pathway for HCV genotype 3[42]. This hypothesis was backed in a study of patients treated with interferon-based regimen, in which 91% of genotype 3 patients and only 43% of other genotypes have had their steatosis improved after viral cure[43]. Kumar *et al*[44], have also observed similar findings when steatosis was profoundly reduced in genotype 3 patients post-SVR, while no change irrespective of the treatment response occurred in genotype 1. Although development of fatty liver was associated with viral characteristics in genotype 3 (viral steatosis), the condition in genotype 1 corresponded to metabolic features such as glucose level and IR (metabolic steatosis). This observation suggests that in patients with genotype 1, factors other than the viral features play an essential role in the development of hepatic steatosis[28].

After achieving SVR with antiviral therapy, reversal of steatosis is the most common reported outcome, which was seen in several studies[17,27,28,39]. However, recent reviews showed contradictory findings[45,46]. In a prospective study that investigated the prevalence of hepatic steatosis and fibrosis in patients with CHC post-SVR, steatosis prevalence found to be 47.5%, almost as same as the pre-treatment figure (50%). Besides, overall average fibrosis score was reduced after viral clearance. Nevertheless, patients who had steatosis have maintained clinically significant fibrosis scores, compared to those without fatty liver[46]. In another study included 49 patients aimed to evaluate the impact of DAAs on glucose and lipid homeostasis, controlled attenuation parameter values were markedly increased at the end of follow up compared to baseline. More importantly, this finding was independent of weight gain, since no change in body mass index (BMI) was observed over time[45].

Patients with CHC and viral-induced hepatic steatosis have been shown to have worse hepatic outcomes in pre-treatment setting[47]. Nonetheless, a recent study depicts that presence of post-SVR steatosis does not carry a better risk profile[48]. In this study, which aimed to assess the effect of steatosis on HCC and all-cause mortality in CHC patients post-SVR, presence of fatty liver was associated with a considerable 7.5-fold increase in both primary endpoints[48]. Furthermore, there is also a substantially higher risk of EHMs, particularly CVD, after amelioration of steatosis post-SVR[17]. These findings combined highlight the importance of hepatic steatosis as a major risk factor for poor outcome and warrant a special consideration of screening and follow-up in this population.

## INSULIN RESISTANCE & DIABETES MELLITUS

Based on multiple epidemiological studies, metabolic alterations such as IR, DM, and metabolic syndrome are frequent comorbidities in patients with CHC, as opposed to controls[19,49]. The rationale behind this association is still not completely understood but it could be attributed to the presence of liver disease, metabolic characteristics such as obesity, or the inflammatory process induced by HCV infection. HCV has been found to modulate insulin signaling pathways although the precise molecular mechanism of HCV-mediated IR is not fully understood. In two mouse-model experimental studies, HCV core protein was found to play a major role in the development of IR[50,51] particularly through *PA28γ* gene-dependent pathway[50]. HCV genotypes 1, 2 and 4[52] and genotypes 1 and 4[53] were noticed to have higher IR compared to genotype 3[52] and genotypes 2 and 3[53], respectively. Oxidative stress and proinflammatory cytokines were also found to play a role in *de novo* IR[54,55]. The disruption in glucose and lipid metabolism associated with IR[56] leads to evolution of hepatic steatosis and development of DM. Among subjects with chronic liver disease, the prevalence of DM in CHC patients prior to treatment varies from 13.6% to 67.4%, which is higher than that reported in individuals with other etiologies, such as chronic hepatitis B[57]. Furthermore, a case-control study demonstrated that the presence of CHC was associated with an over 11-fold increase in risk of developing DM over a follow-up period of 9 years[58]. DM seems to have a bidirectional relationship with HCV, in which the latter causes IR while DM is linked with more aggressive course of HCV-related outcomes such as progressive fibrosis[49,59,60], and increased risk of cirrhosis and HCC[61,62]. All the above conditions make patients with CHC more susceptible to have metabolic syndrome[63]. However, due to the hypolipidemia caused by HCV infection[64], which does not fit the traditional diagnostic criteria, a peculiar type of metabolic syndrome known as hepatitis C-associated dysmetabolic syndrome has been defined[63,65].

There is frequent evidence that have showed a beneficial effect of antiviral therapy using interferon-based regimens on IR in long-term HCV responders. Thompson *et al*[66], who studied 1038 non-diabetic patients, concluded that IR was substantially decreased in HCV-genotype 1 responders but not in genotype 1 non-responders or those with genotype 2 or 3 irrespective of treatment outcome. This finding was independent of any changes in BMI. Similar findings were also reported in a prospective study[29]. In the Virahep-C, a prospective multicenter study, an improvement in the homeostatic model assessment for IR (HOMA-IR) was observed 24 wk after treatment completion among HCV genotype 1 patients who had IR prior to therapy[67]. Nonetheless, Aghemo *et al*[68], who enrolled 384 non-diabetic patients with HCV genotypes 1 and 4 failed to display any differences in HOMA-IR values between baseline and 24 wk post-SVR. All the above findings indicate that longer follow-up may be needed to better assess glucose metabolism disturbances after HCV viral clearance with interferon-based regimens, especially in HCV genotype 1 patients. Paradoxically, in a head-to-head comparison of 178 subjects with HCV genotype 1 and 4 between interferon-based antiviral therapy and DAAs to assess metabolic outcomes, there was a significant elevation in HOMA-IR in those who have taken interferon-based regimen[11].

In addition to its effect on IR, antiviral therapy has been thought to decrease incidence of post-SVR hyperglycemia and DM. Interferon-based regimens have been studied extensively and they are usually associated with a decreased incidence of DM in non-diabetic patients with CHC after elimination of HCV[69]. However, several studies have emphasized the beneficial role of attaining SVR, which lessens glucose metabolism abnormalities induced by HCV infection[10,39,70]. Other studies could not detect any significant differences between treatment responders and non-

responders[71,72]. Despite these conflicting results, a meta-analysis that included seven studies aiming to investigate the correlation between HCV clearance *via* interferon-based regimens and the incidence of hyperglycemia demonstrated that SVR is associated with lower risk of hyperglycemia [odds ratio 0.49, 95% confidence interval (CI): 0.42-0.58]. Heterogeneity between studies was minimal, indicating a reliable result. On the other hand, the use of DAAs for viral eradication was not investigated thoroughly. Studies on incidence of DM in non-diabetic patients demonstrated less glucose disturbance in long-term responders[10,73]. In a retrospective study conducted in United States, 5127 non-diabetic subjects with HCV were enrolled to investigate how the response to HCV treatment impacted the risk of subsequent DM. The authors found that those who achieved SVR had markedly lower risk of developing DM, compared to those with treatment failure[10]. Two studies investigated the effect of DAAs on previously known diabetic patients[74,75]. One illustrated an improvement in glycemic status after viral cure while in the other there was no difference in glycosylated hemoglobin between pretreatment and post-treatment values. Importantly, one-third of patients in the latter study required escalation of anti-diabetic therapy during antiviral treatment. Further long-term prospective studies are still needed to resolve the current dilemma of changes on IR related to antiviral treatment.

## CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE

CHC infection has been linked to an array of EHMs, including an increased risk of CVD[76-79]. Several direct and indirect HCV pro-atherogenic mechanisms have been postulated. HCV is assumed to play a direct role in the development of arterial atherosclerosis by inducing endothelial dysfunction, likely through interleukin 1β[80], a pro-inflammatory cytokine. Likewise, it has been observed that HCV has the ability to live and replicate inside carotid plaques[81], which further supports an immediate pro-atherogenic effect. Moreover, chronic inflammation and oxidative stress that are caused by structural and non-structural viral proteins have also been shown to trigger plaque formation[80]. In a multicenter Italian study that evaluated the effect of attaining SVR using DAAs on subclinical carotid arteriosclerosis compared to an untreated cohort, ultrasonographic carotid measurements showed a significant reduction in mean carotid intima-media thickness in treatment group at the end of follow-up compared to baseline (from 0.94 mm to 0.81 mm, $P < 0.001$). No significant changes in the intima-media thickness were found in the control group. The BMI of these patients did not change during follow-up, while a significant increase in serum cholesterol levels was observed. The study concluded that eradication of HCV by DAAs led to an amelioration in carotid atherosclerosis, particularly intima-media thickness. Furthermore, HCV can also induce atherosclerosis indirectly since it is associated with an increased risk of metabolic syndrome components, including IR, DM, and hepatic steatosis, which are well-known predisposing factors for CVD[82-84]. On the other hand, some studies have failed to show any significant association between HCV and cardiovascular events[85,86].

Several studies have shown that either antiviral therapy or the attainment of SVR minimize CVD risk[87-90]. However, the results are rather controversial. Butt *et al*[87], who studied the effect of antiviral therapy, interferon- or DAAs-based regimens, on CVD risk found that the incidence of CVD in treatment arm was 7.2% in comparison with 13% in control group, regardless of the antiviral regimen. Treatment with DAAs was superior to interferon-based regimen, with a hazard ratio (HR) of 0.57 (95%CI: 0.51-0.65) and HR 0.78 (95%CI: 0.71-0.85), respectively. SVR was also associated with lower risk of incident CVD events HR 0.87 (95%CI: 0.77-0.98). In a nation-wide cohort study on Taiwanese residents with HCV who had received interferon-based regimens compared to an untreated cohort, antiviral therapy was associated with lower risks of acute coronary syndrome and ischemic stroke, with HR 0.77 (95%CI: 0.62-0.97) and HR 0.62 (95%CI: 0.46-0.83), respectively. This risk reduction was not observed in subject who had insufficient treatment course (< 16 wk)[88]. Further supporting data was observed in a study comprising 3385 HCV patients, which found that SVR was associated with a lower relative hazard reduction and absolute risk reduction for CVD[89]. However, some epidemiological studies have found contradictory findings. A large retrospective cohort study which enrolled 160875 subjects was aimed to investigate the impact of successful viral eradication on a variety of EHMs. In terms of CVD risk, the study concluded that SVR was associated with a diminished risk for stroke HR 0.84 (95%CI: 0.74-0.94), but not for CVD aHR 1.12 (95%CI: 0.81-1.56), when

compared to the untreated cohort[69]. From the same perspective, a negative result was also reported by Leone *et al*[72], who studied the influence of SVR on EHMs. The researchers did not find any significant cardiovascular risk reduction in SVR group compared to non-SVR, with HR 1.14 (95%CI: 0.57-2.3). Despite disparities in the findings across individual studies, a meta-analysis including 53841 patients demonstrated that SVR significantly reduces CVD risk, with a pooled of HR 0.76 (95%CI: 0.61-0.94)[91].

Apart from the direct treatment effect on CVD risk, therapeutic changes on other EHMs may also play role in the development of atherosclerotic events. Deteriorated lipid profile after HCV clearance has been shown to predispose patients to an elevated risk of CVD[31]. In a study of 617 patients with a mean follow-up of 26.8 mo, Huang *et al*[31] investigated whether deterioration of lipid profile post-SVR increased the risk of cardio-cerebral disease. Five patients developed cardio-cerebrovascular events (3 CVD and 2 cerebrovascular disease) over 1376 person-years. An LDL surge >40% was found to be the only predictor of these vascular events, with a HR of 15.44 (95%CI: 1.73-138.20)[31]. Evidence on risk of CVD in CHC pre- or post-treatment remains contro-versial. Nonetheless, most of the literature indicates that achieving SVR *via* antiviral therapy is associated with a significant risk reduction.

## CONCLUSION

EHMs including cardiometabolic conditions are commonly seen among patients with CHC infection. Data on these conditions after elimination of HCV is inconsistent. However, the predominant evidence in the literature suggests that viral clearance using antiviral therapy leads to deterioration in lipid profile, reduction in the incidence of metabolic alteration such as IR, DM, and hepatic steatosis, and improvement in CVD risk. To determine more robust level of association between SVR and EHMs and to understand the exact mechanisms of how antiviral therapies act on these EHMs, large prospective studies with long-term follow-up are needed.

## REFERENCES


1 **Petruzziello A**, Marigliano S, Loquercio G, Cozzolino A, Cacciapuoti C. Global epidemiology of hepatitis C virus infection: An up-date of the distribution and circulation of hepatitis C virus genotypes. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; **22**: 7824-7840 [PMID: 27678366 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i34.7824]

2 **Perz JF**, Armstrong GL, Farrington LA, Hutin YJ, Bell BP. The contributions of hepatitis B virus and hepatitis C virus infections to cirrhosis and primary liver cancer worldwide. *J Hepatol* 2006; **45**: 529-538 [PMID: 16879891 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2006.05.013]

3 **Chayama K**, Takahashi S, Toyota J, Karino Y, Ikeda K, Ishikawa H, Watanabe H, McPhee F, Hughes E, Kumada H. Dual therapy with the nonstructural protein 5A inhibitor, daclatasvir, and the nonstructural protein 3 protease inhibitor, asunaprevir, in hepatitis C virus genotype 1b-infected null responders. *Hepatology* 2012; **55**: 742-748 [PMID: 21987462 DOI: 10.1002/hep.24724]

4 **Osinubi A**, Harris AM, Vellozzi C, Lom J, Miller L, Millman AJ. Evaluation of the Performance of Algorithms That Use Serial Hepatitis C RNA Tests to Predict Treatment Initiation and Sustained Virological Response Among Patients Infected With Hepatitis C Virus. *Am J Epidemiol* 2019; **188**: 555-561 [PMID: 30535062 DOI: 10.1093/aje/kwy270]

5 **Swain MG**, Lai MY, Shiffman ML, Cooksley WG, Zeuzem S, Dieterich DT, Abergel A, Pessôa MG, Lin A, Tietz A, Connell EV, Diago M. A sustained virologic response is durable in patients with chronic hepatitis C treated with peginterferon alfa-2a and ribavirin. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **139**: 1593-1601 [PMID: 20637202 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2010.07.009]

6 **Sáez-González E**, Vinaixa C, San Juan F, Hontangas V, Benlloch S, Aguilera V, Rubín A, García M, Prieto M, López-Andujar R, Berenguer M. Impact of hepatitis C virus (HCV) antiviral treatment on the need for liver transplantation (LT). *Liver Int* 2018; **38**: 1022-1027 [PMID: 29105320 DOI: 10.1111/liv.13618]

7 **Durand F**, Francoz C. The future of liver transplantation for viral hepatitis. *Liver Int* 2017; **37** Suppl 1: 130-135 [PMID: 28052618 DOI: 10.1111/liv.13310]

8 **Sherman AC**, Sherman KE. Extrahepatic manifestations of hepatitis C infection: navigating CHASM. *Curr HIV/AIDS Rep* 2015; **12**: 353-361 [PMID: 26208812 DOI: 10.1007/s11904-015-0274-8]

9 **Wu ZY**, Li JR, Huang MH, Cheng JJ, Li H, Chen JH, Lv XQ, Peng ZG, Jiang JD. Internal driving factors leading to extrahepatic manifestation of the hepatitis C virus infection. *Int J Mol Med* 2017; **40**: 1792-1802 [PMID: 29039494 DOI: 10.3892/ijmm.2017.3175]

10 **Li Y**, Wang X, Yu G, Sun H, Lv J, Chi X, Wu R, Gao X, Niu J. The association of hepatitis c virus

infection status with serum glucose levels. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2019; **19**: 86 [PMID: 31195990 DOI: 10.1186/s12876-019-1003-3]

11 **Carvalho JR**, Velosa J, Serejo F. Lipids, glucose and iron metabolic alterations in chronic hepatitis C after viral eradication - comparison of the new direct-acting antiviral agents with the old regimens. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2018; **53**: 857-863 [PMID: 29779403 DOI: 10.1080/00365521.2018.1473486]

12 **Flores-Chávez A**, Carrion JA, Forns X, Ramos-Casals M. Extrahepatic manifestations associated with Chronic Hepatitis C Virus Infection. *Rev Esp Sanid Penit* 2017; **19**: 87-97 [PMID: 29364334 DOI: 10.4321/S1575-06202017000300004]

13 **Chang ML**. Metabolic alterations and hepatitis C: From bench to bedside. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; **22**: 1461-1476 [PMID: 26819514 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i4.1461]

14 **Chang ML**, Hsu CM, Lin CH, Lin CY, Kuo CJ, Huang SW, Chen CW, Cheng HT, Yeh CT, Chiu CT. The Evolving Interplay among Abundant Adipokines in Patients with Hepatitis C during Viral Clearance. *Nutrients* 2017; **9** [PMID: 28574439 DOI: 10.3390/nu9060570]

15 **Forde KA**, Haynes K, Troxel AB, Trooskin S, Osterman MT, Kimmel SE, Lewis JD, Lo Re V 3rd. Risk of myocardial infarction associated with chronic hepatitis C virus infection: a population-based cohort study. *J Viral Hepat* 2012; **19**: 271-277 [PMID: 22404725 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2011.01545.x]

16 **Chang ML**, Lin YS, Pao LH, Huang HC, Chiu CT. Link between plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 and cardiovascular risk in chronic hepatitis C after viral clearance. *Sci Rep* 2017; **7**: 42503 [PMID: 28211910 DOI: 10.1038/srep42503]

17 **Kawagishi N**, Suda G, Nakamura A, Kimura M, Maehara O, Suzuki K, Ohara M, Izumi T, Umemura M, Nakai M, Sho T, Natsuizaka M, Morikawa K, Ogawa K, Kudo Y, Nishida M, Miyoshi H, Sakamoto N. Liver steatosis and dyslipidemia after HCV eradication by direct acting antiviral agents are synergistic risks of atherosclerosis. *PLoS One* 2018; **13**: e0209615 [PMID: 30576386 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0209615]

18 **Corey KE**, Kane E, Munroe C, Barlow LL, Zheng H, Chung RT. Hepatitis C virus infection and its clearance alter circulating lipids: implications for long-term follow-up. *Hepatology* 2009; **50**: 1030-1037 [PMID: 19787818 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23219]

19 **Mostafa A**, Mohamed MK, Saeed M, Hasan A, Fontanet A, Godsland I, Coady E, Esmat G, El-Hoseiny M, Abdul-Hamid M, Hughes A, Chaturvedi N. Hepatitis C infection and clearance: impact on atherosclerosis and cardiometabolic risk factors. *Gut* 2010; **59**: 1135-1140 [PMID: 20584782 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2009.202317]

20 **Wakita T**, Pietschmann T, Kato T, Date T, Miyamoto M, Zhao Z, Murthy K, Habermann A, Kräusslich HG, Mizokami M, Bartenschlager R, Liang TJ. Production of infectious hepatitis C virus in tissue culture from a cloned viral genome. *Nat Med* 2005; **11**: 791-796 [PMID: 15951748 DOI: 10.1038/nm1268]

21 **Lindenbach BD**. Measuring HCV infectivity produced in cell culture and in vivo. *Methods Mol Biol* 2009; **510**: 329-336 [PMID: 19009272 DOI: 10.1007/978-1-59745-394-3_24]

22 **Aizawa Y**, Seki N, Nagano T, Abe H. Chronic hepatitis C virus infection and lipoprotein metabolism. *World J Gastroenterol* 2015; **21**: 10299-10313 [PMID: 26420957 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v21.i36.10299]

23 **Ploss A**, Dubuisson J. New advances in the molecular biology of hepatitis C virus infection: towards the identification of new treatment targets. *Gut* 2012; **61** Suppl 1: i25-i35 [PMID: 22504917 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2012-302048]

24 **Meissner EG**, Lee YJ, Osinusi A, Sims Z, Qin J, Sturdevant D, McHutchison J, Subramanian M, Sampson M, Naggie S, Patel K, Remaley AT, Masur H, Kottilil S. Effect of sofosbuvir and ribavirin treatment on peripheral and hepatic lipid metabolism in chronic hepatitis C virus, genotype 1-infected patients. *Hepatology* 2015; **61**: 790-801 [PMID: 25203718 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27424]

25 **Clark PJ**, Thompson AJ, Vock DM, Kratz LE, Tolun AA, Muir AJ, McHutchison JG, Subramanian M, Millington DM, Kelley RI, Patel K. Hepatitis C virus selectively perturbs the distal cholesterol synthesis pathway in a genotype-specific manner. *Hepatology* 2012; **56**: 49-56 [PMID: 22318926 DOI: 10.1002/hep.25631]

26 **Hashimoto S**, Yatsuhashi H, Abiru S, Yamasaki K, Komori A, Nagaoka S, Saeki A, Uchida S, Bekki S, Kugiyama Y, Nagata K, Nakamura M, Migita K, Nakao K. Rapid Increase in Serum Low-Density Lipoprotein Cholesterol Concentration during Hepatitis C Interferon-Free Treatment. *PLoS One* 2016; **11**: e0163644 [PMID: 27680885 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0163644]

27 **Kuo YH**, Chuang TW, Hung CH, Chen CH, Wang JH, Hu TH, Lu SN, Lee CM. Reversal of hypolipidemia in chronic hepatitis C patients after successful antiviral therapy. *J Formos Med Assoc* 2011; **110**: 363-371 [PMID: 21741004 DOI: 10.1016/S0929-6646(11)60054-5]

28 **Fernández-Rodríguez CM**, López-Serrano P, Alonso S, Gutiérrez ML, Lledó JL, Pérez-Calle JL, Temiño R, Cacho G, Nevado M, Casas ML, Gasalla JM, Bonet B. Long-term reversal of hypocholesterolaemia in patients with chronic hepatitis C is related to sustained viral response and viral genotype. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2006; **24**: 507-512 [PMID: 16886916 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2006.03000.x]

29 **Chang ML**, Tsou YK, Hu TH, Lin CH, Lin WR, Sung CM, Chen TH, Cheng ML, Chang KC, Chiu CT, Yeh CT, Pang JH, Shiao MS. Distinct patterns of the lipid alterations between genotype 1 and 2 chronic hepatitis C patients after viral clearance. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e104783 [PMID: 25122116 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0104783]

30 **Ramcharran D**, Wahed AS, Conjeevaram HS, Evans RW, Wang T, Belle SH, Yee LJ; Virahep-C Study Group. Associations between serum lipids and hepatitis C antiviral treatment efficacy.

*Hepatology* 2010; **52**: 854-863 [PMID: 20690192 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23796]

31 **Huang CF**, Dai CY, Yeh ML, Huang CI, Lee HC, Lai WT, Liang PC, Lin YH, Hsieh MY, Hou NJ, Lin ZY, Chen SC, Huang JF, Chuang WL, Yu ML. Cure or curd: Modification of lipid profiles and cardio-cerebrovascular events after hepatitis C virus eradication. *Kaohsiung J Med Sci* 2020; **36**: 920-928 [PMID: 32643842 DOI: 10.1002/kjm2.12275]

32 **Hoogeveen RC**, Gaubatz JW, Sun W, Dodge RC, Crosby JR, Jiang J, Couper D, Virani SS, Kathiresan S, Boerwinkle E, Ballantyne CM. Small dense low-density lipoprotein-cholesterol concentrations predict risk for coronary heart disease: the Atherosclerosis Risk In Communities (ARIC) study. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol* 2014; **34**: 1069-1077 [PMID: 24558110 DOI: 10.1161/ATVBAHA.114.303284]

33 **Grundy SM**, Cleeman JI, Merz CN, Brewer HB Jr, Clark LT, Hunninghake DB, Pasternak RC, Smith SC Jr, Stone NJ; National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute; American College of Cardiology Foundation; American Heart Association. Implications of recent clinical trials for the National Cholesterol Education Program Adult Treatment Panel III guidelines. *Circulation* 2004; **110**: 227-239 [PMID: 15249516 DOI: 10.1161/01.Cir.0000133317.49796.0e]

34 **Czaja AJ**, Carpenter HA, Santrach PJ, Moore SB. Host- and disease-specific factors affecting steatosis in chronic hepatitis C. *J Hepatol* 1998; **29**: 198-206 [PMID: 9722200 DOI: 10.1016/s0168-8278(98)80004-4]

35 **Syed GH**, Tang H, Khan M, Hassanein T, Liu J, Siddiqui A. Hepatitis C virus stimulates low-density lipoprotein receptor expression to facilitate viral propagation. *J Virol* 2014; **88**: 2519-2529 [PMID: 24352472 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02727-13]

36 **Korenaga M**, Wang T, Li Y, Showalter LA, Chan T, Sun J, Weinman SA. Hepatitis C virus core protein inhibits mitochondrial electron transport and increases reactive oxygen species (ROS) production. *J Biol Chem* 2005; **280**: 37481-37488 [PMID: 16150732 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M506412200]

37 **Cheng Y**, Dharancy S, Malapel M, Desreumaux P. Hepatitis C virus infection down-regulates the expression of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor alpha and carnitine palmitoyl acyl-CoA transferase 1A. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11**: 7591-7596 [PMID: 16437683 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v11.i48.7591]

38 **Tsukuda Y**, Suda G, Tsunematsu S, Ito J, Sato F, Terashita K, Nakai M, Sho T, Maehara O, Shimazaki T, Kimura M, Morikawa K, Natsuizaka M, Ogawa K, Ohnishi S, Chuma M, Sakamoto N. Anti-adipogenic and antiviral effects of l-carnitine on hepatitis C virus infection. *J Med Virol* 2017; **89**: 857-866 [PMID: 27664407 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.24692]

39 **Yair-Sabag S**, Nussinson E, Ben-Assuli O, Shibli F, Shahbari A, Zelber-Sagi S. Retrospective study of the associations between hepatitis C virus infection and metabolic factors. *World J Hepatol* 2016; **8**: 1269-1278 [PMID: 27843537 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v8.i30.1269]

40 **Perlemuter G**, Sabile A, Letteron P, Vona G, Topilco A, Chrétien Y, Koike K, Pessayre D, Chapman J, Barba G, Bréchot C. Hepatitis C virus core protein inhibits microsomal triglyceride transfer protein activity and very low density lipoprotein secretion: a model of viral-related steatosis. *FASEB J* 2002; **16**: 185-194 [PMID: 11818366 DOI: 10.1096/fj.01-0396com]

41 **Miyoshi H**, Moriya K, Tsutsumi T, Shinzawa S, Fujie H, Shintani Y, Fujinaga H, Goto K, Todoroki T, Suzuki T, Miyamura T, Matsuura Y, Yotsuyanagi H, Koike K. Pathogenesis of lipid metabolism disorder in hepatitis C: polyunsaturated fatty acids counteract lipid alterations induced by the core protein. *J Hepatol* 2011; **54**: 432-438 [PMID: 21093950 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2010.07.039]

42 **Lonardo A**, Adinolfi LE, Loria P, Carulli N, Ruggiero G, Day CP. Steatosis and hepatitis C virus: mechanisms and significance for hepatic and extrahepatic disease. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **126**: 586-597 [PMID: 14762795 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2003.11.020]

43 **Castéra L**, Hézode C, Roudot-Thoraval F, Lonjon I, Zafrani ES, Pawlotsky JM, Dhumeaux D. Effect of antiviral treatment on evolution of liver steatosis in patients with chronic hepatitis C: indirect evidence of a role of hepatitis C virus genotype 3 in steatosis. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 420-424 [PMID: 14960527 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2002.009936]

44 **Kumar D**, Farrell GC, Fung C, George J. Hepatitis C virus genotype 3 is cytopathic to hepatocytes: Reversal of hepatic steatosis after sustained therapeutic response. *Hepatology* 2002; **36**: 1266-1272 [PMID: 12395339 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2002.36370]

45 **Graf C**, Welzel T, Bogdanou D, Vermehren J, Beckel A, Bojunga J, Friedrich-Rust M, Dietz J, Kubesch A, Mondorf A, Fischer S, Lutz T, Stoffers P, Herrmann E, Poynard T, Zeuzem S, Dultz G, Mihm U. Hepatitis C Clearance by Direct-Acting Antivirals Impacts Glucose and Lipid Homeostasis. *J Clin Med* 2020; **9** [PMID: 32825571 DOI: 10.3390/jcm9092702]

46 **Noureddin M**, Wong MM, Todo T, Lu SC, Sanyal AJ, Mena EA. Fatty liver in hepatitis C patients post-sustained virological response with direct-acting antivirals. *World J Gastroenterol* 2018; **24**: 1269-1277 [PMID: 29568207 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v24.i11.1269]

47 **Leandro G**, Mangia A, Hui J, Fabris P, Rubbia-Brandt L, Colloredo G, Adinolfi LE, Asselah T, Jonsson JR, Smedile A, Terrault N, Pazienza V, Giordani MT, Giostra E, Sonzogni A, Ruggiero G, Marcellin P, Powell EE, George J, Negro F; HCV Meta-Analysis (on) Individual Patients' Data Study Group. Relationship between steatosis, inflammation, and fibrosis in chronic hepatitis C: a meta-analysis of individual patient data. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **130**: 1636-1642 [PMID: 16697727 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2006.03.014]

48 **Peleg N**, Issachar A, Sneh Arbib O, Cohen-Naftaly M, Harif Y, Oxtrud E, Braun M, Leshno M, Barsheshet A, Shlomai A. Liver steatosis is a major predictor of poor outcomes in chronic hepatitis C patients with sustained virological response. *J Viral Hepat* 2019; **26**: 1257-1265 [PMID: 31243878

DOI: 10.1111/jvh.13167]
49 **Moucari R**, Asselah T, Cazals-Hatem D, Voitot H, Boyer N, Ripault MP, Sobesky R, Martinot-Peignoux M, Maylin S, Nicolas-Chanoine MH, Paradis V, Vidaud M, Valla D, Bedossa P, Marcellin P. Insulin resistance in chronic hepatitis C: association with genotypes 1 and 4, serum HCV RNA level, and liver fibrosis. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **134**: 416-423 [PMID: 18164296 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2007.11.010]
50 **Miyamoto H**, Moriishi K, Moriya K, Murata S, Tanaka K, Suzuki T, Miyamura T, Koike K, Matsuura Y. Involvement of the PA28gamma-dependent pathway in insulin resistance induced by hepatitis C virus core protein. *J Virol* 2007; **81**: 1727-1735 [PMID: 17135326 DOI: 10.1128/jvi.01683-06]
51 **Shintani Y**, Fujie H, Miyoshi H, Tsutsumi T, Tsukamoto K, Kimura S, Moriya K, Koike K. Hepatitis C virus infection and diabetes: direct involvement of the virus in the development of insulin resistance. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **126**: 840-848 [PMID: 14988838 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2003.11.056]
52 **Mihm S**. Hepatitis C virus, diabetes and steatosis: clinical evidence in favor of a linkage and role of genotypes. *Dig Dis* 2010; **28**: 280-284 [PMID: 20460924 DOI: 10.1159/000282103]
53 **Sersté T**, Nkuize M, Moucari R, Van Gossum M, Reynders M, Scheen R, Vertongen F, Buset M, Mulkay JP, Marcellin P. Metabolic disorders associated with chronic hepatitis C: impact of genotype and ethnicity. *Liver Int* 2010; **30**: 1131-1136 [PMID: 20536721 DOI: 10.1111/j.1478-3231.2010.02291.x]
54 **Sheikh MY**, Choi J, Qadri I, Friedman JE, Sanyal AJ. Hepatitis C virus infection: molecular pathways to metabolic syndrome. *Hepatology* 2008; **47**: 2127-2133 [PMID: 18446789 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22269]
55 **Kawaguchi T**, Yoshida T, Harada M, Hisamoto T, Nagao Y, Ide T, Taniguchi E, Kumemura H, Hanada S, Maeyama M, Baba S, Koga H, Kumashiro R, Ueno T, Ogata H, Yoshimura A, Sata M. Hepatitis C virus down-regulates insulin receptor substrates 1 and 2 through up-regulation of suppressor of cytokine signaling 3. *Am J Pathol* 2004; **165**: 1499-1508 [PMID: 15509521 DOI: 10.1016/s0002-9440(10)63408-6]
56 **Kawaguchi Y**, Mizuta T. Interaction between hepatitis C virus and metabolic factors. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 2888-2901 [PMID: 24659880 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i11.2888]
57 **Serfaty L**. Metabolic Manifestations of Hepatitis C Virus: Diabetes Mellitus, Dyslipidemia. *Clin Liver Dis* 2017; **21**: 475-486 [PMID: 28689587 DOI: 10.1016/j.cld.2017.03.004]
58 **Mehta SH**, Brancati FL, Strathdee SA, Pankow JS, Netski D, Coresh J, Szklo M, Thomas DL. Hepatitis C virus infection and incident type 2 diabetes. *Hepatology* 2003; **38**: 50-56 [PMID: 12829986 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2003.50291]
59 **Hui JM**, Sud A, Farrell GC, Bandara P, Byth K, Kench JG, McCaughan GW, George J. Insulin resistance is associated with chronic hepatitis C virus infection and fibrosis progression [corrected]. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **125**: 1695-1704 [PMID: 14724822 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2003.08.032]
60 **Cua IH**, Hui JM, Bandara P, Kench JG, Farrell GC, McCaughan GW, George J. Insulin resistance and liver injury in hepatitis C is not associated with virus-specific changes in adipocytokines. *Hepatology* 2007; **46**: 66-73 [PMID: 17596870 DOI: 10.1002/hep.21703]
61 **Veldt BJ**, Chen W, Heathcote EJ, Wedemeyer H, Reichen J, Hofmann WP, de Knegt RJ, Zeuzem S, Manns MP, Hansen BE, Schalm SW, Janssen HL. Increased risk of hepatocellular carcinoma among patients with hepatitis C cirrhosis and diabetes mellitus. *Hepatology* 2008; **47**: 1856-1862 [PMID: 18506898 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22251]
62 **Chen CL**, Yang HI, Yang WS, Liu CJ, Chen PJ, You SL, Wang LY, Sun CA, Lu SN, Chen DS, Chen CJ. Metabolic factors and risk of hepatocellular carcinoma by chronic hepatitis B/C infection: a follow-up study in Taiwan. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **135**: 111-121 [PMID: 18505690 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2008.03.073]
63 **Adinolfi LE**, Restivo L, Zampino R, Lonardo A, Loria P. Metabolic alterations and chronic hepatitis C: treatment strategies. *Expert Opin Pharmacother* 2011; **12**: 2215-2234 [PMID: 21883025 DOI: 10.1517/14656566.2011.597742]
64 **Negro F**. HCV infection and metabolic syndrome: which is the chicken and which is the egg? *Gastroenterology* 2012; **142**: 1288-1292 [PMID: 22537435 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2011.12.063]
65 **Adinolfi LE**, Restivo L, Marrone A. The predictive value of steatosis in hepatitis C virus infection. *Expert Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2013; **7**: 205-213 [PMID: 23445230 DOI: 10.1586/egh.13.7]
66 **Thompson AJ**, Patel K, Chuang WL, Lawitz EJ, Rodriguez-Torres M, Rustgi VK, Flisiak R, Pianko S, Diago M, Arora S, Foster GR, Torbenson M, Benhamou Y, Nelson DR, Sulkowski MS, Zeuzem S, Pulkstenis E, Subramanian GM, McHutchison JG; ACHIEVE-1 and ACHIEVE-2/3 Study Teams. Viral clearance is associated with improved insulin resistance in genotype 1 chronic hepatitis C but not genotype 2/3. *Gut* 2012; **61**: 128-134 [PMID: 21873466 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2010.236158]
67 **Conjeevaram HS**, Wahed AS, Afdhal N, Howell CD, Everhart JE, Hoofnagle JH; Virahep-C Study Group. Changes in insulin sensitivity and body weight during and after peginterferon and ribavirin therapy for hepatitis C. *Gastroenterology* 2011; **140**: 469-477 [PMID: 21070775 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2010.11.002]
68 **Aghemo A**, Prati GM, Rumi MG, Soffredini R, D'Ambrosio R, Orsi E, De Nicola S, Degasperi E, Grancini V, Colombo M. Sustained virological response prevents the development of insulin resistance in patients with chronic hepatitis C. *Hepatology* 2012; **56**: 1681-1687 [PMID: 22619107 DOI: 10.1002/hep.25867]

69 **Mahale P**, Engels EA, Li R, Torres HA, Hwang LY, Brown EL, Kramer JR. The effect of sustained virological response on the risk of extrahepatic manifestations of hepatitis C virus infection. *Gut* 2018; **67**: 553-561 [PMID: 28634198 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2017-313983]

70 **Arase Y**, Suzuki F, Suzuki Y, Akuta N, Kobayashi M, Kawamura Y, Yatsuji H, Sezaki H, Hosaka T, Hirakawa M, Ikeda K, Kumada H. Sustained virological response reduces incidence of onset of type 2 diabetes in chronic hepatitis C. *Hepatology* 2009; **49**: 739-744 [PMID: 19127513 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22703]

71 **Giordanino C**, Bugianesi E, Smedile A, Ciancio A, Abate ML, Olivero A, Pellicano R, Cassader M, Gambino R, Bo S, Ciccone G, Rizzetto M, Saracco G. Incidence of type 2 diabetes mellitus and glucose abnormalities in patients with chronic hepatitis C infection by response to treatment: results of a cohort study. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2008; **103**: 2481-2487 [PMID: 18702647 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2008.02002.x]

72 **Leone S**, Prosperi M, Costarelli S, Nasta P, Maggiolo F, Di Giambenedetto S, Saracino A, Di Pietro M, Gori A. Incidence and predictors of cardiovascular disease, chronic kidney disease, and diabetes in HIV/HCV-coinfected patients who achieved sustained virological response. *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 2016; **35**: 1511-1520 [PMID: 27272121 DOI: 10.1007/s10096-016-2692-y]

73 **Li J**, Zhang T, Gordon SC, Rupp LB, Trudeau S, Holmberg SD, Moorman AC, Spradling PR, Teshale EH, Boscarino JA, Schmidt MA, Daida YG, Lu M; CHeCS Investigators. Impact of sustained virologic response on risk of type 2 diabetes among hepatitis C patients in the United States. *J Viral Hepat* 2018; **25**: 952-958 [PMID: 29478263 DOI: 10.1111/jvh.12887]

74 **Stine JG**, Wynter JA, Niccum B, Kelly V, Caldwell SH, Shah NL. Effect of Treatment with Direct Acting Antiviral on Glycemic Control in Patients with Diabetes Mellitus and Chronic Hepatitis C. *Ann Hepatol* 2017; **16**: 215-220 [PMID: 31153414 DOI: 10.5604/16652681.1231581]

75 **Abdo M**, Rabiee A, Abdellatif Z, Abdel Alem S, Moustafa A. Impact of sustained virological response on metabolic disorders in diabetic chronic hepatitis C virus patients after treatment with generic sofosbuvir and daclatasvir. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020 [PMID: 32804853 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0000000000001903]

76 **Ambrosino P**, Lupoli R, Di Minno A, Tarantino L, Spadarella G, Tarantino P, Nasto A, Celentano A, Di Minno MN. The risk of coronary artery disease and cerebrovascular disease in patients with hepatitis C: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Int J Cardiol* 2016; **221**: 746-754 [PMID: 27428315 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijcard.2016.06.337]

77 **Petta S**, Maida M, Macaluso FS, Barbara M, Licata A, Craxì A, Cammà C. Hepatitis C Virus Infection Is Associated With Increased Cardiovascular Mortality: A Meta-Analysis of Observational Studies. *Gastroenterology* 2016; **150**: 145-155. quiz e15-6 [PMID: 26386298 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2015.09.007]

78 **Vassalle C**, Masini S, Bianchi F, Zucchelli GC. Evidence for association between hepatitis C virus seropositivity and coronary artery disease. *Heart* 2004; **90**: 565-566 [PMID: 15084562 DOI: 10.1136/hrt.2003.018937]

79 **Sawayama Y**, Okada K, Maeda S, Ohnishi H, Furusyo N, Hayashi J. Both hepatitis C virus and Chlamydia pneumoniae infection are related to the progression of carotid atherosclerosis in patients undergoing lipid lowering therapy. *Fukuoka Igaku Zasshi* 2006; **97**: 245-255 [PMID: 17087362]

80 **Adinolfi LE**, Zampino R, Restivo L, Lonardo A, Guerrera B, Marrone A, Nascimbeni F, Florio A, Loria P. Chronic hepatitis C virus infection and atherosclerosis: clinical impact and mechanisms. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 3410-3417 [PMID: 24707124 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i13.3410]

81 **Boddi M**, Abbate R, Chellini B, Giusti B, Giannini C, Pratesi G, Rossi L, Pratesi C, Gensini GF, Paperetti L, Zignego AL. Hepatitis C virus RNA localization in human carotid plaques. *J Clin Virol* 2010; **47**: 72-75 [PMID: 19896417 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2009.10.005]

82 **Mehta SH**, Brancati FL, Sulkowski MS, Strathdee SA, Szklo M, Thomas DL. Prevalence of type 2 diabetes mellitus among persons with hepatitis C virus infection in the United States. *Ann Intern Med* 2000; **133**: 592-599 [PMID: 11033586 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-133-8-200010170-00009]

83 **Butt AA**, Fultz SL, Kwoh CK, Kelley D, Skanderson M, Justice AC. Risk of diabetes in HIV infected veterans pre- and post-HAART and the role of HCV coinfection. *Hepatology* 2004; **40**: 115-119 [PMID: 15239093 DOI: 10.1002/hep.20289]

84 **Shaheen M**, Echeverry D, Oblad MG, Montoya MI, Teklehaimanot S, Akhtar AJ. Hepatitis C, metabolic syndrome, and inflammatory markers: results from the Third National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey [NHANES III]. *Diabetes Res Clin Pract* 2007; **75**: 320-326 [PMID: 16919355 DOI: 10.1016/j.diabres.2006.07.008]

85 **Arcari CM**, Nelson KE, Netski DM, Nieto FJ, Gaydos CA. No association between hepatitis C virus seropositivity and acute myocardial infarction. *Clin Infect Dis* 2006; **43**: e53-e56 [PMID: 16912934 DOI: 10.1086/507031]

86 **Völzke H**, Schwahn C, Wolff B, Mentel R, Robinson DM, Kleine V, Felix SB, John U. Hepatitis B and C virus infection and the risk of atherosclerosis in a general population. *Atherosclerosis* 2004; **174**: 99-103 [PMID: 15135257 DOI: 10.1016/j.atherosclerosis.2004.01.010]

87 **Butt AA**, Yan P, Shuaib A, Abou-Samra AB, Shaikh OS, Freiberg MS. Direct-Acting Antiviral Therapy for HCV Infection Is Associated With a Reduced Risk of Cardiovascular Disease Events. *Gastroenterology* 2019; **156**: 987-996. e8 [PMID: 30445009 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2018.11.022]

88 **Hsu YC**, Ho HJ, Huang YT, Wang HH, Wu MS, Lin JT, Wu CY. Association between antiviral treatment and extrahepatic outcomes in patients with hepatitis C virus infection. *Gut* 2015; **64**: 495-503 [PMID: 25398770 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2014-308163]

89 **Innes HA**, McDonald SA, Dillon JF, Allen S, Hayes PC, Goldberg D, Mills PR, Barclay ST, Wilks D, Valerio H, Fox R, Bhattacharyya D, Kennedy N, Morris J, Fraser A, Stanley AJ, Bramley P, Hutchinson SJ. Toward a more complete understanding of the association between a hepatitis C sustained viral response and cause-specific outcomes. *Hepatology* 2015; **62**: 355-364 [PMID: 25716707 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27766]

90 **Nahon P**, Bourcier V, Layese R, Audureau E, Cagnot C, Marcellin P, Guyader D, Fontaine H, Larrey D, De Lédinghen V, Ouzan D, Zoulim F, Roulot D, Tran A, Bronowicki JP, Zarski JP, Leroy V, Riachi G, Calès P, Péron JM, Alric L, Bourlière M, Mathurin P, Dharancy S, Blanc JF, Abergel A, Serfaty L, Mallat A, Grangé JD, Attali P, Bacq Y, Wartelle C, Dao T, Benhamou Y, Pilette C, Silvain C, Christidis C, Capron D, Bernard-Chabert B, Zucman D, Di Martino V, Thibaut V, Salmon D, Ziol M, Sutton A, Pol S, Roudot-Thoraval F; ANRS CO12 CirVir Group. Eradication of Hepatitis C Virus Infection in Patients With Cirrhosis Reduces Risk of Liver and Non-Liver Complications. *Gastroenterology* 2017; **152**: 142-156. e2 [PMID: 27641509 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2016.09.009]

91 **Lapumnuaypol K**, Thongprayoon C, Wijarnpreecha K, Cheungpasitporn W. Impact of hepatitis C sustained viral response on cardiovascular diseases: a meta-analysis. *Hosp Pract (1995)* 2019; **47**: 105-110 [PMID: 31018721 DOI: 10.1080/21548331.2019.1612066]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

*World J Gastroenterol* 2021 May 7; 27(17): 1973-1992

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i17.1973

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Basic Study

# S100 calcium binding protein A6 and associated long noncoding ribonucleic acids as biomarkers in the diagnosis and staging of primary biliary cholangitis

Xi-Hua Dong, Di Dai, Zhi-Dong Yang, Xiao-Ou Yu, Hua Li, Hui Kang

**ORCID number:** Xi-Hua Dong 0000-0003-3213-1075; Di Dai 0000-0002-4224-9029; Zhi-Dong Yang 0000-0002-8375-7978; Xiao-Ou Yu 0000-0001-9174-8484; Hua Li 0000-0002-1430-3243; Hui Kang 0000-0002-1369-0966.

**Author contributions:** All authors participated in the design, interpretation of the studies, analysis of the data and review of the manuscript; Dong XH wrote the manuscript; Dong XH, Dai D and Yang ZD conducted the experiment; Yu XO and Li H collected data; Dong XH, Yu XO and Li H analyzed the data; the article was approved by Kang H; The final version of the article was approved by all authors.

**Supported by** National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 81871723.

**Institutional review board statement:** The study was reviewed and approved by the Ethics Committee of The First Affiliated Hospital of China Medical University (Approval No. 2018-89-2).

**Institutional animal care and use committee statement:** All animal experiments conformed to the

**Xi-Hua Dong, Di Dai, Zhi-Dong Yang, Xiao-Ou Yu, Hua Li, Hui Kang,** Department of Laboratory Medicine, The First Affiliated Hospital of China Medical University, Shenyang 110001, Liaoning Province, China

**Corresponding author:** Hui Kang, PhD, Professor, Department of Laboratory Medicine, The First Affiliated Hospital of China Medical University, No. 155 Nanjing North Street, Shenyang 110001, Liaoning Province, China. kanghui65@sina.com

## Abstract

### *BACKGROUND*

Primary biliary cholangitis (PBC) is a chronic and slowly progressing cholestatic disease, which causes damage to the small intrahepatic bile duct by immuno-regulation, and may lead to cholestasis, liver fibrosis, cirrhosis and, eventually, liver failure.

### *AIM*

To explore the potential diagnosis and staging value of plasma S100 calcium binding protein A6 (S100A6) messenger ribonucleic acid (mRNA), LINC00312, LINC00472, and LINC01257 in primary biliary cholangitis.

### *METHODS*

A total of 145 PBC patients and 110 healthy controls (HCs) were enrolled. Among them, 80 PBC patients and 60 HCs were used as the training set, and 65 PBC patients and 50 HCs were used as the validation set. The relative expression levels of plasma S100A6 mRNA, long noncoding ribonucleic acids LINC00312, LINC00472 and LINC01257 were analyzed using quantitative reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction. The bile duct ligation (BDL) mouse model was used to simulate PBC. Then double immunofluorescence was conducted to verify the overexpression of S100A6 protein in intrahepatic bile duct cells of BDL mice. Human intrahepatic biliary epithelial cells were treated with glycochenodeoxycholate to simulate the cholestatic environment of intrahepatic biliary epithelial cells in PBC.

### *RESULTS*

The expression of S100A6 protein in intrahepatic bile duct cells was up-regulated in the BDL mouse model compared with sham mice. The relative expression

internationally accepted principles for the care and use of laboratory animals [China Medical University Application for Laboratory Animal Welfare and Ethical review (201702 Edition)].

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** The authors declare that there are no conflicts of interest.

**Data sharing statement:** No additional data are available.

**ARRIVE guidelines statement:** The authors have read the ARRIVE guidelines, and the manuscript was prepared and revised according to the ARRIVE guidelines.



**Manuscript source:** Unsolicited manuscript

**Specialty type:** Gastroenterology and hepatology

**Country/Territory of origin:** China

**Peer-review report's scientific quality classification**

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): 0
Grade C (Good): C, C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

**Received:** December 7, 2020
**Peer-review started:** December 7, 2020
**First decision:** January 10, 2021
**Revised:** January 23, 2021
**Accepted:** March 10, 2021
**Article in press:** March 10, 2021

levels of plasma S100A6 mRNA, log10 LINC00472 and LINC01257 were up-regulated while LINC00312 was down-regulated in plasma of PBC patients compared with HCs (3.01 ± 1.04 *vs* 2.09 ± 0.87, $P < 0.0001$; 2.46 ± 1.03 *vs* 1.77 ± 0.84, $P < 0.0001$; 3.49 ± 1.64 *vs* 2.37 ± 0.96, $P < 0.0001$; 1.70 ± 0.33 *vs* 2.07 ± 0.53, $P < 0.0001$, respectively). The relative expression levels of S100A6 mRNA, LINC00472 and LINC01257 were up-regulated and LINC00312 was down-regulated in human intrahepatic biliary epithelial cells treated with glycochenodeoxycholate compared with control (2.97 ± 0.43 *vs* 1.09 ± 0.08, $P = 0.0018$; 2.70 ± 0.26 *vs* 1.10 ± 0.10, $P = 0.0006$; 2.23 ± 0.21 *vs* 1.10 ± 0.10, $P = 0.0011$; 1.20 ± 0.04 *vs* 3.03 ± 0.15, $P < 0.0001$, respectively). The mean expression of S100A6 in the advanced stage (III and IV) of PBC was up-regulated compared to that in HCs and the early stage (II) (3.38 ± 0.71 *vs* 2.09 ± 0.87, $P < 0.0001$; 3.38 ± 0.71 *vs* 2.57 ± 1.21, $P = 0.0003$, respectively); and in the early stage (II), it was higher than that in HCs (2.57 ± 1.21 *vs* 2.09 ± 0.87, $P = 0.03$). The mean expression of LINC00312 in the advanced stage was lower than that in the early stage and HCs (1.39 ± 0.29 *vs* 1.56 ± 0.33, $P = 0.01$; 1.39 ± 0.29 *vs* 2.07 ± 0.53, $P < 0.0001$, respectively); in addition, the mean expression of LINC00312 in the early stage was lower than that in HCs (1.56 ± 0.33 *vs* 2.07 ± 0.53, $P < 0.0001$). The mean expression of log10 LINC00472 in the advanced stage was higher than those in the early stage and HCs (2.99 ± 0.87 *vs* 1.81 ± 0.83, $P < 0.0001$; 2.99 ± 0.87 *vs* 1.77 ± 0.84, $P < 0.0001$, respectively). The mean expression of LINC01257 in both the early stage and advanced stage were up-regulated compared with HCs (3.88 ± 1.55 *vs* 2.37 ± 0.96, $P < 0.0001$; 3.57 ± 1.79 *vs* 2.37 ± 0.96, $P < 0.0001$, respectively). The areas under the curves (AUC) for S100A6, LINC00312, log10 LINC00472 and LINC01257 in PBC diagnosis were 0.759, 0.7292, 0.6942 and 0.7158, respectively. Furthermore, the AUC for these four genes in PBC staging were 0.666, 0.661, 0.839 and 0.5549, respectively. The expression levels of S100A6 mRNA, log10 LINC00472, and LINC01257 in plasma of PBC patients were decreased (2.35 ± 1.02 *vs* 3.06 ± 1.04, $P = 0.0018$; 1.99 ± 0.83 *vs* 2.33 ± 0.96, $P = 0.036$; 2.84 ± 0.92 *vs* 3.69 ± 1.54, $P = 0.0006$), and the expression level of LINC00312 was increased (1.95 ± 0.35 *vs* 1.73 ± 0.32, $P = 0.0007$) after treatment compared with before treatment using the paired *t*-test. Relative expression of S100A6 mRNA was positively correlated with log10 LINC00472 ($r = 0.683$, $P < 0.0001$); serum level of collagen type IV was positively correlated with the relative expression of log10 LINC00472 ($r = 0.482$, $P < 0.0001$); relative expression of S100A6 mRNA was positively correlated with the serum level of collagen type IV ($r = 0.732$, $P < 0.0001$). The AUC for the four biomarkers obtained in the validation set were close to the training set.

## *CONCLUSION*

These four genes may potentially act as novel biomarkers for the diagnosis of PBC. Moreover, LINC00472 acts as a potential biomarker for staging in PBC.

**Key Words:** S100 calcium binding protein A6; Long noncoding ribonucleic acids; Primary biliary cholangitis; Biomarker; Diagnosis; Staging



**Core Tip:** Primary biliary cholangitis (PBC) is an autoimmune liver disease which is characterized by intrahepatic cholestasis. The expression of S100 calcium binding protein A6 (S100A6) was up-regulated in a bile duct ligation mouse model compared with sham mice. The relative expression levels of plasma S100A6 messenger ribonucleic acid, LINC00472 and LINC01257 were up-regulated and the relative expression of LINC00312 was down-regulated in PBC patients. S100A6 and the three long noncoding ribonucleic acids can be used as biomarkers for PBC diagnosis and staging using receiver operating characteristic curve analysis. The results were further verified *in vitro* using intrahepatic biliary epithelial cells.

**Citation:** Dong XH, Dai D, Yang ZD, Yu XO, Li H, Kang H. S100 calcium binding protein A6 and associated long noncoding ribonucleic acids as biomarkers in the diagnosis and staging of

**Published online:** May 7, 2021

**P-Reviewer:** Hitomi Y
**S-Editor:** Zhang L
**L-Editor:** Webster JR
**P-Editor:** Liu JH

primary biliary cholangitis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; 27(17): 1973-1992
**URL:** https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v27/i17/1973.htm
**DOI:** https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v27.i17.1973

## INTRODUCTION

Primary biliary cholangitis (PBC) is a chronic and slowly progressing cholestatic disease, which causes damage to the small intrahepatic bile duct by immuno-regulation, and may lead to cholestasis, liver fibrosis, cirrhosis and, eventually, liver failure. The injury mechanism of intrahepatic biliary epithelial cells (iBECs) is the key to investigate the pathogenesis of PBC, but the accurate relationship between cholestasis and liver fibrosis is still indistinct. Currently, liver injury caused by cholestasis is mainly studied using liver cell lines or liver cancer cell lines treated with hydrophobic bile acids[1], while iBECs, the main target cells of PBC, have rarely been studied.

S100 calcium binding protein A6 (S100A6), also known as calcyclin, is a $Ca^{2+}$ binding protein and is a member of the S100 family. Its distribution in the body is specific to cells and tissues, having a high expression in normal epithelial cells and fibroblasts, as well as in some tumor cells[2]. As an intracellular protein, S100A6 is involved in the regulation of various cellular functions, such as proliferation, apoptosis, cytoskeletal dynamics, and cell response to different stressors. It is believed that S100A6 may be involved in the ubiquitination of beta catenin and play an important role in controlling the cell cycle process[3]. S100A6 can interact with the calcyclin-binding protein/Siah-1-interacting protein, which is a component of the ubiquitin ligase complex[4].

Long non-coding ribonucleic acids (lncRNAs) are involved in the regulation of a variety of intracellular processes[5]. As a structural component, lncRNAs can form a nucleic acid protein complex with gene regulatory transcription factors[6]. LncRNAs can also bind to specific transcription factors and change their cellular localization, thus affecting the transcription of target genes. Abnormal expression of lncRNAs in plasma has been shown to accurately predict several human diseases[7,8].

As a general rule, PBC diagnosis depends on titers of antimitochondrial antibody (AMA), serum level of alkaline phosphatase (ALP) and liver biopsy[9-11]. However, it is difficult to achieve an early diagnosis in AMA-negative patients, or to differentiate from other autoimmune liver diseases; thus, an invasive liver biopsy is required to make a definitive diagnosis, and this not only increases the financial burden of patients, but also brings mental and physical trauma to patients, often delaying the best time for treatment. However, after definite diagnosis, some patients fail to respond to ursodeoxycholic acid treatment and often have a poor prognosis or even progress to liver failure. The majority of PBC cases are diagnosed mostly at an advanced stage, so diagnosis and staging biomarkers of PBC are urgently needed.

In this study, we explored the value of S100A6 and its associated lncRNAs as potential biomarkers for the diagnosis and staging of PBC.

## MATERIALS AND METHODS

### *Study design*

This study included three phases (Figure 1): (1) The discovery phase, in which candidate genes and lncRNAs were searched using bioinformatics methods, and were then verified by a mouse model and cell model; (2) The training phase, in which quantitative reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction (qRT-PCR) was used to evaluate the relative expression levels of target gene and lncRNAs in the plasma of PBC patients and healthy controls, as well as to estimate their diagnosis and staging value; and (3) the validation phase, in which the diagnosis and staging value of target genes and lncRNAs was verified in another independent PBC cohort.

### *Identification of differentially expressed genes from the gene expression omnibus dataset*

The GSE29776 array dataset was analyzed on the gene expression omnibus (GEO) database (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/geo/)[12]. The dataset contains 6 mouse liver tissue samples, including 3 bile duct ligation (BDL) mouse samples and 3 sham mouse samples. "GEO2R" in the webpage was used to analyze the array database.

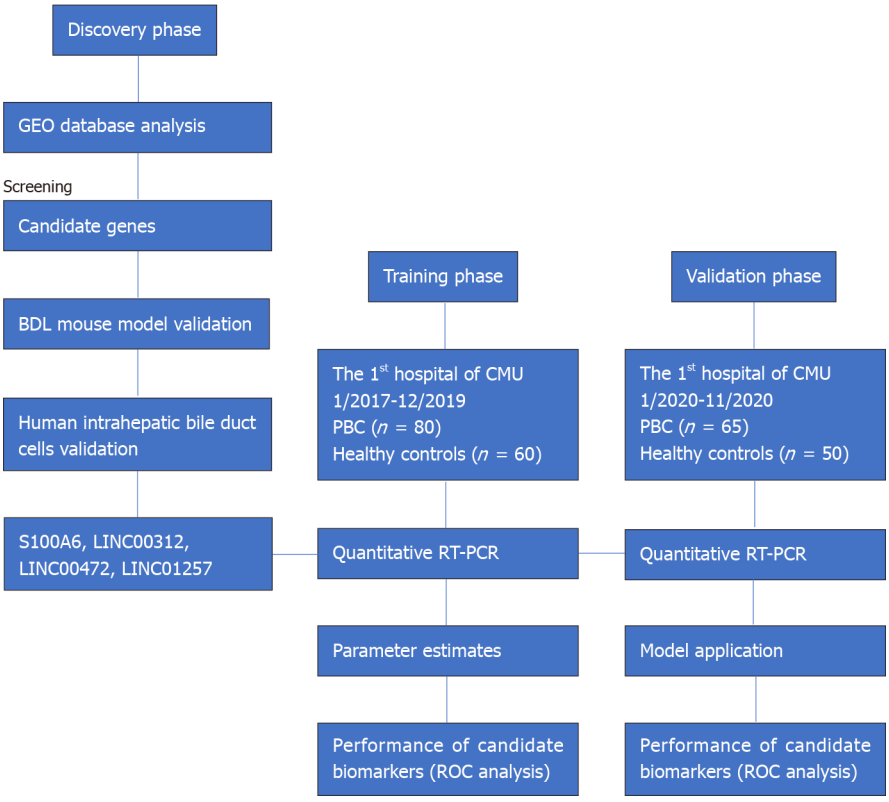



**Figure 1 Study design.** BDL: Bile duct ligation; GEO: Gene Expression Omnibus; PBC: Primary biliary cholangitis; ROC: Receiver operating characteristic curve; RT-PCR: Reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction.

### *LncRNAs selection*

The PROMO usage database (http://alggen.lsi.upc.es/cgi-bin/promo_v3/promo/promoinit.cgi?dirDB=TF_8.3) was used to predict the transcription factors of the S100A6 promoter[13]. There were multiple binding sites between the transcription factor estrogen receptor alpha (also known as ESR1) and the promoter of S100A6. Experiments with BDL mice and PBC patients suggested that the expression of estrogen receptor in bile duct epithelial cells was associated with cholestasis or bile duct epithelial cells in PBC[14]. We hypothesized that ESR1 could regulate the transcription of S100A6 as a transcription factor and thus play an important role in the injury of bile duct cells in PBC. The Gene-Cloud of Biotechnology Information database (https://www.gcbi.com.cn/gcanalyze/html/generadar/index) was used to screen lncRNAs associated with ESR1[15]. The binding force between lncRNAs and ESR1 was calculated by RNA-Protein Interaction Prediction (http://pridb.gdcb.iastate.edu/RPISeq/)[16]. As RF and SVM scores of LINC00312, LINC00472, and LINC01257 were all found to be close to 1.0, these three lncRNAs were selected as candidate lncRNAs in this study.

### *Animal studies, bile duct ligation model*

Male C57BL/6J mice (aged 6-8 wk) were purchased from the Animal Experiment Department of China Medical University (Shenyang, Liaoning Province, China). All mice were weighed and randomly grouped with an average weight of 20-25 g into the BDL group and the sham group. To simulate cholestasis, 9 mice underwent BDL[17]. The animal protocol was designed to minimize pain or discomfort to the mice. The animals were acclimatized to laboratory conditions (24 °C, 12 h/12 h light/dark, 50% humidity, *ad libitum* access to food and water) for 2 wk prior to experimentation. The BDL procedure was performed with the common bile duct doubly ligated under anesthesia *via* laparotomy[18]. The sham procedure was performed *via* a similar laparotomy without BDL. Animal experiments were approved by the Ethics Committee of the Animal Experiment Department of China Medical University.

A portion of the liver tissue was placed in a 4% p-formaldehyde solution and routinely processed for histological assessment, while the remaining tissue was snap frozen and stored at -80 °C.

### Histological analysis

The mice were sacrificed by cervical dislocation and the liver was immediately removed by laparotomy. Part of the right lobe of the liver was fixed in 4% formaldehyde. The liver tissues were embedded in paraffin and sliced. Hematoxylin and eosin stained liver sections were observed under a light microscope at x 400 magnification to evaluate whether the cholestasis model was successfully established[19].

### Double immunofluorescence

To identify whether the expression of S100A6 protein was up-regulated in bile duct epithelial cells in BDL mice, we performed double immunofluorescence[20] for S100A6 antibodies (Abcam, USA, Cat. No. ab181975) with cytokeratin 19 (CK19) antibodies (Abcam, USA, Cat. No. ab52625) which was specifically expressed in epithelial cells[21]. The primary antibody was replaced by rabbit or mouse IgG for negative controls. The working concentration of fluorescein isothiocyanate and tetraethyl rhodamine isothiocyanate was 1:50. Nuclei were counterstained with DAPI. The empirical procedure was performed according to the manufacturer's instructions. The sections were counterstained with DAPI and evaluated under a conventional fluorescence microscope.

### Cells culture and treatments

Human intrahepatic biliary epithelial cells (HiBECs) were purchased from Guangzhou Jennio Biotech Company Limited (Guangzhou, Guangdong Province, China). Cells were cultured in RPMI-1640 supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum (GEMINI, USA), 100 U/mL penicillin, and 100 mg/mL streptomycin in incubators at 37 °C with 5% $CO_2$. HiBECs were treated with 1000 mmol/L glycochenodeoxycholate (GCDC)[22] for 24 h to mimic cholestasis in PBC patients.

### Patients

A total of 80 untreated PBC patients and 60 healthy controls as the training set were enrolled in order to differentially evaluate S100A6 and lncRNAs. In addition, another cohort consisting of 65 PBC patients and 50 healthy controls was used as the validation set. PBC patients were diagnosed by the Department of Gastroenterology or Rheumatology of The First Affiliated Hospital of China Medical University between January 2017 and November 2020. The diagnosis of PBC needed to meet two of the following three criteria[9-11]: (1) AMA titer > 1:40; (2) ALP level 1.5-times higher than the normal upper limit for more than 24 wk; and (3) liver biopsy revealing non-suppurative cholangitis and interlobular bile duct damage. Written informed consent was obtained from all patients who participated in the study. This study was approved by the Ethics Committee of The First Affiliated Hospital of China Medical University and was carried out in accordance with the Declaration of Helsinki.

Percutaneous ultrasound-guided puncture biopsy of the right liver was performed in all PBC patients, followed by histopathological examination and pathological stage identification[23]. Four stages were defined based on intrahepatic bile duct injury[24]: Stage I: Cholangitis stage, chronic inflammation in the interlobular and septal bile duct. Lymphocytes and plasma cells around the damaged bile ducts infiltrate or form granuloma, but the inflammation in the portal area does not involve the liver parenchyma and there is no cholestasis; stage II: Periportal inflammation stage, with a continuous reduction in the number of interlobular bile ducts, reactive hyperplasia of bile ducts around the portal area, inflammation involving adjacent liver parenchyma and destruction of liver cells, and common focal necrosis, cholestasis also occurs; stage III: Progressive fibrosis stage, the portal area is continuously enlarged by inflammation and fibrosis progression, the fibrous septa formed gradually widens, and cholestasis is aggravated; stage IV: Liver cirrhosis stage, fibrous septa divides the liver parenchyma into patchy nodules, regenerating nodules, and forming pseudo lobules.

### Extraction of total RNA from plasma samples and cells

The relative expression levels of S100A6 and lncRNAs in plasma were measured in PBC patients, as well as human intrahepatic biliary epithelial cell lines. Total RNA was extracted from plasma and HiBECs by an RNA extraction kit (Bioteke, China), according to the manufacturer's instructions.

### Reverse transcription and quantitative PCR for S100A6 and lncRNAs

Total RNA was amplified by reverse transcription using a reverse transcription kit (PrimeScript™ RT Master Mix, TaKaRa, China)[25]. All reactions were completed in a

Themocycler (Mastercycler nexus, Eppendorf, Germany). Then, quantitative PCR was performed using SYBR® Premix Ex TaqTM II kit (Takara, China) on the LightCycler 480 (Roche, Germany). GAPDH was used as an internal reference, and served as an internal control for plasma RNA quality. S100A6 and lncRNAs expression were calculated by the $2^{-\Delta\Delta Ct}$ method {$2^{[(\text{Mean ct of RNA–mean ct of GAPDH}) - (\text{mean ct of control–mean ct of GAPDH})]}$}[26]. The calculated result was the relative quantitative expression value of S100A6 and lncRNAs compared with the internal reference. Primers for reactions were designed by Primer Premier 6.0 (Canada) software (Table 1)[27].

### Statistical analysis

Statistical Package for Social Science 23.0 software (IBM Solutions Statistical Package for the Social Sciences Incorporated, USA) and GraphPad Prism 8 (GraphPad Software, Incorporated, San Diego, CA, USA) were used for all statistical analyses. The normal distribution data were recorded (mean ± SD), and comparisons between the two groups were performed using the unpaired *t*-test. The paired *t*-test was used to compare the expression levels before and after treatment. Non-normal distribution data were analyzed using the non-parametric Mann-Whitney *U* test[28]. Categorical data were analyzed using the $\chi^2$ test. The correlation between the plasma level of S100A6 mRNA and lncRNAs was analyzed using Pearson or Spearman correlation analysis. Receiver operating characteristic (ROC) curves were constructed and the areas under the curves (AUC) were used to evaluate the value of plasma S100A6 mRNA and lncRNAs as biomarkers for the diagnosis and staging of PBC[29]. $P < 0.05$ was considered statistically significant.

## RESULTS

### Identification of the target gene

"GEO2R" was used to analyze the differentially expressed genes in liver tissues of BDL and sham mice of GSE29776. The top 10 up- and down-regulated genes of GSE29776 in the BDL and sham group are listed in Table 2. To identify potential biomarkers for PBC diagnosis and staging, we used qRT-PCR to validate the analysis of bioinformatics up-regulated genes in plasma of 30 PBC patients and 30 healthy controls. It was found that S100A6 showed the greatest change in the plasma of PBC patients ($t = 20.28$, $P < 0.0001$) (Figure 2). Therefore, S100A6 was selected as the target gene in this study.

### Expression of S100A6 protein in the BDL mouse model

HE staining revealed histological changes in liver tissues, with the BDL group showing liver cell swelling, vacuolar degeneration, and coagulative necrosis. Inflammatory cell infiltration was observed in the portal area and around the bile duct, and fibrosis around the bile duct (Figure 3A-C). In the sham group, there was no or minimal inflammatory cell infiltration around the portal area and bile duct (Figure 3D-F).

Double immunofluorescence staining was used to label CK19 and S100A6 proteins. A fluorescence microscope was used for observation and Image J software was used for graph analysis. The results showed that S100A6 labeled with fluorescein isothiocyanate showed emerald green fluorescence and CK19 labeled with tetraethyl rhodamine isothiocyanate showed red fluorescence. Red and green fluorescent overlapping images showed that CK19 and S100A6 proteins were positively expressed in the iBECs of BDL mice (Figure 4A-C), while these two proteins were weakly expressed in the iBECs of mice in the sham group (Figure 4D-F).

### The expression of S100A6 and lncRNAs analyzed in HiBECs

To investigate the mechanism of S100A6 and lncRNAs, the expression of S100A6 and lncRNAs was studied in HiBECs. Normal and HiBECs treated with GCDC were detected by qRT-PCR. The relative expression levels of S100A6 mRNA, LINC00472 and LINC01257 were up-regulated and LINC00312 was down-regulated in HiBECs treated with GCDC compared with controls (2.97 ± 0.43 *vs* 1.09 ± 0.08, $P = 0.0018$; 2.70 ± 0.26 *vs* 1.10 ± 0.10, $P = 0.0006$; 2.23 ± 0.21 *vs* 1.10 ± 0.10, $P = 0.0011$; 1.20 ± 0.04 *vs* 3.03 ± 0.15, $P < 0.0001$, respectively) (Figure 5).

### Demographics and clinical features of PBC patients compared with healthy controls

There were no differences in age and gender between the training set and validation

**Table 1 Primer sequences used in this study**

| Target gene | Forward sequence (5'→3') | Reverse sequence (5'→3') |
|---|---|---|
| *S100A6* | AATGTGCGTTGTGTAAGC | CGGTCCAAGTCTTCCATC |
| *LINC00312* | GGAAGGAATACCACAGAAGT | TGAAGAACAGGACATTGACA |
| *LINC00472* | AGAGTTGCTGTAGAAGAAGG | AGGAGGAGAGTAGAAGAGAC |
| *LINC01257* | TGCTGCGAATGATGACTT | AGGACTTGAATCTGCTACTG |
| *HMGB2* | TTACGTTCCTCCCAAAGGTG | TCTTTGGCTGACTGCTCAGA |
| *RC3H2* | TTGCAAAGAAATGCGTTGAG | GATTGGCAGACAACTGCTGA |
| *ADAMTS1* | CCTCTGTCTGTGTGCAAGGA | GTGGCTCCAGTTGGAATTGT |
| *SERPINE1* | CTCTCTCTGCCCTCACCAAC | GTGGAGAGGCTCTTGGTCTG |
| *PALD1* | GCCGAAGTTGTTCCCATTTA | GCTGAAAGTCAGAGCCAACC |
| *GSTA4* | TCCGTGAGATGGGTTTTAGC | TGCCAAAGAGATTGTGCTTG |
| *ACTA2* | TTCAATGTCCCAGCCATGTA | GAAGGAATAGCCACGCTCAG |
| *GAPDH* | GCACCGTCAAGGCTGAGAAC | TGGTGAAGACGCCAGTGGA |

ACTA2: Actin alpha 2, smooth muscle; ADAMTS1: ADAM metallopeptidase with thrombospondin type 1 motif 1; GAPDH: Glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase; GSTA4: Glutathione S-transferase alpha 4; HMGB2: High mobility group box 2; PALD1: Phosphatase domain containing paladin 1; RC3H2: Ring finger and CCCH-type domains 2; S100A6: S100 calcium binding protein A6; SERPINE1: Serpin family E member 1.

set ($P$ = 0.504 and $P$ = 1.0, respectively, Table 3). Moreover, there were no differences in age and gender between PBC patients and healthy controls ($P$ = 0.58 and $P$ = 1.0, respectively). Clinical serological data including alanine aminotransferase, aspartate aminotransferase, ALP, gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase, total bilirubin, direct bilirubin, total bile acid, hyaluronic acid, laminin, collagen type IV (C-IV) and procollagen III were all significantly higher in PBC patients than in healthy controls ($P$ < 0.0001, Table 4).

### *Differential expression of S100A6 and lncRNAs in PBC patients compared with HCs*

To compare the mean expression levels of S100A6 mRNA, LINC00312, and LINC01257 in PBC patients and healthy controls, the Kolmogorov–Smirnov test was used to check normality. The results showed that these variables had a normal distribution ($P$ > 0.05), and the $t$-test was used for analysis, as the relative expression of LINC00472 showed a skewed distribution, and was normally distributed after logarithmic conversion based on 10. The results showed that the expression levels of S100A6 mRNA, log10 LINC00472 and LINC1257 in PBC patients were significantly up-regulated compared to the healthy controls (3.01 ± 1.04 *vs* 2.09 ± 0.87; 2.46 ± 1.03 *vs* 1.77 ± 0.84; 3.49 ± 1.64 *vs* 2.37 ± 0.96, $P$ values were all less than 0.0001, Figure 6A, C and D). The mean expression level of LINC00312 was significantly lower in PBC plasma samples compared with HCs (1.70 ± 0.33 *vs* 2.07 ± 0.53, $P$ < 0.0001, Figure 6B).

### *Distribution of S100A6 and lncRNAs expression levels in different stages of PBC*

The unpaired $t$-test analysis of variance was performed to evaluate differences in the expression of S100A6 and lncRNAs among different PBC stages and healthy controls (Figure 7). The results showed that the mean expression of S100A6 in the advanced stage (III and IV) of PBC was up-regulated compared to that in HCs and the early stage (II) (3.38 ± 0.71 *vs* 2.09 ± 0.87, $P$ < 0.0001; 3.38 ± 0.71 *vs* 2.57 ± 1.21, $P$ = 0.0003, respectively); and in the early stage (II), it was higher than that in HCs (2.57 ± 1.21 *vs* 2.09 ± 0.87, $P$ = 0.03) (Figure 7A). The mean expression of LINC00312 in the advanced stage was lower than that in the early stage and HCs (1.39 ± 0.29 *vs* 1.56 ± 0.33, $P$ = 0.01; 1.39 ± 0.29 *vs* 2.07 ± 0.53, $P$ < 0.0001, respectively) (Figure 7B); in addition, the mean expression of LINC00312 in the early stage was lower than that in HCs (1.56 ± 0.33 *vs* 2.07 ± 0.53, $P$ < 0.0001) (Figure 7B). The mean expression of log10 LINC00472 in the advanced stage was higher than that in the early stage and HCs (2.99 ± 0.87 *vs* 1.81 ± 0.83, $P$ < 0.0001; 2.99 ± 0.87 *vs* 1.77 ± 0.84, $P$ < 0.0001, respectively) (Figure 7C). The mean expression of LINC01257 in both the early stage and advanced stage were up-regulated compared with HCs (3.88 ± 1.55 *vs* 2.37 ± 0.96, $P$ < 0.0001; 3.57 ± 1.79 *vs* 2.37 ± 0.96, $P$ < 0.0001, respectively) (Figure 7D).

**Table 2 Top 10 dysregulated genes in bile duct ligation and sham mice**

| Gene name | Transcript | Lg fold change |
|---|---|---|
| *Up-regulated* | | |
| *Hmgb2* | ENSMUSG00000054717 | 3.53 |
| *Rc3h2* | ENSMUSG00000075376 | 3.33 |
| *Adamts1* | ENSMUSG00000022893 | 3.15 |
| *Serpine1* | ENSMUSG00000037411 | 3.08 |
| *S100a6* | ENSMUSG00000001025 | 2.98 |
| *Pald1* | ENSMUSG00000020092 | 2.67 |
| *Gsta4* | ENSMUSG00000032348 | 2.50 |
| *D17H6S56E-5* | NM_033075 | 2.46 |
| *Acta2* | ENSMUSG00000035783 | 2.39 |
| *Ifi204* | ENSMUSG00000073489 | 2.33 |
| *Down-regulated* | | |
| *Mcm10* | ENSMUSG00000026669 | 3.23 |
| *Upp2* | ENSMUSG00000026839 | 2.85 |
| *2810043O03Rik* | AK012901.1 | 2.59 |
| *Dnaaf5* | ENSMUSG00000025857 | 2.41 |
| *Sva* | ENSMUSG00000023289 | 2.40 |
| *Naca* | ENSMUSG00000061315 | 2.35 |
| *Dhps* | ENSMUSG00000060038 | 2.33 |
| *Cdh15* | ENSMUSG00000031962 | 2.26 |
| *Gzmm* | ENSMUSG00000054206 | 2.20 |
| *Alox12* | ENSMUSG00000000320 | 2.15 |

2810043O03Rik: RIKEN complementary deoxyribonucleic acid 2810043O03 gene; Acta2: Actin alpha 2, smooth muscle; Adamts1: A disintegrin-like and metallopeptidase (reprolysin type) with thrombospondin type 1 motif, 1; Alox12: Arachidonate 12-lipoxygenase; Cdh15: Cadherin 15; D17H6S56E-5: Deoxyribonucleic acid segment, Chr 17, human D6S56E 5; Dhps: Deoxyhypusine synthase; Dnaaf5: Dynein, axonemal assembly factor 5; Gsta4: Glutathione S-transferase alpha 4; Gzmm: Granzyme M (lymphocyte met-ase 1); Hmgb2: High mobility group box 2; Ifi204: Interferon activated gene 204; Mcm10: Minichromosome maintenance 10 replication initiation factor; Naca: Nascent polypeptide-associated complex alpha polypeptide; Pald1: Phosphatase domain containing paladin 1; Rc3h2: Ring finger and CCCH-type domains 2; S100A6: S100 calcium binding protein A6; Serpine1: Serpin family E member 1; Sva: Seminal vesicle antigen; Upp2: Uridine phosphorylase 2.

### *Diagnosis and staging value of plasma S100A6 and lncRNAs for PBC patients*

ROC curves were used to evaluate the potential diagnostic value of each biomarker for PBC. The AUC for S100A6, LINC00312, log10 LINC00472 and LINC01257 in PBC diagnosis were 0.759, 0.7292, 0.6942 and 0.7158, respectively (Figure 8A-D). Furthermore, AUC for these four genes in PBC staging were 0.666, 0.661, 0.839 and 0.5549, respectively (Figure 8E-H).

Pearson or Spearman correlation analysis was performed to evaluate the correlation between relative expression of S100A6 mRNA and lncRNAs, as well as relative expression of S100A6 mRNA or lncRNAs and clinical serological data in PBC patients. Relative expression of S100A6 mRNA was positively correlated with log10 LINC00472 ($r$ = 0.683, $P$ < 0.0001); serum level of C-IV was positively correlated with relative expression of log10 LINC00472 ($r$ = 0.482, $P$ < 0.0001); relative expression of S100A6 mRNA was positively correlated with serum level of C-IV ($r$ = 0.732, $P$ < 0.0001) (Figure 9).

### *Comparison of expression levels of biomarkers before and after treatment*

A total of 58 PBC patients were followed up after their treatment for one year. Paired $t$-test analysis was used to compare the expression levels of these four genes before and after treatment. The relative expression of S100A6 mRNA, log10 LINC00472, and

**Table 3 Demographics and clinical characteristics in the training and validation datasets**

| Characteristics | Training | Validation | *P* value |
|---|---|---|---|
| No. | 140 | 115 | - |
| Age, mean ± SD, yr | 56.0 ± 13.9 | 57.2 ± 13.2 | 0.504 |
| Gender, *n* (%) | | | |
| Male | 17 (12.1) | 13 (11.3) | |
| Female | 123 (87.9) | 102 (88.7) | 1.0 |
| Pathological stage | | | |
| I and II | 36 (45.0) | 26 (40.0) | |
| III and IV | 44 (55.0) | 39 (60.0) | 0.614 |

Normally distributed data are expressed as mean ± SD. Categorical variable values are described as *n* (%). SD: Standard deviation.

**Table 4 Demographics and clinical characteristics of primary biliary cholangitis patients and healthy controls[1]**

| Characteristics | PBC (*n* = 145) | HCs (*n* = 110) | *P* value |
|---|---|---|---|
| Age, mean ± SD, yr | 56.1 ± 13.4 | 55.3 ± 11.8 | 0.58 |
| Gender, *n* (%) | | | |
| Male | 17 (12.5) | 13 (16.7) | |
| Female | 128 (87.5) | 97 (83.3) | 1.00 |
| ALT, U/L | 78.6 ± 35.7 | 18.4 ± 6.5 | < 0.001 |
| AST, U/L | 104.8 ± 43.5 | 20.2 ± 4.3 | < 0.001 |
| ALP, U/L | 257.4 ± 79.9 | 64.7 ± 14.5 | < 0.001 |
| γGT, U/L | 416.7 ± 209.2 | 26.3 ± 10.4 | < 0.001 |
| TBIL, μmol/L | 66.8 ± 10.6 | 11.8 ± 4.0 | < 0.001 |
| DBIL, μmol/L | 51.9 ± 11.4 | 6.4 ± 0.5 | < 0.001 |
| TBA, μmol/L | 71.3 ± 11.6 | 2.8 ± 0.4 | < 0.001 |
| HA, ng/mL | 146.9 (104.6-190.1) | 67.0 (53.9-79.7) | < 0.001 |
| LN, ng/mL | 148.9 (76.7-182.8) | 70.4 (58.7-82.9) | < 0.001 |
| C-IV, ng/mL | 154.8 (121.1-192.0) | 60.1 (55.2-66.7) | < 0.001 |
| PC-III, ng/mL | 161.0 (135.1-184.5) | 57.3 (49.9-63.5) | < 0.001 |
| Pathological stage | | | |
| I and II | 62 (42.8) | - | |
| III and IV | 83 (57.2) | - | |

[1]Normally distributed data are expressed as means ± SD, variables with a skewed distribution are presented as median (interquartile range). Categorical variable values are described as *n* (%). γGT: Gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase; ALT: Alanine aminotransferase; ALP: Alkaline phosphatase; AST: Aspartate aminotransferase; C-IV: Collagen type IV; DBIL: Direct bilirubin; HA: Hyaluronic acid; LN, Laminin; PC-III: Procollagen III; TBA: Total bile acid; TBIL: Total bilirubin; SD: Standard deviation; PBC: Primary biliary cholangitis; HCs: Healthy controls.

LINC01257 were significantly decreased after treatment (2.35 ± 1.02 *vs* 3.06 ± 1.04, $P$ = 0.0018; 1.99 ± 0.83 *vs* 2.33 ± 0.96, $P$ = 0.036; 2.84 ± 0.92 *vs* 3.69 ± 1.54, $P$ = 0.0006, respectively); in addition, the relative expression of LINC00312 increased significantly after treatment compared with before treatment (1.95 ± 0.35 *vs* 1.73 ± 0.32, $P$ = 0.0007) (Figure 10).

### *Differences between PBC patients with high and low levels of LINC00472*

According to ROC curves analysis, the AUC of log10 LINC00472 was 0.839 ($P$ < 0.0001)

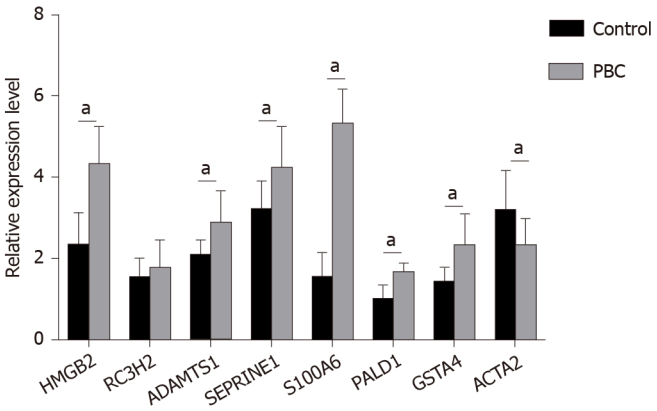



**Figure 2 Validation of top 10 up-regulated genes in the plasma of primary biliary cholangitis patients and healthy controls by reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction.** $^{a}P < 0.0001$. ACTA2: Actin alpha 2, smooth muscle; ADAMTS1: ADAM metallopeptidase with thrombospondin type 1 motif 1; GSTA4: Glutathione S-transferase alpha 4; HMGB2: High mobility group box 2; PALD1: Phosphatase domain containing paladin 1; RC3H2: Ring finger and CCCH-type domains 2; S100A6: S100 calcium binding protein A6; SERPINE1: Serpin family E member 1; PBC: Primary biliary cholangitis.

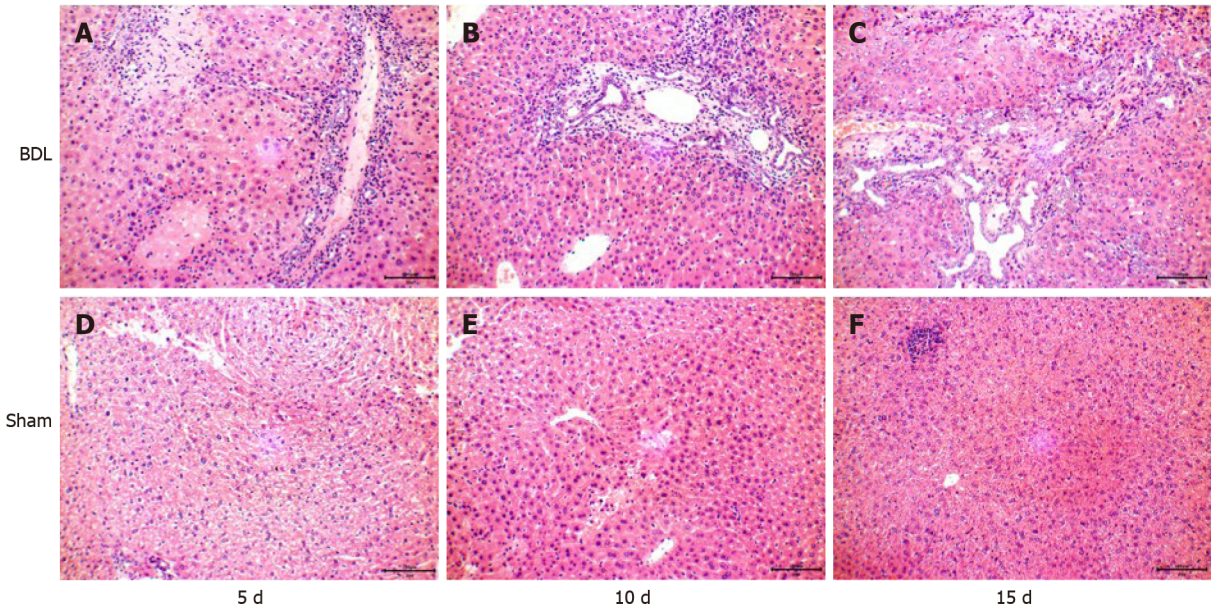



**Figure 3 Liver tissues of mice in the bile duct ligation group and sham group were observed under an optical microscope (hematoxylin-eosin stain, × 400).** A-C: 5, 10 and 15 d after surgery in the bile duct ligation group, respectively; D-F: 5, 10 and 15 d after surgery in the sham group, respectively. BDL: Bile duct ligation.

and the Youden index was 1.551. Accordingly, the patients in the PBC group were divided into L1 (log10 LINC00472 < 2.33) and L2 (log10 LINC00472 ≥ 2.33) subgroups. The baseline characteristics of PBC patients classified by the relative expression of the log10 LINC00472 cutoff value (2.33) is shown in Table 5. The relative expression of S100A6 mRNA and serum level of C-IV were lower in the L1 subgroup ($P < 0.0001$, Table 5); in addition, the relative expression of LINC01257 was higher in the L1 subgroup compared to the L2 subgroup ($P = 0.005$, Table 5).

### *Validation of diagnosis and staging value*

The parameters estimated from the training data set were used to predict the probability of being diagnosed with PBC and staging of PBC for the independent validation data set. ROC curves were also constructed to predict the probability of diagnosis and staging. The AUC of S100A6 mRNA, LINC00312, log10 LINC00472 and LINC01257 in PBC diagnosis were 0.769, 0.772, 0.755 and 0.695, respectively (Figure 11A-D). Moreover, the AUC for log10 LINC00472 in PBC staging was 0.835 (Figure 11E).

**Table 5 Characteristics of primary biliary cholangitis patients based on the expression of log10 LINC00472 cutoff value**

| | Relative Expression of log10 LINC00472 | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | L1 (< 2.33) (*n* = 38) | L2 (≥ 2.33) (*n* = 42) | *P* value |
| Age, mean ± SD, years | 60.3 ± 14.9 | 55.1 ± 14.0 | 0.109 |
| Gender, *n* (%) | | | |
| Male | 5 (13.2) | 5 (11.9) | |
| Female | 33 (86.8) | 37 (88.1) | 0.886 |
| ALT, U/L | 73.2 (52.7-100.1) | 73.2 (46.2-100.7) | 0.985 |
| AST, U/L | 109.2 ± 45.9 | 103.0 ± 44.6 | 0.543 |
| ALP, U/L | 264.0 ± 89.4 | 252.2 ± 78.3 | 0.532 |
| γGT, U/L | 420.2 ± 197.9 | 413.2 ± 237.1 | 0.887 |
| TBA, μmol/L | 73.2 ± 12.4 | 70.9 ± 13.3 | 0.438 |
| TBiL, μmol/L | 68.0 (63.0-73.0) | 63.0 (58.0-73.0) | 0.166 |
| DBiL, μmol/L | 50.6 ± 9.8 | 52.2 ± 11.4 | 0.505 |
| LINC00312 | 1.51 ± 0.32 | 1.43 ± 0.31 | 0.261 |
| S100A6 | 2.40 ± 1.05 | 3.57 ± 0.66 | < 0.0001 |
| LINC01257 | 4.25 ± 1.39 | 3.22 ± 1.78 | 0.005 |
| HA, ng/mL | 144.8 (101.6-208.8) | 135.5 (95.4-195.4) | 0.537 |
| LN, ng/mL | 126.1 (48.4-178.4) | 156.1 (57.6-175.8) | 0.78 |
| C-IV, ng/mL | 127.2 (100.9-170.4) | 176.0 (154.7-232.0) | < 0.0001 |
| PC-III, ng/mL | 156.6 (125.8-190.1) | 161.6 (128.0-184.5) | 0.916 |

SD: Standard deviation; γGT: Gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase; ALT: Alanine aminotransferase; ALP: Alkaline phosphatase; AST: Aspartate aminotransferase; C-IV: Collagen type IV; DBIL: Direct bilirubin; HA: Hyaluronic acid; LN: Laminin; PC-III: Procollagen III; S100A6: S100 calcium binding protein A6; TBA: Total bile acid; TBIL: Total bilirubin.

## DISCUSSION

PBC is a type of cholestatic liver disease which is a pathophysiological process caused by the obstruction of bile secretion and excretion. After analyzing the expression levels of the top 10 up-regulated genes of GSE29776 in the plasma of PBC patients, it was found that the difference in S100A6 mRNA expression levels between PBC patients and healthy controls was greatest ($t$ = 20.28, $P$ < 0.0001). Therefore, S100A6 was selected as the target gene. BDL is a common procedure for biliary obstruction widely used in rodent models of cholestasis and liver damage[30]. Immunofluorescence double labeling analysis was performed to identify the overexpression of S100A6 protein in the intrahepatic bile duct epithelial cells of BDL mice compared with sham mice, which verified the results predicted by bioinformatics analysis. In this study, the bile duct cells proliferated greatly in the liver tissue 10 d after the operation in the BDL group[31,32], and S100A6 protein was expressed in large quantities during the corresponding period. However, the number of bile duct cells in the sham group was relatively low, and the expression of S100A6 protein was also relatively low. Therefore, it can be seen that proliferation of bile duct cells was specifically enhanced when cholestatic liver injury occurred; thus, there was a difference in S100A6 between the two groups. S100A6 is expressed as a 89-amino acid protein in mice and rats, a 90-amino acid protein in humans and rabbits, and subtypes A (92 amino acids) and B (91 amino acids) in chickens, which may be produced by mRNA selective splicing[33]. In this study, the S100A6 antibodies used were universal in humans and mice, so the results of the BDL mouse model could indirectly reflect the up-regulation of S100A6 expression in human intrahepatic cholestasis.

In this study, S100A6 mRNA was overexpressed in the plasma of PBC patients compared with healthy controls. S100A6 expression is up-regulated in breast cancer, thyroid cancer, colorectal cancer, various types of skin tumors, acute myelogenous leukemia, epithelial tissues and other highly proliferating cell lines[34]. Apoptosis in

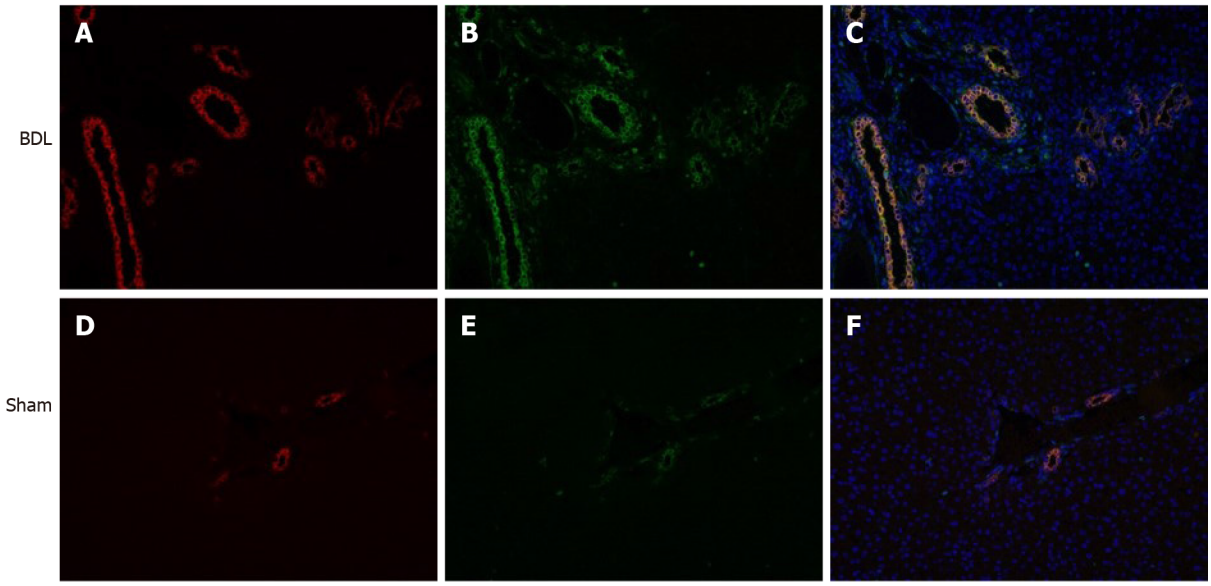



**Figure 4 C57BL/6J mouse liver tissue double immunofluorescence (red light: Cytokeratin 19 protein, green light: S100 calcium binding protein A6 protein, × 200).** A: Cytokeratin 19 (CK19) protein in bile duct ligation (BDL) mouse; B: S100 calcium binding protein A6 protein (S100A6) protein in BDL mouse; C: CK19 and S100A6 proteins merge in BDL mouse; D: CK19 protein in sham mouse; E: S100A6 protein in sham mouse; F: CK19 and S100A6 proteins merge in sham mouse. BDL: Bile duct ligation.

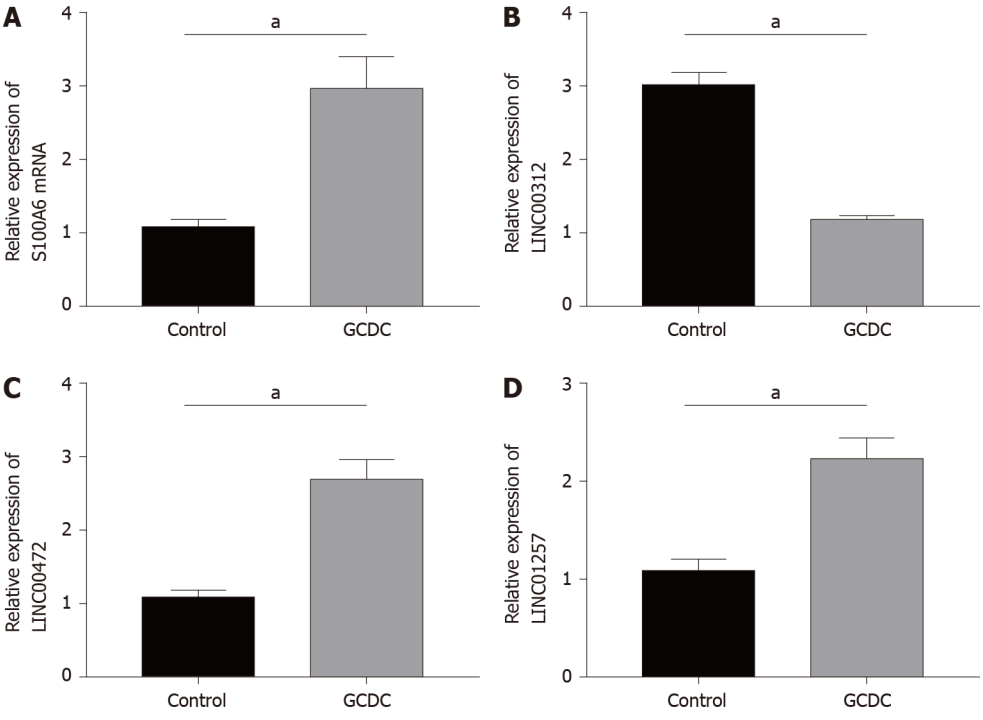



**Figure 5 The expression of S100 calcium binding protein A6 protein messenger ribonucleic acid, LINC00312, LINC00472 and LINC01257 in human intrahepatic biliary epithelial cells (control and treated with glycochenodeoxycholate) analyzed by quantitative reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction.** A: S100 calcium binding protein A6 protein messenger ribonucleic acid; B: LINC00312; C: LINC00472; D: LINC01257. $^{a}P < 0.005$. GCDC: Glycochenodeoxycholate.

PBC is considered to be the cell effector injury mediated by T cells. Changes in apoptosis and apoptosis-related molecular expression of bile duct cells have been reported in bile duct lesions, but immune-mediated injury of bile duct epithelial cells has not been fully elucidated[35]. Joo *et al*[36] found that S100A6 may be involved in the process of apoptosis by regulating the transcriptional regulation of caspase-3. Therefore, it seems that S100A6 may play an important role in the pathogenesis of PBC.

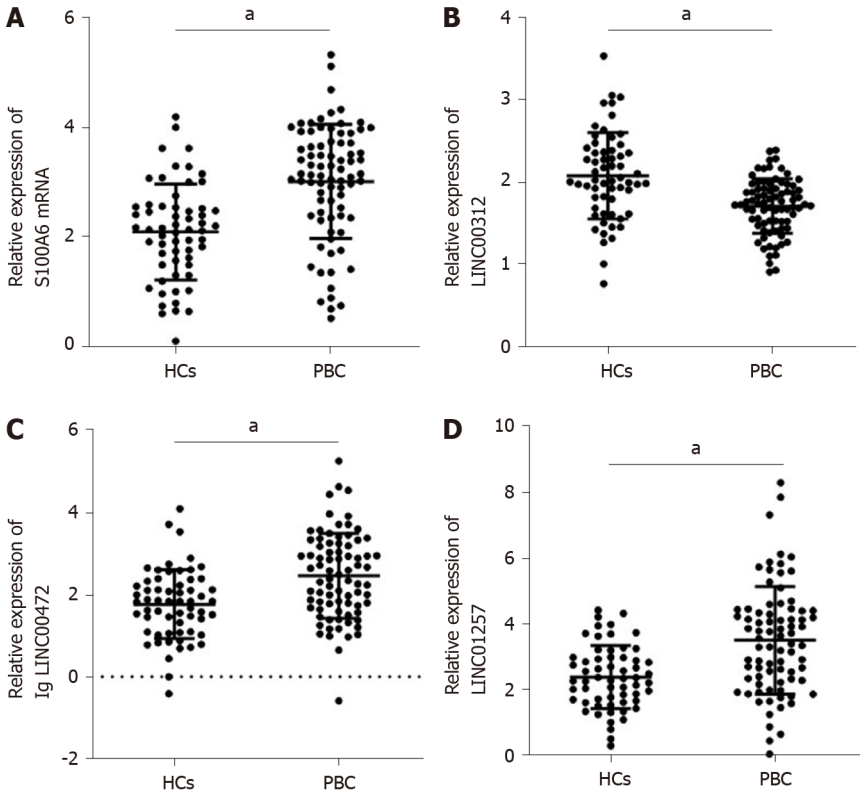



**Figure 6 Differential expression of plasma s100 calcium binding protein A6 protein messenger ribonucleic acid and long non-coding ribonucleic acids in primary biliary cholangitis plasma samples compared with healthy controls.** A: S100 calcium binding protein A6 protein messenger ribonucleic acid; B: LINC00312; C: log10 LINC00472; D: LINC01257. [a]*P* < 0.0001. HCs: Healthy controls; PBC: Primary biliary cholangitis.

The expression of lncRNAs is not only closely related to the occurrence and development of tumors[37], but also associated with autoimmune diseases[38]. In this study, the expression of lncRNAs selected by bioinformatics analysis was differentially expressed in the plasma of PBC patients compared with healthy controls. The levels of plasma LINC00312 was significantly down-regulated in PBC patients, while LINC00472 and LINC01257 were up-regulated in PBC patients, indicating that these lncRNAs might be valuable for PBC diagnosis. ROC curves were used to evaluate the diagnostic value of each marker. The differential expression in plasma between PBC patients and heathy controls indicated that S100A6 mRNA (AUC = 0.76, $P < 0.0001$), LINC00312 (AUC = 0.73, $P < 0.0001$), log10 LINC00472 (AUC = 0.69, $P < 0.0001$) and LINC01257 (AUC = 0.72, $P < 0.0001$) may be potential biomarkers for the diagnosis of PBC.

Furthermore, the ROC curves analysis also showed that plasma S100A6 mRNA (AUC = 0.67, $P = 0.01$), LINC00312 (AUC = 0.66, $P = 0.01$) and log10 LINC00472 (AUC = 0.84, $P < 0.0001$) could also be used to predict disease progression in PBC. In particular, LINC00472 had high diagnostic value for PBC staging (sensitivity was 77.27%, specificity was 77.78%). According to the cutoff value (2.33) of log10 LINC00472, the relative expression of S100A6 mRNA and serum level of C-IV in the high-level group were higher than those in the low-level group.

LINC00312, also known as NAG7, was found to inhibit proliferation and induce apoptosis in nasopharyngeal carcinoma (NPC) cells but also stimulate NPC cell invasion. LINC00312 was significantly down-regulated in NPC tissues compared with non-cancerous nasopharyngeal epithelium tissues. Positive expression of LINC00312 was negatively correlated with tumor size but positively correlated with lymph node metastasis[39]. High expression of LINC00472 was associated with less aggressive breast tumors and better prognosis. Patients with high expression of LINC00472 had a significantly reduced risk of recurrence and death compared to those with low expression. Patients with high expression of LINC00472 also responded better to adjuvant chemotherapy or hormone therapy than those with low expression[40]. Therefore, studies on S100A6, LINC00312 and LINC00472 have all been related to tumors. This study is the first to explore the relationship between these three genes and autoimmune diseases. In addition, we investigated the relationship between the expression of LINC01257 and diseases for the first time.

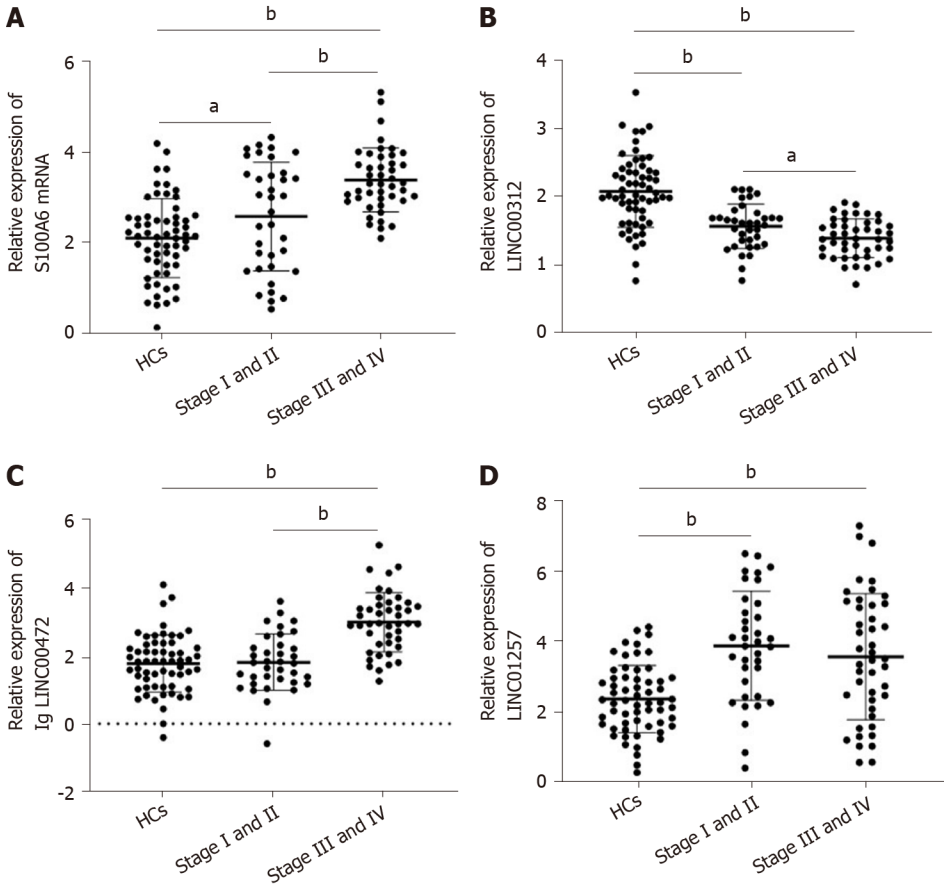



**Figure 7 Scatter plot and distribution of expression levels of s100 calcium binding protein A6 protein messenger ribonucleic acid and long non-coding ribonucleic acids in different stages of primary biliary cholangitis compared with healthy controls.** The unpaired *t*-test analysis of variance was performed to examine differences in S100 calcium binding protein A6 protein messenger ribonucleic acid and long non-coding ribonucleic acids expression levels between various groups. A: S100 calcium binding protein A6 protein messenger ribonucleic acid; B: LINC00312; C: log10 LINC00472; D: LINC01257. $^{a}P < 0.05$, $^{b}P < 0.0001$. HCs: Healthy controls.

The expression levels of plasma S100A6, LINC00312, LINC00472 and LINC01257 in PBC patients before and after treatment were analyzed by the paired *t*-test. It was found that the elevated biomarkers decreased after treatment, while the reduced biomarker increased. This provides further evidence that these four genes are biomarkers for PBC diagnosis.

The correlation analysis showed that relative expression of S100A6 mRNA was positively correlated with log10 LINC00472 ($r = 0.683$, $P < 0.0001$) and the serum level of C-IV ($r = 0.732$, $P < 0.0001$). C-IV serves as a histochemical marker of perisinusoidal basement membrane formation in liver disease[41]. It was further illustrated that S100A6 may be associated with PBC liver injury. The relative expression of log10 LINC00472 was positively correlated with the serum level of C-IV ($r = 0.482$, $P < 0.0001$), indicating that it was related to the disease severity of PBC. It was suggested that LINC00472 can be used as a marker of PBC staging. However, in our study, the four biomarkers did not correlate with the cholestasis indicator ALP, and we think this may be due to the following reasons: (1) The S100A6 protein was expressed in large quantities during the early period of cholestasis. This process may precede the increase in serum ALP level; (2) Proliferation of bile duct cells is characterized by irregular proliferation of intrahepatic bile ducts not only confined to portal areas, but also sprouting into periportal and parenchymal regions. This implies that the newly formed bile ducts are functionally ineffective[42,43]; and (3) In the late stage of liver fibrosis, considerable hepatocyte necrosis occurs.

Hepatocytes exposed to bile acids have been used in many studies on PBC. The most commonly used bile acid is GCDC, which is a type of toxic hydrophobic bile acid and can induce apoptosis of iBECs, form apoptotic bodies, and can lead to the pyruvate dehydrogenase complex E2 subunit as an autoimmune antigen to be exposed. A series of immune responses are then activated[44]. Hisamoto *et al*[45] studied the effects of hydrophobic bile acid on human BECs and autologous spleen mononuclear cells, especially the effects of GCDC on anion exchange protein

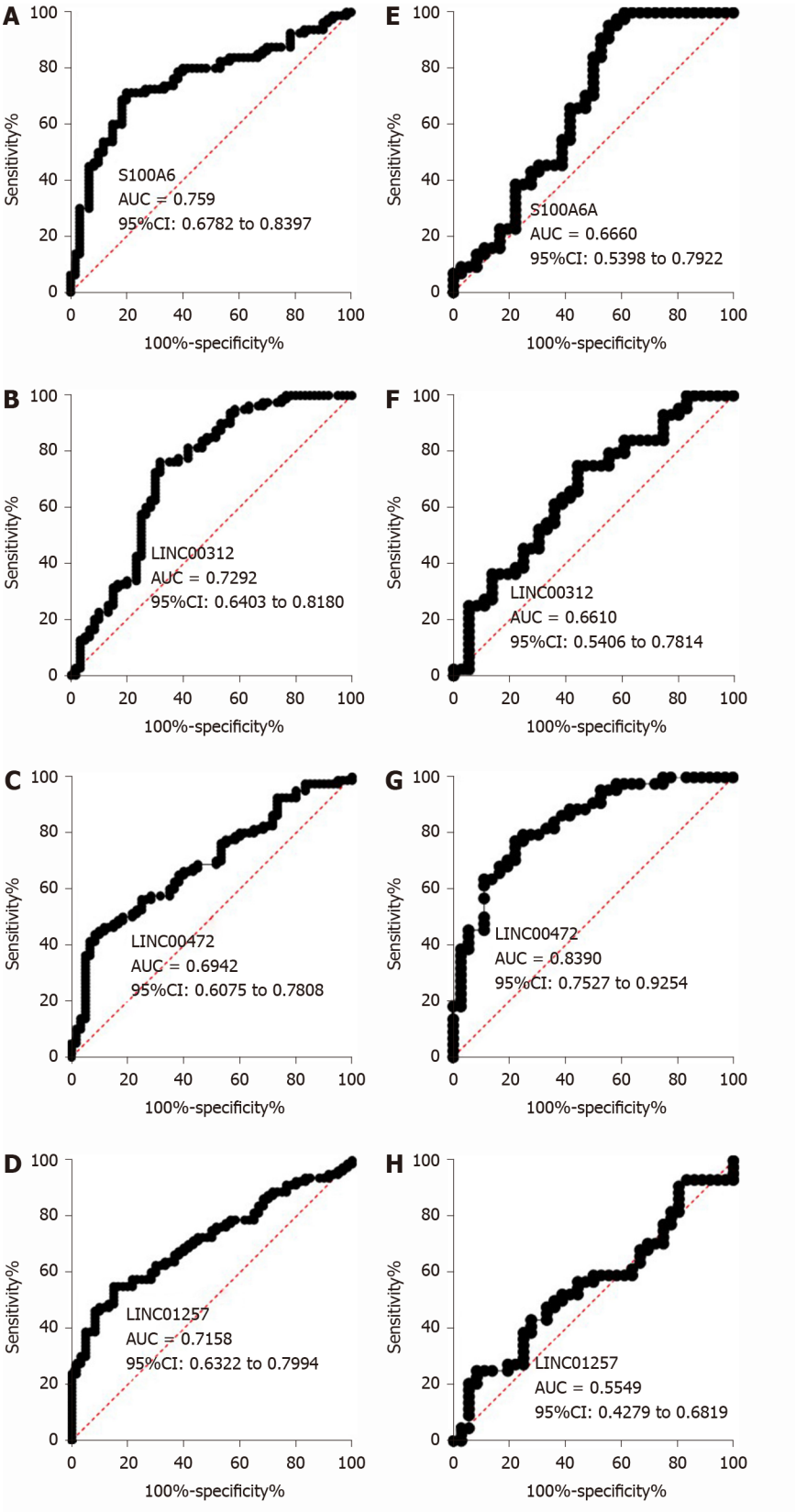



**Figure 8 Receiver operating characteristic curves of s100 calcium binding protein A6 protein, LINC00312, LINC00472 and LINC01257 for primary biliary cholangitis diagnosis and staging in the training set.** A-D: Receiver operating characteristic curves of s100 calcium binding protein A6 protein, LINC00312, LINC00472 and LINC01257 for primary biliary cholangitis diagnosis in the training set; E-H: Receiver operating characteristic curves of s100 calcium binding protein A6 protein, LINC00312, LINC00472 and LINC01257 for primary biliary cholangitis staging in the training set. AUC: Area under the curve; CI: Confidence interval.

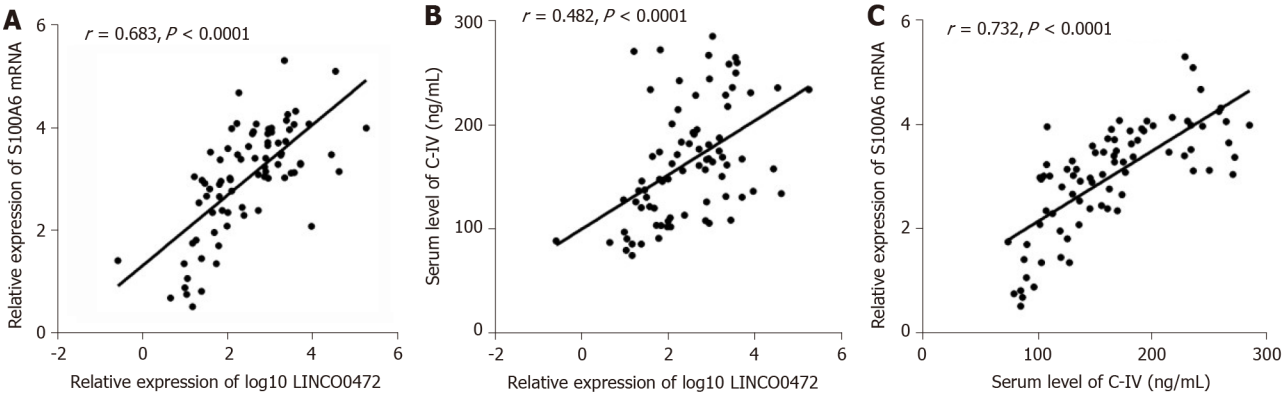



**Figure 9 Correlation analysis of biomarkers and clinical serological indices.** A: The positive correlation between relative expression of s100 calcium binding protein A6 protein messenger ribonucleic acid and log10 LINC00472, $r = 0.683$, $P < 0.0001$; B: The positive correlation between relative expression of log10 LINC00472 and serum level of collagen type IV, $r = 0.482$, $P < 0.0001$; C: The positive correlation between serum level of collagen type IV and relative expression of s100 calcium binding protein A6 protein messenger ribonucleic acid, $r = 0.732$, $P < 0.0001$.

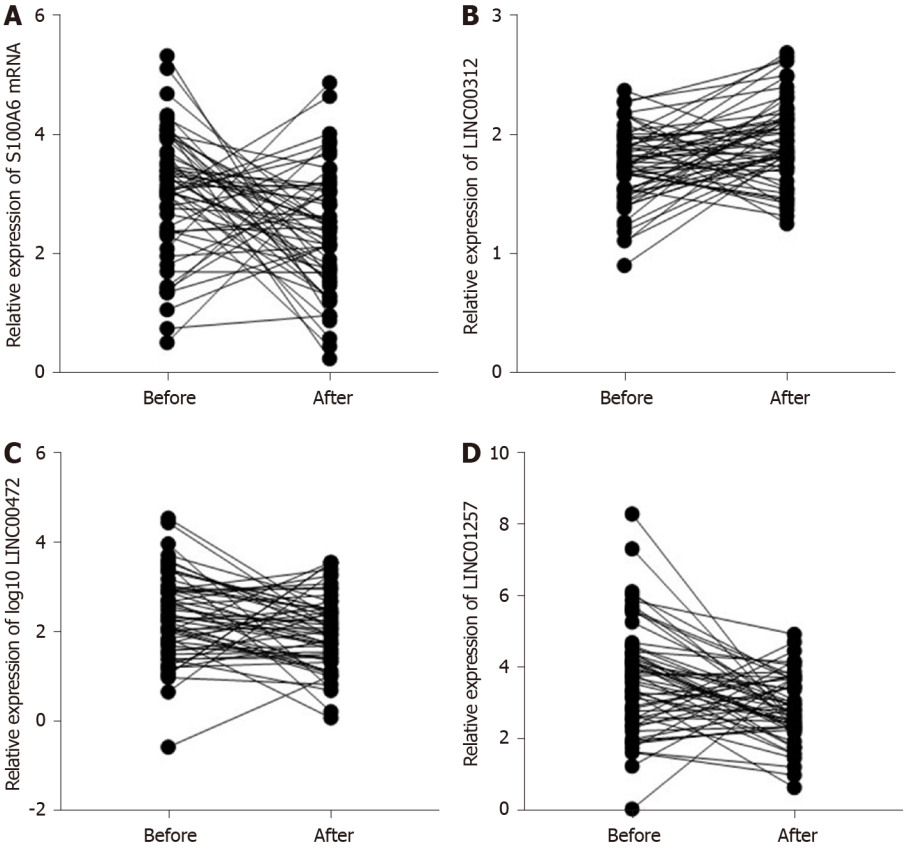



**Figure 10 Comparison and analysis of s100 calcium binding protein A6 protein messenger ribonucleic acid, LINC00312, log10 LINC00472, LINC01257 expression levels in primary biliary cholangitis patients before and after treatment using the paired *t*-test.** A: S100 calcium binding protein A6 protein messenger ribonucleic acid; B: LINC00312; C: log10 LINC00472; D: LINC01257.

expression of BECs and on the phenotype of BECs and local inflammatory response. It was proved that GCDC reduced the expression of anion exchange in BECs and accelerated the aging of BECs by inducing reactive oxygen species. Therefore, this study used GCDC to treat HiBECs to simulate a cholestatic environment and assess its damage to HiBECs. In this study, the expression levels of S100A6 mRNA, LINC00472 and LINC01257 were up-regulated while LINC00312 was down-regulated in GCDC-treated HiBECs compared with controls, consistent with the expression in plasma of PBC patients. It was further proved that these four indicators are related to PBC diagnosis and staging.

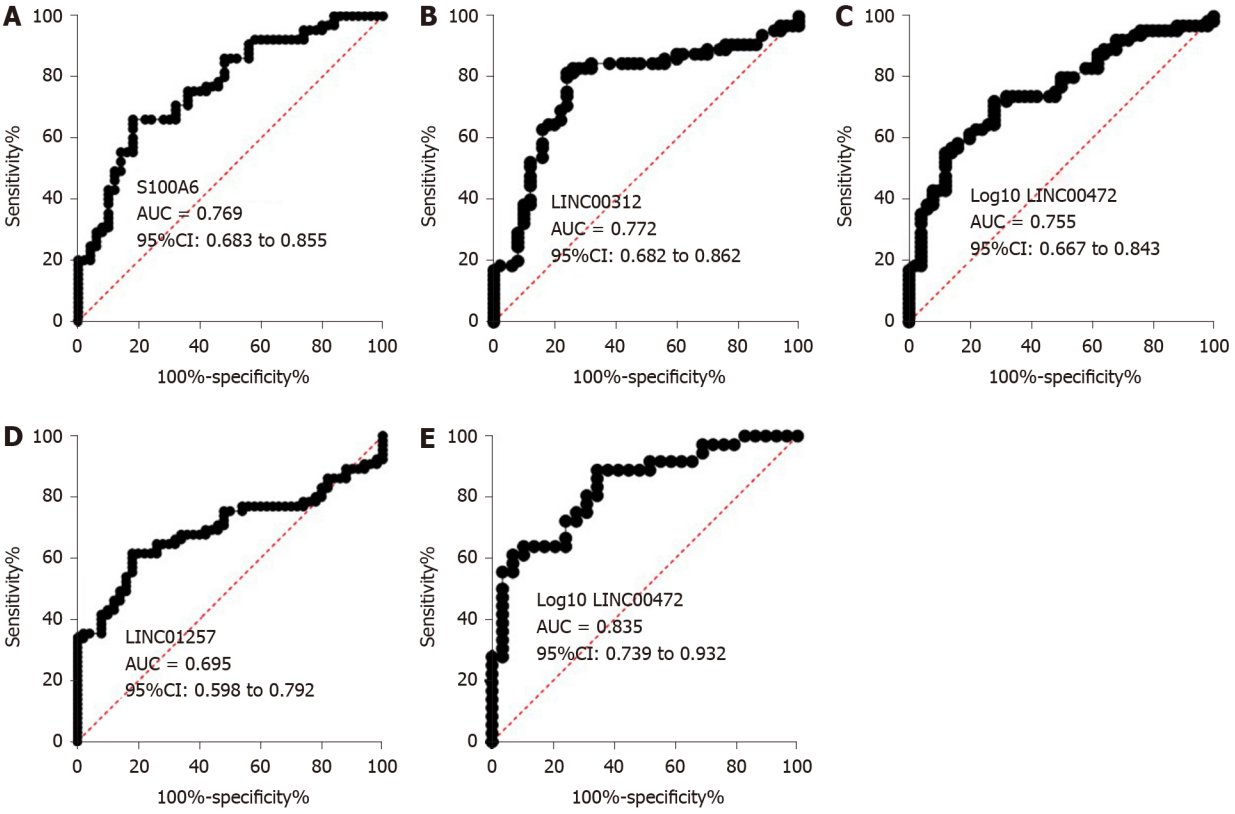



**Figure 11 Receiver operating characteristic curves of s100 calcium binding protein A6 protein, LINC00312, LINC00472 and LINC01257 for primary biliary cholangitis diagnosis and staging in the validation set.** A-D: Receiver operating characteristic curves of s100 calcium binding protein A6 protein, LINC00312, LINC00472 and LINC01257 for primary biliary cholangitis diagnosis in the validation set; E: Receiver operating characteristic curves of LINC00472 for primary biliary cholangitis staging in the validation set. AUC: Area under the curve; CI: Confidence interval.

The value of the above four biomarkers should be validated in an additional cohort of PBC patients and their specificity needs to be examined in other patient populations[46]. We chose another PBC cohort as the validation set. The AUC of the four genes were close to those in the training set. Therefore, the value of these four biomarkers in the diagnosis and staging of PCB was validated. However, in China, the vast majority are Han Chinese; therefore, it is difficult to verify these findings in other ethnic groups.

## CONCLUSION

In conclusion, the expression of S100A6 protein in BDL mice was up-regulated, the expression of S100A6 mRNA, LINC00472 and LINC01257 were up-regulated, while LINC00312 was down-regulated both in the plasma of PBC patients and HiBECs treated with GCDC compared with controls. Although our study was confined to the expression analysis of S100A6 mRNA, LINC00312, LINC00472 and LINC01257, warranting further studies to investigate the mechanisms underlying the functional role of these four markers, nevertheless their potential as biomarkers for diagnosis and staging of PBC was elucidated by multiple evaluations in this study.

## ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

### *Research background*

Primary biliary cholangitis (PBC) is an autoimmune liver disease that mostly affects women. Fatigue and persistent pruritus are the most obvious symptoms. PBC may lead to cholestasis, liver fibrosis, cirrhosis and, eventually, liver failure. The injury mechanism of intrahepatic biliary epithelial cells is the key to investigating the pathogenesis of PBC, but the accurate relationship between cholestasis and liver

fibrosis is still indistinct.

### Research motivation

To explore the target genes of intrahepatic biliary epithelial cell injury in PBC. To search for plasma biomarkers for early diagnosis and staging of PBC. To lay a foundation for further study on the pathogenesis of PBC.

### Research objectives

To explore the potential diagnosis and staging value of plasma S100 calcium binding protein A6 (S100A6) messenger ribonucleic acid (mRNA), LINC00312, LINC00472, and LINC01257 in primary biliary cholangitis.

### Research methods

The up-regulation of S100A6 was identified by double immunofluorescence in a bile duct ligation mouse model. We used quantitative reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction to analyze the relative expression levels of S100A6 mRNA, long noncoding ribonucleic acids (lncRNAs) LINC00312, LINC00472 and LINC01257 both in patients with PBC and in human intrahepatic biliary epithelial cells treated with glycochenodeoxycholate.

### Research results

The relative expression levels of S100A6 mRNA, LINC00472 and LINC01257 were up-regulated while LINC00312 was down-regulated in both the plasma of patients with PBC and in human intrahepatic biliary epithelial cells treated with glycochenodeoxycholate.

### Research conclusions

These four genes may potentially act as novel biomarkers for the diagnosis of PBC. Moreover, LINC00472 acts as a biomarker for staging in PBC.

### Research perspectives

Although we have demonstrated that S100A6 and related lncRNAs may be biomarkers for the diagnosis and staging of PBC, their detailed value needs to be analyzed in a large sample. The specific mechanisms of S100A6 and lncRNAs require further investigation.

## REFERENCES


1 **Woolbright BL**, McGill MR, Yan H, Jaeschke H. Bile Acid-Induced Toxicity in HepaRG Cells Recapitulates the Response in Primary Human Hepatocytes. *Basic Clin Pharmacol Toxicol* 2016; **118**: 160-167 [PMID: 26176423 DOI: 10.1111/bcpt.12449]

2 **Salama I**, Malone PS, Mihaimeed F, Jones JL. A review of the S100 proteins in cancer. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2008; **34**: 357-364 [PMID: 17566693 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2007.04.009]

3 **Matsuzawa SI**, Reed JC. Siah-1, SIP, and Ebi collaborate in a novel pathway for beta-catenin degradation linked to p53 responses. *Mol Cell* 2001; **7**: 915-926 [PMID: 11389839 DOI: 10.1016/s1097-2765(01)00242-8]

4 **Filipek A**, Kuźnicki J. Molecular cloning and expression of a mouse brain cDNA encoding a novel protein target of calcyclin. *J Neurochem* 1998; **70**: 1793-1798 [PMID: 9572262 DOI: 10.1046/j.1471-4159.1998.70051793.x]

5 **Veneziano D**, Di Bella S, Nigita G, Laganà A, Ferro A, Croce CM. Noncoding RNA: Current Deep Sequencing Data Analysis Approaches and Challenges. *Hum Mutat* 2016; **37**: 1283-1298 [PMID: 27516218 DOI: 10.1002/humu.23066]

6 **Geisler S**, Coller J. RNA in unexpected places: long non-coding RNA functions in diverse cellular contexts. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2013; **14**: 699-712 [PMID: 24105322 DOI: 10.1038/nrm3679]

7 **Yang Y**, Cai Y, Wu G, Chen X, Liu Y, Wang X, Yu J, Li C, Chen X, Jose PA, Zhou L, Zeng C. Plasma long non-coding RNA, CoroMarker, a novel biomarker for diagnosis of coronary artery disease. *Clin Sci (Lond)* 2015; **129**: 675-685 [PMID: 26201019 DOI: 10.1042/CS20150121]

8 **Tang J**, Jiang R, Deng L, Zhang X, Wang K, Sun B. Circulation long non-coding RNAs act as biomarkers for predicting tumorigenesis and metastasis in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Oncotarget* 2015; **6**: 4505-4515 [PMID: 25714016 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.2934]

9 **Bowlus CL**, Gershwin ME. The diagnosis of primary biliary cirrhosis. *Autoimmun Rev* 2014; **13**: 441-444 [PMID: 24424173 DOI: 10.1016/j.autrev.2014.01.041]

10 **European Association for the Study of the Liver**. EASL Clinical Practice Guidelines: management of cholestatic liver diseases. *J Hepatol* 2009; **51**: 237-267 [PMID: 19501929 DOI:

10.1016/j.jhep.2009.04.009]
11 **Zweers SJ**, de Vries EM, Lenicek M, Tolenaars D, de Waart DR, Koelfat KV, Groen AK, Olde Damink SW, Beuers U, Ponsioen C, Jansen PL, Schaap FG. Prolonged fibroblast growth factor 19 response in patients with primary sclerosing cholangitis after an oral chenodeoxycholic acid challenge. *Hepatol Int* 2017; **11**: 132-140 [PMID: 27696157 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-016-9769-7]
12 **Barrett T**, Wilhite SE, Ledoux P, Evangelista C, Kim IF, Tomashevsky M, Marshall KA, Phillippy KH, Sherman PM, Holko M, Yefanov A, Lee H, Zhang N, Robertson CL, Serova N, Davis S, Soboleva A. NCBI GEO: archive for functional genomics data sets--update. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2013; **41**: D991-D995 [PMID: 23193258 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gks1193]
13 **Messeguer X**, Escudero R, Farré D, Núñez O, Martínez J, Albà MM. PROMO: detection of known transcription regulatory elements using species-tailored searches. *Bioinformatics* 2002; **18**: 333-334 [PMID: 11847087 DOI: 10.1093/bioinformatics/18.2.333]
14 **Alvaro D**, Alpini G, Onori P, Franchitto A, Glaser S, Le Sage G, Gigliozzi A, Vetuschi A, Morini S, Attili AF, Gaudio E. Effect of ovariectomy on the proliferative capacity of intrahepatic rat cholangiocytes. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **123**: 336-344 [PMID: 12105861 DOI: 10.1053/gast.2002.34169]
15 **Xiao J**, Liu A, Lu X, Chen X, Li W, He S, He B, Chen Q. Prognostic significance of TCF21 mRNA expression in patients with lung adenocarcinoma. *Sci Rep* 2017; **7**: 2027 [PMID: 28515486 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-017-02290-2]
16 **Wang L**, Yan X, Liu ML, Song KJ, Sun XF, Pan WW. Prediction of RNA-protein interactions by combining deep convolutional neural network with feature selection ensemble method. *J Theor Biol* 2019; **461**: 230-238 [PMID: 30321541 DOI: 10.1016/j.jtbi.2018.10.029]
17 **Grattagliano I**, Portincasa P, Palmieri VO, Palasciano G. Mutual changes of thioredoxin and nitrosothiols during biliary cirrhosis: results from humans and cholestatic rats. *Hepatology* 2007; **45**: 331-339 [PMID: 17256724 DOI: 10.1002/hep.21519]
18 **Soroka CJ**, Lee JM, Azzaroli F, Boyer JL. Cellular localization and up-regulation of multidrug resistance-associated protein 3 in hepatocytes and cholangiocytes during obstructive cholestasis in rat liver. *Hepatology* 2001; **33**: 783-791 [PMID: 11283840 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2001.23501]
19 **Wen YA**, Liu D, Zhou QY, Huang SF, Luo P, Xiang Y, Sun S, Luo D, Dong YF, Zhang LP. Biliary intervention aggravates cholestatic liver injury, and induces hepatic inflammation, proliferation and fibrogenesis in BDL mice. *Exp Toxicol Pathol* 2011; **63**: 277-284 [PMID: 20149605 DOI: 10.1016/j.etp.2010.01.006]
20 **Bouter Y**, Meller B, Sahlmann CO, Wolf BJ, Langer L, Bankstahl JP, Wester HJ, Kropf S, Meller J, Bouter C. Immunohistochemical detection of chemokine receptor 4 expression in chronic osteomyelitis confirms specific uptake in 68Ga-Pentixafor-PET/CT. *Nuklearmedizin* 2018; **57**: 198-203 [PMID: 30267402 DOI: 10.3413/Nukmed-0971-18-04]
21 **Gurung A**, Yoshida EM, Scudamore CH, Hashim A, Erb SR, Webber DL. Primary hepatic neuroendocrine tumour requiring live donor liver transplantation: case report and concise review. *Ann Hepatol* 2012; **11**: 715-720 [PMID: 22947536]
22 **Woolbright BL**, Dorko K, Antoine DJ, Clarke JI, Gholami P, Li F, Kumer SC, Schmitt TM, Forster J, Fan F, Jenkins RE, Park BK, Hagenbuch B, Olyaee M, Jaeschke H. Bile acid-induced necrosis in primary human hepatocytes and in patients with obstructive cholestasis. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 2015; **283**: 168-177 [PMID: 25636263 DOI: 10.1016/j.taap.2015.01.015]
23 **Czul F**, Levy C. Novel Therapies on Primary Biliary Cirrhosis. *Clin Liver Dis* 2016; **20**: 113-130 [PMID: 26593294 DOI: 10.1016/j.cld.2015.08.006]
24 **Trivedi PJ**, Hirschfield GM. Primary biliary cirrhosis: Renaming primary biliary cirrhosis-clarity or confusion? *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2015; **12**: 678-679 [PMID: 26553417 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2015.187]
25 **Li J**, Zhang M, An G, Ma Q. LncRNA TUG1 acts as a tumor suppressor in human glioma by promoting cell apoptosis. *Exp Biol Med (Maywood)* 2016; **241**: 644-649 [PMID: 26748401 DOI: 10.1177/1535370215622708]
26 **Livak KJ**, Schmittgen TD. Analysis of relative gene expression data using real-time quantitative PCR and the 2(-Delta Delta C(T)) Method. *Methods* 2001; **25**: 402-408 [PMID: 11846609 DOI: 10.1006/meth.2001.1262]
27 **Xu L**, Bao L, Gu S, Qin C. [Real-time PCR Detection Method for the Reston Subtype of the Ebola Virus]. *Bing Du Xue Bao* 2015; **31**: 276-281 [PMID: 26470534]
28 **Zimmerman DW**, Zumbo BD. The Relative Power of the Wilcoxon-Mann-Whitney Test and Student t Test Under Simple Bounded Transformations. *J Gen Psychol* 1990; **117**: 425-436 [PMID: 28142339 DOI: 10.1080/00221309.1990.9921148]
29 **Lorbeer R**, Ittermann T, Völzke H, Gläser S, Ewert R, Felix SB, Dörr M. Assessing cutoff values for increased exercise blood pressure to predict incident hypertension in a general population. *J Hypertens* 2015; **33**: 1386-1393 [PMID: 25807218 DOI: 10.1097/HJH.0000000000000568]
30 **Tag CG**, Sauer-Lehnen S, Weiskirchen S, Borkham-Kamphorst E, Tolba RH, Tacke F, Weiskirchen R. Bile duct ligation in mice: induction of inflammatory liver injury and fibrosis by obstructive cholestasis. *J Vis Exp* 2015 [PMID: 25741630 DOI: 10.3791/52438]
31 **Afroze SH**, Munshi MK, Martínez AK, Uddin M, Gergely M, Szynkarski C, Guerrier M, Nizamutdinov D, Dostal D, Glaser S. Activation of the renin-angiotensin system stimulates biliary hyperplasia during cholestasis induced by extrahepatic bile duct ligation. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2015; **308**: G691-G701 [PMID: 25678505 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00116.2014]

32 **Graf A**, Meng F, Hargrove L, Kennedy L, Han Y, Francis T, Hodges K, Ueno Y, Nguyen Q, Greene JF, Francis H. Knockout of histidine decarboxylase decreases bile duct ligation-induced biliary hyperplasia *via* downregulation of the histidine decarboxylase/VEGF axis through PKA-ERK1/2 signaling. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2014; **307**: G813-G823 [PMID: 25169977 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00188.2014]

33 **Allen BG**, Andrea JE, Sutherland C, Schönekess BO, Walsh MP. Molecular cloning of chicken calcyclin (S100A6) and identification of putative isoforms. *Biochem Cell Biol* 1997; **75**: 733-738 [PMID: 9599662]

34 **Ilg EC**, Schäfer BW, Heizmann CW. Expression pattern of S100 calcium-binding proteins in human tumors. *Int J Cancer* 1996; **68**: 325-332 [PMID: 8903474 DOI: 10.1002/(SICI)1097-0215(19961104)68:3<325::AID-IJC10>3.0.CO;2-7]

35 **Koga H**, Sakisaka S, Ohishi M, Sata M, Tanikawa K. Nuclear DNA fragmentation and expression of Bcl-2 in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 1997; **25**: 1077-1084 [PMID: 9141420 DOI: 10.1002/hep.510250505]

36 **Joo JH**, Yoon SY, Kim JH, Paik SG, Min SR, Lim JS, Choe IS, Choi I, Kim JW. S100A6 (calcyclin) enhances the sensitivity to apoptosis *via* the upregulation of caspase-3 activity in Hep3B cells. *J Cell Biochem* 2008; **103**: 1183-1197 [PMID: 17721932 DOI: 10.1002/jcb.21496]

37 **Hauptman N**, Glavač D. Long non-coding RNA in cancer. *Int J Mol Sci* 2013; **14**: 4655-4669 [PMID: 23443164 DOI: 10.3390/ijms14034655]

38 **Taghizadeh E**, Taheri F, Samadian MM, Soudyab M, Abi A, Gheibi Hayat SM. Role of long non-coding RNAs (LncRNAs) in multiple sclerosis: a brief review. *Neurol Sci* 2020; **41**: 2443-2451 [PMID: 32350675 DOI: 10.1007/s10072-020-04425-2]

39 **Zhang W**, Huang C, Gong Z, Zhao Y, Tang K, Li X, Fan S, Shi L, Li X, Zhang P, Zhou Y, Huang D, Liang F, Zhang X, Wu M, Cao L, Wang J, Li Y, Xiong W, Zeng Z, Li G. Expression of LINC00312, a long intergenic non-coding RNA, is negatively correlated with tumor size but positively correlated with lymph node metastasis in nasopharyngeal carcinoma. *J Mol Histol* 2013; **44**: 545-554 [PMID: 23529758 DOI: 10.1007/s10735-013-9503-x]

40 **Shen Y**, Katsaros D, Loo LW, Hernandez BY, Chong C, Canuto EM, Biglia N, Lu L, Risch H, Chu WM, Yu H. Prognostic and predictive values of long non-coding RNA LINC00472 in breast cancer. *Oncotarget* 2015; **6**: 8579-8592 [PMID: 25865225 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.3287]

41 **Mak KM**, Mei R. Basement Membrane Type IV Collagen and Laminin: An Overview of Their Biology and Value as Fibrosis Biomarkers of Liver Disease. *Anat Rec (Hoboken)* 2017; **300**: 1371-1390 [PMID: 28187500 DOI: 10.1002/ar.23567]

42 **Alvaro D**, Gigliozzi A, Attili AF. Regulation and deregulation of cholangiocyte proliferation. *J Hepatol* 2000; **33**: 333-340 [PMID: 10952254 DOI: 10.1016/s0168-8278(00)80377-3]

43 **Priester S**, Wise C, Glaser SS. Involvement of cholangiocyte proliferation in biliary fibrosis. *World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol* 2010; **1**: 30-37 [PMID: 21607140 DOI: 10.4291/wjgp.v1.i2.30]

44 **Lleo A**, Selmi C, Invernizzi P, Podda M, Coppel RL, Mackay IR, Gores GJ, Ansari AA, Van de Water J, Gershwin ME. Apotopes and the biliary specificity of primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2009; **49**: 871-879 [PMID: 19185000 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22736]

45 **Hisamoto S**, Shimoda S, Harada K, Iwasaka S, Onohara S, Chong Y, Nakamura M, Bekki Y, Yoshizumi T, Ikegami T, Maehara Y, He XS, Gershwin ME, Akashi K. Hydrophobic bile acids suppress expression of AE2 in biliary epithelial cells and induce bile duct inflammation in primary biliary cholangitis. *J Autoimmun* 2016; **75**: 150-160 [PMID: 27592379 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaut.2016.08.006]

46 **Wilson JL**, Altman RB. Biomarkers: Delivering on the expectation of molecularly driven, quantitative health. *Exp Biol Med (Maywood)* 2018; **243**: 313-322 [PMID: 29199461 DOI: 10.1177/1535370217744775]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

*World J Gastroenterol* 2021 May 7; 27(17): 1993-2014

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i17.1993

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Basic Study

# Long non-coding RNA TP73-AS1 promotes pancreatic cancer growth and metastasis through miRNA-128-3p/GOLM1 axis

Bin Wang, Xing Sun, Ke-Jian Huang, Li-Sheng Zhou, Zheng-Jun Qiu

**ORCID number:** Bin Wang 0000-0002-2971-773X; Xing Sun 0000-0001-5256-9758; Ke-Jian Huang 0000-0001-9093-4138; Li-Sheng Zhou 0000-0002-4498-8765; Zheng-Jun Qiu 0000-0002-8318-847X.

**Author contributions:** Qiu ZJ and Wang B conceived and supervised the study and wrote the manuscript; Wang B performed most of the experiments and data analyses; Sun X, Zhou LS, and Huang KJ performed Western blot experiments and data analysis; Zhou LS took part in the discussions; all the authors discussed the results, commented on the manuscript, and approved the final version of the article.

**Supported by** National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 81974372.

**Institutional review board statement:** The study was reviewed and approved by the Medical Ethics Committee of Shanghai First People's Hospital Institutional Review Board (No. 2019KY065).

**Institutional animal care and use committee statement:** All procedures involving animals were reviewed and approved by the Institutional Animal Care and Use Committee of the Animal Ethics

**Bin Wang, Xing Sun, Ke-Jian Huang, Li-Sheng Zhou, Zheng-Jun Qiu,** Department of General Surgery, Shanghai General Hospital, Shanghai Jiao Tong University School of Medicine, Shanghai 200080, China

**Corresponding author:** Zheng-Jun Qiu, MD, Chief Doctor, Director, Surgeon, Department of General Surgery, Shanghai General Hospital, Shanghai Jiao Tong University School of Medicine, No. 100 Haining Road, Shanghai 200080, China. qiuzjdoctor@sina.com

## Abstract

***BACKGROUND***

Previous studies have suggested that long non-coding RNAs (lncRNA) TP73-AS1 is significantly upregulated in several cancers. However, the biological role and clinical significance of TP73-AS1 in pancreatic cancer (PC) remain unclear.

***AIM***

To investigate the role of TP73-AS1 in the growth and metastasis of PC.

***METHODS***

The expression of lncRNA TP73-AS1, miR-128-3p, and *GOLM1* in PC tissues and cells was detected by quantitative real-time polymerase chain reaction. The bioinformatics prediction software ENCORI was used to predict the putative binding sites of miR-128-3p. The regulatory roles of TP73-AS1 and miR-128-3p in cell proliferation, migration, and invasion abilities were verified by Cell Counting Kit-8, wound-healing, and transwell assays, as well as flow cytometry and Western blot analysis. The interactions among TP73-AS1, miR-128-3p, and GOLM1 were explored by bioinformatics prediction, luciferase assay, and Western blot.

***RESULTS***

The expression of TP73-AS1 and miRNA-128-3p was dysregulated in PC tissues and cells. High TP73-AS1 expression was correlated with a poor prognosis. TP73-AS1 silencing inhibited PC cell proliferation, migration, and invasion *in vitro* as well as suppressed tumor growth *in vivo*. Mechanistically, TP73-AS1 was validated to promote PC progression through GOLM1 upregulation by competitively binding to miR-128-3p.

***CONCLUSION***

Our results demonstrated that TP73-AS1 promotes PC progression by regulating

Committee of Shanghai First People's Hospital (No. 2019 AW050).

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** The authors declare no conflicts of interest for this work.

**Data sharing statement:** The authors agree with the data sharing.

**ARRIVE guidelines statement:** The authors have read the ARRIVE guidelines, and the manuscript was prepared and revised according to the ARRIVE guidelines.



**Manuscript source:** Unsolicited manuscript

**Specialty type:** Gastroenterology and hepatology

**Country/Territory of origin:** China

**Peer-review report's scientific quality classification**

Grade A (Excellent): A
Grade B (Very good): B, B, B
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

**Received:** December 14, 2020
**Peer-review started:** December 14, 2020
**First decision:** February 11, 2021
**Revised:** February 24, 2021
**Accepted:** March 24, 2021
**Article in press:** March 24, 2021
**Published online:** May 7, 2021

**P-Reviewer:** Koustas E, Mikulic D,

the miR-128-3p/GOLM1 axis, which might provide a potential treatment strategy for patients with PC.

**Key Words:** Pancreatic cancer; Long non-coding RNA; TP73-AS1; miR-128-3p; GOLM1



**Core Tip:** In this study, the expression level of TP73-AS1 in pancreatic cancer (PC) was measured and its clinical significance was assessed. *In vitro* and *in vivo* experiments were performed to determine the roles of TP73-AS1 in the progression and development of PC. Moreover, the underlying molecular mechanisms were also illustrated, which could provide a novel therapeutic target for patients with PC.

**Citation:** Wang B, Sun X, Huang KJ, Zhou LS, Qiu ZJ. Long non-coding RNA TP73-AS1 promotes pancreatic cancer growth and metastasis through miRNA-128-3p/GOLM1 axis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; 27(17): 1993-2014
**URL:** https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v27/i17/1993.htm
**DOI:** https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v27.i17.1993

## INTRODUCTION

Pancreatic cancer (PC) is the fourth most frequent cause of cancer-related deaths with an extremely poor prognosis, especially in patients with advanced-stage PC [1,2]. Although standard treatments have been improved in recent years, the effectiveness of these treatments was still limited and surgical resection was the only chance to obtain curative treatment[2,3]. Hence, it is necessary to seek for new treatment to optimize therapeutic approaches.

Long non-coding RNAs (lncRNAs) are small endogenous non-coding RNAs whose lengths are larger than 200 nucleotides. LncRNAs have the capacity to regulate various biological processes such as tumor initiation, growth, metastasis, chemoresistance, and radioresistance by directly binding to partially complimentary sequences in their target genes[4-7]. Moreover, emerging evidence has revealed that lncRNAs could play crucial roles in the progression of PC[8,9]. LncRNA-BX111 was upregulated in pancreatic cancer and high BX111 expression was correlated with advance tumor-node-metastasis (TNM) stage, lymphatic invasion, and distant metastasis, as well as poor clinical prognosis in patients with PC[10]. Further investigation revealed that BX111 contributed to metastasis and progression of PC by regulating expression of ZEB1 and its downstream proteins E-cadherin and MMP2[10]. PVT1 was identified as a regulator of gemcitabine sensitivity with a genome-wide and piggyBac transposon-based genetic screening platform[11]. Therefore, lncRNAs may be new biological markers for disease diagnosis and could be taken as new drug targets, which would provide a new strategy for PC.

Dysregulation of TP73-AS1 has been identified in several human cancer types, including glioma, hepatocellular carcinoma, and non-small cell lung cancer[12-14]. However, little is known about the expression pattern and biological roles of TP73-AS1 in PC. In this study, the expression level of TP73-AS1 in PC was measured and its clinical significance was assessed. *In vitro* and *in vivo* experiments were performed to determine the roles of TP73-AS1 in the progression and development of PC. Further investigation indicated that the 3′ untranslated region (UTR) of *GOLM1* harbors a functional response element for miR-128-3p. Besides, miR-128-3p-3p could abrogate TP73-AS1-mediated expression of GOLM1, which suggested that TP73-AS1 could act as a molecular sponge to decrease miR-128-3p expression, thereby resulting in partial abolition of the translational repression of its target gene *GOLM1* in PC cells. Therefore, we hope that the underlying molecular mechanisms of TP73-AS1 could provide a novel therapeutic target for patients with PC.

Shimada S, Tantau AI
**S-Editor:** Fan JR
**L-Editor:** Wang TQ
**P-Editor:** Wang LL

## MATERIALS AND METHODS

### Clinical specimens

A total of 116 clinical PC tissues and corresponding normal tissues from surgical resection were collected at Shanghai General Hospital of Shanghai Jiao Tong University between April 2007 and July 2010. PC was diagnosed by pathological examinations. Patients were excluded if they received any treatments such as chemotherapy, radiotherapy, or molecular targeted therapy prior to surgery. All patients provided informed written consent prior to the use of these clinical materials for research purpose. This study was conducted in accordance with the ethical guidelines of the Declaration of Helsinki and approved by the Ethics Committee of Shanghai First People's Hospital (No. 2014-07DF), School of Medicine, Shanghai Jiaotong University (Shanghai, China). All human tissues were immediately frozen in liquid nitrogen until being used.

### Cell lines and transfection

Human PC cell lines (SW1990, PANC-1, BXPC-3, AsPc-1, and Capan-1) and human pancreatic duct epithelial cell line (H6C7) were obtained from the Shanghai Cell Bank of Chinese Academy of Sciences (Shanghai, China). Cells were cultured in Dulbecco's modified Eagle's medium (DMEM, Invitrogen, Carlsbad, CA, United States) supplemented with 10% fatal bovine serum (FBS, Invitrogen), 100 U/mL penicillin, and 100 μg/mL streptomycin (Hyclone, South Logan, UT, United States) in a humidified incubator (5% $CO_2$) at 37 °C. Small interfering RNAs (siRNAs) targeting TP73-AS1 (si-TP73-AS1#1, si-TP73-AS1#2, and si-TP73-AS1#3) and negative control (si-control) were purchased from GenePharma (Shanghai, China). MiR-128-3p, miR-NC, anti-miR-128-3p, and anti-miR-NC were obtained from Thermofisher. Cell transfection was performed using FuGENE HD Transfection Reagent (Roche, United States) according to the manufacturer's instructions.

### Quantitative reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction

Total RNA was isolated using TRIzol reagent (Invitrogen) from PC tissues and cell lines. RNA was reversely transcribed into cDNA using the PrimeScript™RT reagent Kit with gDNA Eraser (TakaRa, Dalian, China). Quantitative real-time polymerase chain reaction (qRT-PCR) was performed using FastStart Universal SYBR Green Master (Roche, Basel, Switzerland) on a Bio-Rad RT-PCR cycler (Bio-Rad, Hercules, United States). Glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase (GAPDH) and small RNA RNU6B (U6) were used as the internal controls for lncRNA/mRNA and miRNAs, respectively. Relative expression values of genes were analyzed by the $2^{-\Delta\Delta Ct}$ method.

### Cell proliferation, colony formation, and apoptosis assays

For cell proliferation assay, cells were plated into 96-well plates with four replicate wells per group and then incubated with 10 μL of CCK-8 reagent (Dojindo, Kumamoto, Japan). The absorbance was measured at 450 nm with a microplate reader (Bio-Tek, Winooski, United States) 2 h later. For colony formation assay, approximately 600 cells were plated into 6-well plates with three replicates. Cells were fixed with 10% formaldehyde and stained with 0.5% crystal violet 14 d later. Cell apoptosis was detected using Annexin-V-fluorescein isothiocyanate apoptosis detection kit (BD, Franklin Lakes, United States) according to the manufacturer's instructions. The apoptosis rate of cells was measured on a BD FACSAria™ II flow cytometer (BD).

### Transwell assay

Cell migration and invasion were evaluated using the Boyden chambers (Millipore; Merck KGaA, Germany) with an 8 mm pore size. Briefly, a total of $2 \times 10^4$ cells in 100 μL serum-free medium were transferred into the upper chamber, and the lower chamber was filled with medium containing 10% FBS. After 24 h incubation, cells were fixed with 10% formaldehyde for 15 min and stained with 0.5% crystal violet for 20 min at room temperate. The migrated cells were counted under an X71 inverted microscope in six randomly selected fields and captured using a microscope (Nikon). The invasion assay was performed in the same way as the migration assay did except that the inserts were pre-coated with Matrigel (BD).

### Luciferase reporter assay

The putative miR-128-3p binding sites in TP73-AS1 and GOLM1 3′UTR were synthesized and inserted into pMIR-REPORT™ miRNA Expression Reporter Vector

(Thermofisher). Their corresponding mutants were generated using MutanBEST Kit (TaKaRa). AsPc-1 and Capan-1 cells were co-transfected with these reporter plasmids and pMIR-REPORT β-gal, miR-128-3p mimics, or miR-128-3p inhibitors using Lipofectamine 3000 (Invitrogen). Luciferase activity was measured using Dual-Luciferase Reporter Assay System (Promega, WI, United States) 48 h after the transfection.

### RNA immunoprecipitation assay

PANC-1 and ASPC-1 cells transfected with miR-NC or miR-128-3p were harvested with revised importance-performance analysis lysis buffer (Cell Signaling Technology, Danvers, MA, United States) containing a proteinase inhibitor cocktail (Roche, IN, United States). The lysates were incubated with magnetic beads conjugated with human anti-Ago2 antibody and normal rabbit immunoglobulin G. Then RNA was isolated from the mixture with TRIzol reagent for qRT-PCR analysis.

### Western blot analysis

Western blot was performed as we previously described[15]. The primary antibodies used in this study are listed as following: Anti-GOLM1 (H00051280-PW1, Abnova, Taiwan), anti-GAPDH (#10494-1-AP, Proteintech, IL, United States), anti-E-cadherin (14-3249-82, CST, United States), anti-N-cadherin (MA1-91128, CST, United States), anti-Vimentin (PA5-27231, CST, United States), anti-Caspase-3 (700182, CST, United States), and anti-Bcl-2 (MA5-11757, CST, United States).

### In vivo xenograft experiment

All animal experiments were performed in compliance to institutional guidelines approved by the Use Committee for Animal Care and this study was approved by the Ethics Committees of Shanghai First People's Hospital of Shanghai Jiao Tong University (approval No. 201804SF). Female BALB/c-nude mice (4–6 wk of age) were purchased from Shanghai SJA Laboratory Animal Company (Shanghai, China) and maintained under specific pathogen free conditions. Capan-1 cells ($1 \times 10^7$; transfected with si-control or si-TP73-AS1#1) mingled with 100 μL serum-free medium were injected subcutaneously into to the flanks of the nude mice. All mice were sacrificed 4 wk after injection and then tumors were isolated and photographed. Tumor volumes were calculated using the formula length × width$^2$/2 and tumor weights were measured. For tail vein injection, $1 \times 10^6$ cells in serum-free medium were injected into 6 wk-old BALB/c-nude mice *via* the tail vein. Five weeks after injection, all mice were sacrificed and lung tissues were finally embedded with paraffin and subjected to hematoxylin and eosin (H&E) staining.

### Statistical analysis

Data are shown as the mean ± SD. The differences between groups were analyzed by Student's *t*-test or Chi-square test. The cumulative overall survival was calculated using the Kaplan-Meier method, and the log-rank test was used to analyze differences in the survival times. Data were analyzed using GraphPad software 7.0. $P < 0.05$ was considered significant.

## RESULTS

### TP73-AS1 is upregulated in PC and associated with a poor prognosis

To explore the roles of TP73-AS1 in PC, we first detected the expression of TP73-AS1 in the human pancreatic duct epithelial cell line (H6C7) and five PC cell lines by qRT-PCR. Our data indicated that TP73-AS1 expression was higher in all PC cell lines than in H6C7, especially in AsPc-1 and Capan-1 cells (Figure 1A). Then the expression of TP73-AS1 in 116 pairs of PC tissues and adjacent non-cancerous tissues was measured, and the results revealed that TP73-AS1 expression was significantly increased in PC tissues compared to the corresponding non-cancerous tissues (Figure 1B and C). Furthermore, it was shown that in the tissue samples of stages I and II PC patients, the expression levels of TP73-AS1 were lower than those in stage III PC patients (Figure 1D). Moreover, the associations between TP73-AS1 expression and the clinicopathological characteristics in PC patients were analyzed. The results suggested that increased TP73-AS1 expression was significantly correlated with tumor size, vessel infiltration, and TNM stage. Besides, no correlation was found between TP73-AS1 expression and other clinical pathological features (Table 1). Kaplan-Meier

**Table 1 Relationship between TP73-AS1 expression and clinicopathological features**

| Characteristic | (*n*) | TP73-AS1 expression | | *P* value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *n* = 116 | Low expression | High expression | |
| Age | | | | 0.7101 |
| < 60 | 65 | 32 | 33 | |
| ≥ 60 | 51 | 23 | 28 | |
| Gender | | | | 0.7026 |
| Male | 74 | 34 | 40 | |
| Female | 42 | 21 | 21 | |
| Tumor differentiation | | | | 0.5723 |
| Poor | 69 | 31 | 38 | |
| Middle and well | 47 | 24 | 23 | |
| Tumor size | | | | 0.008 |
| ≤ 2 cm | 48 | 31 | 17 | |
| > 2 cm | 68 | 26 | 42 | |
| Tumor site | | | | 0.4555 |
| Head | 64 | 28 | 36 | |
| Body | 52 | 27 | 25 | |
| Vessel infiltration | | | | 0.001 |
| Negative | 82 | 47 | 35 | |
| Positive | 34 | 8 | 26 | |
| Lymph node metastasis | | | | 0.5526 |
| No | 78 | 35 | 43 | |
| Yes | 38 | 20 | 18 | |
| TNM stage | | | | 0.0008 |
| I-II | 84 | 48 | 36 | |
| III | 32 | 7 | 25 | |

TNM: Tumor-node-metastasis.

survival results suggested that patients with higher TP73-AS1 expression had a shorter overall survival than those with lower TP73-AS1 expression (Figure 1E). These data indicated that TP73-AS1 might play a vital role in the progression of PC.

### *LncRNA TP73-AS1 is required for efficient PC cell proliferation, migration, and invasion*

In order to assess the biological functions of TP73-AS1, we knocked down TP73-AS1 by transfecting specific siRNAs in AsPc-1 and Capan-1 cells, which have higher endogenous TP73-AS1 expression. The knockdown efficacy was confirmed by qRT-PCR analysis. The expression of TP73-AS1 was markedly decreased in AsPc-1 and Capan-1 cells after transfecting with siRNAs targeting TP73-AS1 (Figure 2A). CCK-8 (Figure 2B) and colony formation assay (Figure 2C) showed that knockdown of TP73-AS1 in PC cells markedly restrained cell proliferation. Furthermore, cell apoptosis was highly promoted by depletion of TP73-AS1 in AsPc-1 and Capan-1 cells (Figure 2D). In addition, in the transwell assay, TP73-AS1 silencing could effectively impede the invasive ability of PC cells (Figure 2E and F). These data revealed that TP73-AS1 acts as an oncogene and depletion of TP73-AS1 inhibits PC cell growth and invasion *in vitro*.

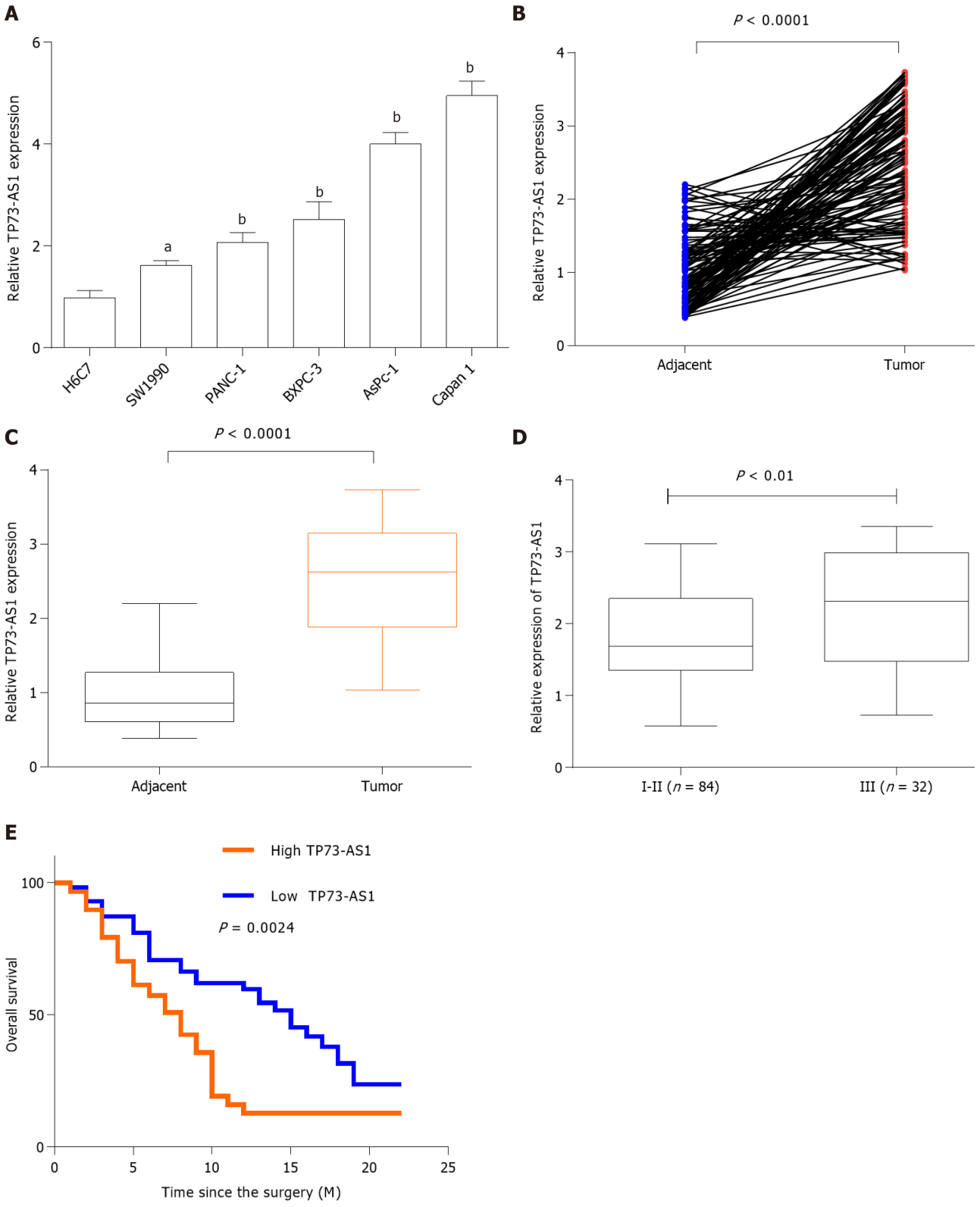
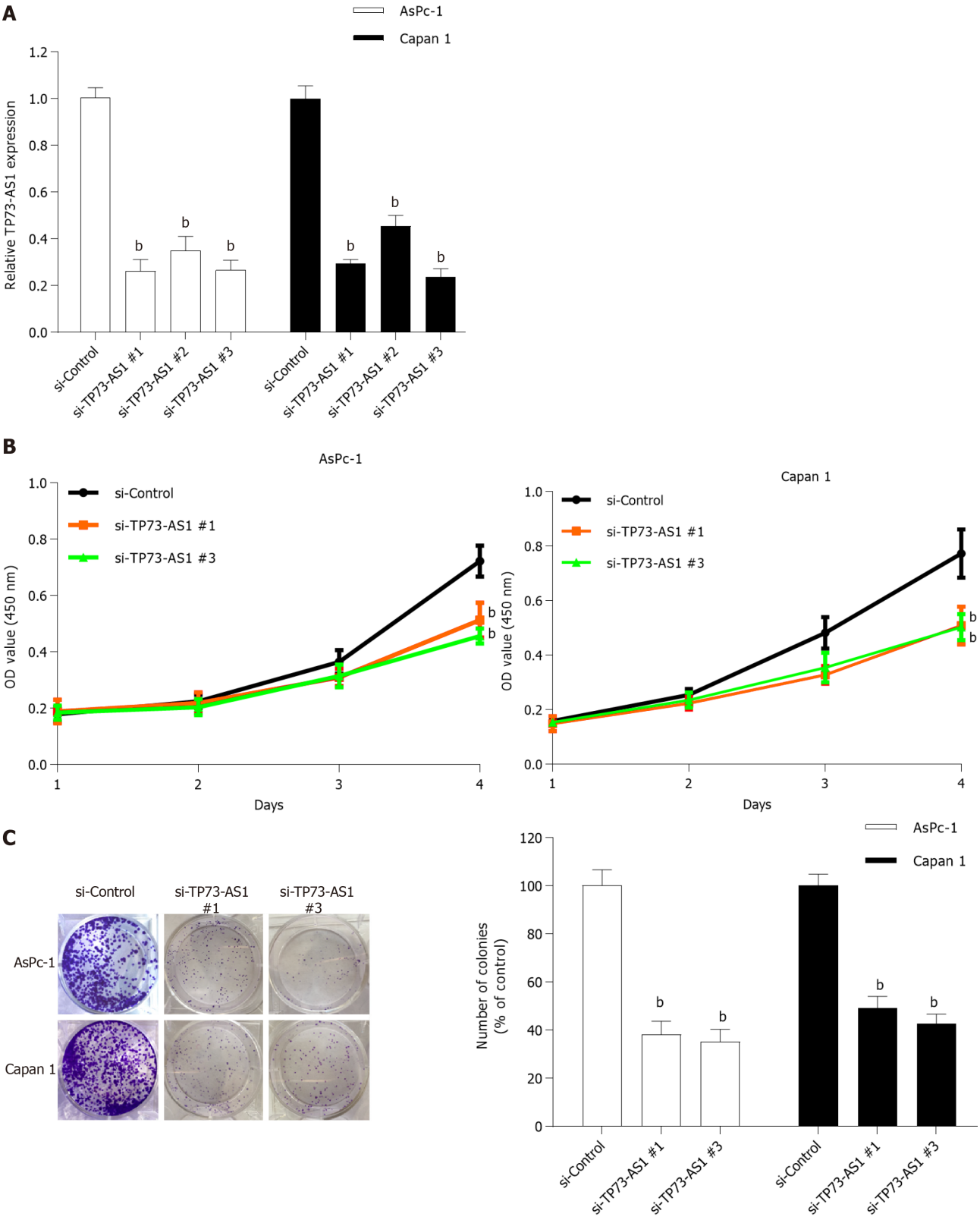



**Figure 1 Aberrantly expressed TP73-AS1 in pancreatic cancer cells and tissues.** A: TP73-AS1 expression in pancreatic cancer (PC) cell lines and an immortalized human pancreatic duct epithelial cell (H6C7) detected by quantitative real-time polymerase chain reaction; B: The relative expression of TP73-AS1 in 116 paired PC tissues and adjacent non-tumor tissues; C: TP73-AS1 is highly expressed in collected PC tissues; D: The different expression of TP73-AS1 between tumor-node-metastasis (TNM) stage I-II; and TNM stage III; E: Kaplan-Meier analysis of the overall survival in patients with PC based on the levels of TP73-AS1 expression. $^{a}P < 0.05$; $^{b}P < 0.01$.

### *LncRNA TP73-AS1 functions as a competing endogenous RNA and sponges miR-128-3p in PC cells*

Accumulating evidence suggests that lncRNAs could bind to miRNAs and function as a molecular sponge in the tumorigenesis of various cancers[4]. To elucidate the


A
AsPc-1
Capan 1
Relative TP73-AS1 expression
si-Control
si-TP73-AS1 #1
si-TP73-AS1 #2
si-TP73-AS1 #3
B
AsPc-1
Capan 1
si-Control
si-TP73-AS1 #1
si-TP73-AS1 #3
OD value (450 nm)
Days
C
si-Control
si-TP73-AS1 #1
si-TP73-AS1 #3
AsPc-1
Capan 1
Number of colonies (% of control)

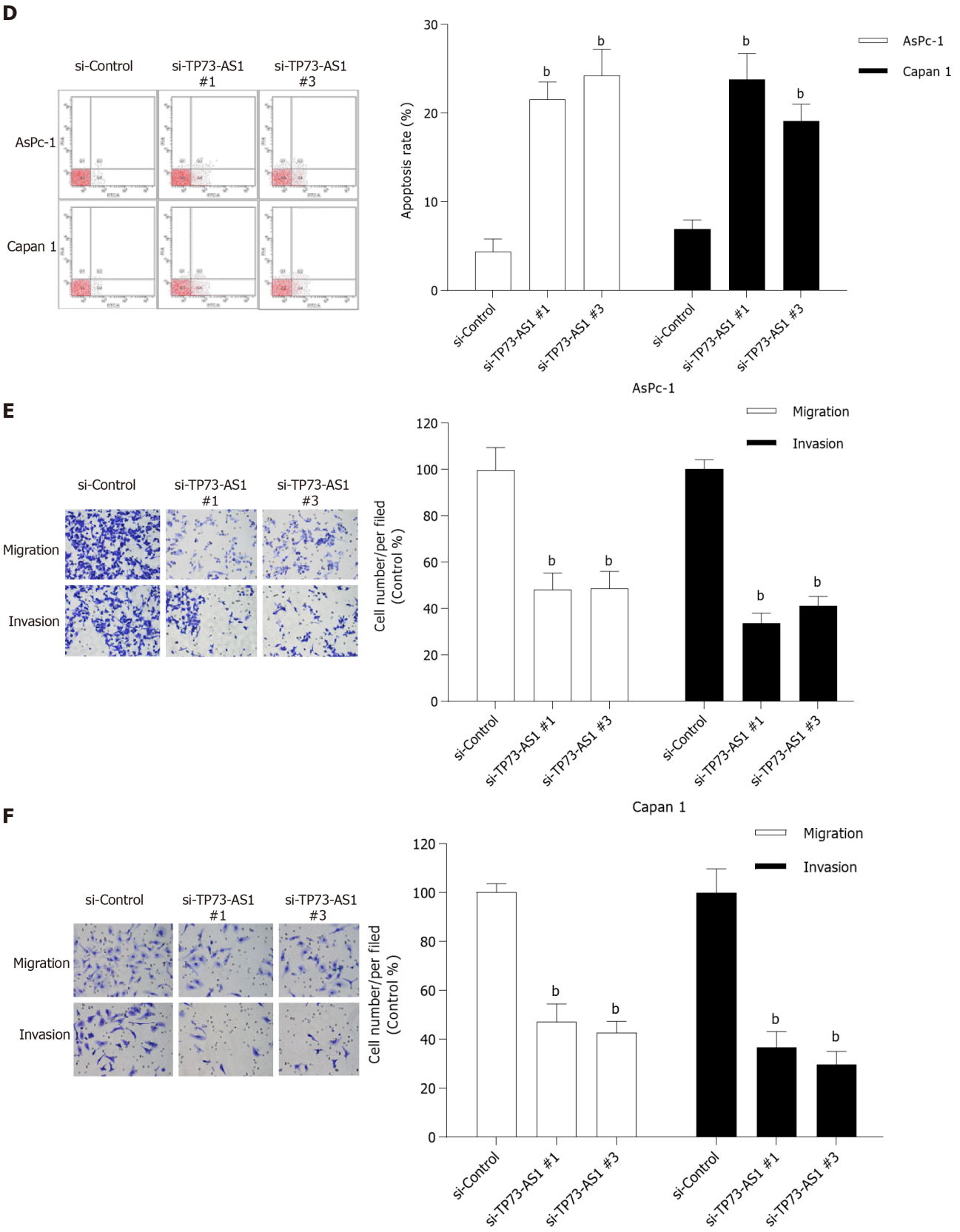



**Figure 2 Knockdown of TP73-AS1 suppresses cell proliferation and invasion *in vitro*.** A: Quantitative real-time polymerase chain reaction analysis of TP73-AS1 expression in AsPc-1 and Capan-1 cells transfected with si-control and small interfering RNAs targeting TP73-AS1; B: CCK-8 proliferation assay in pancreatic cancer cells transfected with si-control, si-TP73-AS1#1, or si-TP73-AS1#3; C: Colony formation assay in AsPc-1 and Capan-1 cells transfected with si-control, si-TP73-AS1#1, or si-TP73-AS1#3; D: Role of TP73-AS1 on AsPc-1 and Capan-1 cells apoptosis checked by flow cytometry assay; E and F: Effect of TP73-AS1 silencing on the migration and invasion ability of AsPc-1 (E) and Capan-1 (F) cell determined by transwell assay. $^{a}P < 0.05$; $^{b}P < 0.01$.

underlying mechanism of TP73-AS1 involved in PC progression, the potential target miRNAs of TP73-AS1 were forecasted with bioinformatics analysis software ( http://starbase.sysu.edu.cn). Among these potential targets, miR-128-3p was chosen for further study because it had been validated as a tumor suppressor in PC (Figure 3A)[16]. Dual-luciferase reporter assay was used to validate the relationship between TP73-AS1 and miR-128-3p. The activity of the wild-type luciferase reporter gene was significantly reduced following transfection with miR-128-3p mimics, whereas the activity of the reporter gene containing the mutant sequence showed no significant change, which indicated that TP73-AS1 could bind to the specific sites of miR-128-3p (Figure 3B). Moreover, anti-Ago2 RNA immunoprecipitation in AsPc-1 and Capan-1 cells transiently overexpressing miR-128-3p could significantly increase the amount of TP73-AS1 (Figure 3C), which could further validate their binding potential. The expression of miR-128-3p was significantly increased in PC cells transfected with si-TP73-AS1#1 and si-TP73-AS1#3 (Figure 3D). Then, we measured miR-128-3p expression level and the relationship between TP73-AS1 and miR-128-3p expression in PC tissues. Interestingly, qRT-PCR assay showed that the miR-128-3p level was remarkably reduced in PC tissues (Figure 3E) and the endogenous miR-128-3p level was negatively correlated with TP73-AS1 in PC tissues (Figure 3F). These results suggested that TP73-AS1 might function as a competing endogenous RNA (ceRNA) for miR-128-3p.

### *MiR-128-3p-3p inhibits pancreatic cell proliferation, migration, and invasion*

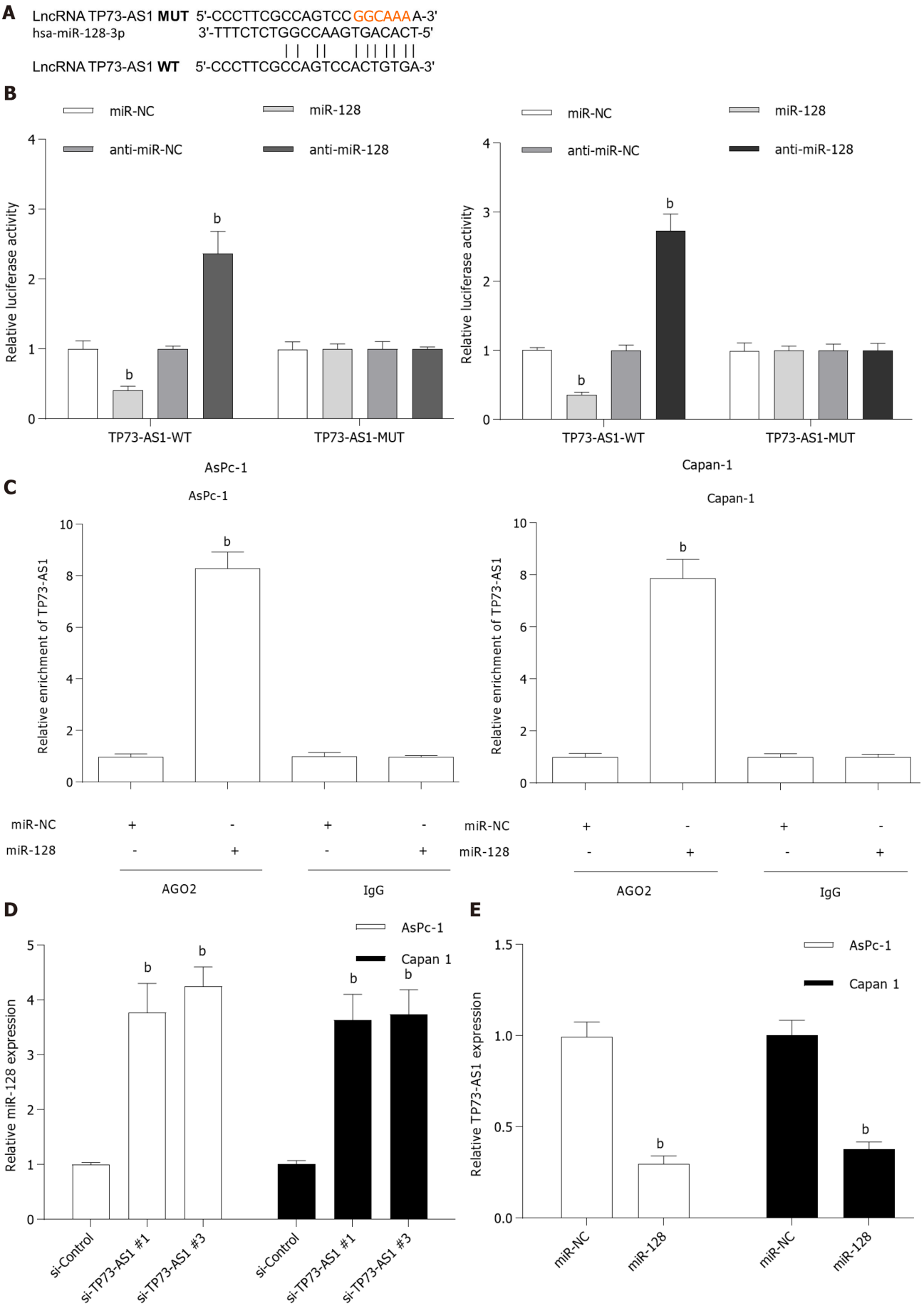
MiR-128-3p was reported to be a tumor suppressor in several cancers, including PC[16,17]. But its effects in the progression of PC are largely unknown. To explore the roles of miR-128-3p in PC cell growth and mobility, miR-128-3p mimics were transfected in AsPc-1 and Capan-1 cells (Figure 4A). CCK-8 (Figure 4B) and colony formation assays (Figure 4C) revealed that miR-128-3p had significant negative regulation effects on the ability of cell proliferation in AsPc-1 and Capan-1 cells. Flow cytometry assay indicated that overexpression of miR-128-3p increased the number of apoptotic cells both in AsPc-1 and Capan-1 cells (Figure 4D). Meanwhile, transwell assays demonstrated that miR-128-3p overexpression significantly restrained PC cell migration and invasion (Figure 4E and F). Considering the downregulation of miR-128-3p in PC tissues, our results manifested that miR-128-3p could act as a tumor suppressor by regulating PC cell proliferation and invasion.

### *Inhibition of miR-128-3p partly reverses regulatory effects induced by depletion of TP73-AS1*

To determine if TP73-AS1 knockdown could exert anti-proliferation and anti-metastasis function by mediating miR-128-3p, anti-miR-128-3p was transfected into AsPc-1 and Capan-1 cells after TP73-AS1 silencing. Functional experiments demonstrated that the TP73-AS1-mediated pro-proliferation (Figure 5A) and anti-apoptosis (Figure 5B) effect was dramatically abrogated by anti-miR-128-3p transfection in TP73-AS1 silencing PC cells. In addition, the inhibitory effects of TP73-AS1 silencing on cell metastasis were rescued by anti-miR-128-3p transfection (Figure 5C and D). Moreover, epithelial-mesenchymal transition (EMT)-related proteins were detected by Western blot. Consistent with the functional assays above, the results showed that TP73-AS1 could regulate EMT-related proteins by regulating miR-128-3p (Figure 5E). All these data indicated that TP73-AS1 is involved in PC progression, at least partly through miR-128-3p.

### *LncRNA TP73-AS1 regulates GOLM1 expression by competing for miR-128-3p-3p*

Since TP73-AS1 was demonstrated to bind to miR-128-3p, we assessed whether TP73-AS1 could indirectly affect the target gene of miR-128-3p by serving as a ceRNA. Based on online bioinformatics analysis, GOLM1 3'UTR was found to possess a putative recognition site for miR-128-3p (Figure 6A). The luciferase reporter assay was carried out and the results showed that the luciferase activity of plasmid carrying GOLM1 3'UTR-WT was significantly decreased by transfecting miR-128-3p mimics both in AsPc-1 and Capan-1 cells (Figure 6B). However, these effects were abolished when the binding sequences were mutated. Transfecting miR-128-3p mimics led to a significant decrease of GOLM1 mRNA and protein expression in AsPc-1 and Capan-1 cells (Figure 6C). To further explore the correlation between TP73-AS1 and GOLM1, the mRNA and protein expression of GOLM1 was detected after TP73-AS1 silencing. As expected, the mRNA and protein expression of GOLM1 was remarkably decreased after silencing TP73-AS1 both in AsPc-1 and Capan-1 cells (Figure 6D). Moreover, the level of GOLM1 mRNA was significantly down-regulated in PC tissues compared to


A
LncRNA TP73-AS1 MUT 5'-CCCTTCGCCAGTCC GGCAAA A-3'
hsa-miR-128-3p 3'-TTTCTCTGGCCAAGTGACACT-5'
LncRNA TP73-AS1 WT 5'-CCCTTCGCCAGTCCACTGTGA-3'
B
miR-NC
miR-128
anti-miR-NC
anti-miR-128
Relative luciferase activity
TP73-AS1-WT
TP73-AS1-MUT
AsPc-1
Capan-1
C
Relative enrichment of TP73-AS1
miR-NC
miR-128
AGO2
IgG
D
Relative miR-128 expression
si-Control
si-TP73-AS1 #1
si-TP73-AS1 #3
E
Relative TP73-AS1 expression

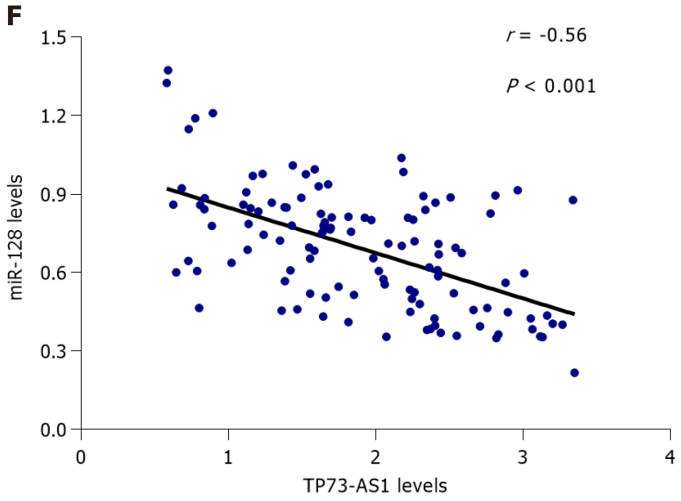



**Figure 3 TP73-AS1 physically interacts with miR-128-3p-3p.** A: miR-128-3p and its predicted binding sites in the TP73-AS1 sequence; B: Luciferase activity of pancreatic cancer (PC) cells co-transfected with miRNA mimics and luciferase reporter vectors containing TP73-AS1-WT or TP73-AS1-MUT; C: RNA immunoprecipitation assay of the enrichment of TP73-AS1 in AsPc-1 and Capan-1 transfected with miR-NC or miR-128-3p. Immunoglobulin G was used as negative control; D: Expression levels of miR-128-3p in AsPc-1 and Capan-1 cells transfected with si-control or small interfering RNAs targeting TP73-AS1; E: Expression levels of miR-128-3p in PC tissues and adjacent non-tumor tissues; F: The expression of TP73-AS1 and miR-128-3p exhibits a negative correlation in PC tissues. $^{b}P < 0.01$. IgG: Immunoglobulin G.

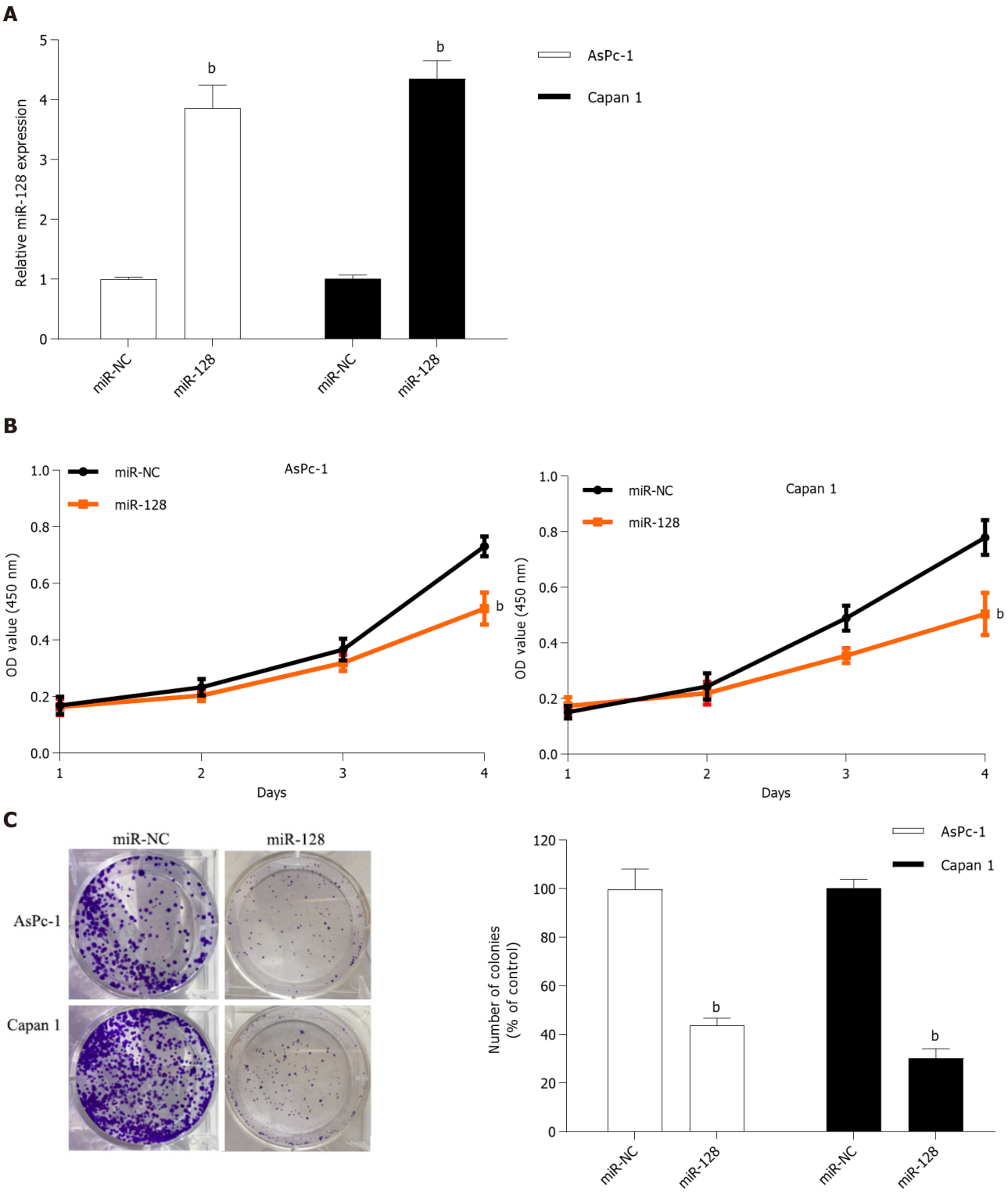
the corresponding non-cancerous tissues (Figure 6E). Interestingly, an inverse correlation was identified between miR-128-3p and GOLM1 mRNA levels in PC tissues (Figure 6F). In contrast, the positive relationship between TP73-AS1 and GOLM1 mRNA levels was observed in PC tissues (Figure 6G). The protein expression of GOLM1 was increased after anti-miR-128-3p transfection in TP73-AS1 silencing PC cells (Figure 6H), which suggested that TP73-AS1 could regulate the expression of GOLM1 by acting as a sponge for miR-128-3p *in vitro*.

### *TP73-AS1 silencing inhibits tumor growth and metastasis of PC cells*

To further elucidate the biological roles of TP73-AS1 in PC tumorigenesis *in vivo*, Capan-1 cells transfected with si-TP73-AS1#1 or si-Control were implanted into nude mice *via* subcutaneous injection. Four weeks later, the subcutaneous tumors were collected. Tumor growth curve and tumor weight from the si-TP73-AS1#1 group showed lower size and lighter tumor weight (Figure 7A-C). Moreover, qRT-PCR analysis suggested that the expression of TP73-AS1 was decreased (Figure 7D) and the expression of miR-128-3p (Figure 7E) was increased in the si-TP73-AS1#1 group. In addition, Ki-67 immunostaining indicated that the subcutaneous tumors formed by TP73-AS1 silencing Capan-1 cells showed fewer Ki-67 positive cells compared to the control group (Figure 7F). Together, the *in vitro* and *in vivo* results suggested that TP73-AS1 might function as an oncogene in the progression of PC. To investigate the metastatic potential of TP73-AS1 *in vivo*, Capan-1 cells transfected with si-TP73-AS1#1 or si-Control were injected into the mice *via* the tail vein. As shown in Figure 7G, silencing TP73-AS1 remarkably decreased the number and size of lung metastatic lesions as detected by H&E staining. Moreover, we detected apoptotic markers in the tumors from the two groups and the results showed that apoptosis-related genes were significantly altered (Figure 7H).

## DISCUSSION

Increasing numbers of studies have shown that lncRNAs are involved in both normal development and pathological processes of human diseases by chromatin modification, genomic imprinting, RNA decay, and sponge-like miRNAs[5,18,19]. Dysregulation of lncRNAs might influence cell proliferation, metastasis, angiogenesis, and drug resistance[18,20,21]. It has been previously reported that increased expression of TP73-AS1 is associated with a poorer prognosis and shorter survival in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma[13]. High TP73-AS1 expression was also observed and associated with poor overall survival of patients with osteosarcoma[22]. TP73-AS1 was up-regulated in both colorectal cancer tissues and colorectal cancer cells


A
Relative miR-128 expression
AsPc-1
Capan 1
b
miR-NC
miR-128
B
AsPc-1
Capan 1
miR-NC
miR-128
OD value (450 nm)
Days
C
miR-NC
miR-128
AsPc-1
Capan 1
Number of colonies (% of control)

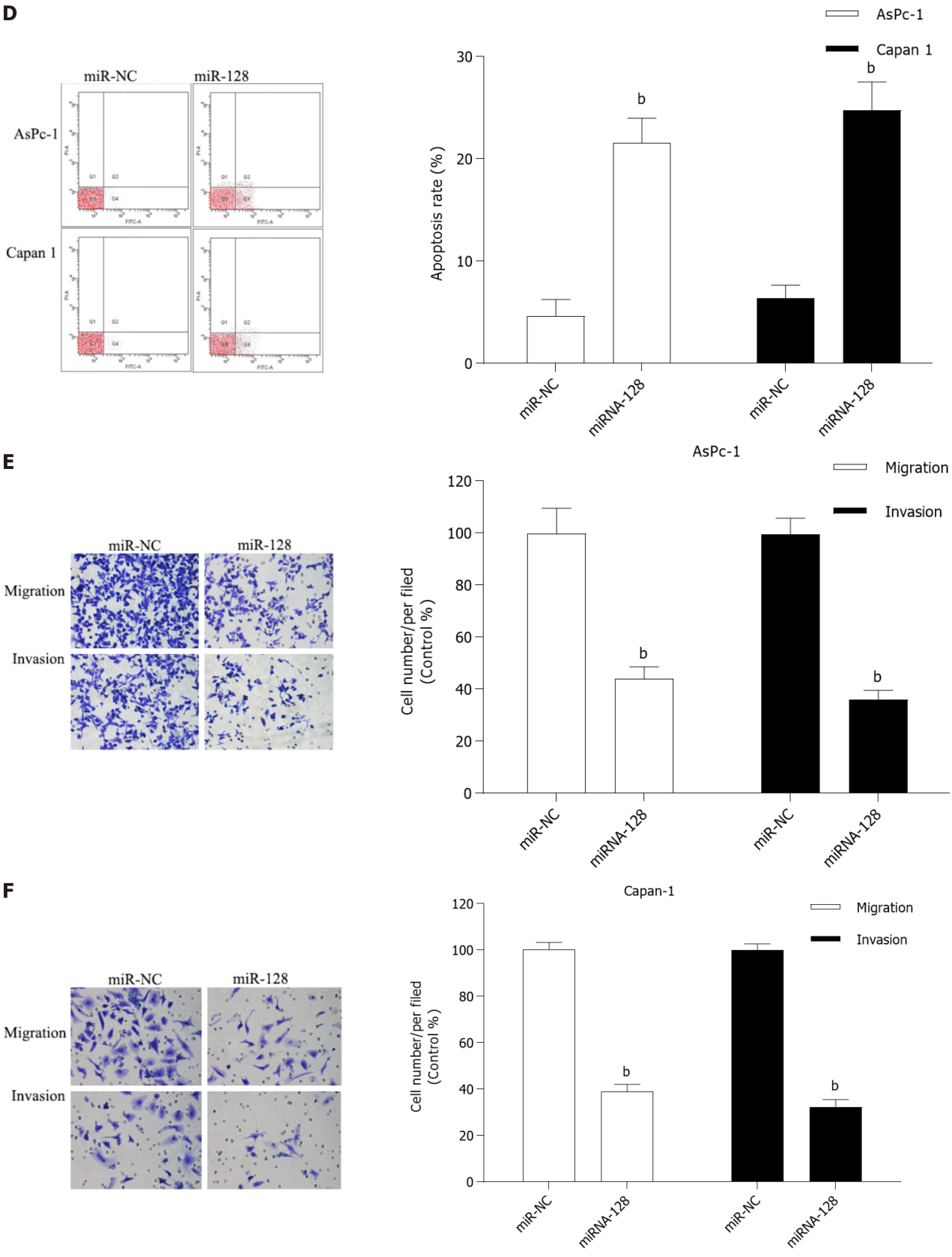



**Figure 4 MiR-128-3p inhibits the proliferation, migration, and invasion of pancreatic cancer cells.** A: The efficiencies of overexpression for miR-128-3p determined by quantitative real-time polymerase chain reaction; B and C: CCK-8 assay (B) and colony formation assay (C) for detecting cell proliferative ability after overexpression of miR-128-3p; D: Effect of miR-128-3p on pancreatic cancer cell apoptosis determined by flow cytometry; E and F: Transwell assay with or without matrigel for assessing the effect of miR-128-3p on cell migration and invasion in AsPc-1 (E) and Capan-1 (F) cells. $^{b}P < 0.01$.

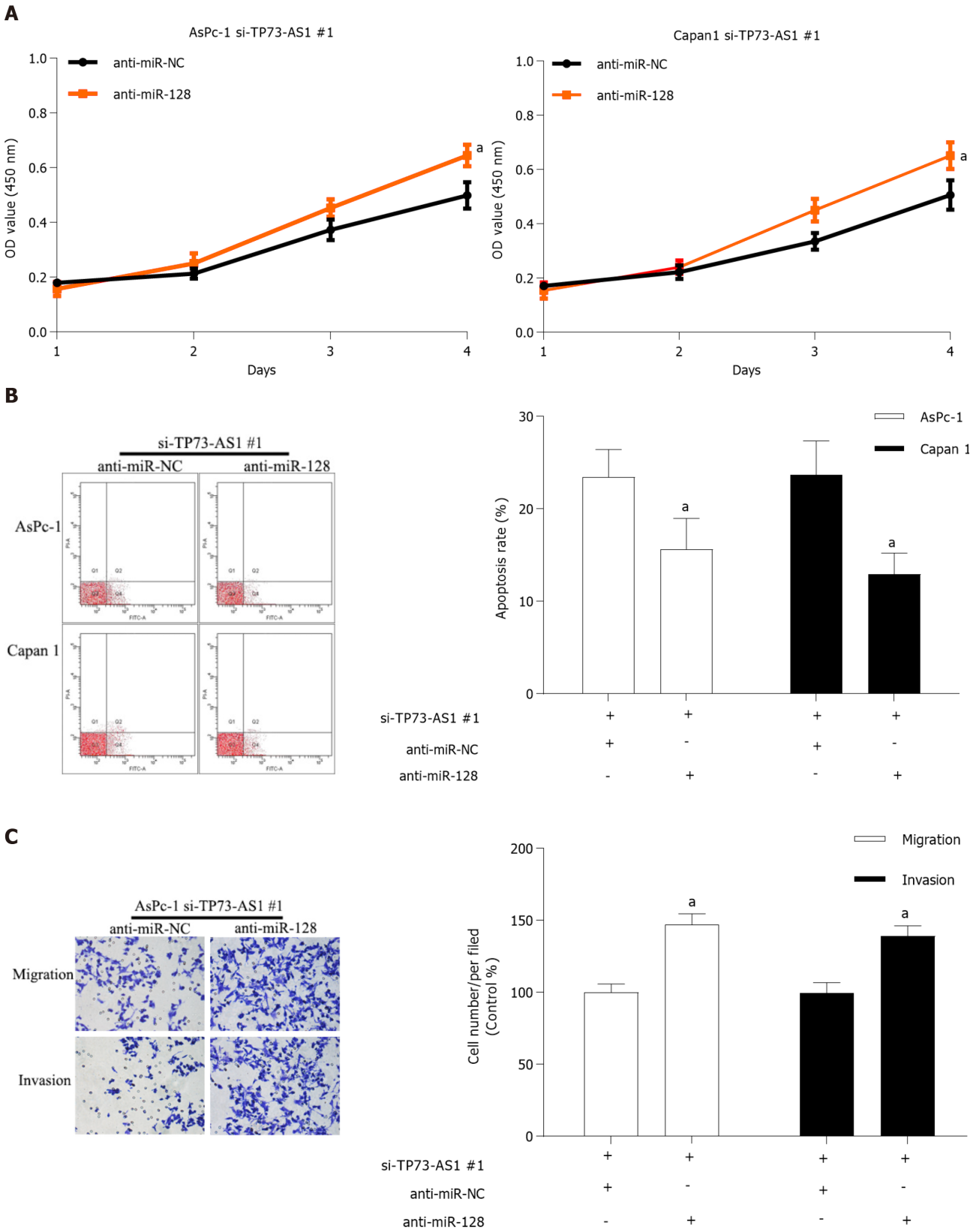
and high TP73-AS1 expression was associated with metastasis and advanced clinical stages in patients with colorectal cancer[23]. Above studies suggested that TP73-AS1 might act as an oncogene in tumor progression, which encouraged us to explore the expression and biological function of TP73-AS1 in PC. In agreement with these studies, we found that TP73-AS1 was significantly increased and associated with tumor size, vessel infiltration, and poor prognosis in PC patients. Furthermore, our results showed that knockdown of TP73-AS1 suppressed the proliferation and invasion of PC cells *in vitro* and the tumor growth *in vivo*.

Emerging studies demonstrated that lncRNAs could function as ceRNAs to regulate gene expression through competitively binding to miRNAs[4,5]. To further investigate the mechanism of the TP73-AS1 in PC, bioinformatics analysis predicted that TP73-AS1 is a target of miR-128-3p. Numerous studies have indicated that miR-128-3p could act as a tumor suppressive role in many tumors, including glioma, breast cancer, and non-small cell lung cancer[24-26]. In our present study, we found that miR-128-3p could significantly suppress PC cell growth and invasion. Luciferase reporter assay confirmed the relationship between TP73-AS1 and miR-128-3p. Mechanistical study showed that TP73-AS1 could mediate PC cell proliferation, migration, and invasion by sponging miR-128-3p and a negative correlation between TP73-AS1 and miR-128-3p expression was observed in PC tissues. Further investigation indicated that the 3'UTR of *GOLM1* harbors a functional response element for miR-128-3p. GOLM1, a type II transmembrane protein, has been reported to be induced by virus infection[27,28]. Recent studies have shown that GOLM1 commonly expressed in epithelial cells of normal tissues was significantly upregulated in tumor tissues, which suggested a possible oncogenic role of GOLM1 in tumor progression[29,30]. Moreover, clinicopathological features showed that GOLM1 was correlated with Edmondson grade, vascular invasion, TNM stage, overall survival, as well as Vimentin expression[31]. GOLM1 was also reported to promote prostate cancer cell growth, migration, and invasion, and inhibited cell apoptosis *via* the PI3K/AKT/mTOR signaling axis[32]. The role of GOLM1 was unclear in PC and our data showed that the mRNA expression of *GOLM1* was increased in PC tissues. Moreover, ectopic expression of miR-128-3p significantly inhibited the expression of GOLM1 at both the mRNA and protein level. Most interestingly, miR-128-3p-3p could abrogate TP73-AS1-mediated expression of GOLM1, which suggested that TP73-AS1 could act as a molecular sponge to decrease miR-128-3p expression, thereby resulting in partial abolition of the translational repression of its target gene *GOLM1* in PC cells.

*KRAS* gene, the most common genetic driver in PC, is mutated in about 93% of PC s[33,34]. The KRAS protein is a small GTPase, which is responsible for interacting with cell membrane growth factor receptors and controlling the switch of multiple signaling pathways and cellular processes. Oncogenic KRAS mutations have been found in 95% of pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma tissues[35,36]. Decades of research have discovered and clarified the complex picture of KRAS-regulated biological processes, including cell metabolism, tumor cell signaling, the tumor microenvironment, micropinocytosis, apoptosis, and redox homeostasis[37,38]. In our research, ASPC-1 and Capan-1 cells were the two PC cell lines that we selected, both of which contained mutations in the *KRAS* gene. As our results show, the regulatory roles of TP73-AS1 in cell proliferation, migration, and invasion ability were verified by Cell Counting Kit-8, wound-healing, and transwell assays in ASPC-1 and Capan-1 cells. Due to the vital role that KRAS could play in PC, we are also curious about the role of TP73-AS1 in KRAS wild cells. Therefore, in our further research, we would select BXPC-3 cell line, which contains wild *KRAS* gene, for *in vitro* and *in vivo* functional assays of TP73-AS1 to detect whether *KRAS* gene could modulate the function of TP73-AS1 in PC.

## CONCLUSION

In summary, our data suggested that TP73-AS1 could function as an oncogenic lncRNA in PC progression. Moreover, TP73-AS1 could promote tumor growth and invasion by acting as a ceRNA to promote GOLM1 expression by sponging miR-128-3p in PC.


A
AsPc-1 si-TP73-AS1 #1
anti-miR-NC
anti-miR-128
OD value (450 nm)
Days
a
Capan1 si-TP73-AS1 #1
anti-miR-NC
anti-miR-128
OD value (450 nm)
Days
a
B
si-TP73-AS1 #1
anti-miR-NC
anti-miR-128
AsPc-1
Capan 1
AsPc-1
Capan 1
Apoptosis rate (%)
a
a
si-TP73-AS1 #1
anti-miR-NC
anti-miR-128
C
AsPc-1 si-TP73-AS1 #1
anti-miR-NC
anti-miR-128
Migration
Invasion
Migration
Invasion
Cell number/per filed (Control %)
a
a
si-TP73-AS1 #1
anti-miR-NC
anti-miR-128

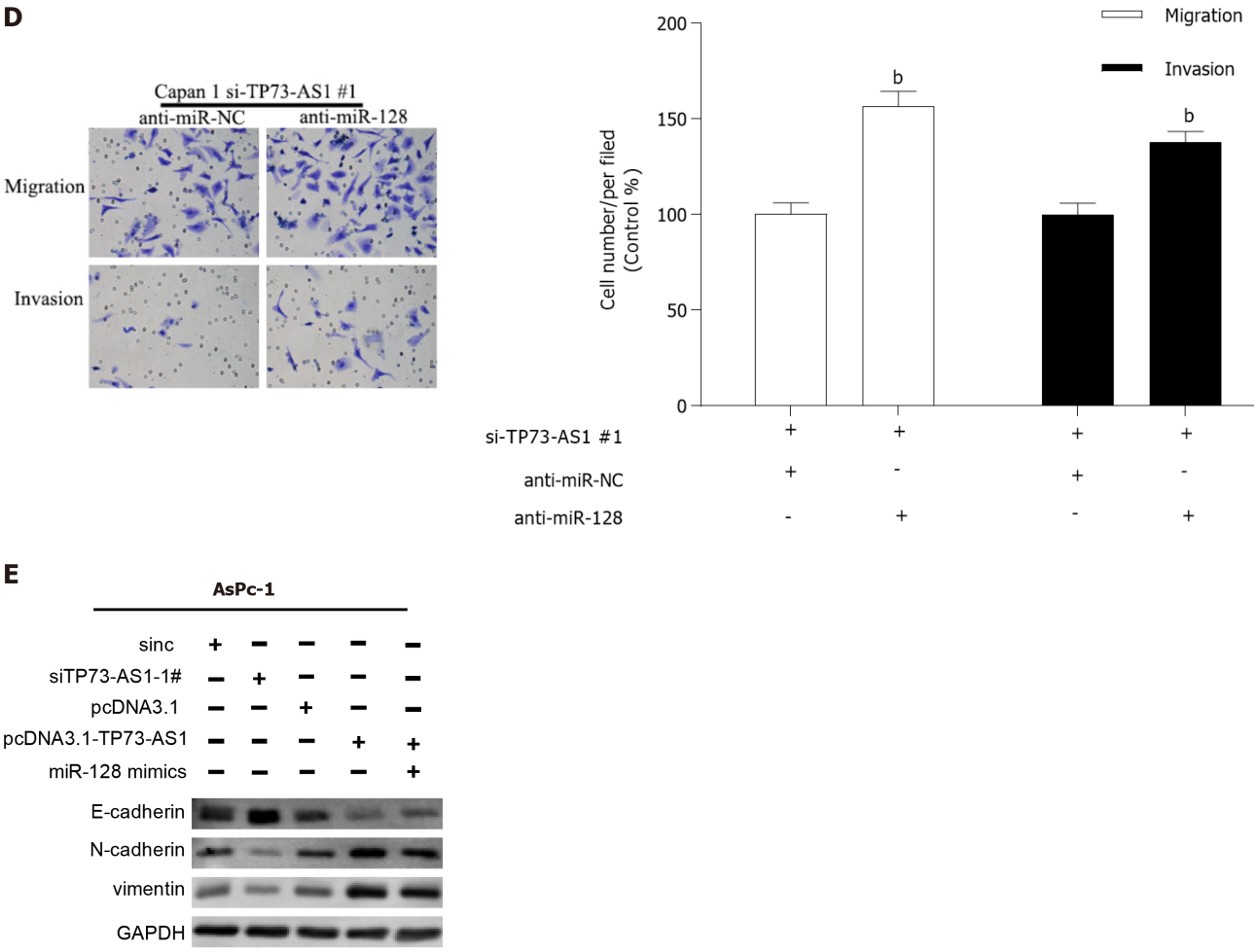
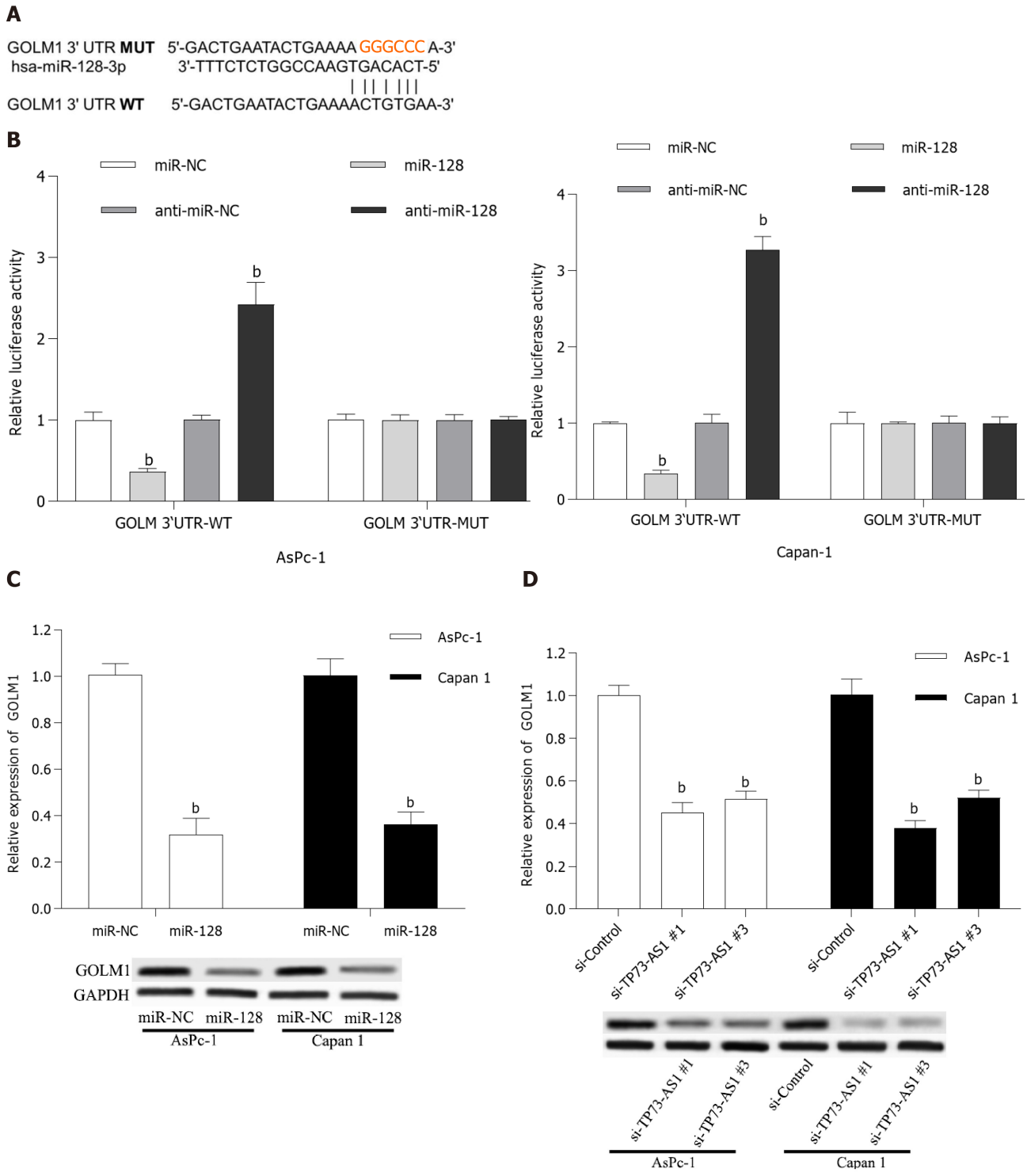



**Figure 5 MiR-128-3p is responsible for TP73-AS1-mediated malignant behavior.** A: Knockdown of miR-128-3p eliminates the inhibition on cell proliferation by TP73-AS1 depletion; B: Depletion of miR-128-3p abolishes cell apoptosis induced by TP73-AS1 silencing; C and D: Representative images of migrated and invaded cells treated with si-TP73-AS1#1 and anti-miR-NC or anti-miR-128-3p in AsPc-1 (C) and Capan-1 (D) cells; E: Epithelial-mesenchymal transition-related proteins detected by Western blot. $^{a}P < 0.05$; $^{b}P < 0.01$. GAPDH: Glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase.


A
GOLM1 3' UTR MUT 5'-GACTGAATACTGAAAA GGGCCC A-3'
hsa-miR-128-3p 3'-TTTCTCTGGCCAAGTGACACT-5'
GOLM1 3' UTR WT 5'-GACTGAATACTGAAAACTGTGAA-3'
B
miR-NC
miR-128
anti-miR-NC
anti-miR-128
Relative luciferase activity
GOLM 3'UTR-WT
GOLM 3'UTR-MUT
AsPc-1
Capan-1
C
AsPc-1
Capan 1
Relative expression of GOLM1
GOLM1
GAPDH
D
si-Control
si-TP73-AS1 #1
si-TP73-AS1 #3

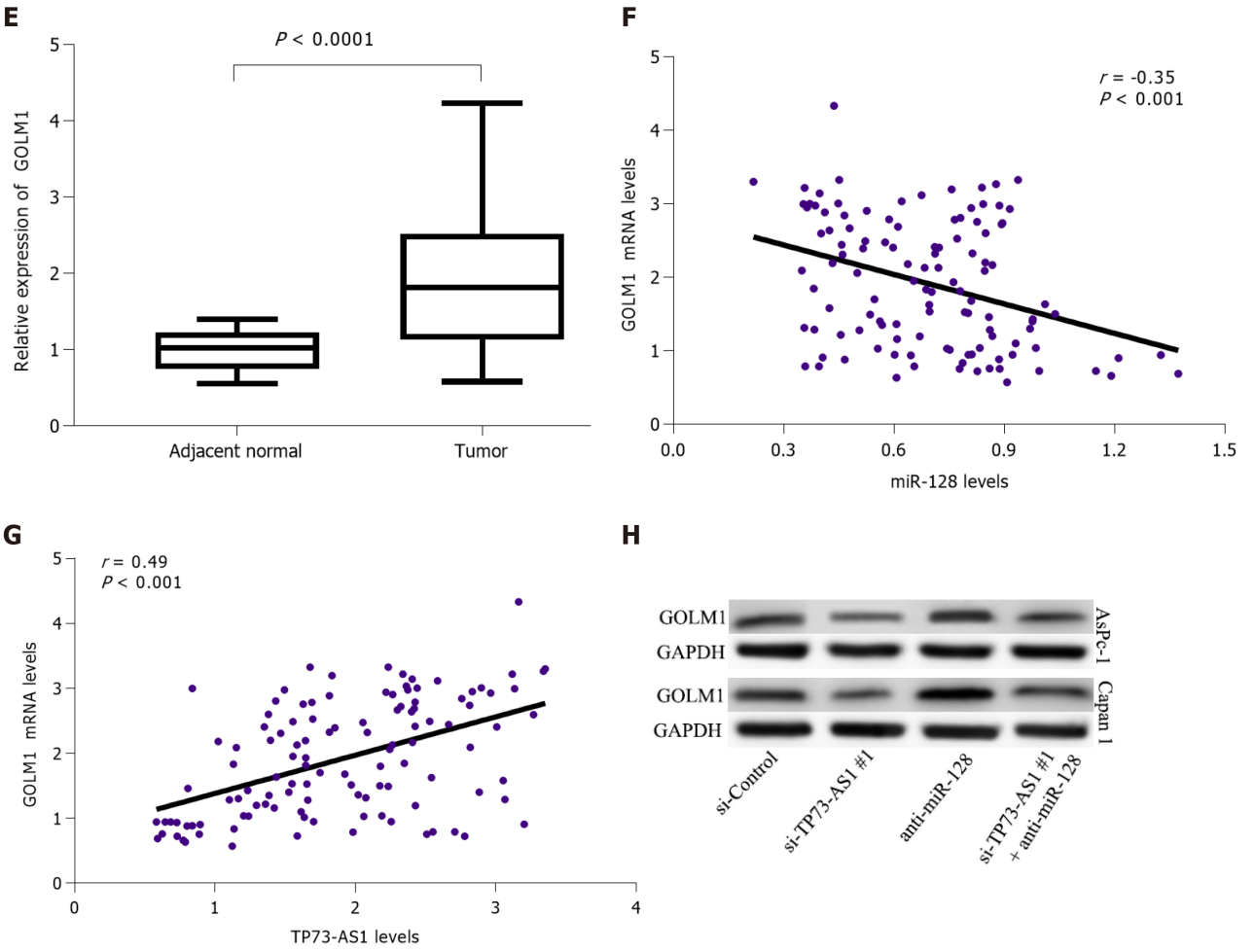
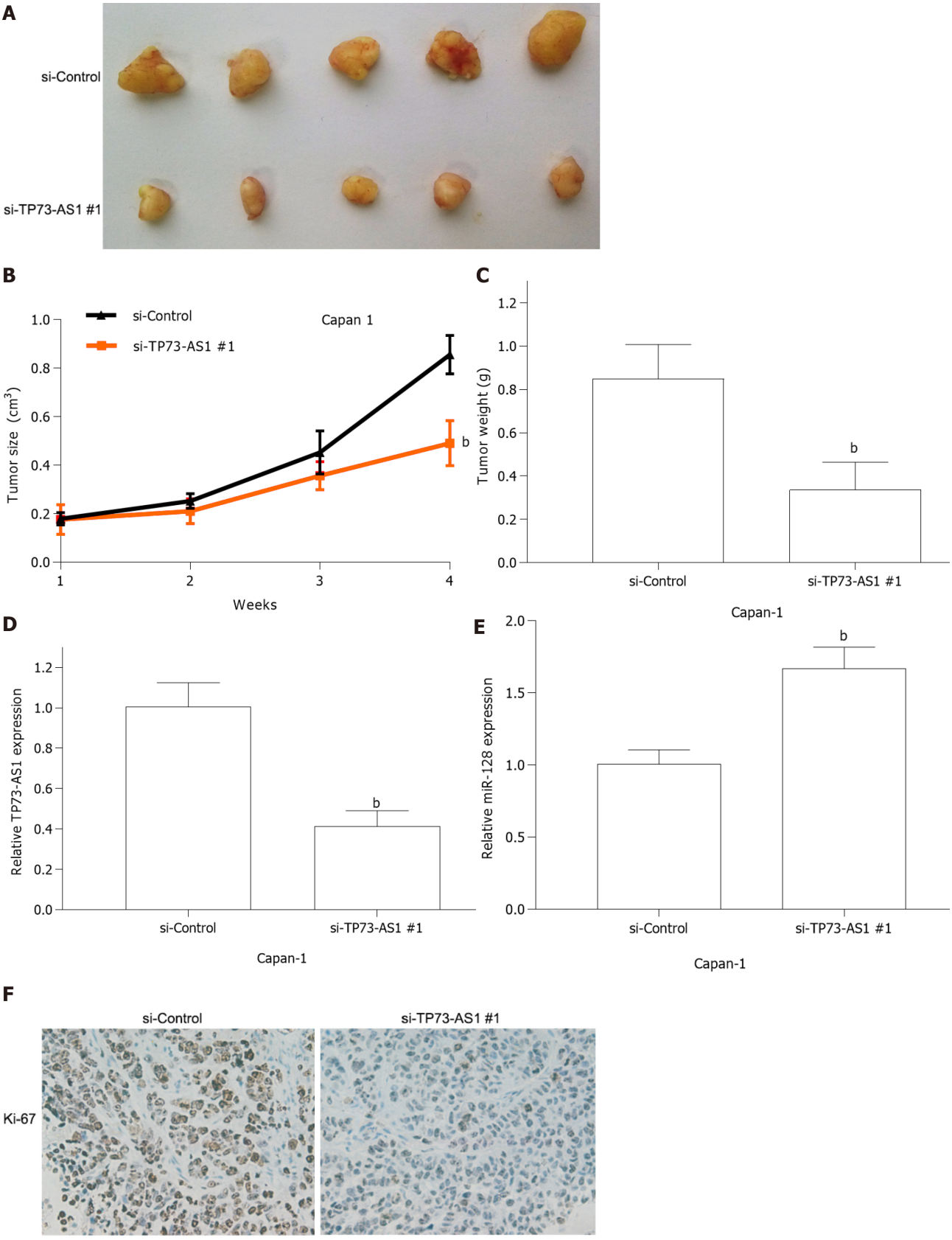



**Figure 6 TP73-AS1 increases GOLM1 expression by decreasing miR-128-3p.** A: Schematic diagram presenting the putative miR-128-3p recognition site in the GOLM1 sequence; B: Luciferase activity in pancreatic cancer (PC) cells transfected with miR-128-3p and reporter plasmids containing WT or MUT GOLM1 3'UTR; C: The GOLM1 mRNA (up) and protein (down) levels in AsPc-1 and Capan-1 cells with miR-128-3p transfection; D: The GOLM1 mRNA (up) and protein (down) levels in AsPc-1 and Capan-1 cells after TP73-AS1 silencing; E: The expression levels of *GOLM1* mRNA in 116 pairs of PC and adjacent non-tumor tissues assessed by quantitative real-time polymerase chain reaction; F: The relationship between miR-128-3p and GOLM1 mRNA levels assessed by Pearson correlation analysis; G: The relationship between TP73-AS1 and GOLM1 mRNA levels assessed by Pearson correlation analysis; H: The protein expression levels of GOLM1 detected by Western blot assay as indicated. $^{b}P < 0.01$. GAPDH: Glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase.


A
si-Control
si-TP73-AS1 #1
B
si-Control
si-TP73-AS1 #1
Capan 1
Tumor size (cm3)
Weeks
b
C
Tumor weight (g)
b
si-Control
si-TP73-AS1 #1
Capan-1
D
Relative TP73-AS1 expression
b
si-Control
si-TP73-AS1 #1
Capan-1
E
Relative miR-128 expression
b
si-Control
si-TP73-AS1 #1
Capan-1
F
si-Control
si-TP73-AS1 #1
Ki-67

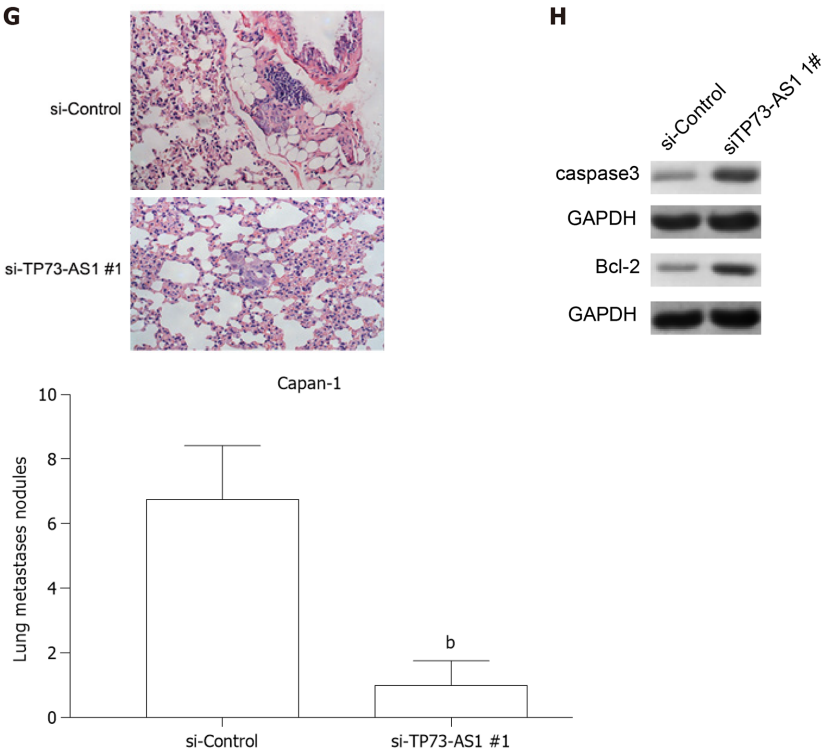



**Figure 7 TP73-AS1 knockdown inhibits tumor growth and metastasis in nude mice.** A: Images of resected tumors from nude mice from the indicated groups. *n* = 5 mice per group; B: Tumor growth curves established by measuring tumor volume after injection at the indicated time points; C: Weights of resected tumors from nude mice from the indicated groups; D and E: Quantitative real-time polymerase chain reaction to detect the expression of TP73-AS1 (D) and miR-128-3p (E) in xenograft tumor tissues; F: Ki67 expression in resected tumor tissues evaluated by immunohistochemistry analysis; G: Representative images and quantification of hematoxylin and eosin staining of lungs isolated from mice; H: Apoptosis markers detected by Western blot. $^{b}P < 0.01$. GAPDH: Glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase.

## ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

### *Research background*

Pancreatic cancer (PC) is the fourth most frequent cause of cancer-related deaths in the world. Emerging evidence has revealed that long non-coding RNAs (lncRNAs) could play crucial roles in the progression of PC. However, the biological role and clinical significance of TP73-AS1 in PC remain unclear.

### *Research motivation*

Treatments for PC are still limited, and surgical resection could be the only chance to obtain curative treatment. We hope to provide a novel therapeutic target for patients with PC.

### *Research objectives*

The present study aimed to investigate the role of TP73-AS1 in the growth and metastasis of PC.

### *Research methods*

Quantitative reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction was used to detect the expression of lncRNA TP73-AS1, miR-128-3p, and *GOLM1* in PC tissues and cells. The regulatory roles of TP73-AS1 in cell proliferation, migration, and invasion ability were verified by Cell Counting Kit-8, wound-healing, and transwell assays. The bioinformatics prediction software ENCORI was used to predict the putative binding sites of miR-128-3p. The interactions among TP73-AS1, miR-128-3p, and GOLM1 were explored by bioinformatics prediction, luciferase assay, and Western blot.

### *Research results*

Our data suggested that TP73-AS1 and miRNA-128-3p were dysregulated in PC tissues and cells. TP73-AS1 silencing inhibited PC cell proliferation, migration, and invasion *in vitro* as well as suppressed tumor growth *in vivo*. Moreover, TP73-AS1

could promote tumor growth and invasion by acting as a competing endogenous RNA to promote GOLM1 expression by sponging miR-128-3p in PC.

### Research conclusions

TP73-AS1 could promote PC cell proliferation and metastasis by modulating the miR-128-3p/GOLM1 axis.

### Research perspectives

TP73-AS1 could promote PC progression, which might provide a potential treatment strategy for patients with PC.

## REFERENCES


1 **Siegel R**, Ma J, Zou Z, Jemal A. Cancer statistics, 2014. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2014; **64**: 9-29 [PMID: 24399786 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21208]

2 **Kamisawa T**, Wood LD, Itoi T, Takaori K. Pancreatic cancer. *Lancet* 2016; **388**: 73-85 [PMID: 26830752 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(16)00141-0]

3 **Tsai S**, Evans DB. Therapeutic Advances in Localized Pancreatic Cancer. *JAMA Surg* 2016; **151**: 862-868 [PMID: 27276001 DOI: 10.1001/jamasurg.2016.1113]

4 **Hansen TB**, Jensen TI, Clausen BH, Bramsen JB, Finsen B, Damgaard CK, Kjems J. Natural RNA circles function as efficient microRNA sponges. *Nature* 2013; **495**: 384-388 [PMID: 23446346 DOI: 10.1038/nature11993]

5 **Wang KC**, Chang HY. Molecular mechanisms of long noncoding RNAs. *Mol Cell* 2011; **43**: 904-914 [PMID: 21925379 DOI: 10.1016/j.molcel.2011.08.018]

6 **Ebahimzadeh K**, Shoorei H, Mousavinejad SA, Anamag FT, Dinger ME, Taheri M, Ghafouri-Fard S. Emerging role of non-coding RNAs in response of cancer cells to radiotherapy. *Pathol Res Pract* 2021; **218**: 153327 [PMID: 33422780 DOI: 10.1016/j.prp.2020.153327]

7 **Wang C**, Chen Y, Chen K, Zhang L. Long Noncoding RNA LINC01134 Promotes Hepatocellular Carcinoma Metastasis *via* Activating AKT1S1 and NF-κB Signaling. *Front Cell Dev Biol* 2020; **8**: 429 [PMID: 32656205 DOI: 10.3389/fcell.2020.00429]

8 **Duguang L**, Jin H, Xiaowei Q, Peng X, Xiaodong W, Zhennan L, Jianjun Q, Jie Y. The involvement of lncRNAs in the development and progression of pancreatic cancer. *Cancer Biol Ther* 2017; **18**: 927-936 [PMID: 29053398 DOI: 10.1080/15384047.2017.1385682]

9 **Chen X**, Wang J, Xie F, Mou T, Zhong P, Hua H, Liu P, Yang Q. Long noncoding RNA LINC01559 promotes pancreatic cancer progression by acting as a competing endogenous RNA of miR-1343-3p to upregulate RAF1 expression. *Aging (Albany NY)* 2020; **12**: 14452-14466 [PMID: 32678071 DOI: 10.18632/aging.103487]

10 **Deng SJ**, Chen HY, Ye Z, Deng SC, Zhu S, Zeng Z, He C, Liu ML, Huang K, Zhong JX, Xu FY, Li Q, Liu Y, Wang CY, Zhao G. Hypoxia-induced LncRNA-BX111 promotes metastasis and progression of pancreatic cancer through regulating ZEB1 transcription. *Oncogene* 2018; **37**: 5811-5828 [PMID: 29970904 DOI: 10.1038/s41388-018-0382-1]

11 **You L**, Chang D, Du HZ, Zhao YP. Genome-wide screen identifies PVT1 as a regulator of Gemcitabine sensitivity in human pancreatic cancer cells. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2011; **407**: 1-6 [PMID: 21316338 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2011.02.027]

12 **Zhang R**, Jin H, Lou F. The Long Non-Coding RNA TP73-AS1 Interacted With miR-142 to Modulate Brain Glioma Growth Through HMGB1/RAGE Pathway. *J Cell Biochem* 2018; **119**: 3007-3016 [PMID: 28379612 DOI: 10.1002/jcb.26021]

13 **Li S**, Huang Y, Fu Y, Tang D, Kang R, Zhou R, Fan XG. The long non-coding RNA TP73-AS1 modulates HCC cell proliferation through miR-200a-dependent HMGB1/RAGE regulation. *J Exp Clin Cancer Res* 2017; **36**: 51 [PMID: 28403886 DOI: 10.1186/s13046-017-0519-z]

14 **Zhang L**, Fang F, He X. Long noncoding RNA TP73-AS1 promotes non-small cell lung cancer progression by competitively sponging miR-449a/EZH2. *Biomed Pharmacother* 2018; **104**: 705-711 [PMID: 29803931 DOI: 10.1016/j.biopha.2018.05.089]

15 **Deng B**, Wang B, Fang J, Zhu X, Cao Z, Lin Q, Zhou L, Sun X. MiRNA-203 suppresses cell proliferation, migration and invasion in colorectal cancer *via* targeting of EIF5A2. *Sci Rep* 2016; **6**: 28301 [PMID: 27376958 DOI: 10.1038/srep28301]

16 **Jiang J**, Feng X, Zhou W, Wu Y, Yang Y. MiR-128 reverses the gefitinib resistance of the lung cancer stem cells by inhibiting the c-met/PI3K/AKT pathway. *Oncotarget* 2016; **7**: 73188-73199 [PMID: 27690301 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.12283]

17 **Liu T**, Zhang X, Du L, Wang Y, Liu X, Tian H, Wang L, Li P, Zhao Y, Duan W, Xie Y, Sun Z, Wang C. Exosome-transmitted miR-128-3p increase chemosensitivity of oxaliplatin-resistant colorectal cancer. *Mol Cancer* 2019; **18**: 43 [PMID: 30890168 DOI: 10.1186/s12943-019-0981-7]

18 **Batista PJ**, Chang HY. Long noncoding RNAs: cellular address codes in development and disease. *Cell* 2013; **152**: 1298-1307 [PMID: 23498938 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2013.02.012]

19 **Li N**, Yang G, Luo L, Ling L, Wang X, Shi L, Lan J, Jia X, Zhang Q, Long Z, Liu J, Hu W, He Z, Liu H, Liu W, Zheng G. lncRNA *THAP9-AS1* Promotes Pancreatic Ductal Adenocarcinoma Growth and

Leads to a Poor Clinical Outcome *via* Sponging miR-484 and Interacting with YAP. *Clin Cancer Res* 2020; **26**: 1736-1748 [PMID: 31831555 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-19-0674]

20 **Pan S**, Shen M, Zhou M, Shi X, He R, Yin T, Wang M, Guo X, Qin R. Long noncoding RNA LINC01111 suppresses pancreatic cancer aggressiveness by regulating DUSP1 expression *via* microRNA-3924. *Cell Death Dis* 2019; **10**: 883 [PMID: 31767833 DOI: 10.1038/s41419-019-2123-y]

21 **Kong X**, Liu CX, Wang GD, Yang H, Yao XM, Hua Q, Li XY, Zhang HM, Ma MZ, Su Q, Lv K. LncRNA LEGLTBC Functions as a ceRNA to Antagonize the Effects of miR-34a on the Downregulation of SIRT1 in Glucolipotoxicity-Induced INS-1 Beta Cell Oxidative Stress and Apoptosis. *Oxid Med Cell Longev* 2019; **2019**: 4010764 [PMID: 31737170 DOI: 10.1155/2019/4010764]

22 **Yang G**, Song R, Wang L, Wu X. Knockdown of long non-coding RNA TP73-AS1 inhibits osteosarcoma cell proliferation and invasion through sponging miR-142. *Biomed Pharmacother* 2018; **103**: 1238-1245 [PMID: 29864904 DOI: 10.1016/j.biopha.2018.04.146]

23 **Cai Y**, Yan P, Zhang G, Yang W, Wang H, Cheng X. Long non-coding RNA TP73-AS1 sponges miR-194 to promote colorectal cancer cell proliferation, migration and invasion *via* up-regulating TGFα. *Cancer Biomark* 2018; **23**: 145-156 [PMID: 30010111 DOI: 10.3233/CBM-181503]

24 **Papagiannakopoulos T**, Friedmann-Morvinski D, Neveu P, Dugas JC, Gill RM, Huillard E, Liu C, Zong H, Rowitch DH, Barres BA, Verma IM, Kosik KS. Pro-neural miR-128 is a glioma tumor suppressor that targets mitogenic kinases. *Oncogene* 2012; **31**: 1884-1895 [PMID: 21874051 DOI: 10.1038/onc.2011.380]

25 **Zhu Y**, Yu F, Jiao Y, Feng J, Tang W, Yao H, Gong C, Chen J, Su F, Zhang Y, Song E. Reduced miR-128 in breast tumor-initiating cells induces chemotherapeutic resistance *via* Bmi-1 and ABCC5. *Clin Cancer Res* 2011; **17**: 7105-7115 [PMID: 21953503 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-11-0071]

26 **Cai J**, Fang L, Huang Y, Li R, Xu X, Hu Z, Zhang L, Yang Y, Zhu X, Zhang H, Wu J, Li J, Zeng M, Song E, He Y, Li M. Simultaneous overactivation of Wnt/β-catenin and TGFβ signalling by miR-128-3p confers chemoresistance-associated metastasis in NSCLC. *Nat Commun* 2017; **8**: 15870 [PMID: 28627514 DOI: 10.1038/ncomms15870]

27 **Wei H**, Hao X, Li B, Li X, Hou J, Qiao Y, Zhang R. GP73 is a potential marker for evaluating AIDS progression and antiretroviral therapy efficacy. *Mol Biol Rep* 2013; **40**: 6397-6405 [PMID: 24068434 DOI: 10.1007/s11033-013-2754-5]

28 **Kladney RD**, Cui X, Bulla GA, Brunt EM, Fimmel CJ. Expression of GP73, a resident Golgi membrane protein, in viral and nonviral liver disease. *Hepatology* 2002; **35**: 1431-1440 [PMID: 12029628 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2002.32525]

29 **Mao Y**, Yang H, Xu H, Lu X, Sang X, Du S, Zhao H, Chen W, Xu Y, Chi T, Yang Z, Cai J, Li H, Chen J, Zhong S, Mohanti SR, Lopez-Soler R, Millis JM, Huang J, Zhang H. Golgi protein 73 (GOLPH2) is a valuable serum marker for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Gut* 2010; **59**: 1687-1693 [PMID: 20876776 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2010.214916]

30 **Ye QH**, Zhu WW, Zhang JB, Qin Y, Lu M, Lin GL, Guo L, Zhang B, Lin ZH, Roessler S, Forgues M, Jia HL, Lu L, Zhang XF, Lian BF, Xie L, Dong QZ, Tang ZY, Wang XW, Qin LX. GOLM1 Modulates EGFR/RTK Cell-Surface Recycling to Drive Hepatocellular Carcinoma Metastasis. *Cancer Cell* 2016; **30**: 444-458 [PMID: 27569582 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccell.2016.07.017]

31 **Bao YX**, Cao Q, Yang Y, Mao R, Xiao L, Zhang H, Zhao HR, Wen H. Expression and prognostic significance of golgiglycoprotein73 (GP73) with epithelial-mesenchymal transition (EMT) related molecules in hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC). *Diagn Pathol* 2013; **8**: 197 [PMID: 24313979 DOI: 10.1186/1746-1596-8-197]

32 **Yan G**, Ru Y, Wu K, Yan F, Wang Q, Wang J, Pan T, Zhang M, Han H, Li X, Zou L. GOLM1 promotes prostate cancer progression through activating PI3K-AKT-mTOR signaling. *Prostate* 2018; **78**: 166-177 [PMID: 29181846 DOI: 10.1002/pros.23461]

33 **Haigis KM**. KRAS Alleles: The Devil Is in the Detail. *Trends Cancer* 2017; **3**: 686-697 [PMID: 28958387 DOI: 10.1016/j.trecan.2017.08.006]

34 **di Magliano MP**, Logsdon CD. Roles for KRAS in pancreatic tumor development and progression. *Gastroenterology* 2013; **144**: 1220-1229 [PMID: 23622131 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2013.01.071]

35 **Jones S**, Zhang X, Parsons DW, Lin JC, Leary RJ, Angenendt P, Mankoo P, Carter H, Kamiyama H, Jimeno A, Hong SM, Fu B, Lin MT, Calhoun ES, Kamiyama M, Walter K, Nikolskaya T, Nikolsky Y, Hartigan J, Smith DR, Hidalgo M, Leach SD, Klein AP, Jaffee EM, Goggins M, Maitra A, Iacobuzio-Donahue C, Eshleman JR, Kern SE, Hruban RH, Karchin R, Papadopoulos N, Parmigiani G, Vogelstein B, Velculescu VE, Kinzler KW. Core signaling pathways in human pancreatic cancers revealed by global genomic analyses. *Science* 2008; **321**: 1801-1806 [PMID: 18772397 DOI: 10.1126/science.1164368]

36 **Ryan DP**, Hong TS, Bardeesy N. Pancreatic adenocarcinoma. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **371**: 2140-2141 [PMID: 25427123 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMc1412266]

37 **Tape CJ**, Ling S, Dimitriadi M, McMahon KM, Worboys JD, Leong HS, Norrie IC, Miller CJ, Poulogiannis G, Lauffenburger DA, Jørgensen C. Oncogenic KRAS Regulates Tumor Cell Signaling *via* Stromal Reciprocation. *Cell* 2016; **165**: 1818 [PMID: 27315484 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2016.05.079]

38 **Liang C**, Qin Y, Zhang B, Ji S, Shi S, Xu W, Liu J, Xiang J, Liang D, Hu Q, Ni Q, Xu J, Yu X. Metabolic plasticity in heterogeneous pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2016; **1866**: 177-188 [PMID: 27600832 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbcan.2016.09.001]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

*World J Gastroenterol* 2021 May 7; 27(17): 2015-2024

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i17.2015

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Retrospective Study

# Prediction of microvascular invasion in solitary hepatocellular carcinoma ≤ 5 cm based on computed tomography radiomics

Peng Liu, Xian-Zhen Tan, Ting Zhang, Qian-Biao Gu, Xian-Hai Mao, Yan-Chun Li, Ya-Qiong He

**ORCID number:** Peng Liu 0000-0002-9023-2344; Xian-Zhen Tan 0000-0001-9319-1237; Ting Zhang 0000-0003-3137-5705; Qian-Biao Gu 0000-0002-2545-3175; Xian-Hai Mao 0000-0003-4364-4001; Yan-Chun Li 0000-0001-6462-5868; Ya-Qiong He 0000-0002-4848-9584.

**Author contributions:** Mao XH and Li YC contributed equally to this work; Liu P designed the research study; Zhang T and Tan XZ performed the research; Gu QB contributed new reagents and analytic tools; Liu P, Zhang T, and He YQ analyzed the data and wrote the manuscript; all authors have read and approved the final manuscript.

**Supported by** Scientific Research Program of Hunan Provincial Health Commission, China, No. B2019072; and Changsha Science and Technology Project, China, No. kq1907062.

**Institutional review board statement:** This study was reviewed and approved by the Ethics Committee of the Hunan Provincial People's Hospital (The First Affiliated Hospital of Hunan Normal University).

**Informed consent statement:** All patients provided written informed consent.

**Peng Liu, Xian-Zhen Tan, Qian-Biao Gu, Ya-Qiong He,** Department of Radiology, Hunan Provincial People's Hospital (The First Affiliated Hospital of Hunan Normal University), Changsha 410005, Hunan Province, China

**Ting Zhang,** Department of Radiology, Hunan Children's Hospital, Changsha 410000, Hunan Province, China

**Xian-Hai Mao,** Department of Hepatological Surgery, Hunan Provincial People's Hospital (The First Affiliated Hospital of Hunan Normal University), Changsha 410005, Hunan Province, China

**Yan-Chun Li,** Department of Pathology, Hunan Provincial People's Hospital (The First Affiliated Hospital of Hunan Normal University), Changsha 410005, Hunan Province, China

**Corresponding author:** Ya-Qiong He, MD, Associate Professor, Department of Radiology, Hunan Provincial People's Hospital (The First Affiliated Hospital of Hunan Normal University), No. 61 Jiefang West Road, Changsha 410005, Hunan Province, China.
641474988@qq.com

## Abstract

### *BACKGROUND*

Liver cancer is one of the most common malignant tumors, and ranks as the fourth leading cause of cancer death worldwide. Microvascular invasion (MVI) is considered one of the most important factors for recurrence and poor prognosis of liver cancer. Thus, accurately identifying MVI before surgery is of great importance in making treatment strategies and predicting the prognosis of patients with hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC). Radiomics as an emerging field, aims to utilize artificial intelligence software to develop methods that may contribute to cancer diagnosis, treatment improvement and evaluation, and better prediction.

### *AIM*

To investigate the predictive value of computed tomography radiomics for MVI in solitary HCC ≤ 5 cm.

### *METHODS*

A total of 185 HCC patients, including 122 MVI negative and 63 MVI positive patients, were retrospectively analyzed. All patients were randomly assigned to

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** We have no financial relationships to disclose.

**Data sharing statement:** No additional data are available.



**Manuscript source:** Unsolicited manuscript

**Specialty type:** Gastroenterology and hepatology

**Country/Territory of origin:** China

**Peer-review report's scientific quality classification**

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): 0
Grade C (Good): C, C, C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

**Received:** January 18, 2021
**Peer-review started:** January 18, 2021
**First decision:** February 9, 2021
**Revised:** February 22, 2021
**Accepted:** March 31, 2021
**Article in press:** March 31, 2021
**Published online:** May 7, 2021

**P-Reviewer:** Lim SC, Ni X, Xu PJ
**S-Editor:** Gao CC
**L-Editor:** Wang TQ
**P-Editor:** Ma YJ

the training group ($n$ = 124) and validation group ($n$ = 61). A total of 1351 radiomic features were extracted based on three-dimensional images. The diagnostic performance of the radiomics model was verified in the validation group, and the Delong test was applied to compare the radiomics and MVI-related imaging features (two-trait predictor of venous invasion and radiogenomic invasion).

*RESULTS*

A total of ten radiomics features were finally obtained after screening 1531 features. According to the weighting coefficient that corresponded to the features, the radiomics score (RS) calculation formula was obtained, and the RS score of each patient was calculated. The radiomics model exhibited a better correction and identification ability in the training and validation groups [area under the curve: 0.72 (95% confidence interval: 0.58-0.86) and 0.74 (95% confidence interval: 0.66-0.83), respectively]. Its prediction performance was significantly higher than that of the image features ($P < 0.05$).

*CONCLUSION*

Computed tomography radiomics has certain predictive value for MVI in solitary HCC ≤ 5 cm, and the predictive ability is higher than that of image features.

**Key Words:** Hepatocellular carcinoma; Microvascular invasion; Radiomics; Image features; Computed tomography



**Core Tip:** Microvascular invasion (MVI) is considered one of the most important factors for recurrence and poor prognosis of liver cancer. Thus, accurately identifying MVI before surgery is of great importance in making treatment strategies and predicting the prognosis of patients with hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC). This study showed that radiomics as an emerging method at present had a good diagnostic efficiency and exhibited better accuracy in predicting MVI than image features, indicating that radiomics is a more suitable method in predicting MVI in solitary HCC ≤ 5 cm.

**Citation:** Liu P, Tan XZ, Zhang T, Gu QB, Mao XH, Li YC, He YQ. Prediction of microvascular invasion in solitary hepatocellular carcinoma ≤ 5 cm based on computed tomography radiomics. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; 27(17): 2015-2024
**URL:** https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v27/i17/2015.htm
**DOI:** https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v27.i17.2015

## INTRODUCTION

Liver cancer is one of the most common malignant tumors, and ranks as the fourth leading cause of cancer death worldwide[1]. Furthermore, more than half of liver cancers occur in China, where there is a high incidence of hepatitis B[2]. Moreover, the recurrence rate after hepatectomy is 70%[3], and microvascular invasion (MVI) is considered one of the most important factors for recurrence and poor prognosis of liver cancer[4]. MVI has a relatively high incidence in hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), which ranges from 12.4% to 57.1%, and may occur even in solitary HCC ≤ 2 cm[5,6]. Thus, accurately identifying MVI before surgery is of great importance in making treatment strategies and predicting the prognosis of patients with HCC[7]. However, MVI can only be confirmed by histopathology *via* surgical resection at present. Therefore, the accurate prediction of MVI before surgery is desperately needed. Radiomics as an emerging field, which aims to utilize artificial intelligence software to develop methods that may contribute to cancer diagnosis, treatment improvement and evaluation, and better prediction[8]. At present, few studies have focused on the prediction of MVI in the early stage of HCC (which refers to solitary tumor with a size of ≤ 5 cm, without intrahepatic venous invasion[9]). The present study aimed to

investigate the predictive value of computed tomography (CT) radiomics for MVI in solitary HCC ≤ 5 cm.

## MATERIALS AND METHODS

### Patients

Patients were retrospectively collected from January 1, 2014 to November 15, 2018 (Hunan provincial People's Hospital). The inclusion criteria were: (1) Pathologically diagnosed hepatocellular carcinoma with MVI; (2) Solitary tumor with the maximum diameter of ≤ 5 cm; and (3) Enhanced CT scanning was performed before surgery. The exclusion criteria were: (1) Complicated with other malignant tumors, and multiple primary or recurrent liver cancer; (2) History of preoperative treatment; (3) CT revealed a vascular tumor thrombus or macrovascular invasion; or (4) The tumor boundary was difficult to determine. The flowchart for the screening of patients is presented in Figure 1.

### Examination methods

The Philips (Brilliance iCT 256) and Neusoft (NeuViz 64EN) scanners were used, with a tube voltage of 100-200 kV, tube current of 171-313 mAs, scanning layer thickness of 5 mm, layer spacing of 5 mm, and matrix of 1024 × 1024. The contrast medium (iopromide injection, 300 mgI/mL) was injected using a high-pressure syringe through the anterior cubital vein at a rate of 3.5 mL/s and at a dose of 1.2 mL/kg. Dynamic contrast-enhanced imaging data acquisition was performed at fixed time points: For the arterial phase, acquisition occurred at approximately 25-33 s after administration; for the portal vein phase, it was 57-63 s, and for the delayed phase, 117-123 s.

### Observation of imaging features

The two-trait predictor of venous invasion (TTPVI) was defined as having two independent imaging characteristics at the same time, and the development of an internal tumor artery without the signs of low density at the tumor margin[10]. Radiogenomic invasion (RVI) comprised of three independent image features: Intratumoral artery, low-density ring, and tumor-liver difference[11]. If there was an intratumoral artery, but there was no low-density ring or tumor-liver difference, the tumor was considered to have RVI. The imaging features (TTPVI and RVI) were evaluated double-blindly by two radiologists (with three years and seven years of experience in abdominal radiology, respectively). If these radiologists had inconsistent evaluation results, a third senior radiologist (with 13 years of experience in abdominal radiology) would make the further confirmation. The detailed description is presented in Figure 2.

### Drawing, image feature extraction, selection, and construction of region of interest

**Region of interest selection:** The CT images of the patients in the arterial phase were exported in DICOM format. Without knowing the pathological results, the radiologist with three years of experience in abdominal radiology used the 3D-Slice software ( www.slice.org) to delineate the region of interest (ROI) in each layer that contained the tumor, and finally formed the three-dimensional segmented image.

**Extraction of radiomic features:** After segmenting the images, the plug-in radiologics in the 3D-Slice software was used to analyze the original image data in the ROI, and 1351 candidate texture parameters were extracted, including the histogram features, morphological features, original features, and texture features.

**Selection of features correlated to the MVI status and construction of the radiomics tags:** First, the extracted intraclass features were evaluated by intraclass correlation coefficient (ICC), and features with ICC < 0.75 were removed. Then, the least absolute shrinkage and selection operator (LASSO) algorithm was used for dimension reduction and feature construction, and the least feature variables were selected by 10-fold cross-validation with the minimal value. The selected features were modeled by Logistic regression, in order to generate the formula of the radiomics score (rad-score, RS) and calculate the RS score of each patient.

### Statistical analysis

The R language (version 3.4.0, https://www.r-project.org) was used for the statistical analyses, and $P < 0.05$ was considered statistically significant. The chi-square test for

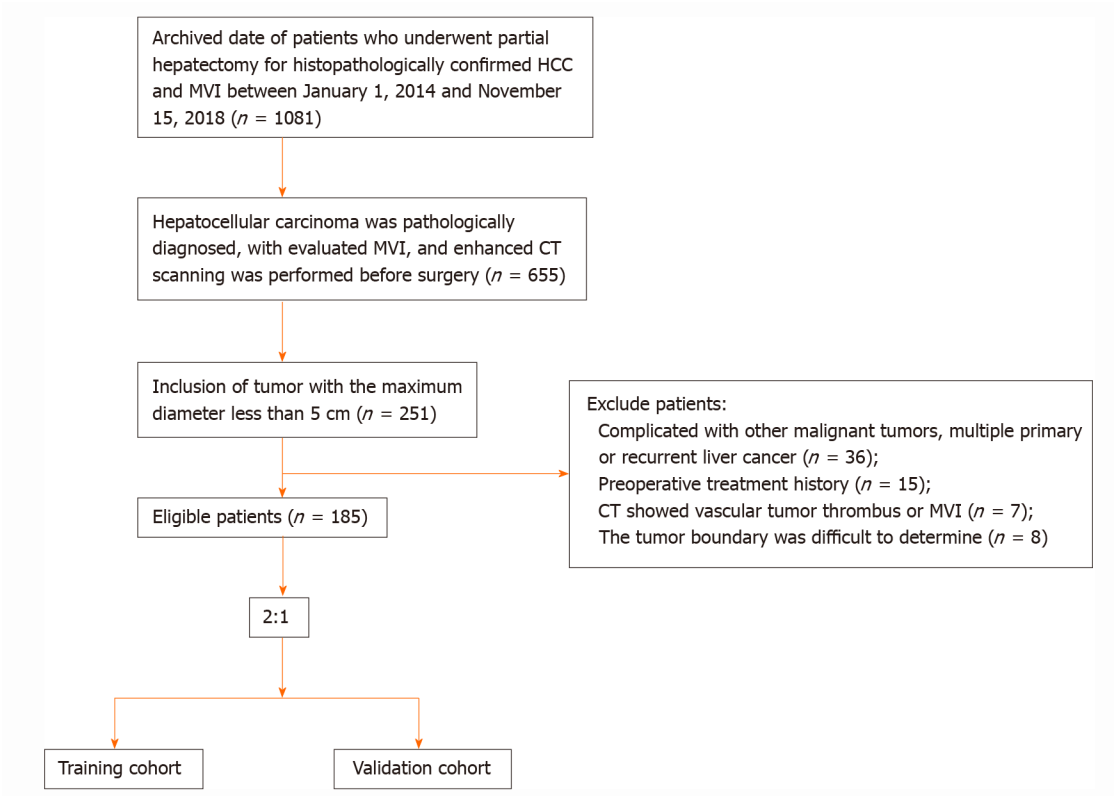



**Figure 1 Screening process for patients with liver cancer.** HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma; CT: Computed tomography; MVI: Microvascular invasion.

two independent samples was used for categorical variables, and Mann-Whitney *U*-test for two independent samples was used for continuous variables, in order to analyze the difference between the training group and verification group. The receiver operator characteristic curve and the area under the curve (AUC) were used to evaluate the prediction efficiency of the radiomic and image features, and the Delong test was used to determine whether there was a statistical difference between the two methods.

## RESULTS

### *Patient clinicopathologic features*

Finally, the study consisted of 185 patients. Tumor size ranged from 10 mm to 50 mm. The clinicopathological and CT features in the training group and verification group are presented in Table 1. There was no significant difference in scores for MVI, other clinical data, imaging features (TTPVI and RVI), or RS between the two groups ($P > 0.05$), indicating the reasonable arrangement of the training group and verification group.

### *Construction of radiomics tags*

After removal by high correlation, 185 of the 1531 features remained. Then, ten features were selected by dimension reduction using the LASSO algorithm, as shown in Figure 3.

According to the weighting coefficient corresponding to the feature (Figure 3), the radiomics formula was obtained and used to calculate the histological score of each lesion in the training group and verification group. The formula is as follows: Rad-score = -0.66692761 - 0.02491645 × originalshapeFlatness + 0.10564798 × log.sigma.1.0.mm.3DglcmContrast + 0.08789965 × log.sigma.2.0.mm.3DgldmDependenceVariance- 0.06847308 × log.sigma.2.0.mm.3DglszmSizeZoneNonUniformityNormalized - 0.01878760 × log.sigma.2.0.mm.3DglszmSizeZoneNonUniformity + 0.14275995 × log.sigma.3.0.mm.3Dfirstorder90Percentile + 0.04978394 × log.sigma.4.0.mm.3DglszmSmallAreaEmphasis - 0.02095096 × log.sigma.4.0.mm.3DngtdmBusyness + 0.06796763 × wavelet.HLLglcmSumSquares + 0.0767876 × 1wavelet.HLLglszmLargeAreaLow

**Table 1 Clinical and imaging features of patients in the training group and verification group**

| Feature | Training group (*n* = 124) | Verification group (*n* = 61) | *Z* value/$\chi^2$ value | *P* value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Age (yr), median (quartile) | 54 (47; 63) | 52 (46; 62) | -0.900 | 0.368 |
| Gender/cases | | | | |
| Male | 102 | 53 | 0.349 | 0.555 |
| Female | 22 | 8 | | |
| Hepatitis B | 104 | 56 | 1.575 | 0.210 |
| Liver cirrhosis | 84 | 43 | 0.044 | 0.833 |
| AFP (ng/mL) | | | | |
| ≤ 20 | 73 | 30 | 1.188 | 0.276 |
| > 20 | 51 | 31 | | |
| MVI | | | | |
| Negative | 82 | 40 | 0.000 | 1.000 |
| Positive | 42 | 21 | | |
| Tumor size (mm), median (quartile) | 36 (28; 44) | 34 (27.5; 41) | -0.746 | 0.456 |
| TTPVI | | | | |
| Negative | 56 | 25 | 0.145 | 0.703 |
| Positive | 68 | 36 | | |
| RVI | | | | |
| Negative | 93 | 40 | 1.362 | 0.243 |
| Positive | 31 | 21 | | |
| Rad-score, median (quartile) | -0.669 (-0.831; -0.546) | -0.640 (-0.780; -0.494) | -0.917 | 0.359 |

AFP: α-fetoprotein; MVI: Microvascular invasion; TTPVI: Two-trait predictor of venous invasion; RVI: Radiogenomic invasion; Rad-score: Radiomics score.

GrayLevelEmphasis.

### *Predictive performance of radiomics tags*

The median RS [quartile interval] of MVI positive patients [training group: -0.574 (-0.695, -0.412); verification group: -0.495 (-0.644, -0.429)] was significantly higher than that of MVI negative patients [training group: -0.710 (-0.899, -0.610); verification group: -0.709 (-0.805, -0.589)] in both the training and verification groups, and the difference was statistically significant ($P < 0.05$). The radiomics tags exhibited better diagnostic efficacy in both the training and verification groups, as shown in Table 2.

### *Comparison of predictive performance between radiomics tags and MVI-related image features*

As shown in Figure 4 and Table 2, the diagnostic efficacy of the radiomics score was higher than that of the image features in the training group and verification group, and the difference was statistically significant ($P < 0.05$).

## DISCUSSION

The present study revealed that radiomics, as an emerging method at present, exhibited good diagnostic efficiency and better accuracy in predicting MVI, when compared to image features, indicating that radiomics is a more suitable method for predicting MVI in solitary HCC ≤ 5 cm.

A number of studies have shown that tumor size and imaging features can predict MVI, in which TTPVI and RVI are good predictors with an ideal sensitivity and specificity[11]. However, the diagnostic performance of TTPVI and RVI in the present study was significantly lower than that in previous studies, which might be attributed

**Table 2 Comparison of predictive performance between radiomics tags and image features**

| | Training group | | Verification group | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | AUC (95%CI) | *P* value | AUC (95%CI) | *P* value |
| Rad-score | 0.724 (0.584-0.863) | | 0.745 (0.655-0.834) | |
| TTPVI | 0.590 (0.500-0.679) | | 0.522 (0.393-0.651) | |
| RVI | 0.545 (0.462-0.628) | | 0.528 (0.401-0.655) | |
| Rad *vs* TTPVI | | 0.018 | | 0.043 |
| Rad *vs* RVI | | 0.002 | | 0.048 |

AUC: Area under the curve; CI: Confidence interval; TTPVI: Two-trait predictor of venous invasion; RVI: Radiogenomic invasion; Rad-score: Radiomics score.

to the difference in tumor diameter of the study samples. Furthermore, previous studies did not define the tumor size, while the present study merely included patients with a tumor diameter of ≤ 5 cm. In addition, the imaging predictors, such as internal arteries and low-density shadow, were not commonly observed in cases with small tumors, which significantly reduced the positive rate of the MVI-related image features in the present study.

With the recent increase in development of radiomics, numerous studies have indicated that radiomics can reveal the pathological grade, prognosis, MVI, and treatment response of liver cancer. The nomogram of MVI in HCC based on CT radiomics established by Peng *et al*[12] exhibited good decision-making efficiency (AUC = 0.84), which was slightly higher than the results of the present study, but the model did not involve the tumor diameter. In another study[13], the diagnostic efficacy of predicting MVI in a tumor diameter of ≤ 5 cm based on radiomics (the AUC for the verification and verification group was 0.637 and 0.583, respectively) was slightly lower than that of the present study. Compared to that study[13], the present study adopted more stringent inclusion and exclusion criteria. Moreover, the present study only included solitary liver cancer with a diameter of ≤ 5 cm. Partial hepatectomy is the first choice for patients with solitary liver cancer ≤ 5 cm and good liver function[9]. However, if the lesion is not fully resected, the residual MVI near the surgical margin may be an important cause of recurrence in patients with HCC[14], and some studies have demonstrated that extended resection can reduce the early recurrence rate of patients with liver cancer complicated with MVI[15]. Therefore, the present study has certain reference value for surgery choice in patients with liver cancer. In addition, the present study excluded patients with a visible thrombus or the invasion of large blood vessels, rupture and bleeding of liver cancer, and intangible tumor boundary due to other reasons, because the ROI of these patients was difficult to delineate. Hence, measurement errors were hard to avoid. Furthermore, the present study employed the three-dimensional ROI of tumors to the extract radiomics features, which can better reflect the whole outline of the tumor, and allow for the extraction of more tumor information, when compared to two-dimensional ROI. Some studies have revealed that the feature extraction of the maximum cross-sectional area cannot represent the whole tumor[16]. Hence, the present study has obtained more objective prediction results.

The present study had some limitations. First, the present retrospective and single-center study may have selection bias. Second, the present study only used arterial phase images. Multi-phase images may be utilized to obtain more tumor information and improve the diagnostic efficiency. Therefore, multi-center studies with large samples and multi-phase images would become our future research content.

## CONCLUSION

In conclusion, CT radiomics has certain predictive value for MVI in solitary HCC ≤ 5 cm. Compared to imaging features, the predictive ability of radiomics tags is significantly higher. The radiomics model of MVI would facilitate clinicians in choosing the appropriate treatment.

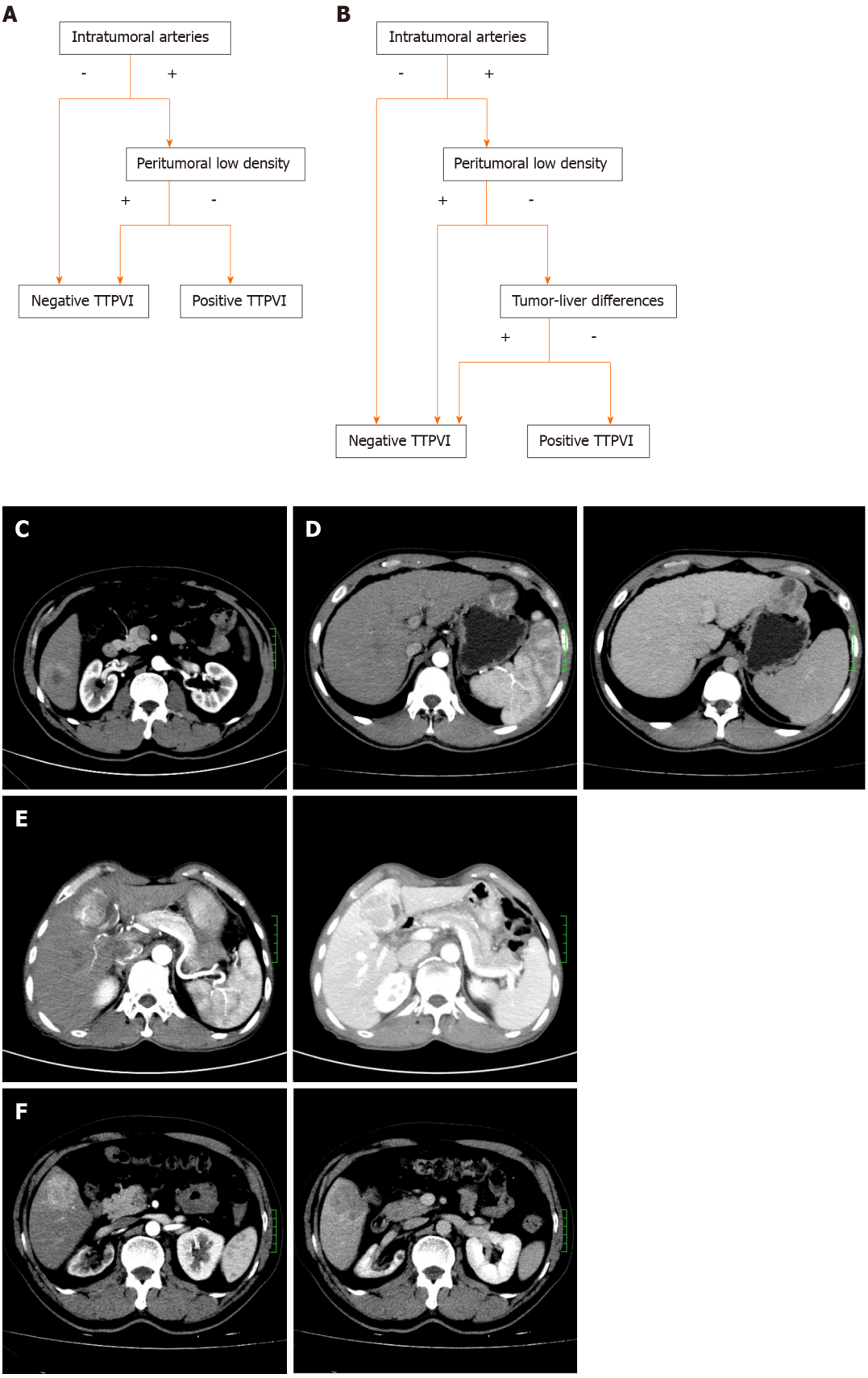



**Figure 2 Specific performance of two-trait predictor of venous invasion and radiogenomic invasion.** A and B: The discriminant process of two-trait predictor of venous invasion (TTPVI) (A) and radiogenomic invasion (RVI) (B); C: Negative intratumoral arteries: Negative TTPVI and RVI; D: Positive intratumoral arteries and peritumoral low density: Negative TTPVI and PVI; E: Positive intratumoral arteries, negative peritumoral low-density shadow, and positive tumor-liver differences: Positive TTPVI and negative RVI; F: Positive intratumoral arteries, negative peritumoral low density, and negative tumor-liver differences: Positive TTPVI and RVI. TTPVI: Two-trait predictor of venous invasion; RVI: Radiogenomic invasion.

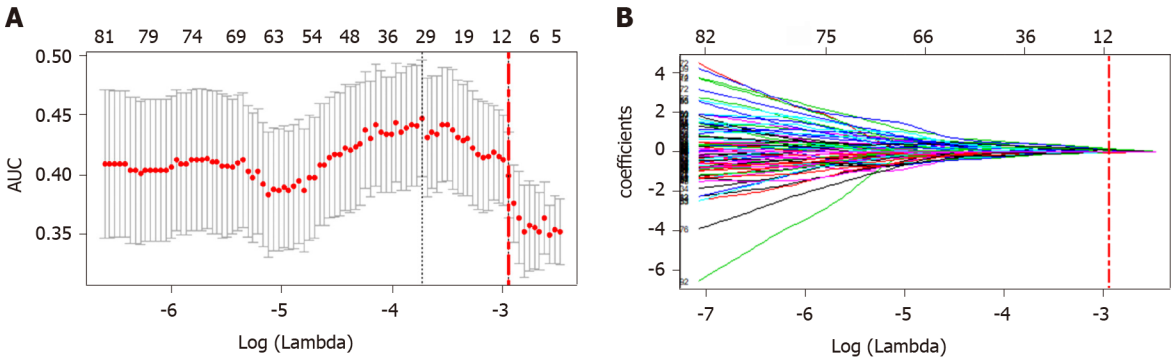



**Figure 3 Selection of radiomic features using the least absolute shrinkage and selection operator-logistic regression model.** A: Coefficient profile of 158 radiomics features against the area under the curve; B: Cross-validation curve. Red dotted vertical lines are drawn at the optimal log (Lambda) by using 10-fold cross-validation and the 1-SE criteria. Ten nonzero coefficients are chosen. AUC: Area under the curve.

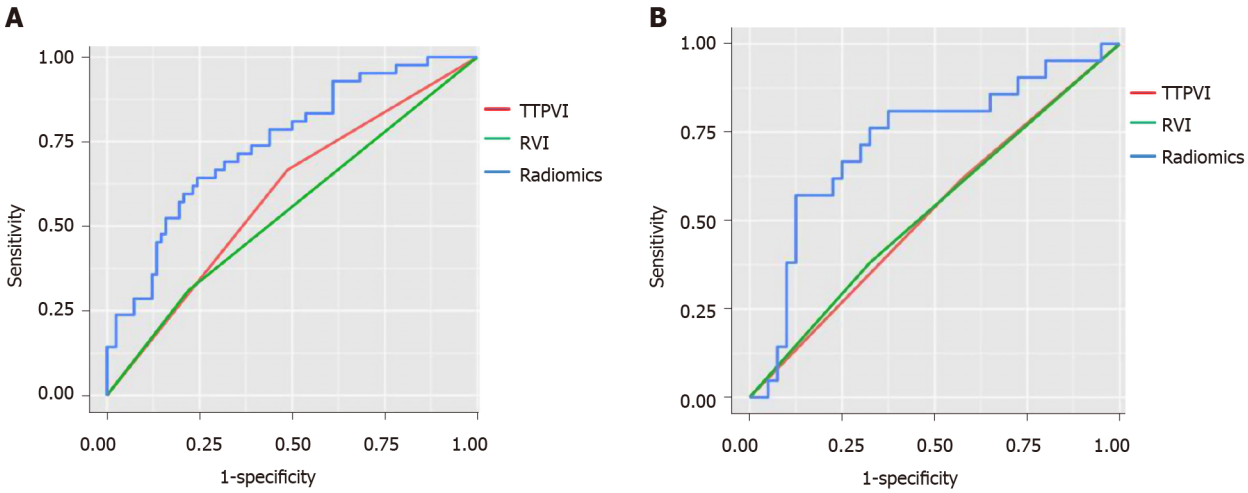



**Figure 4 The two-trait predictor of venous invasion (green curve), radiogenomic invasion (red curve), and receiver operator characteristic of radiomics tag (blue curve) from the two groups.** A: Training group; B: Verification group. TTPVI: Two-trait predictor of venous invasion; RVI: Radiogenomic invasion.

## ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

### *Research background*

Liver cancer is one of the most common malignant tumors, and ranks as the fourth leading cause of cancer death worldwide. Microvascular invasion (MVI) is considered one of the most important factors for recurrence and poor prognosis of liver cancer. Radiomics as an emerging field, aims to utilize artificial intelligence software to develop methods that may contribute to cancer diagnosis, treatment improvement, and evaluation and better prediction.

### *Research motivation*

At present, few studies have focused on the prediction of MVI in the early stage of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) (which refers to solitary tumor with a size of ≤ 5 cm, without MVI). Our study aimed to investigate the predictive value of computed tomography (CT) radiomics for MVI in solitary HCC ≤ 5 cm.

### *Research objectives*

This study aimed to investigate the predictive value of radiomics for MVI in solitary HCC ≤ 5 cm.

### *Research methods*

A total of 185 HCC patients, including 122 MVI negative and 63 MVI positive patients, were retrospectively analyzed. All patients were randomly assigned to the training

group ($n$ = 124) and validation group ($n$ = 61), at a ratio of 2:1. A total of 1351 radiomic features were extracted based on three-dimensional images. In the training group, the least absolute shrinkage and selection operator feature selection algorithm was used to reduce the dimensions, and the most relevant radiomic features of MVI were selected to calculate the image score (Rad-score, RS) of each patient. The diagnostic performance of the radiomics model was verified in the validation group, and the Delong test was applied to compare the radiomics and MVI-related imaging features (two-trait predictor of venous invasion and radiogenomic invasion).

### Research results

A total of ten radiomics features were finally obtained after screening 1531 features. According to the weighting coefficient that corresponded to the features, the RS calculation formula was obtained, and the RS score of each patient was calculated. The radiomics model exhibited a better correction and identification ability in the training and validation groups [area under the curve: 0.72 (95% confidence interval: 0.58-0.86) and 0.74 (95% confidence interval: 0.66-0.83), respectively]. Its prediction performance was significantly higher than that of the image features ($P$ < 0.05).

### Research conclusions

CT radiomics has certain predictive value for MVI in solitary HCC ≤ 5 cm, and the predictive ability is higher than that of image features.

### Research perspectives

The accurate prediction of MVI before surgery is desperately needed. Radiomics as an emerging field, aims to utilize artificial intelligence software to develop methods that may contribute to cancer diagnosis, treatment improvement and evaluation, and better prediction. At present, few studies have focused on the prediction of MVI in the early stage of HCC (which refers to solitary tumor with a size of ≤ 5 cm, without MVI). The present study aimed to investigate the predictive value of CT radiomics for MVI in solitary HCC ≤ 5 cm.

## REFERENCES


1 Global cancer statistics 2018: GLOBOCAN estimates of incidence and mortality worldwide for 36 cancers in 185 countries. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2020; **70**: 313 [PMID: 32767693 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21609]

2 **Chen W**, Zheng R, Baade PD, Zhang S, Zeng H, Bray F, Jemal A, Yu XQ, He J. Cancer statistics in China, 2015. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2016; **66**: 115-132 [PMID: 26808342 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21338]

3 **Bruix J**, Gores GJ, Mazzaferro V. Hepatocellular carcinoma: clinical frontiers and perspectives. *Gut* 2014; **63**: 844-855 [PMID: 24531850 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2013-306627]

4 **Kim KA**, Kim MJ, Jeon HM, Kim KS, Choi JS, Ahn SH, Cha SJ, Chung YE. Prediction of microvascular invasion of hepatocellular carcinoma: usefulness of peritumoral hypointensity seen on gadoxetate disodium-enhanced hepatobiliary phase images. *J Magn Reson Imaging* 2012; **35**: 629-634 [PMID: 22069244 DOI: 10.1002/jmri.22876]

5 **Rodríguez-Perálvarez M**, Luong TV, Andreana L, Meyer T, Dhillon AP, Burroughs AK. A systematic review of microvascular invasion in hepatocellular carcinoma: diagnostic and prognostic variability. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2013; **20**: 325-339 [PMID: 23149850 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-012-2513-1]

6 **Wang H**, Wu MC, Cong WM. Microvascular invasion predicts a poor prognosis of solitary hepatocellular carcinoma up to 2 cm based on propensity score matching analysis. *Hepatol Res* 2019; **49**: 344-354 [PMID: 30117236 DOI: 10.1111/hepr.13241]

7 **Pons F**, Varela M, Llovet JM. Staging systems in hepatocellular carcinoma. *HPB (Oxford)* 2005; **7**: 35-41 [PMID: 18333159 DOI: 10.1080/13651820410024058]

8 **Lambin P**, Rios-Velazquez E, Leijenaar R, Carvalho S, van Stiphout RG, Granton P, Zegers CM, Gillies R, Boellard R, Dekker A, Aerts HJ. Radiomics: extracting more information from medical images using advanced feature analysis. *Eur J Cancer* 2012; **48**: 441-446 [PMID: 22257792 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2011.11.036]

9 **Yau T**, Tang VY, Yao TJ, Fan ST, Lo CM, Poon RT. Development of Hong Kong Liver Cancer staging system with treatment stratification for patients with hepatocellular carcinoma. *Gastroenterology* 2014; **146**: 1691-700. e3 [PMID: 24583061 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2014.02.032]

10 **Renzulli M**, Brocchi S, Cucchetti A, Mazzotti F, Mosconi C, Sportoletti C, Brandi G, Pinna AD, Golfieri R. Can Current Preoperative Imaging Be Used to Detect Microvascular Invasion of Hepatocellular Carcinoma? *Radiology* 2016; **279**: 432-442 [PMID: 26653683 DOI: 10.1148/radiol.2015150998]

11 **Banerjee S**, Wang DS, Kim HJ, Sirlin CB, Chan MG, Korn RL, Rutman AM, Siripongsakun S, Lu D, Imanbayev G, Kuo MD. A computed tomography radiogenomic biomarker predicts microvascular

invasion and clinical outcomes in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2015; **62**: 792-800 [PMID: 25930992 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27877]

12 **Peng J**, Zhang J, Zhang Q, Xu Y, Zhou J, Liu L. A radiomics nomogram for preoperative prediction of microvascular invasion risk in hepatitis B virus-related hepatocellular carcinoma. *Diagn Interv Radiol* 2018; **24**: 121-127 [PMID: 29770763 DOI: 10.5152/dir.2018.17467]

13 **He M**, Zhang P, Ma X, He B, Fang C, Jia F. Radiomic Feature-Based Predictive Model for Microvascular Invasion in Patients With Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *Front Oncol* 2020; **10**: 574228 [PMID: 33251138 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2020.574228]

14 **Zhao H**, Hua Y, Lu Z, Gu S, Zhu L, Ji Y, Qiu Y, Dai T, Jin H. Prognostic value and preoperative predictors of microvascular invasion in solitary hepatocellular carcinoma ≤ 5 cm without macrovascular invasion. *Oncotarget* 2017; **8**: 61203-61214 [PMID: 28977857 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.18049]

15 **Wang H**, Yu H, Qian YW, Cao ZY, Wu MC, Cong WM. Impact of Surgical Margin on the Prognosis of Early Hepatocellular Carcinoma (≤5 cm): A Propensity Score Matching Analysis. *Front Med (Lausanne)* 2020; **7**: 139 [PMID: 32478080 DOI: 10.3389/fmed.2020.00139]

16 **Ng F**, Kozarski R, Ganeshan B, Goh V. Assessment of tumor heterogeneity by CT texture analysis: can the largest cross-sectional area be used as an alternative to whole tumor analysis? *Eur J Radiol* 2013; **82**: 342-348 [PMID: 23194641 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejrad.2012.10.023]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

*World J Gastroenterol* 2021 May 7; 27(17): 2025-2038

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i17.2025

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Retrospective Study

# Hepatocellular carcinoma progression in hepatitis B virus-related cirrhosis patients receiving nucleoside (acid) analogs therapy: A retrospective cross-sectional study

Dan-Hong Yang, Wei-Ping Wang, Qiang Zhang, Hong-Ying Pan, Yi-Cheng Huang, Jia-Jie Zhang

**ORCID number:** Dan-Hong Yang 0000-0002-1235-942X; Wei-Ping Wang 0000-0002-0304-9956; Qiang Zhang 0000-0002-0516-8588; Hong-Ying Pan 0000-0002-8433-3851; Yi-Cheng Huang 0000-0003-0058-9251; Jia-Jie Zhang 0000-0001-6095-0364.

**Author contributions:** Yang DH designed the research study; Yang DH and Wang WP analyzed the data and wrote the manuscript; Zhang Q, Pan HY, Huang YC and Zhang JJ collected the data; All authors have read and approved the final manuscript.

**Supported by** Zhejiang Provincial Natural Science Foundation, No. LY18H190002.

**Institutional review board statement:** This study was reviewed and approved by the Ethics Committee of the Zhejiang Provincial People's Hospital (2020QT155, Hangzhou, Zhejiang Province, China).

**Informed consent statement:** Patients were not required to give informed consent to the study because the analysis used anonymous clinical data that were obtained after each patient agreed to treatment by written consent.

**Dan-Hong Yang, Hong-Ying Pan, Yi-Cheng Huang, Jia-Jie Zhang,** Department of Infectious Diseases, Zhejiang Provincial People's Hospital, People's Hospital of Hangzhou Medical College, Hangzhou 310014, Zhejiang Province, China

**Wei-Ping Wang, Qiang Zhang,** Postgraduate Department, Bengbu Medical College, Bengbu 233030, Anhui Province, China

**Corresponding author:** Dan-Hong Yang, PhD, Chief Doctor, Department of Infectious Diseases, Zhejiang Provincial People's Hospital, People's Hospital of Hangzhou Medical College, No. 158 Shangtang Road, Hangzhou 310014, Zhejiang Province, China. ydh-11@163.com

## Abstract

### *BACKGROUND*

Antiviral therapy cannot completely block the progression of hepatitis B to hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC). Furthermore, there are few predictors of early HCC progression and limited strategies to prevent progression in patients with HBV-related cirrhosis who receive nucleos(t)ide analog (NA) therapy.

### *AIM*

The study aim was to clarify risk factors and the diagnostic value of alpha-fetoprotein (AFP) for HCC progression in NA-treated hepatitis B virus (HBV)-related cirrhosis patients.

### *METHODS*

In this retrospective cross-sectional study, we analyzed the clinical data of 266 patients with HBV-related cirrhosis who received NA treatment between February 2014 and April 2020 at Zhejiang Provincial People's Hospital. The patients were divided into two groups, 145 who did not progress to HCC (No-HCC group), and 121 who progressed to HCC during NA treatment (HCC group). The logistic regression analysis was used to analyze the risk factors of HCC progression. The diagnostic value of AFP for HCC was evaluated by receiver operating characteristic (ROC) curve analysis.

### *RESULTS*

Univariate analysis showed that age ≥ 60 years ($P$ = 0.001), hepatitis B and alcoholic etiology ($P$ = 0.007), smoking history ($P$ < 0.001), family history of HBV-

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** The authors declare that they have no conflicts of interest.

**Data sharing statement:** No additional data are available.



**Manuscript source:** Unsolicited manuscript

**Specialty type:** Gastroenterology and hepatology

**Country/Territory of origin:** China

**Peer-review report's scientific quality classification**

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B, B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

**Received:** January 31, 2021
**Peer-review started:** January 31, 2021
**First decision:** March 14, 2021
**Revised:** March 25, 2021
**Accepted:** April 2, 2021
**Article in press:** April 2, 2021
**Published online:** May 7, 2021

**P-Reviewer:** Rodrigues AT
**S-Editor:** Yan JP
**L-Editor:** Filipodia
**P-Editor:** Liu JH

related HCC ($P$ = 0.002), lamivudine resistance ($P$ = 0.011), HBV DNA negative ($P$ = 0.023), aspartate aminotransferase > 80 U/L ($P$ = 0.002), gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase > 120 U/L ($P$ = 0.001), alkaline phosphatase > 250 U/L ($P$ = 0.001), fasting blood glucose (FBG) ≥ 6.16 (mmol/L) ($P$ = 0.001) and Child-Pugh class C ( $P$ = 0.005) were correlated with HCC progression. In multivariate analysis, age ≥ 60 years [hazard ratio (HR) = 3.089, 95% confidence interval (CI): 1.437-6.631, $P$ = 0.004], smoking history (HR = 4.001, 95%CI: 1.836-8.716, $P$ < 0.01), family history of HBV-related HCC (HR = 6.763, 95%CI: 1.253-36.499, $P$ < 0.05), lamivudine resistance (HR = 2.949, 95%CI: 1.207-7.208, $P$ = 0.018), HBV DNA negative (HR = 0.026, 95%CI: 0.007-0.139, $P$ < 0.01), FBG ≥ 6.16 mmol/L (HR = 7.219, 95%CI: 3.716-14.024, $P$ < 0.01) were independent risk factors of HCC progression. ROC of AFP for diagnosis of HCC was 0.746 (95%CI: 0.674-0.818). A cutoff value of AFP of 9.00 ug/L had a sensitivity of 0.609, and specificity of 0.818 for diagnosing HCC.

*CONCLUSION*

Age ≥ 60 years, smoking history, family history of HCC, lamivudine resistance, HBV DNA negative, FBG ≥ 6.16 mmol/L were risk factors of HCC progression. Serum AFP had limited diagnostic value for HCC.

**Key Words:** Hepatitis B virus; Hepatocellular carcinoma; Cirrhosis; Risk factors; Nucleos(t)ide analogs; Progression



**Core Tip:** This retrospective cross-sectional study analyzed risk factors of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) progression in hepatitis B virus-related cirrhosis patients receiving nucleoside acid analog therapy for at least 6 mo. We discuss the diagnostic value of serum alpha-fetoprotein level in these patients. The results of the present study increase our understanding of HCC pathogenesis and help to provide HCC prevention and control strategies.

**Citation:** Yang DH, Wang WP, Zhang Q, Pan HY, Huang YC, Zhang JJ. Hepatocellular carcinoma progression in hepatitis B virus-related cirrhosis patients receiving nucleoside (acid) analogs therapy: A retrospective cross-sectional study. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; 27(17): 2025-2038
**URL:** https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v27/i17/2025.htm
**DOI:** https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v27.i17.2025

## INTRODUCTION

Liver cancer has the third-highest cancer mortality rate worldwide[1]. Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is one of the most common subtypes of liver cancer and is the sixth most prevalent cancer type. In most countries, the HCC mortality rates have increased in recent decades[2]. HCC is the fourth most common malignant tumor type in China, accounting for over 55% of the total number of HCC cases[3]. Infection with the hepatitis B virus (HBV) greatly increases the incidence of HCC because HBV causes chronic hepatitis B (CHB), liver cirrhosis, and ultimately HCC[4,5]. The estimated risk of developing HCC was observed to be 25 to 37-fold higher in hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) carriers compared with noninfected patients HBV infection is one of the most important contributors to the pathogenesis of HCC[6-8]. Over the past 30 years, antiviral drugs, especially nucleos(t)ide analogs (NAs), have been widely used in clinical practice and have substantial long-term effects on the inhibition of HBV replication, namely, delaying and reducing the occurrence and development of hepatitis B-related events. Many studies have shown that antiviral therapy can considerably decrease the incidence of HCC, even for patients in whom CHB has progressed to cirrhosis[9,10]. However, antiviral therapy does not completely block the progression of CHB to liver cancer[11,12]. In the current study, we analyzed the risk factors of HCC progression in patients with HBV-related cirrhosis who received

NAs therapy for at least 6 mo. The diagnostic value of the serum alpha-fetoprotein (AFP) level was evaluated in those patients by receiver operating characteristic (ROC) curve analysis. The study results increase our understanding of HCC pathogenesis and help to provide HCC prevention and control strategies.

## MATERIALS AND METHODS

### Patients and design

This cross-sectional study retrospectively enrolled 266 patients with HBV-related cirrhosis who were treated with NA antiviral therapy at Zhejiang Provincial People's Hospital between February 2014 and April 2020. The 266 patients were divided into two groups, 145with cirrhosis who did not progress to HCC during the observation period (No-HCC group), and 121 with cirrhosis who progressed to HCC (HCC group). The inclusion criteria were: (1) Age ≥ 18 years; (2) Treatment with lamivudine (LAM), adefovir (ADV), telbivudine, entecavir (ENT), or tenofovir (TDF) nucleoside or NAs for at least 6 mo; (3) Diagnosis of cirrhosis established by either histology (progressive fibrosis, nodule formation, and loss of hepatic architecture) or clinical data (symptoms and signs of cirrhosis, abnormal liver function, and ultrasonic identification). Demographic, clinical, laboratory, imaging, and pathology data were collected during the patient's hospital stay. The severity of cirrhosis was classified by the Child-Pugh criteria. Patients with HBV-related cirrhosis were diagnosed in accord with the guidelines for the prevention and treatment of chronic hepatitis B formulated by the Hepatology Branch and the Infectious Diseases Branch of the Chinese Medical Association[13,14]; and (4) HCC and hepatitis diagnoses confirmed by clinical and serological characteristics, ultrasonography, computed tomography (CT), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), hepatic arteriography with digital subtraction angiography (DSA) and pathological examination consistent with the hepatitis and primary liver cancer clinical diagnosis criteria[15,16]. The exclusion criteria were: (1) Hepatitis C virus, hepatitis D virus, or human immunodeficiency virus coinfection; (2) Autoimmune hepatitis and drug hepatitis; and (3) Hepatocarcinoma prior to antiviral treatment or within 6 mo after antiviral treatment. The study received no support from any pharmaceutical company and was approved by the Ethics Committee of the Zhejiang Provincial People's Hospital (2020QT155), Hangzhou, Zhejiang Province, China.

### Data collection and study design

The data collected from the electronic medical record system were age, sex, history of drinking and smoking, alanine aminotransferase (ALT), aspartate aminotransferase (AST), albumin (ALB), glutamyltranspeptidase (GGT), alkaline phosphatase (ALP), total bilirubin, fasting blood glucose (FBG), AFP, prothrombin time (PT), presence of ascites, hepatic encephalopathy, Child-Pugh score and classification, and family history of HBV, hepatitis B, and HCC. Serological markers of hepatitis B, serum content of HBV DNA, and history of NA treatment were reported by the patients or their families. All patients in the cohort were followed-up for 3 years or until death.

Serum liver function was tested by routine automated techniques using an Olympus AU5400 automated analyzer (Olympus, Tokyo, Japan). HBsAg, hepatitis B e-antigen (HBeAg), and hepatitis B e-antibody were assessed at baseline by chemiluminescence immunoassay (Abbott ARCHITECT i2000 SR analyzer; Abbott Diagnostics, Chicago, IL, United States). The serum HBV DNA load was assessed by RT-PCR using a LightCycler PCR system (Roche LightCycler480 II fluorescence quantitative PCR) in strict accordance with the instructions provided with the reagent kit (Shenzheng PG Biotech Co. Ltd, China). The detection limit was approximately 100 viral genome IU/mL. Genotypic resistance to LAM and ADV were determined at baseline by direct sequencing of the PCR amplification products. The serum AFP tumor marker was assayed by electrochemiluminescence. The study protocol conformed to the 1975 Declaration of Helsinki ethical guidelines for clinical studies.

### Statistical analysis

Descriptive data were expressed as means ± SD or $n$ (%). Continuous variables were compared using Student's $t$-test. Skewness distribution data were reported as the median with the range and were analyzed using the Mann–Whitney $U$ test. Categorical variables were analyzed using Fisher's exact test or Pearson's $\chi^2$ test. A logistic regression model was used to analyze single factors, and multivariate analysis with stepwise regression was used to identify statistically significant variables in the

single-factor analysis. The diagnostic performance of the serum AFP level was evaluated using ROC curves. The cutoff value, which was the maximum area under the ROC curve (AUROC), and accuracy were calculated with 95% confidence intervals (CIs). A *P* value of less than 0.05 was determined to indicate statistical significance. The SPSS statistical package (version 22.0; SPSS, Chicago, IL, United States) was used for the statistical analysis.

## RESULTS

### *Clinical characteristics of HBV-related cirrhosis patients receiving NA therapy*

The clinical features of the No-HCC and the HCC group were compared. There were no significant differences between the two groups in the sex ratio, duration of NA therapy, HBsAg level, HBeAg positivity, jaundice index, Child-Pugh class B ratio, and PT level ($P > 0.05$). The HCC group included significantly more patients older than 60 years of age and patients with increased levels of ALT, AST, GGT, ALP, and FBG, and decreased levels of ALB than the No-HCC group. The HCC group also contained more patients with mixed etiology (alcohol + HBV), history of smoking, family history of HBV-related HCC, LAM resistance, Child-Pugh class C status, and an AFP > 20 μg/L and fewer HBV DNA-negative and Child-Pugh class A patients than the No-HCC group (Table 1).

### *Risk factors for HCC progression in HBV-related cirrhosis patients receiving NA therapy*

We analyzed factors associated with HCC progression in HBV-related cirrhosis patients who received NA therapy. Univariate analysis found age ≥ 60 years ($P = 0.002$), HBV + alcohol mixed etiology ($P = 0.007$), smoking history ($P < 0.001$), family history of HBV-related HCC ($P = 0.002$), LAM resistance ($P = 0.046$), HBV DNA negativity ($P = 0.023$), AST > 80 U/L ($P = 0.002$), GGT > 120 U/L ($P = 0.001$), ALP > 250 U/L ($P = 0.001$), FBG ≥ 6.16 mmol/L ($P = 0.001$), and Child-Pugh class C ($P = 0.005$) to be significantly related to HCC (Table 2). Multivariate analysis showed that age ≥ 60 years [hazard ratio (HR) = 3.089, 95%CI: 1.437-6.631, $P = 0.004$], smoking history (HR = 4.001 95%CI: 1.836-8.716, $P < 0.01$), family history of HBV-related HCC (HR = 6.763, 95%CI: 1.253-36.499, $P < 0.05$), LAM resistance (HR = 2.949, 95%CI: 1.207-7.208, $P = 0.018$), HBV DNA negative (HR = 0.026, 95%CI: 0.007-0.139, $P < 0.01$), and FBG ≥ 6.16 mmol/L (HR = 7.219, 95%CI: 3.716-14.024, $P < 0.01$) independently predicted HCC progression in patients with HBV-related cirrhosis who received NAs therapy (Table 3).

### *Serum AFP levels in the No-HCC and HCC groups*

In the HCC group, there were 56 patients with serum AFP levels > 20 μg/L, but that was seen in only 17 patients in the No-HCC group ($P < 0.001$). In the HCC group, 65 patients had AFP levels < 20 μg/L. The AFP levels of 37 patients in the HCC group were > 400 μg/L, but only two patients in the No-HCC group levels > 400 μg/L ($P < 0.001$, Table 4). The 17 patients in the No-HCC group with AFP levels > 20 μg/L were followed for 1 year. Their AFP level was determined every month and showed a dynamic decline, returning to normal within 1 year. All patients underwent enhanced MRI of imaging of the liver. We believe that hepatitis B activity, rather than HCC, led to the AFP abnormality. The AFP level distributions in the two groups are shown in Figures 1 and 2.

### *Serum AFP has limited ability to diagnose HBV-related HCC*

We investigated the value of using serum AFP to diagnose HCC in patients who had HBV-related cirrhosis and were receiving NAs therapy. The AUROC of serum AFP for the diagnosis of HCC was 0.746 (95%CI: 0.674-0.818). The sensitivity of serum AFP in diagnosing HCC in those patients was 0.609, and the specificity was 0.818. The positive predictive value of HCC was 22.51%, the negative predictive value of HCC was 46.07%, the cutoff was 9.00, and the Youden index was 0.427 (Figure 3).

## DISCUSSION

HBV infection remains a major risk factor for the development of cirrhosis and HCC[17]. Patients with chronic HBV are at risk of developing liver-related complica-

**Table 1 Comparison of the clinical characteristics of patients with and without hepatocellular carcinoma**

| Characteristic | no-HCC group (*n* = 145) | HCC group (*n* = 121) | *P* value |
|---|---|---|---|
| Age ≥ 60 yr, *n* (%) | 41 (28.3) | 64 (52.9) | < 0.001 |
| Male, *n* (%) | 99 (68.3) | 91 (75.2) | 0.133 |
| Etiology of liver cirrhosis, *n* (%) | | | |
| HBV | 101 (60.7) | 76 (62.8) | 0.363 |
| HBV + alcohol | 31 (21.4) | 45 (37.2) | 0.006 |
| HBV + HEV | 1 (0.6) | 0 (0.0) | - |
| HBV + schistosome | 1 (0.6) | 0 (0.0) | - |
| Smoking history, *n* (%) | 21 (14.5) | 51 (42.1) | < 0.001 |
| Family history of HBV-related HCC, *n* (%) | 10 (6.9) | 23 (19.0) | 0.004 |
| Medication history | | | |
| Duration of NA treatment, yr, median ($P_{25}$, $P_{75}$) | 3.9 (2.1, 5.8) | 5.4 (2.3, 6.9) | 0.067 |
| LAM resistance, *n* (%) | 18 (12.4) | 27 (22.3) | 0.021 |
| HBsAg level, IU/L, median ($P_{25}$, $P_{75}$) | 255.0 (56.0, 678.0) | 269.0 (67.0, 656.0) | 0.456 |
| HBeAg positive, *n* (%) | 37 (25.5) | 21 (17.4) | 0.136 |
| HBV DNA negative, *n* (%) | 67 (46.2) | 39 (32.2) | 0.033 |
| ALB, U/L | 36.29 ± 7.98 | 33.34 ± 6.62 | 0.002 |
| ALT, U/L, median ($P_{25}$, $P_{75}$) | 27.00 (18.00, 37.00) | 32.00 (21.27, 62.00) | 0.006 |
| AST, U/L, median ($P_{25}$, $P_{75}$) | 33.00 (23.00, 47.00) | 44.50 (31.65, 96.85) | < 0.001 |
| GGT, U/L, median ($P_{25}$, $P_{75}$) | 33.00 (20.00, 46.00) | 61.50 (32.75, 160.75) | < 0.001 |
| ALP, U/L, median ($P_{25}$, $P_{75}$) | 99.00 (73.00, 126.00) | 134.50 (92.00, 198.85) | < 0.001 |
| TB, μmol/L, median ($P_{25}$, $P_{75}$) | 20.41 (13.81, 44.60) | 24.46 (16.60, 42.80) | 0.192 |
| FBS, mmol/L, median ($P_{25}$, $P_{75}$) | 5.17 ± 0.68 | 6.99 ± 1.31 | 0.025 |
| Ascites, *n* (%) | 33 (20.0) | 43 (34.7) | 0.022 |
| Child-Pugh class, *n* (%) | | | |
| A | 81 (55.9) | 55 (45.5) | 0.001 |
| B | 38 (26.2) | 26 (21.5) | 0.561 |
| C | 26 (17.9) | 40 (33.1) | 0.002 |
| AFP ≥ 20 μg/L, *n* (%) | 14 (9.7) | 56 (46.3) | < 0.001 |
| PT s, median ($P_{25}$, $P_{75}$) | 13.25 (11.80, 14.20) | 13.51 (12.41, 15.02) | 0.475 |

AFP: Alpha-fetoprotein; ALB: Albumin; ALP: Alkaline phosphatase; ALT: Alanine aminotransferase; AST: Aspartate aminotransferase; FBS: Fasting blood sugar; GGT: Glutamyl transpeptidase; HBeAb: Hepatitis B e-antibody; HBsAg: Hepatitis B surface antigen; HBV: Hepatitis B virus; HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma; LAM: Lamivudine; PT: Prothrombin time; SD: Standard deviation; TB: Total bilirubin.

tions, namely, cirrhosis and HCC. In China, 77% of cirrhosis cases and 84% of HCC cases are caused by HBV infection[18]. Antiviral therapy can reduce but not eliminate the risk of developing HCC[19-21]. The annual incidence of HCC ranges from 0.01% to 5.4% in patients with CHB who are treated with ENT or TDF[19,22]. NAs antiviral treatments can markedly inhibit viral replication and improve liver necrosis, inflammation, and fibrosis. However, NAs cannot eliminate covalently closed template DNA (cccDNA) produced during hepatitis B viral replication or clear the integrated HBV genome; therefore, NAs cannot completely block hepatitis B cirrhosis from developing into HCC[12,21]. The persistence of cccDNA and an integrated HBV genome is the basis for hepatitis B cirrhosis progressing to primary liver cancer[23,24]. In this study, we investigated the clinical characteristics of HCC progression in patients with HBV-related cirrhosis who received antiviral therapy with NAs.

**Table 2 Univariate logistic regression analysis of hepatitis B-related cirrhosis progressing to hepatocellular carcinoma in patients treated with nucleos(t)ide analogs**

| Characteristic | No-HCC group (*n* = 145) | HCC group (*n* = 121) | Univariate adjusted HR (95%CI) | *P* value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Age, yr | | | | |
| ≥ 60 | 40 (27.6) | 65 (52.9) | 2.664 (1.606-4.418) | 0.001 |
| < 60 | 105 (72.4) | 56 (46.3) | | |
| HBV + alcohol | | | | |
| Yes | 31 (21.4) | 45 (37.2) | 2.384 (1.271-4.473) | 0.007 |
| No | | | | |
| Smoking history | | | | |
| Yes | 21 (14.5) | 51 (42.1) | 4.073 (2.281-7.273) | < 0.001 |
| No | | | | |
| Family history of HBV-related HCC | | | | |
| Yes | 10 (6.9) | 23 (19.0) | 3.546 (1.573-7.998) | 0.002 |
| No | | | | |
| LAM resistance | | | | |
| Yes | 18 (12.4) | 27 (22.3) | 2.284 (1.214-4.297) | 0.011 |
| No | | | | |
| HBV DNA negative | | | | |
| Yes | 67 (46.2) | 39 (32.2) | 0.559 (0.339-0.922) | 0.023 |
| No | | | | |
| ALB (g/L) | | | | |
| < 35 | 67(46.2) | 62(51.2) | 1.223 (0.754-1.984) | 0.414 |
| ≥ 35 | 78 (53.8) | 59 (48.8) | | |
| ALT (U/L) | | | | |
| 50-100 | 13 (9.0) | 15 (12.4) | 1.324 (0.612-2.866) | 0.476 |
| > 100 | 10 (7.0) | 14 (11.6) | 1.138(0.482-2.688) | 0.768 |
| AST (U/L) | | | | |
| 40-80 | 32 (22.1) | 24 (19.8) | 0.919 (−0.713-0.514) | 0.783 |
| > 80 | 16 (10.3) | 31 (29.8) | 2.899 (0.436-1.767) | 0.002 |
| GGT (U/L) | | | | |
| 60-120 | 15 (10.3) | 20 (16.5) | 1.853 (0.892-3.847) | 0.098 |
| > 120 | 8 (5.1) | 28 (23.1) | 5.663 (1.075-2.573) | 0.001 |
| ALP (U/L) | | | | |
| 125-250 | 36(24.8) | 45 (38.8) | 1.609 (−0.062-1.028) | 0.073 |
| > 250 | 6 (1.4) | 21 (17.4) | 4.865 (0.667-2.993) | 0.001 |
| FBG (mmol/L) | | | | |
| ≥ 6.16 | 19 (13.1) | 37 (30.6) | 3.3179 (0.587-1.902) | 0.001 |
| < 6.16 | | | | |
| Ascites class | | | | |
| Yes | 33 (22.8) | 43 (35.5) | 0.834 (−0.412-0.060) | 0.142 |
| No | | | | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Child-Pugh class | | | | |
| A | 81 (58.6) | 55 (37.9) | 0.658 (−0.938-0.064) | 0.091 |
| B | 38 (26.2) | 26 (21.5) | 0.671 (−0.981-0.112) | 0.165 |
| C | 26 (17.9) | 40 (33.1) | 2.260 (0.247-1.427) | 0.005 |

Data are *n* (%) or mean ± SD as shown. AFP: Alpha-fetoprotein; ALP: Alkaline phosphatase; ALT: Alanine aminotransferase; AST: Aspartate aminotransferase; CI: Confidence interval; FBG: Fasting blood glucose; GGT: Glutamyl transpeptidase; HBV: Hepatitis B virus; HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma; HR: Hazard ratio; LAM: Lamivudine. .

**Table 3 Multivariate analysis of factors associated with hepatitis B-related cirrhosis progression to hepatocellular carcinoma in nucleos(t)ide analog-treated patients**

| Risk factor | β | SE | Wald | *P* value | OR (95%CI) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Age ≥ 60 yr | 1.127 | 0.390 | 8.347 | 0.004 | 3.089 (1.437-6.631) |
| Smoking history | 1.387 | 0.397 | 12.180 | < 0.01 | 4.001 (1.836-8.716) |
| Family history of HBV-related HCC | 1.911 | 0.860 | 4.938 | < 0.05 | 6.763 (1.253-36.499) |
| LAM resistance | 1.082 | 0.456 | 5.638 | 0.018 | 2.949 (1.207-7.208) |
| HBV DNA negative | -3.479 | 0.816 | 19.427 | < 0.01 | 0.026 (0.007-0.139) |
| FBG ≥ 6.16 mmol/L | 1.977 | 0.339 | 34.030 | < 0.01 | 7.219 (3.716-14.024) |

CI: Confidence interval; FBG: Fasting blood glucose; HBV: Hepatitis B virus; HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma; LAM: Lamivudine OR: Odds ratio;; SE: Standard error.

**Table 4 Comparison of the alpha-fetoprotein level distributions in patients with and without hepatocellular carcinoma, *n* (%)**

| AFP (μg/L) | No-HCC group (*n* = 145) | HCC group (*n* = 121) | *P* value |
|---|---|---|---|
| < 20 | 128 (88.27) | 65 (53.72) | < 0.001 |
| 20-100 | 12 (8.27) | 14 (11.57) | 0.51 |
| 100-200 | 1 (0.69) | 2 (2.17) | 0.231 |
| 200-400 | 2 (1.38) | 3 (2.48) | 1 |
| ≥ 400 | 2 (1.38) | 37 (30.58) | < 0.001 |

AFP: Alpha-fetoprotein; HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma.

Medical and healthcare progress, improved living standards, and decreased population fertility have led to population aging in China. Data from 22 tumor registration centers in China have shown that the average age of liver cancer onset increased from 58.80 to 62.35 years for men and from 64.02 to 68.99 years for women between 2000 and 2014[25]. Our study found that age ≥ 60 years was an independent risk factor for the progression of hepatitis B-related cirrhosis to HCC while receiving NAs antiviral therapy. An aging population and the burden caused by HCC mortality could be a future challenge for China. Previous studies have confirmed that poor lifestyle habits are related to a high incidence of liver cancer; in particular, a history of smoking and drinking increases the risk of HCC[26,27]. Tobacco smoke contains various carcinogens, 11 of which are classified as International Agency for Research on Cancer Group 1 human carcinogens. Epidemiologic evidence from a recent meta-analysis showed a positive association between current tobacco smoking and liver cancer risk (risk ratio: 1.55, 95%CI: 1.46-1.65), suggesting a causal role of smoking in liver cancer development[28]. Liu *et al*[29] found that tobacco smoking and HBV infection positively interact in the development of liver cancer. Our results revealed smoking to be an independent risk factor of HCC progression (95%CI: 1.836-8.716, $P < 0.01$) even if the patients were receiving antiviral treatment. Studies have frequently reported that a family history of liver cancer increases HCC risk independent of

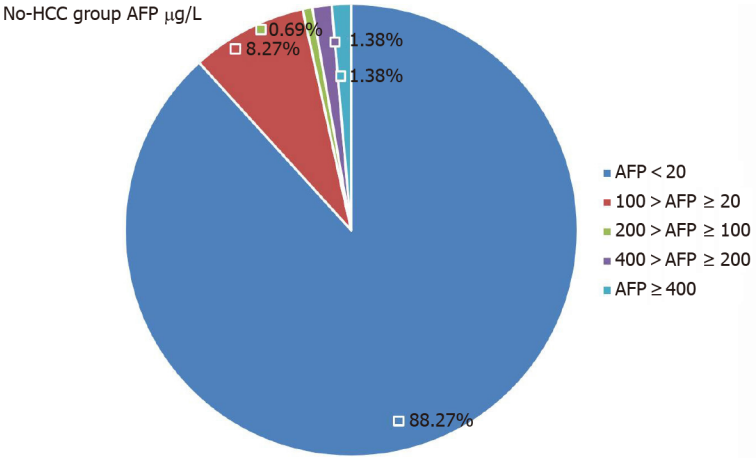



**Figure 1 Distribution of alpha-fetoprotein levels in patients without hepatocellular carcinoma.** AFP: Alpha-fetoprotein; HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma.

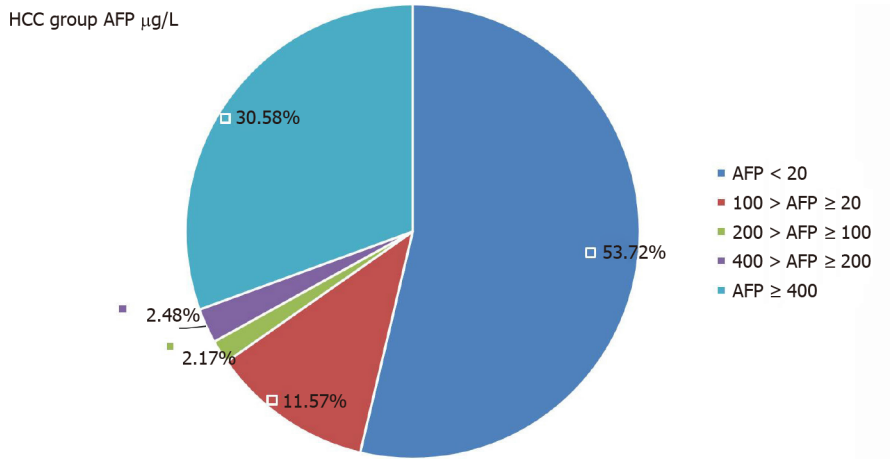



**Figure 2 Distribution of alpha-fetoprotein level in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma.** AFP: Alpha-fetoprotein; HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma.

hepatitis. The combination of a family history of liver cancer and hepatitis B serum markers is associated with a greater than 70-fold increase in HCC risk[30]. Super-additive and super-multiplicative interactions may exist between a family history of liver cancer and HBV infection that increase the risk of the development of liver cancer[31]. Our study found that a family history of HBV-related HCC is a risk factor of progression in cirrhotic patients receiving antiviral therapy (95%CI: 1.253-36.499, $P < 0.05$). Our results suggest that patients with HBV-related cirrhosis who smoke should quit smoking and cultivate a healthy lifestyle to reduce the risk of developing HCC[32,33]. Furthermore, close monitoring should be carried out if a patient's first-degree relative develops HBV-related HCC during antiviral treatment.

LAM has been used as an antiviral treatment for hepatitis B for the past 20 years in China. Some Chinese patients with hepatitis B-related cirrhosis have previously undergone primary LAM monotherapy. Studies have shown that long-term LAM antiviral therapy can delay disease progression, reduce liver function decompensation, and reduce the incidence of HCC[34,35]. The inflammation seen in liver histology can improve in patients with hepatitis B-related cirrhosis when they are treated with LAM, but with a prolonged treatment time, the incidence of drug-resistant viral mutation increases[34,36]. The clinical benefit of LAM is limited by the emergence of resistant mutant strains and viral breakthrough. Although some LAM-resistant CHB patients have received ADV combination therapy or sequential ENT or TDF monotherapy, some of these patients did not experience a beneficial treatment effect and still had continuous replication of HBV in the liver[37,38]. In patients with LAM resistance, those with cirrhosis had a higher HCC risk than non-cirrhotic patients. Rescue treatment with ADV in patients who developed viral breakthrough did not appear to reduce the risk of HCC compared with untreated patients without remission[11]. In

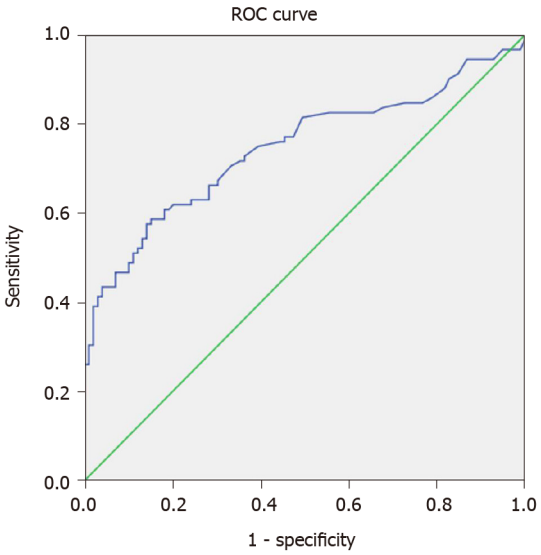



**Figure 3 Receiver operating characteristic curve analysis of alpha-fetoprotein to diagnose hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with hepatitis B virus-related cirrhosis receiving nucleos(t)ide analog therapy.** ROC: Receiver operating characteristic.

our study of patients treated with antiviral therapy for more than 6 mo, the number of HBV DNA-negative patients in the HCC group was lower than that in the No-HCC group. Many studies have found a correlation between serum HBV DNA levels and the occurrence of HCC in patients with hepatitis B. Kaneko *et al*[39] reported that detectable HBV DNA was significantly associated with a higher risk of HCC development compared with continuously undetectable HBV DNA. Chen *et al*[40] found that the incidence of HCC increased with serum HBV DNA level at study entry in a dose-response relationship ranging from 108/100,000 person-years for an HBV DNA level of < 300 copies/mL to 1152/100,000 person-years for an HBV DNA level of 1 million copies/mL or more. The corresponding cumulative incidence rates of HCC were 1.3% and 14.9%.

Even if the serum HBV DNA level in patients with hepatitis B-related cirrhosis is kept at a low level (< 2000 IU/mL), the risk of HCC is still high[41]. As shown in our study, HBV DNA negativity (HR = 0.026, 95%CI: 0.007-0.139, $P < 0.01$) independently predicted HCC progression in patients with HBV-related cirrhosis who received NAs therapy. Thus, to help avoid HCC progression, hepatitis B patients should continue to maintain an HBV DNA-negative status. Therefore, drugs with a high genetic barrier to resistance are suggested as first-line antiviral drugs for HBV therapy, and are recommended by current guidelines. Drugs such as ETV, TDF, and TDF alafenamide fumarate should be selected to generate a sustained antiviral treatment response and to reduce the occurrence of HBV resistance and the incidence of HCC[42,43].

As an important metabolic organ, the liver plays a key role in maintaining glucose homeostasis. Studies have found a positive relationship between liver cancer and diabetes mellitus[44,45]. Cell and animal experiments have shown that type 2 diabetes and male sex are associated with HCC development. Gao *et al*[46] demonstrated that heterozygous deletion of the *Ncoa5* gene caused spontaneous development of HCC exclusively in male mice, and NCOA5 deficiency increased susceptibility to both glucose intolerance and HCC. In a prospective cohort study, adjusted multivariable analysis showed that participants with 4.82 mmol/L ≤ FBG ≤ 5.49 mmol/L had a 47% increased risk of HCC, and those with an FBG > 5.49 mmol/L had a 69% increased risk[47]. In our study, the FBG level in the HCC group was higher than that in the No-HCC group (Table 1), and FBG ≥ 6.16 mmol/L was an independent risk factor for the HCC progression in patients with hepatitis B-related cirrhosis receiving NA antiviral treatment. Controlling blood sugar concentrations might be a way to decrease the risk of HCC in the Chinese population.

AFP is a glycoprotein that exists in a variety of different glycotypes. AFP has been used in the screening, diagnosis, efficacy evaluation, and prognosis evaluation of HCC. AFP elevation is commonly seen in active hepatitis, pregnancy, liver cancer, and embryonic tumors[48,49]. Previous studies reported that there was a significant correlation between serum AFP levels and the tumor size in liver cancer, and that the sensitivity and specificity of AFP depended on the selected serum level threshold[20,50]. Liu *et al*[51] found that approximately one-third of patients with

HCC had normal serum AFP levels and that the level was related to the volume of liver cancer lesions, vascular invasion, and differentiation. In our study, we found 56 patients with a serum AFP > 20 μg/L, and 19 with serum AFP levels between 20 and 400 μg/L and with HCC confirmed by imaging and histopathological examination of liver masses. However, an AFP level of < 20 μg/L did not exclude the possibility of HCC. This study showed that 65 patients with a serum AFP of < 20 μg/L had space-occupying lesions that were confirmed as HCC by MRI enhancement, histopathology, and liver DSA examination. That indicates that more sensitive diagnostic markers of HCC must be developed. In addition, more sensitive serum tumor markers such as milk fat globule-EGF factor 8, osteopontin, miRNA classifier, glypican-3[52-54], and others should be actively investigated or combined to identify HCC at an early stage[55]. However, their clinical sensitivity and specificity must first be confirmed.

This study had some limitations. First, it was not prospective. The impact of antiviral treatment time and the amount of smoking and drinking on the development of HCC require confirmation in prospective studies with larger sample sizes. Second, longer follow-up and surveillance of HBV-related cirrhosis patients receiving NA therapy is necessary to observe whether they progress to HCC in their lifetime, even though the 145 cirrhotic patients with NA therapy did not progress to HCC during the observation period. Third, additional molecular markers should be assessed for their ability to provide an early diagnosis of HCC in patients with HBV-related cirrhosis. Some data indicate that the currently used potent NAs can reduce but not eliminate the risk of HCC. The inability to eliminate HCC risk might persist because of risk factors that are not amenable to change by antiviral therapy or because of events that may have taken place before treatment initiation.

## CONCLUSION

In conclusion, age ≥ 60 years, a history of smoking, family history of HBV-related HCC, LAM resistance, HBV DNA negativity, and FBG ≥ 6.16 mmol/L were risk factors for HCC progression in patients with HBV-related cirrhosis who received NAs therapy. Patients with HBV-related cirrhosis should be treated with NA antiviral therapy that has a high genetic barrier to resistance[7] in order to improve the long-term response to antiviral therapy, to maintain an HBV DNA-negative status, and to prevent subsequent hepatitis activity. The early identification of HCC in patients with HBV-related cirrhosis remains difficult. Patients who receive antiviral therapy with NAs, especially those older than 60 years of age, should avoid smoking, control their blood sugar at a reasonable level, and undergo routine imaging examination of liver biochemistry and serum AFP evaluation. If space-occupying lesions are identified, the patient should undergo liver CT or MRI enhancement, or even liver DSA examination to identify HCC as promptly as possible, even if the AFP level is within the normal range.

## ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

### *Research background*

Antiviral therapy cannot completely block the progression of hepatitis B to hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC). Furthermore, there are few early predictors of HCC progression and early identification is difficult in patients with HBV-related cirrhosis who receive nucleos(t)ide analog (NA) therapy. The study is helpful to provide HCC prevention and control strategies by analyzing the risk factors of HCC progression and the diagnostic value of AFP for HCC in those people.

### *Research motivation*

The study objective was to identify factors that affect the occurrence of HCC and how to identify early HCC in patients with hepatitis B virus (HBV)-related cirrhosis who receive NA therapy. The results can improve the understanding of the development of HCC in those patients so as to improve the early detection and prevention of HCC.

### *Research objectives*

The study objectives were to clarify risk factors and the diagnostic value of alpha-fetoprotein (AFP) for HCC progression in patients with HBV-related cirrhosis treated with NAs and to provide new strategies for prevention and control of HCC in those

patients.

### Research methods

Logistic regression analysis was used to analyze the risk factors of HCC progression. The diagnostic value of AFP for HCC was evaluated by receiver operating characteristic curve analysis.

### Research results

The study showed that age ≥ 60 years, smoking history, family history of HCC, lamivudine resistance, HBV DNA negativity, fasting blood sugar ≥ 6.16 mmol/L were independent risk factors of HCC progression. Serum AFP had limited diagnostic value for HCC. The results provide a meaningful strategy for early prediction and identification for HCC in those patients.

### Research conclusions

A retrospective cross-sectional study was conducted to analyze risk factors of HCC progression in HBV-related cirrhosis patients receiving NA therapy. Metabolic effects of fasting blood sugar levels on the progress of HCC were seen during the receipt of NA therapy. The diagnostic value of the serum AFP level was evaluated in those patients.

### Research perspectives

The study results will change the strategies used to prevent HCC in patients with HBV-related cirrhosis an receive NA therapy.

## REFERENCES


1 **Sayiner M**, Golabi P, Younossi ZM. Disease Burden of Hepatocellular Carcinoma: A Global Perspective. *Dig Dis Sci* 2019; **64**: 910-917 [PMID: 30835028 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-019-05537-2]

2 **Bertuccio P**, Turati F, Carioli G, Rodriguez T, La Vecchia C, Malvezzi M, Negri E. Global trends and predictions in hepatocellular carcinoma mortality. *J Hepatol* 2017; **67**: 302-309 [PMID: 28336466 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2017.03.011]

3 **Forner A**, Llovet IM, Bruix J. Hepatocellular carcinoma. *Lancet* 2012; **379**: 1245-1255 [PMID: 22353262 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(11)61347-0]

4 **McClune AC**, Tong MJ. Chronic hepatitis B and hepatocellular carcinoma. *Clin Liver Dis* 2010; **14**: 461-476 [PMID: 20638025 DOI: 10.1016/j.cld.2010.05.009]

5 **Ou DP**, Yang LY, Huang GW, Tao YM, Ding X, Chang ZG. Clinical analysis of the risk factors for recurrence of HCC and its relationship with HBV. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11**: 2061-2066 [PMID: 15810069 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v11.i14.2061]

6 **Chu CM**, Liaw YF. Hepatitis B virus-related cirrhosis: natural history and treatment. *Semin Liver Dis* 2006; **26**: 142-152 [PMID: 16673292 DOI: 10.1055/s-2006-939752]

7 **Chen QY**, Dong BQ, Yang JY, Wei SC, Fang KX, Wang XY, Fang ZL. [A prospective study of the relationship between serum hepatitis B virus DNA and the risk of primary liver cancer]. *Zhonghua Gan Zang Bing Za Zhi* 2009; **17**: 930-934 [PMID: 20038336]

8 **Chen YC**, Chu CM, Yeh CT, Liaw YF. Natural course following the onset of cirrhosis in patients with chronic hepatitis B: a long-term follow-up study. *Hepatol Int* 2007; **1**: 267-273 [PMID: 19669348 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-007-5001-0]

9 **Lu T**, Seto WK, Zhu RX, Lai CL, Yuen MF. Prevention of hepatocellular carcinoma in chronic viral hepatitis B and C infection. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 8887-8894 [PMID: 24379612 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i47.8887]

10 **Wu CY**, Lin JT, Ho HJ, Su CW, Lee TY, Wang SY, Wu C, Wu JC. Association of nucleos(t)ide analogue therapy with reduced risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with chronic hepatitis B: a nationwide cohort study. *Gastroenterology* 2014; **147**: 143-151. e5 [PMID: 24704525 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2014.03.048]

11 **Papatheodoridis GV**, Lampertico P, Manolakopoulos S, Lok A. Incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma in chronic hepatitis B patients receiving nucleos(t)ide therapy: a systematic review. *J Hepatol* 2010; **53**: 348-356 [PMID: 20483498 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2010.02.035]

12 **Papatheodoridis GV**, Manolakopoulos S, Touloumi G, Vourli G, Raptopoulou-Gigi M, Vafiadis-Zoumbouli I, Vasiliadis T, Mimidis K, Gogos C, Ketikoglou I, Manesis EK; HEPNET. Greece Cohort Study Group. Virological suppression does not prevent the development of hepatocellular carcinoma in HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B patients with cirrhosis receiving oral antiviral(s) starting with lamivudine monotherapy: results of the nationwide HEPNET. Greece cohort study. *Gut* 2011; **60**: 1109-1116 [PMID: 21270118 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2010.221846]

13 **Hepatology Branch of Chinese Medical Association**. Infectious diseases branch of Chinese Medical Association. Guidelines for the prevention and treatment of chronic hepatitis B (2015 Edition).

*Zhonghua Shiyan He linchuang Ganranbing Zazhi* 2015; **9**: 570-589 [DOI: 10.3877/cma.j.issn.1674-1358.2015.05.001]

14 **Hepatology Branch of Chinese Medical Association**. Infectious diseases branch of Chinese Medical Association. Guidelines for the prevention and treatment of chronic hepatitis B (2019 version). *Zhonghua Shiyan He linchuang Ganranbing Zazhi* 2019; **37**: 711-736 [DOI: 10.3760/cma.j.issn.1000-6680.2019.12.003]

15 **Ministry of Health of the People's Republic of China**. Standardization for diagnosis and treatment for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Zhonghua Zhongliu Linchunag* 2011; **16**: 929-946

16 **Health and Bureau of Medical Administration**, National Health and Family Planning Commission of the People's Republic of China. Standardization of diagnosis and treatment for hepatocellular carcinoma (2017 edition). *Zhonghua Waike Xiaohua Zazhi* 2017; **16**: 635-647 [DOI: 10.3760/cma.j.issn.1673-9752.2017.07.001]

17 **Chen JD**, Yang HI, Iloeje UH, You SL, Lu SN, Wang LY, Su J, Sun CA, Liaw YF, Chen CJ; Risk Evaluation of Viral Load Elevation and Associated Liver Disease/Cancer in HBV (REVEAL-HBV) Study Group. Carriers of inactive hepatitis B virus are still at risk for hepatocellular carcinoma and liver-related death. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **138**: 1747-1754 [PMID: 20114048 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2010.01.042]

18 **Wang X**, Lin SX, Tao J, Wei XQ, Liu YT, Chen YM, Wu B. Study of liver cirrhosis over ten consecutive years in Southern China. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 13546-13555 [PMID: 25309085 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i37.13546]

19 **Arends P**, Sonneveld MJ, Zoutendijk R, Carey I, Brown A, Fasano M, Mutimer D, Deterding K, Reijnders JG, Oo Y, Petersen J, van Bömmel F, de Knegt RJ, Santantonio T, Berg T, Welzel TM, Wedemeyer H, Buti M, Pradat P, Zoulim F, Hansen B, Janssen HL; VIRGIL Surveillance Study Group. Entecavir treatment does not eliminate the risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in chronic hepatitis B: limited role for risk scores in Caucasians. *Gut* 2015; **64**: 1289-1295 [PMID: 25011935 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2014-307023]

20 **Vlachogiannakos J**, Papatheodoridis G. Hepatocellular carcinoma in chronic hepatitis B patients under antiviral therapy. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 8822-8830 [PMID: 24379605 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i47.8822]

21 **Loomba R**, Liu J, Yang HI, Lee MH, Lu SN, Wang LY, Iloeje UH, You SL, Brenner D, Chen CJ; REVEAL–HBV Study Group. Synergistic effects of family history of hepatocellular carcinoma and hepatitis B virus infection on risk for incident hepatocellular carcinoma. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2013; **11**: 1636-45. e1-3 [PMID: 23669307 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2013.04.043]

22 **Papatheodoridis GV**, Chan HL, Hansen BE, Janssen HL, Lampertico P. Risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in chronic hepatitis B: assessment and modification with current antiviral therapy. *J Hepatol* 2015; **62**: 956-967 [PMID: 25595883 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2015.01.002]

23 **Yan H**, Yang Y, Zhang L, Tang G, Wang Y, Xue G, Zhou W, Sun S. Characterization of the genotype and integration patterns of hepatitis B virus in early- and late-onset hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2015; **61**: 1821-1831 [PMID: 25627239 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27722]

24 **Zeng HM**, Cao MM, Zheng RS, Zhang SC, Cai JQ, Qu CF, Bi XY, Zou XN, Chen WQ, He J. Trend analysis of mean age of diagnosis for liver cancer in cancer registry are as in China, 2000-2014. *Zhonghua Yufan Yixue Zazhi* 2018; **52**: 573-578

25 **Levrero M**, Zucman-Rossi J. Mechanisms of HBV-induced hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Hepatol* 2016; **64**: S84-S101 [PMID: 27084040 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2016.02.021]

26 **Pascual S**, Herrera I, Irurzun J. New advances in hepatocellular carcinoma. *World J Hepatol* 2016; **8**: 421-438 [PMID: 27028578 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v8.i9.421]

27 **Baecker A**, Liu X, La Vecchia C, Zhang ZF. Worldwide incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma cases attributable to major risk factors. *Eur J Cancer Prev* 2018; **27**: 205-212 [PMID: 29489473 DOI: 10.1097/CEJ.0000000000000428]

28 **Abdel-Rahman O**, Helbling D, Schöb O, Eltobgy M, Mohamed H, Schmidt J, Giryes A, Mehrabi A, Iype S, John H, Tekbas A, Zidan A, Oweira H. Cigarette smoking as a risk factor for the development of and mortality from hepatocellular carcinoma: An updated systematic review of 81 epidemiological studies. *J Evid Based Med* 2017; **10**: 245-254 [PMID: 28891275 DOI: 10.1111/jebm.12270]

29 **Liu X**, Baecker A, Wu M, Zhou JY, Yang J, Han RQ, Wang PH, Jin ZY, Liu AM, Gu X, Zhang XF, Wang XS, Su M, Hu X, Sun Z, Li G, Mu L, He N, Li L, Zhao JK, Zhang ZF. Interaction between tobacco smoking and hepatitis B virus infection on the risk of liver cancer in a Chinese population. *Int J Cancer* 2018; **142**: 1560-1567 [PMID: 29193051 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.31181]

30 **Turati F**, Edefonti V, Talamini R, Ferraroni M, Malvezzi M, Bravi F, Franceschi S, Montella M, Polesel J, Zucchetto A, La Vecchia C, Negri E, Decarli A. Family history of liver cancer and hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2012; **55**: 1416-1425 [PMID: 22095619 DOI: 10.1002/hep.24794]

31 **Liu X**, Baecker A, Wu M, Zhou JY, Yang J, Han RQ, Wang PH, Jin ZY, Liu AM, Gu X, Zhang XF, Wang XS, Su M, Hu X, Sun Z, Li G, Fu A, Jung SY, Mu L, He N, Li L, Zhao JK, Zhang ZF. Family history of liver cancer may modify the association between HBV infection and liver cancer in a Chinese population. *Liver Int* 2019; **39**: 1490-1503 [PMID: 31228882 DOI: 10.1111/liv.14182]

32 **Singal AK**, Bataller R, Ahn J, Kamath PS, Shah VH. ACG Clinical Guideline: Alcoholic Liver Disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2018; **113**: 175-194 [PMID: 29336434 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2017.469]

33 **Massarweh NN**, El-Serag HB. Epidemiology of Hepatocellular Carcinoma and Intrahepatic Cholangiocarcinoma. *Cancer Control* 2017; **24**: 1073274817729245 [PMID: 28975830 DOI:

10.1177/1073274817729245]
34 **Liaw YF**, Sung JJ, Chow WC, Farrell G, Lee CZ, Yuen H, Tanwandee T, Tao QM, Shue K, Keene ON, Dixon JS, Gray DF, Sabbat J; Cirrhosis Asian Lamivudine Multicentre Study Group. Lamivudine for patients with chronic hepatitis B and advanced liver disease. *N Engl J Med* 2004; **351**: 1521-1531 [PMID: 15470215 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa033364]
35 **Su MH**, Lu AL, Li SH, Zhong SH, Wang BJ, Wu XL, Mo YY, Liang P, Liu ZH, Xie R, He LX, Fu WD, Jiang JN. Long-term lamivudine for chronic hepatitis B and cirrhosis: A real-life cohort study. *World J Gastroenterol* 2015; **21**: 13087-13094 [PMID: 26673249 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v21.i46.13087]
36 **Yao GB**, Zhu M, Cui ZY, Wang BE, Yao JL, Zeng MD. A 7-year study of lamivudine therapy for hepatitis B virus e antigen-positive chronic hepatitis B patients in China. *J Dig Dis* 2009; **10**: 131-137 [PMID: 19426396 DOI: 10.1111/j.1751-2980.2009.00375.x]
37 **Chen CH**, Lin CL, Hu TH, Hung CH, Tseng PL, Wang JH, Chang JY, Lu SN, Chien RN, Lee CM. Entecavir vs. lamivudine in chronic hepatitis B patients with severe acute exacerbation and hepatic decompensation. *J Hepatol* 2014; **60**: 1127-1134 [PMID: 24583247 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2014.02.013]
38 **Wang Y**, Liu S, Chen YU, Zheng S, Zhou LI, Lu F, Duan Z. Lamivudine-resistant rtL180M and rtM204I/V are persistently dominant during combination rescue therapy with entecavir and adefovir for hepatitis B. *Exp Ther Med* 2016; **11**: 2293-2299 [PMID: 27313669 DOI: 10.3892/etm.2016.3230]
39 **Kaneko S**, Kurosaki M, Joko K, Marusawa H, Kondo M, Kojima Y, Uchida Y, Kimura H, Tsuji K, Yagisawa H, Kusakabe A, Kobashi H, Akahane T, Tamaki N, Kirino S, Abe T, Yoshida H, Matsushita T, Hasebe C, Izumi N. Detectable HBV DNA during nucleos(t)ide analogues stratifies predictive hepatocellular carcinoma risk score. *Sci Rep* 2020; **10**: 13021 [PMID: 32747646 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-020-69522-w]
40 **Chen CJ**, Yang HI, Su J, Jen CL, You SL, Lu SN, Huang GT, Iloeje UH; REVEAL-HBV Study Group. Risk of hepatocellular carcinoma across a biological gradient of serum hepatitis B virus DNA level. *JAMA* 2006; **295**: 65-73 [PMID: 16391218 DOI: 10.1001/jama.295.1.65]
41 **Kim JH**, Sinn DH, Kang W, Gwak GY, Paik YH, Choi MS, Lee JH, Koh KC, Paik SW. Low-level viremia and the increased risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients receiving entecavir treatment. *Hepatology* 2017; **66**: 335-343 [PMID: 28012257 DOI: 10.1002/hep.28916]
42 **European Association for the Study of the Liver**. EASL 2017 Clinical Practice Guidelines on the management of hepatitis B virus infection. *J Hepatol* 2017; **67**: 370-398 [PMID: 28427875 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2017.03.021]
43 **Ghany MG**. Current treatment guidelines of chronic hepatitis B: The role of nucleos(t)ide analogues and peginterferon. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol* 2017; **31**: 299-309 [PMID: 28774412 DOI: 10.1016/j.bpg.2017.04.012]
44 **El-Serag HB**, Tran T, Everhart JE. Diabetes increases the risk of chronic liver disease and hepatocellular carcinoma. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **126**: 460-468 [PMID: 14762783 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2003.10.065]
45 **Shang RZ**, Qu SB, Wang DS. Reprogramming of glucose metabolism in hepatocellular carcinoma: Progress and prospects. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; **22**: 9933-9943 [PMID: 28018100 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i45.9933]
46 **Gao S**, Li A, Liu F, Chen F, Williams M, Zhang C, Kelley Z, Wu CL, Luo R, Xiao H. NCOA5 haploinsufficiency results in glucose intolerance and subsequent hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cancer Cell* 2013; **24**: 725-737 [PMID: 24332041 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccr.2013.11.005]
47 **Liu T**, Wang W, Cui H, Sun M, Wang Y, Liu X, Cao L, Liu H, Liu S. Elevated fasting serum glucose levels increase the risk of hepatocellular carcinoma: A prospective cohort study. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2019; **98**: e16369 [PMID: 31348238 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000016369]
48 **Meng W**, Bai B, Bai Z, Li Y, Yue P, Li X, Qiao L. The immunosuppression role of alpha-fetoprotein in human hepatocellular carcinoma. *Discov Med* 2016; **21**: 489-494 [PMID: 27448785]
49 **Zhou L**, Liu C, Meng FD, Qu K, Tian F, Tai MH, Wei JC, Wang RT. Long-term prognosis in hepatocellular carcinoma patients after hepatectomy. *Asian Pac J Cancer Prev* 2012; **13**: 483-486 [PMID: 22524811 DOI: 10.7314/apjcp.2012.13.2.483]
50 **Abbasi A**, Bhutto AR, Butt N, Munir SM. Corelation of serum alpha fetoprotein and tumor size in hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Pak Med Assoc* 2012; **62**: 33-36 [PMID: 22352098]
51 **Liu S**, Wang M, Zheng C, Zhong Q, Shi Y, Han X. Diagnostic value of serum glypican-3 alone and in combination with AFP as an aid in the diagnosis of liver cancer. *Clin Biochem* 2020; **79**: 54-60 [PMID: 32087138 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinbiochem.2020.02.009]
52 **Shimagaki T**, Yoshio S, Kawai H, Sakamoto Y, Doi H, Matsuda M, Mori T, Osawa Y, Fukai M, Yoshida T, Ma Y, Akita T, Tanaka J, Taketomi A, Hanayama R, Yoshizumi T, Mori M, Kanto T. Serum milk fat globule-EGF factor 8 (MFG-E8) as a diagnostic and prognostic biomarker in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma. *Sci Rep* 2019; **9**: 15788 [PMID: 31673081 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-019-52356-6]
53 **Zhu M**, Zheng J, Wu F, Kang B, Liang J, Heskia F, Zhang X, Shan Y. OPN is a promising serological biomarker for hepatocellular carcinoma diagnosis. *J Med Virol* 2020 [PMID: 32043608 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.25704]
54 **Lin XJ**, Chong Y, Guo ZW, Xie C, Yang XJ, Zhang Q, Li SP, Xiong Y, Yuan Y, Min J, Jia WH, Jie Y, Chen MS, Chen MX, Fang JH, Zeng C, Zhang Y, Guo RP, Wu Y, Lin G, Zheng L, Zhuang SM. A serum microRNA classifier for early detection of hepatocellular carcinoma: a multicentre, retrospective, longitudinal biomarker identification study with a nested case-control study. *Lancet*

*Oncol* 2015; **16**: 804-815 [PMID: 26088272 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(15)00048-0]
55 **Forner A**, Reig M, Bruix J. Hepatocellular carcinoma. *Lancet* 2018; **391**: 1301-1314 [PMID: 29307467 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(18)30010-2]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

*World J Gastroenterol* 2021 May 7; 27(17): 2039-2053

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i17.2039

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

**Observational Study**

# Hypophosphatemia after high-dose intravenous iron treatment in patients with inflammatory bowel disease: Mechanisms and possible clinical impact

Trond Espen Detlie, Jonas Christoffer Lindstrøm, Marte Eide Jahnsen, Elisabeth Finnes, Heinz Zoller, Bjørn Moum, Jørgen Jahnsen

**ORCID number:** Trond Espen Detlie 0000-0002-1576-5298; Jonas Christoffer Lindstrøm 0000-0002-3163-7552; Marte Eide Jahnsen 0000-0002-0044-4141; Elisabeth Finnes 0000-0003-3620-2352; Heinz Zoller 0000-0003-1794-422X; Bjørn Moum 0000-0002-5884-4543; Jørgen Jahnsen 0000-0002-0419-2914.

**Author contributions:** Detlie TE, Moum B and Jahnsen J contributed responsible for the concept and design of the study, acquisition of data, analysis and interpretation of data, and drafting the article and revising it critically for important intellectual content; Lindstrøm JC and Zoller H performed analysis and interpretation of data, and contributed critical revision of the manuscript for important intellectual content; Jahnsen ME and Finnes E contributed acquisition of data and critical revision of the manuscript for important intellectual content; Moum B and Jahnsen J contributed equally as senior authors; all the authors read and approved the final version of the manuscript.

**Institutional review board statement:** The study was reviewed and approved by the

**Trond Espen Detlie, Marte Eide Jahnsen, Jørgen Jahnsen,** Department of Gastroenterology, Akershus University Hospital, Lørenskog 1478, Norway

**Trond Espen Detlie, Jonas Christoffer Lindstrøm, Bjørn Moum, Jørgen Jahnsen,** Institute of Clinical Medicine, University of Oslo, Oslo 0316, Norway

**Jonas Christoffer Lindstrøm,** Health Services Research Unit, Akershus University Hospital, Lørenskog 1478, Norway

**Elisabeth Finnes, Bjørn Moum,** Division of Medicine, Department of Gastroenterology, Oslo University Hospital Ullevål, Oslo 0424, Norway

**Heinz Zoller,** Department of Medicine II, Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Medical University of Innsbruck, Innsbruck A-6020, Austria

**Corresponding author:** Trond Espen Detlie, MD, Academic Fellow, Academic Research, Consultant Physician-Scientist, Doctor, Department of Gastroenterology, Akershus University Hospital, Sykehusveien 25, Lørenskog 1478, Norway. t.e.detlie@medisin.uio.no

## Abstract

### *BACKGROUND*

High-dose intravenous iron is an effective treatment option for iron deficiency (ID) or ID anaemia (IDA) in inflammatory bowel disease (IBD). However, treatment with ferric carboxymaltose (FCM) has been associated with the development of hypophosphatemia.

### *AIM*

To investigate mechanisms behind the development of hypophosphatemia after intravenous iron treatment, and disclose symptoms and clinical manifestations related to hypophosphatemia short-term.

### *METHODS*

A prospective observational study of adult IBD patients with ID or IDA was conducted between February 1, 2017 and July 1, 2018 at two separate university hospitals in the southeast region of Norway. Patients received one dose of 1000

Regionale Komiteer for Medisinsk og Helsefaglig Forskningsetikk (REK) in Helse Sør-Øst, Norway/Regional Ethics Committee from the South-East Health Region of Norway.

**Informed consent statement:** All study participants, or their legal guardian, provided informed written consent prior to study enrollment.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** Detlie TE has served as a speaker, consultant or advisory board member for AbbVie, Ferring, Pfizer, Pharmacosmos, Tillotts, and Vifor Pharma. He has received unrestricted research grants from AbbVie, and Pharmacosmos. Jahnsen ME has received lecture fees from Pharmacosmos. Zoller H has served as a speaker, consultant or advisory board member for AbbVie, BMS, Gilead, MSD, Merck, Merz, Novartis, Pharmacosmos, and Vifor Pharma. Moum B has served as a speaker, consultant or advisory board member for AbbVie, Ferring, Janssen, Roche, and Takeda. Jahnsen J has served as a speaker, consultant or advisory board member for AbbVie, Astro Pharma, Boehringer Ingelheim, BMS, Celltrion, Ferring, Hikma, Janssen, Meda, MSD, Napp Pharma, Novartis, Orion Pharma, Pfizer, Pharmacosmos, Roche, Takeda, Tillotts, and Sandoz. The other authors have no disclosures.

**Data sharing statement:** The data underlying this article were provided by Akershus University Hospital and Oslo University Hospital Ullevål by permission. Data will be shared on request to the corresponding author with permission of Akershus University Hospital and Oslo University Hospital Ullevål.

**STROBE statement:** The authors have read the STROBE Statement-checklist of items, and the manuscript was prepared and revised according to the STROBE Statement-checklist of items.



mg of either FCM or ferric derisomaltose (FDI) and were followed for an observation period of at least 7 wk. Blood and urine samples were collected for relevant analyses at baseline, week 2 and at week 6. Clinical symptoms were assessed at the same timepoints using a respiratory function test, a visual analogue scale, and a health-related quality of life questionnaire.

*RESULTS*

A total of 106 patients was available for analysis in this study. The FCM treatment group consisted of 52 patients and hypophosphatemia was present in 72.5% of the patients at week 2, and in 21.6% at week 6. In comparison, the FDI treatment group consisted of 54 patients and 11.3% of the patients had hypophosphatemia at week 2, and 3.7% at week 6. The difference in incidence was highly significant at both week 2 and 6 ($P < 0.001$ and $P < 0.013$, respectively). We observed a significantly higher mean concentration of intact fibroblast growth factor 23 ($P < 0.001$), a significant rise in mean urine fractional excretion of phosphate ($P = 0.004$), a significant decrease of 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D ($P < 0.001$) and of ionised calcium levels ($P < 0.012$) in the FCM-treated patients compared with patients who received FDI. No clinical symptoms could with certainty be related to hypophosphatemia, since neither the respiratory function test, SF-36 (36-item short form health survey) or the visual analogue scale scores resulted in significant differences between patients who developed hypophosphatemia or not.

*CONCLUSION*

Fibroblast growth factor 23 has a key role in FCM induced hypophosphatemia, probably by inducing loss of phosphate in the urine. Short-term clinical impact of hypophosphatemia was not demonstrated.

**Key Words:** Iron deficiency; Hypophosphatemia; Inflammatory bowel disease; Ferric carboxymaltose; Ferric derisomaltose



**Core Tip:** High-dose intravenous iron is an effective treatment for iron deficiency anaemia (IDA) in inflammatory bowel disease (IBD). However, ferric carboxymaltose (FCM) is associated with development of hypophosphatemia. This study of adult IBD patients with IDA investigated the mechanisms and clinical manifestations related to hypophosphatemia after treatment of either FCM or ferric derisomaltose (FDI). The incidence of hypophosphatemia was significantly higher after FCM than FDI, and fibroblast growth factor 23 had a key role, inducing loss of phosphate in the urine along with a significant lowering of 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D and ionised calcium levels. Short-term clinical impact was not demonstrated.

**Citation:** Detlie TE, Lindstrøm JC, Jahnsen ME, Finnes E, Zoller H, Moum B, Jahnsen J. Hypophosphatemia after high-dose intravenous iron treatment in patients with inflammatory bowel disease: Mechanisms and possible clinical impact. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; 27(17): 2039-2053

**URL:** https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v27/i17/2039.htm

**DOI:** https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v27.i17.2039

## INTRODUCTION

Iron replacement therapy is often needed in patients with inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) because iron deficiency (ID) and ID anaemia (IDA) occur frequently in this patient group[1-3]. A large proportion of IBD patients experience intolerance to oral iron[4]. Additionally, it is asserted that oral iron can lead to an exacerbation of inflammation in the bowel mucosa due to a local effect on the enterocytes[5-7]. Therefore, administration of high-dose iron as an intravenous infusion is an effective, suitable

**Manuscript source:** Invited manuscript

**Specialty type:** Gastroenterology and hepatology

**Country/Territory of origin:** Norway

**Peer-review report's scientific quality classification**

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B, B
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

**Received:** January 28, 2021
**Peer-review started:** January 28, 2021
**First decision:** March 6, 2021
**Revised:** March 19, 2021
**Accepted:** April 21, 2021
**Article in press:** April 21, 2021
**Published online:** May 7, 2021

**P-Reviewer:** Henderson P, Howarth GS, Lukin DJ
**S-Editor:** Gao CC
**L-Editor:** A
**P-Editor:** Ma YJ

and convenient treatment option in IBD. Ferric carboxymaltose (FCM; Ferinject®; Vifor Pharma) and ferric derisomaltose (FDI), previously known as iron isomaltoside (Monofer®; Pharmacosmos A/S), are the most widely used preparations in Europe when high-dose intravenous iron is indicated.

In a recent publication, we described a high incidence of hypophosphatemia in IBD patients who had received treatment with FCM[8]. The mechanism behind the development of hypophosphatemia has been described by Wolf *et al*[9], but probably is not yet fully understood, and has not been investigated in patients with IBD. Fibroblast growth factor 23 (FGF23) is a small peptide hormone, synthesized by osteocytes, which regulates phosphate and vitamin D homeostasis[9]. FGF23 consists of a biologically-active component (full-length, intact FGF23) and inactive C-terminal fragments (C-terminal FGF23). FCM causes an increase in intact FGF23, which triggers the pathophysiological cascade of renal phosphate wasting, suppressed levels of 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D, and secondary hyperparathyroidism[9]. In contrast, FDI does not appear to induce increased intact FGF23 levels, and is associated with a low incidence of hypophosphatemia[9].

Moderate to severe hypophosphatemia over time, as well as acute severe hypophosphatemia, can lead to serious complications, *e.g.*, respiratory failure, haemolysis, left ventricular failure, and rhabdomyolysis[10-13]. Development of osteomalacia with pseudo-fractures has been found in patients with sustained hypophosphatemia [14-17]. However, there are uncertainties with regard to both the frequency of symptoms and the clinical impact of hypophosphatemia.

Reduced quality of life (QoL) is common and well-documented in IBD patients due to chronic inflammation in the gut and the occurrence of extra-intestinal manifestations[18,19]. Therefore, addressing additional symptoms and implications of hypophosphatemia in this patient group is a challenge, and no specific questionnaire related to hypophosphatemia is available.

In this short-term study, we aimed to investigate the mechanisms causing the development of hypophosphatemia in IBD patients, with ID or IDA, who received one high-dose (1000 mg) infusion of iron. Moreover, we aimed to document symptoms and clinical manifestations related to hypophosphatemia.

## MATERIALS AND METHODS

### *Study design and patient population*

This prospective observational study was conducted between February 1, 2017 and July 1, 2018. The study design and patient recruitment have previously been described in detail (Detlie *et al*[8]). In brief, adult IBD patients (> 18 years) diagnosed with ID or IDA (according to European Crohn's and Colitis Organisation guidelines)[2] were recruited at two separate study sites in the southeast region of Norway and treated with either FCM or FDI.

Eligible patients were prescribed 1000 mg of high-dose intravenous iron, FCM (50 mg/mL) or iron derisomaltose (100 mg/mL), administered as a single dose. Patients who had received high-dose intravenous iron treatment or a packed red blood cell transfusion within 3 mo of study entry, or for whom high-dose intravenous iron treatment was contraindicated, were not included in the study.

Enrolment continued until at least 50 consecutive patients with complete adherence to the study protocol were recruited at each site (a total of more than 100 patients) ( Supplementary Figure 1). The enrolment period was followed by a prospective observation period, which lasted ≤ 7 wk for each patient and included three study visits.

Study inclusion was performed at baseline, at which time intravenous iron treatment was administered. Patients attended the clinic at week 2 (10-15 d) and at week 6 (5-7 wk) following intravenous iron treatment. Each patient could receive only one infusion within an approximate 2-mo period after consenting to study participation.

### *Study assessments and data collection*

Blood analysis at each study visit included ionised calcium, creatinine, phosphate, parathyroid hormone (PTH) and vitamin D (25-hydroxyvitamin D).

Blood samples were also frozen and sent to Medizinische Universität Innsbruck, Universitätsklinik für Innere Medizin I, for analysis of 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D, intact and C-terminal FGF23. The Kainos FGF-23 ELISA Kit was used for the FGF23 analysis. The assay for intact FGF23 measures only full-length peptide, whereas the assay for C-

terminal FGF23 measures full-length peptide and the C-terminal fragments thereby representing total FGF23.

Spot urine samples were collected at each study visit and analysed for urine phosphate and urine creatinine. A calculation of the fractional excretion of phosphate rate ($FEPO_4$) was then performed using the formula, $FEPO_4$ = (urine phosphate × plasma creatinine × 100)/(plasma phosphate × urine creatinine). Oslo University Hospital Ullevål used the Roche analysis method (Roche/Hitachi Cobas® C systems PHOS2 and CREP2) while Akershus University Hospital used the Vitros analysis (VITROS® MicroSlide Assay 5.1 FS Diluent Pack 3). The slight sensitivity difference between the two analytical methods was minimized by recalculating $FEPO_4$ using the above-mentioned formula.

Symptoms that might be related to hypophosphatemia were assessed at each of the three study visits using the MicroRPM™ (CareFusion) test to determine respiratory muscle function by measuring maximum inspiratory and maximum expiratory pressure, a health-related QoL questionnaire (36-item short form health survey, SF-36), and a visual analogue scale (VAS).

For the MicroRPM™ respiratory function test, patients were asked to inhale and exhale as hard as possible. The test was repeated three times at every visit, and the best result of the three attempts was registered.

The SF-36 is a generic, self-administered questionnaire containing 36 items[20]. The items are divided into eight multi-item scales that reflect general health, physical functioning, role limitations due to physical problems, bodily pain, vitality, mental health, social functioning, and role limitations due to emotional problems. Each scale is transformed into a 1-100 scale, where a lower score represents more disability. The processing of raw SF-36 data into results was executed according to the SF-36 scoring algorithms[21].

The VAS is a 10 cm line on which the patient is asked to place a vertical mark to indicate the level of intensity of a symptom that best fits his or her experience. Scores range from 0-100 (mm) where a higher score represents greater symptom intensity. The VAS was used to assess general weakness, fatigue, joint pain, joint stiffness, muscle pain, bone and skeletal pain, and difficulties performing daily activities.

All demographic information was collected from patients' medical records and was entered into an electronic case report form.

The study was completed when all enrolled patients had received intravenous iron administration, had attended all three study visits, and had fulfilled the requirements of the study protocol.

### Study outcomes

Serum phosphate, PTH, 25-hydroxyvitamin D, 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D, ionised calcium, creatinine, intact and C-terminal FGF23, and $FEPO_4$ (urine phosphate and urine creatinine) were measured in order to assess possible mechanisms behind the development of hypophosphatemia after intravenous iron treatment. Results from the FCM treatment group were compared with results from the FDI treatment group.

Hypophosphatemia was defined as a serum phosphate level < 0.8 mmol/L (< 2.5 mg/dL). The clinical impact of hypophosphatemia was evaluated at week 2 and week 6 using the respiratory muscle function test, SF-36, and the VAS score. In relation to the assessment of clinical impact, the hypophosphatemia group was defined as patients experiencing hypophosphatemia at both week 2 and week 6. Results for patients with hypophosphatemia were compared with results for patients without hypophosphatemia, independent of treatment group.

### Statistical analysis

This study was designed to achieve 80% power to detect a difference in the primary outcome, which was the incidence of hypophosphatemia (previously described by Detlie *et al*[8]). Hence, the MicroRPM™ respiratory test, SF-36, and VAS scores were not used to justify sample size.

Data are presented descriptively, as mean with SD or 95% confidence intervals for continuous variables, and as the number of exposed patients (with proportions) for categorical variables. Hypothesis tests for differences in change between treatment groups, change from baseline, and groups with or without hypophosphatemia, were conducted using paired *t*-tests. All analyses were performed in R. A $P$ value of < 0.05 was considered significant.

### Ethical considerations

The study protocol was approved by the relevant local regulatory and ethical

committees and adhered to the applicable laws on data protection. A study registration application was sent to the EudraCT system with the application No. 2016-003476-41, but the application was deemed unnecessary since there were no indications of a medical intervention study.

All patients gave informed consent before inclusion into the study, and the study was performed in accordance with the principles for post-authorisation safety studies, according to Good Clinical Practice guidelines.

All biological material obtained from patients was destroyed after analysis, as were the frozen blood samples sent to the Medical University of Innsbruck.

Study nurses were blinded to the results of laboratory findings but, for safety reasons, the primary investigator at each study centre was not blinded.

## RESULTS

Of the 130 patients screened for this study, 106 patients (52 patients at Oslo University Hospital Ullevål and 54 patients at Akershus University Hospital) were included in the analyses. Demographic and clinical characteristics of the patients have previously been described[8].

Data for serum phosphate, $FEPO_4$, intact and C-terminal FGF23, 25-hydroxyvitamin D, 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D, ionised calcium, and PTH at baseline and at each study visit are shown in Table 1. A sub-analysis of the same data, stratified according to hypophosphatemia status (with/without) at week 2 and at week 6, is shown in Table 2.

### *Serum phosphate and urinary excretion of phosphate*

As previously described, following treatment with FCM, hypophosphatemia was present in 72.5% (37/51) of patients at week 2, and in 21.6% (11/51) of patients at week 6. In comparison, in the FDI treatment group, 11.3% (6/53) of patients had hypophosphatemia at week 2, and 3.7% (2/54) at week 6. There were no new incidences of hypophosphatemia at week 6. The difference in incidence was highly significant at both week 2 and 6 ($P < 0.001$ and $P < 0.013$, respectively)[8]. These findings are consistent with the mean urine $FEPO_4$ that was significantly ($P = 0.004$) higher at week 2 in the FCM treatment group compared with the FDI treatment group, and still elevated (though declining) at week 6 in the FCM group (Table 1 and Figure 1A). In the sub-analysis, the FDI-treated patients with hypophosphatemia ($n = 6$) had numerically increased $FEPO_4$ (Table 2).

Patients in both treatment groups without hypophosphatemia at week 2 also experienced an increase in $FEPO_4$ at week 2 compared to baseline values, but urinary phosphate excretion declined again at week 6 in these patients.

### *FGF23*

There was a significant ($P < 0.001$) increase in intact FGF23 from baseline to week 2 after infusion of FCM, compared with the FDI treatment group (Table 1 and Figure 1B). At week 6, intact FGF23 values in the FCM treatment group had returned close to baseline. In comparison, after FDI treatment no such increases were found (Figure 1B). At baseline, the serum concentration of C-terminal FGF23 was higher in the FDI treatment group than in the FCM treatment group (Table 1), and declined after FDI infusion (Figure 1C). This high value at baseline was not seen in the FCM treatment group (Table 1), which is probably compatible with the less severe ID/IDA seen in the FCM group[8].

In the sub-analysis, for the FCM-treated patients with hypophosphatemia, intact FGF23 was significantly increased compared with FCM-treated patients without hypophosphatemia at week 2 and at week 6 (Table 2). In the FCM-treated patients who had normal phosphate, intact FGF23 was not increased at week 2 or week 6.

For FDI-treated patients, the sub-analysis showed that there was no significant difference in mean intact FGF23 Levels between patients with/without hypophosphatemia at week 2 or at week 6 (Table 2). At week 2, only one FDI-treated patient with hypophosphatemia had significantly increased intact FGF23; the other five patients with hypophosphatemia had minimal change in their intact FGF23 values.

### *Vitamin D*

There were no significant differences between the treatment groups in the concentration of 25-hydroxyvitamin D throughout the study period (Figure 1D). However, the sub-analysis showed that 25-hydroxyvitamin D concentrations were lower at week

**Table 1 Descriptive data for laboratory parameters at baseline, at week 2 and at week 6**

| Analysis | High-dose intravenous iron | Baseline, mean ± SD | Week 2, mean ± SD | Difference from baseline at week 2 | Difference between FCM and FDI at week 2 (95%CI) | *P* value | Week 6, mean ± SD | Difference from baseline at week 6 | Difference between FCM and FDI at week 6 (95%CI) | *P* value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Serum phosphate, mmol/L (ref. value 0.8-1.65) | FCM | 1.07 ± 0.2 | 0.65 ± 0.2 | -0.417 | -0.344 (-0.427 to -0.260) | < 0.001 | 1.00 ± 0.3 | -0.072 | -0.070 (-0.144 to 0.004) | 0.064 |
| | FDI | 1.15 ± 0.2 | 1.07 ± 0.2 | -0.073 | | | 1.14 ± 0.2 | -0.002 | | |
| Intact FGF23, pg/mL (ref. value 11.50-48.90) | FCM | 43.42 ± 14.2 | 91.61 ± 63.8 | 49.205 | 45.312 (25.982 to 64.697) | < 0.001 | 44.79 ± 23.1 | 1.718 | 1.559 (-6.407 to 9.525) | 0.698 |
| | FDI | 43.88 ± 14.5 | 47.77 ± 22.1 | 3.892 | | | 44.04 ± 16.6 | 0.159 | | |
| C-terminal FGF23, pmol/L (ref. value 0.30-3.00) | FCM | 2.46 ± 3.2 | 1.68 ± 1.3 | -0.756 | 6.783 (-1.319 to 14.885) | 0.099 | 0.94 ± 1.2 | -1.507 | 5.124 (-1.310 to 11.558) | 0.116 |
| | FDI | 8.87 ± 30.6 | 1.33 ± 1.4 | -7.539 | | | 2.24 ± 7.6 | -6.632 | | |
| $FEPO_4$, % (ref. value N/A) | FCM | 9.95 ± 5.8 | 18.70 ± 10.8 | 9.946 | 5.375 (1.801 to 8.95) | 0.004 | 13.68 ± 11.3 | 4.210 | 3.326 (-0.309 to 6.96) | 0.072 |
| | FDI | 12.55 ± 5.9 | 17.03 ± 8.6 | 4.570 | | | 13.37 ± 6.0 | 0.884 | | |
| PTH, pmol/L (ref. value 1.5-7.0) | FCM | 5.46 ± 2.6 | 7.02 ± 3.4 | 1.608 | 0.442 (-0.561 to 1.445) | 0.384 | 5.97 ± 3.3 | 0.767 | 0.590 (-0.358 to 1.539) | 0.220 |
| | FDI | 5.51 ± 2.6 | 6.72 ± 3.4 | 1.166 | | | 5.69 ± 2.3 | 0.176 | | |
| Ionised calcium, mmol/L (ref. value 1.16-1.32) | FCM | 1.21 ± 0.0 | 1.20 ± 0.0 | -0.015 | -0.020 (-0.035 to -0.004) | 0.012 | 1.21 ± 0.0 | 0.000 | -0.018 (-0.036 to -0.001) | 0.044 |
| | FDI | 1.23 ± 0.0 | 1.23 ± 0.1 | 0.005 | | | 1.25 ± 0.0 | 0.018 | | |
| 25-hydroxyvitamin D, nmol/L (ref. value 50-125) | FCM | 58.35 ± 24.4 | 57.13 ± 23.1 | -1.212 | -2.133 (-6.238 to 1.972) | 0.305 | 57.48 ± 20.8 | -0.865 | -0.160 (-7.078 to 6.759) | 0.964 |
| | FDI | 63.51 ± 21.9 | 64.63 ± 20.0 | 0.922 | | | 62.75 ± 21.1 | -0.706 | | |
| 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D, ng/L (ref. value 20-79) | FCM | 51.10 ± 19.2 | 28.77 ± 17.9 | -21.074 | -16.463 (-24.487 to -8.438) | < 0.001 | 53.78 ± 20.2 | 3.218 | 5.357 (-3.164 to 13.878) | 0.215 |
| | FDI | 52.85 ± 20.4 | 48.24 ± 17.7 | -4.611 | | | 50.71 ± 19.8 | -2.139 | | |

Normal phosphate levels: > 0.8 mmol/L = > 2.48 mg/dL; Mild hypophosphatemia 0.79-0.6 mmol/L = 2.44-1.86 mg/dL; Moderate hypophosphatemia 0.59-0.32 mmol/L = 1.83-0.99 mg/dL; Severe hypophosphatemia < 0.32 mmol/L = < 0.99 mg/dL. CI: Confidence interval; FCM: Ferric carboxymaltose; FDI: Ferric derisomaltose; FEPO4: Fractional excretion of phosphate; FGF23: Fibroblast growth factor 23; PTH: Parathyroid hormone; N/A: Not applicable.

6 in the two FDI-treated patients with hypophosphatemia when compared with baseline concentrations within the same group (Tables 1 and 2). At week 2, 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D concentrations were significantly lower in patients who received FCM compared with patients who received FDI (Table 1). In the FCM-treatment group, the mean concentration of 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D returned to baseline at week 6 (Table 1 and Figure 1E). However, the sub-analysis revealed that, for the FCM-treated patients with hypophosphatemia, low 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D levels persisted at week 6 (Table 2). In the subgroups of patients without hypophosphatemia, 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D levels were relatively unchanged.

In our cohort, we identified 36 patients (34.0%) with vitamin D deficiency (25-hydroxyvitamin D < 50 nmol/L) at baseline; 10 of these patients had severe vitamin D deficiency (25-hydroxyvitamin D < 30 nmol/L). The distribution of these patients was equal in the two treatment groups, as well as equally distributed across disease states – ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease. Moreover, we found no association between low levels of vitamin D and development of hypophosphatemia.

**Table 2 Laboratory parameters for patients stratified by hypophosphatemia status (with/without) at week 2 and at week 6**

| Analysis | High-dose intravenous iron | Week 2 serum phosphate ≥ 0.8 mmol/L, mean ± SD | Week 2 serum phosphate < 0.8 mmol/L, mean ± SD | Difference | *P* value | Week 6 serum phosphate ≥ 0.8 mmol/L, mean ± SD | Week 6 serum phosphate < 0.8 mmol/L, mean ± SD | Difference | *P* value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Intact FGF23, pg/mL (ref. value 11.50-48.90) | FCM | 33.71 ± 10.56 (*n* = 14/51) | 114.33 ± 62.22 (*n* = 37/51) | 80.62 | < 0.001 | 39.30 ± 16.79) (*n* = 40/51) | 66.86 ± 30.05 (*n* = 11/51) | 27.56 | 0.013 |
| | FDI | 45.82 ± 16.90 (*n* = 47/53) | 57.16 ± 46.35 (*n* = 6/53) | 11.43 | 0.577 | 43.85 ± 16.83 (*n* = 52/54) | 48.93 ± 10.13 (*n* = 2/54) | 5.08 | 0.604 |
| C-terminal FGF23, pmol/L (ref. value 0.30-3.00) | FCM | 1.03 ± 0.99 (*n* = 14/51) | 1.93 ± 1.33 (*n* = 37/51) | 0.9 | 0.014 | 0.76 ± 0.63 (*n* = 40/51) | 1.64 ± 2.14 (*n* = 11/51) | 0.88 | 0.206 |
| | FDI | 1.36 ± 1.47 (*n* = 47/53) | 1.08 ± 0.72 (*n* = 6/53) | -0.28 | 0.465 | 2.27 ± 7.79 (*n* = 52/54) | 1.31 ± 0.33 (*n* = 2/54) | -0.97 | 0.384 |
| $FEPO_4$, % (ref. value N/A) | FCM | 13.35 ± 5.94 (*n* = 12/46) | 20.59 ± 11.60 (*n* = 34/46) | 7.24 | 0.009 | 9.62 ± 6.56 (*n* = 36/47) | 26.99 ± 13.38 (*n* = 11/47) | 17.37 | 0.001 |
| | FDI | 15.97 ± 7.85 (*n* = 46/52) | 25.11 ± 10.22 (*n* = 6/52) | 9.14 | 0.080 | 13.00 ± 5.79 (*n* = 52/54) | 22.85 ± 4.41 (*n* = 2/54) | 9.85 | 0.176 |
| PTH, pmol/L (ref. value 1.5-7.0) | FCM | 5.46 ± 2.83 (*n* = 14/48) | 7.46 ± 3.23 (*n* = 34/48) | 2 | 0.042 | 5.22 ± 2.39 (*n* = 39/47) | 9.93 ± 4.43) (*n* = 8/47) | 4.71 | 0.020 |
| | FDI | 6.28 ± 2.97 (*n* = 47/53) | 10.13 ± 4.70 (*n* = 6/53) | 3.85 | 0.102 | 5.66 ± 2.32 (*n* = 52/54) | 6.40 ± 1.70 (*n* = 2/54) | 0.74 | 0.649 |
| Ionised calcium, mmol/L (ref. value 1.16-1.32) | FCM | 1.21 ± 0.32 (*n* = 13/50) | 1.19 ± 0.05 (*n* = 37/50) | -0.02 | 0.336 | 1.21 ± 0.05 (*n* = 40/51) | 1.22 ± 0.04 (*n* = 11/51) | 0.01 | 0.496 |
| | FDI | 1.24 ± 0.45 (*n* = 46/52) | 1.21 ± 0.09 (*n* = 6/52) | -0.03 | 0.422 | 1.25 ± 0.05 (*n* = 51/53) | 1.23 ± 0.02 (*n* = 2/53) | -0.02 | 0.314 |
| 25-hydroxyvitamin D, nmol/L (ref. value 50-125) | FCM | 63.00 ± 30.94 (*n* = 14/51) | 54.54 ± 19.69 (*n* = 37/51) | -8.46 | 0.354 | 60.05 ± 21.68 (*n* = 40/51) | 45.45 ± 10.00 (*n* = 11/51) | -14.6 | 0.002 |
| | FDI | 64.16 ± 20.30 (*n* = 45/51) | 64.83 ± 18.93 (*n* = 6/51) | 0.67 | 0.937 | 63.68 ± 20.97 (*n* = 50/52) | 39.50 ± 2.12 (*n* = 2/52) | -24.18 | < 0.001 |
| 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D, ng/L (ref. value 20-79) | FCM | 46.34 ± 19.10 (*n* = 14/50) | 21.46 ± 11.63 (*n* = 36/50) | -24.88 | < 0.001 | 56.76 ± 20.27 (*n* = 40/50) | 40.89 ± 15.95 (*n* = 10/50) | -15.87 | 0.016 |
| | FDI | 49.05 ± 18.52 (*n* = 47/53) | 45.72 ± 7.15 (*n* = 6/53) | -3.33 | 0.414 | 50.88 ± 19.92 (*n* = 52/54) | 46.45 ± 21.85 (*n* = 2/54) | -4.43 | 0.822 |

Normal phosphate levels: > 0.8 mmol/L = > 2.48 mg/dL; Mild hypophosphatemia 0.79-0.6 mmol/L = 2.44-1.86 mg/dL; Moderate hypophosphatemia 0.59-0.32 mmol/L = 1.83-0.99 mg/dL; Severe hypophosphatemia < 0.32 mmol/L = < 0.99 mg/dL. FCM: Ferric carboxymaltose; FDI: Ferric derisomaltose; FEPO4: Fractional excretion of phosphate; FGF23: Fibroblast growth factor 23; PTH: Parathyroid hormone; N/A: Not applicable.

### *Calcium and PTH*

Ionised calcium values dropped significantly from baseline to week 2 in the FCM treatment group compared with the FDI treatment group ($P < 0.012$) but stayed within normal range. The mean values in the FCM group had increased by week 6, but the between-group difference was still significant ($P < 0.044$). Calcium values remained stable throughout the study in the FDI treatment group (Figure 1F), and in the subgroup of FCM-treated patients who did not develop hypophosphatemia. The sub-analysis showed that there was a numerically lower level of ionised calcium in the FDI-treated patients with hypophosphatemia than in the FDI-treated patients without hypophosphatemia (Table 2).

PTH values were elevated (> 7 pmol/L) in 28 patients (26.4%) at baseline; the distribution was similar between treatment groups. PTH concentrations were similar between treatment groups at baseline, and no significant between-group differences were observed in mean PTH concentrations at week 2, and at week 6 (Table 1). PTH values increased in both treatment groups at week 2 and decreased again at week 6 (Figure 1G). The sub-analysis indicated that the increase in PTH in both treatment groups was mainly driven by the patients who developed hypophosphatemia, with significant differences at week 2 and week 6 for the FCM-treated patients with hypophosphatemia compared to FCM-treated patients without hypophosphatemia (Table 2).

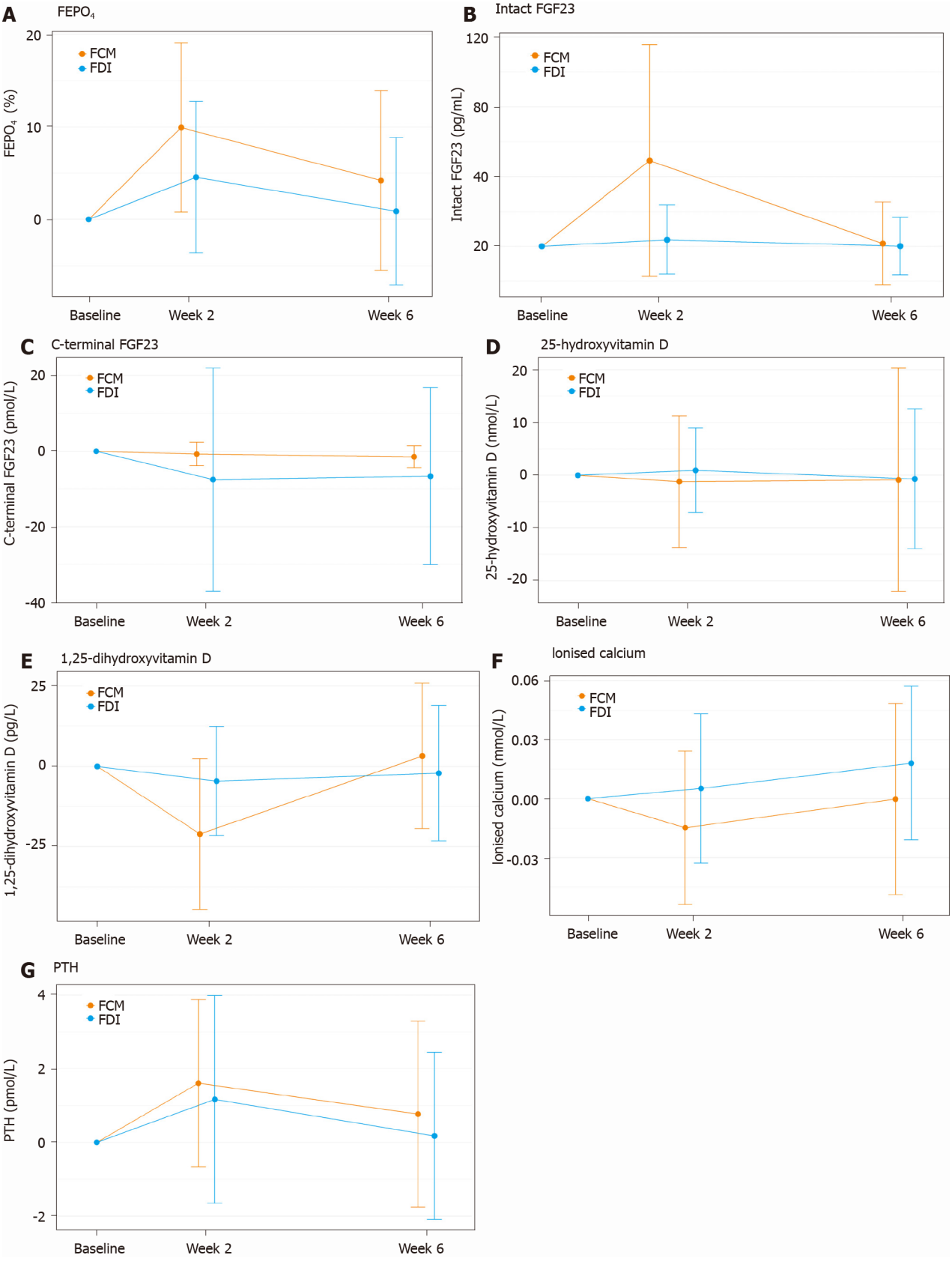



**Figure 1 mean ± SD change from baseline in laboratory parameters in inflammatory bowel disease patients with iron deficiency/iron deficiency anaemia treated with a single 1000 mg intravenous dose of ferric carboxymaltose or ferric derisomaltose.** A: Fractional excretion of phosphate; B: Intact fibroblast growth factor 23; C: C-terminal fibroblast growth factor 23; D: 25-Hydroxyvitamin D; E: 1,25-Hydroxyvitamin D; F: Ionised calcium; G: Parathyroid hormone. FCM: Ferric carboxymaltose; FDI: Ferric derisomaltose; $FEPO_4$: Fractional excretion of phosphate; FGF23: Fibroblast growth factor 23; PTH: Parathyroid hormone.

### Respiratory muscle function tests

In the comparison of patients who developed hypophosphatemia *vs* those who did not develop hypophosphatemia, independent of treatment group, no significant differences were observed in the respiratory muscle function test results. The differences between patients with hypophosphatemia and those with normal phosphate values were minimal and the standard deviation was wide in both groups (Figure 2).

### SF-36

The results of the SF-36 QoL assessment are presented in Table 3. Overall, there were no significant differences between patient groups with or without hypophosphatemia at baseline and at any time point during the study. The mean scores at baseline in both treatment groups were generally low.

### VAS scores

There were no significant differences in VAS scores between the groups of patients with/without hypophosphatemia at week 2 and at week 6 (Table 4). Overall, VAS scores were elevated at baseline. However, the group of patients who developed hypophosphatemia had lower VAS scores at baseline for the items joint pain, muscle pain, and bone and skeletal pain, compared to the group of patients who did not develop hypophosphatemia; between-group differences were not significant for these items. There was, however, a significant between-group difference ($P < 0.001$) at baseline for the VAS joint stiffness item score, with lower values in the group of patients who developed hypophosphatemia.

## DISCUSSION

Our study indicates that FGF23 plays an important role in the development of hypophosphatemia in IBD patients treated with FCM. In these patients, a high level of intact FGF23, an increased excretion of phosphate in the urine, a decrease of 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D and of serum calcium levels, and a slight elevation of PTH, was demonstrated.

Previous clinical trials of FCM have shown similar results[9,22]. However, for the most part, these studies have been conducted in healthy and, predominantly, female populations. The role of FGF23 has also been described in earlier publications[23-26]. Regulation of phosphate concentrations in the body seems to be strongly influenced by intact FGF23, which reduces phosphate reabsorption in the proximal tubules in the kidneys and inhibits production of 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D, probably by inhibiting the activity of the enzyme 25-hydroxyvitamin D-1a-hydroxylase and increased expression of 24-hydroxylase[24,26]. Our findings suggest that FCM could have a direct impact on cleavage of FGF23, resulting in a high level of intact FGF23 and consequent phosphate wasting. This might also explain why baseline phosphate level does not predict the development of mild or severe hypophosphatemia, due to the inappropriate excretion of available phosphate in the urine, following FCM treatment[8]. We also observed a decrease in 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D (the active vitamin D metabolite), a decrease in ionised calcium, and development of secondary hyperparathyroidism. This might explain why some patients treated with FCM still had hypophosphatemia six weeks after treatment, when the intact FGF23 values had normalized (Table 2) since elevated PTH promotes excretion of phosphate in the urine[9,27,28].

The majority of patients in the FCM treatment group developed hypophosphatemia at week 2. The remaining patients did not develop hypophosphatemia and had unchanged levels of intact FGF23. So, there is a clear association between the development of high levels of intact FGF23 and hypophosphatemia. Therefore, it can only be speculated that there might be some individual factors related to the handling of FCM that cause the majority of patients treated with FCM to develop hypophosphatemia, whereas others do not. Neither is it known if any individual patient would develop hypophosphatemia on subsequent administrations of FCM, or if the effect of FCM treatment on phosphate wasting is indiscriminate. Perhaps some patients are protected against the influence of FCM on the enzyme responsible for FGF23 protein cleavage. From our results, we postulate that the mechanism of FCM-induced hypophosphatemia is not related to IBD; instead, it appears to be independently connected to the drug itself.

**Table 3 Descriptive 36-item short form health survey scores for patient groups with/without hypophosphatemia independent of treatment group**

| SF-36 scale item | Normal phosphate population, baseline, mean ± SD | Hypophosphatemia population, baseline, mean ± SD | Difference[1] at baseline, mean (95%CI) | Normal phosphate population, change at week 2, mean ± SD | Hypophosphatemia population, change at week 2, mean ± SD | Difference[1] at week 2, mean (95%CI) | Normal phosphate population, change at week 6, mean ± SD | Hypophosphatemia population, change at week 6, mean ± SD | Difference[1] at week 6, mean (95%CI) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| General health | 50.91 ± 20.1 | 48.50 ± 26.1 | 2.4 (-14.5 to 19.4) | -0.45 ± 12.9 | 0.75 ± 12.2 | -1.2 (-9.2 to 6.8) | 3.06 ± 16.3 | 3.25 ± 15.1 | -0.2 (-10.2 to 9.8) |
| Physical functioning | 78.72 ± 22.4 | 86.11 ± 21.1 | -7.4 (-21.3 to 6.6) | 2.63 ± 10.9 | -0.28 ± 6.3 | 2.9 (-1.6 to 7.4) | 3.97 ± 14.5 | -0.28 ± 4.7 | 4.2 (0.2 to 8.3) |
| Role limitations due to physical problems | 47.61 ± 42.8 | 66.67 ± 40.4 | -19.1 (-45.7 to 7.6) | -4.08 ± 28.1 | -6.25 ± 18.8 | 2.2 (-10.8 to 15.1) | 11.32 ± 39.2 | 2.08 ± 16.7 | 9.2 (-3.7 to 22.1) |
| Bodily pain | 65.65 ± 25.1 | 67.17 ± 27.6 | -1.5 (-19.6 to 16.5) | 0.68 ± 18.9 | 4.42 ± 12.2 | -3.7 (-12.2 to 4.7) | 3.40 ± 19.8 | 10.83 ± 19.1 | -7.4 (-20.0 to 5.2) |
| Vitality | 37.98 ± 22.0 | 40.00 ± 22.4 | -2.0 (-16.7 to 12.7) | 4.05 ± 13.1 | 7.50 ± 15.9 | -3.4 (-13.8 to 6.9) | 10.89 ± 18.0 | 12.92 ± 16.0 | -2.0 (-12.7 to 8.6) |
| Mental health | 71.72 ± 18.9 | 70.33 ± 16.9 | 1.4 (-9.9 to 12.6) | 3.37 ± 9.0 | 4.33 ± 5.0 | -1.0 (-4.5 to 2.6) | 4.89 ± 13.2 | 1.67 ± 11.1 | 3.2 (-4.2 to 10.7) |
| Social functioning | 68.35 ± 26.3 | 68.75 ± 30.4 | -0.4 (-20.2 to 19.4) | 3.86 ± 16.7 | 7.29 ± 13.5 | -3.4 (-12.5 to 5.6) | 8.70 ± 20.7 | 7.29 ± 15.5 | 1.4 (-9.1 to 11.9) |
| Role limitations due to emotional problems | 67.91 ± 41.5 | 72.22 ± 42.2 | -4.3 (-32.1 to 23.4) | -2.66 ± 34.8 | -8.33 ± 37.9 | 5.7 (-19.1 to 30.5) | 6.52 ± 38.0 | -2.78 ± 26.4 | 9.3 (-8.8 to 27.4) |

Hypophosphatemia defined as serum phosphate < 0.8 mmol/L (< 2.5 mg/dL).

[1]Differences are normal phosphate group minus hypophosphatemia group. CI: Confidence interval; SF-36: 36-Item short form health survey.

A few patients who received treatment with FDI also developed hypophosphatemia but, unlike those receiving FCM, these patients did not on average have significantly elevated intact FGF23 Levels when assessed at week 2, which would suggest a different underlying mechanism. A transient increase in intact FGF23 during the first 2 wk in patients experiencing hypophosphatemia cannot be ruled out, as data were not collected during this time period. A numerical increase in PTH was observed at week 2 along with decreased ionised calcium, and decreased 25-hydroxyvitamin D at week 6. It is not clear whether these observations are the result of a transient increase of intact FGF23 during the first 2 wk, or solely a physiological response to a rapid correction of ID, or simply an artefact due to the low numbers of FDI patients who developed hypophosphatemia. The general physiological response of mineral metabolism markers to rapid ID correction is not fully elucidated and is an area of further research.

**Table 4 Descriptive visual analogue scale score for patient groups with/without hypophosphatemia independent of treatment group**

| VAS item | Normal phosphate group, baseline, mean ± SD | Hypophosphatemia group, baseline, mean ± SD | Difference[1] at baseline, mean (95%CI) | *P* value | Normal phosphate group, change at week 2, mean ± SD | Hypophosphatemia group, change at week 2, mean ± SD | Difference[1] at week 2, mean (95%CI) | *P* value | Normal phosphate group, change at week 6, mean ± SD | Hypophosphatemia group, change at week 6, mean ± SD | Difference[1] at week 6, mean (95%CI) | *P* value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| General weakness | 43.54 ± 28.7 | 31.17 ± 30.5 | 12.4 (-7.6 to 32.4) | 0.205 | -4.98 ± 14.9 | -1.50 ± 17.2 | -3.5 (-14.7 to 7.7) | 0.515 | -10.64 ± 21.9) | -6.33 ± 25.7 | -4.3 (-21.1 to 12.5) | 0.589 |
| Fatigue | 37.53 ± 30.0 | 29.58 ± 30.1 | 7.9 (-11.8 to 27.7) | 0.403 | -3.31 ± 19.4 | -1.33 ± 17.9 | -2.0 (-13.9 to 9.9) | 0.728 | -8.93 ± 22.0 | -5.17 ± 26.7 | -3.8 (-21.2 to 13.6) | 0.648 |
| Joint pain | 17.30 ± 23.3 | 8.25 ± 14.8 | 9.1 (-1.2 to 19.3) | 0.081 | 0.32 ± 14.3 | -3.09 ± 6.9 | 3.4 (-1.9 to 8.7) | 0.197 | 2.17 ± 18.0 | 0.17 ± 7.4 | 2.0 (-3.8 to 7.8) | 0..489 |
| Joint stiffness | 13.31 ± 22.3 | 1.42 ± 3.4 | 11.9 (6.9 to 16.8) | < 0.001 | -0.57 ± 18.1 | -0.64 (2.1) | 0.1 (-3.9 to 4.0) | 0.972 | 0.99 ± 17.7 | 1.75 ± 8.5 | -0.8 (-7.1 to 5.6) | 0.807 |
| Muscle pain | 15.35 ± 23.1 | 5.83 ± 14.5 | 9.5 (-0.5 to 19.6) | 0.062 | -1.71 ± 14.6 | 2.45 (8.9) | -4.2 (-10.7 to 2.3) | 0.194 | -0.50 ± 20.6 | -0.17 ± 11.0 | -0.3 (-8.3 to 7.6) | 0.932 |
| Bone and skeletal pain | 7.24 ± 19.4 | 1.92 ± 6.6 | 5.3 (-0.3 to 10.9) | 0.061 | 1.85 ± 20.2 | 2.64 (8.7) | -0.8 (-7.7 to 6.1) | 0.817 | 3.42 ± 18.7 | -1.67 ± 6.8 | 5.1 (-0.5 to 10.7) | 0.076 |
| Difficulties performing daily activities | 34.38 ± 28.5 | 29.67 ± 29.7 | 4.7 (-14.8 to 24.2) | 0.611 | -3.80 ± 14.9 | -2.17 (23.5) | -1.6 (-16.8 to 13.5) | 0.819 | -9.45 ± 20.0 | -11.00 ± 24.8 | 1.6 (-14.6 to 17.7) | 0.839 |

Hypophosphatemia defined as serum phosphate < 0.8 mmol/L (< 2.5 mg/dL).

[1]Differences are normal phosphate group minus hypophosphatemia group. CI: Confidence interval; VAS: Visual analogue scale.

An important observation is that 34% of the study population was vitamin D deficient at baseline with 25-hydroxyvitamin D values < 50 nmol/L and, perhaps more interestingly, 24% of the patients had PTH values compatible with secondary hyperparathyroidism. These findings were equally distributed between the two treatment groups. This disturbance in vitamin D metabolism is unlikely to be a consequence of previous iron infusions since no patients received high-dose intravenous iron treatment during the 6 mo prior to inclusion in this study. The high prevalence of vitamin D deficiency at baseline is in agreement with previous studies of patients with IBD[29]. However, it is important to note that, in our study, many of the samples were taken during the winter months when sun exposure is reduced in Norway, and individuals could therefore be expected to be somewhat vitamin D deficient during this time. Nevertheless, this finding is important since both hypophosphatemia and vitamin D deficiency can contribute to the development of metabolic bone disease, including osteomalacia.

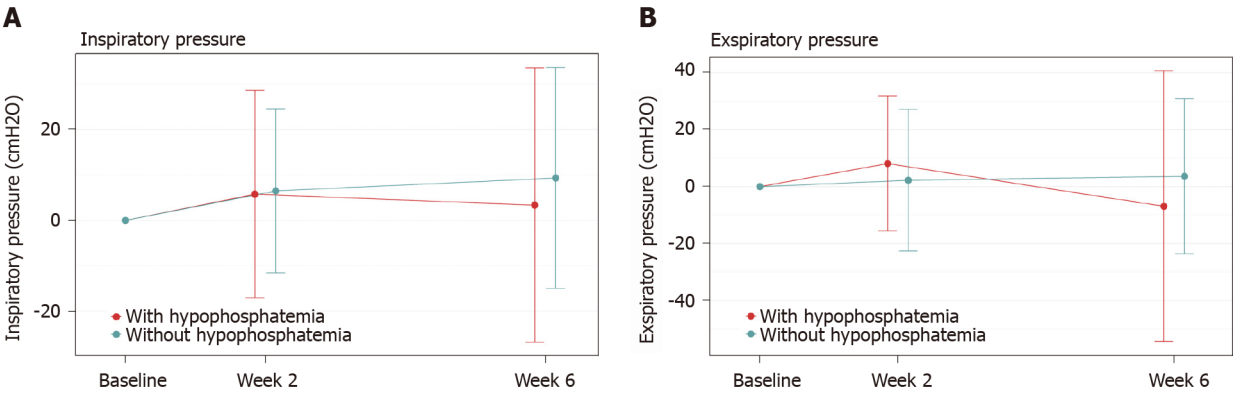



**Figure 2 mean ± SD changes from baseline in respiratory pressure in inflammatory bowel disease patients with iron deficiency/iron deficiency anaemia treated with a single 1000 mg intravenous dose of ferric carboxymaltose or ferric derisomaltose.** A: Inspiratory pressure; B: Expiratory pressure.

Guidelines regarding hypophosphatemia diagnosis, treatment, and follow-up are available, but the possible risk or incidence rate of developing hypophosphatemia with symptoms or complications are rarely mentioned[30]. A risk of developing respiratory failure, rhabdomyolysis, and left ventricular failure due to severe hypophosphatemia has been reported in case series[10]. More recent data also predict an increased risk of developing osteomalacia, especially in long-standing hypophosphatemia[14,15]. What is less well known is the number of patients developing more subtle, but identifiable, symptoms related to hypophosphatemia that are experienced as troublesome and might influence QoL.

With respect to the clinical impact of hypophosphatemia, measuring forced inspiratory and expiratory respiratory pressure can be used as a proxy to assess the physical effect of hypophosphatemia on skeletal and proximal muscles. There are no specific questionnaires available to evaluate the clinical impact of hypophosphatemia. The SF-36 is, however, one of the most commonly applied QoL questionnaires used world-wide in health surveys. Additionally, the VAS score can be used as a general assessment of impact of symptoms, such as fatigue, general weakness, bone and skeletal pain, and joint and muscle conditions. In our study, these three methods were applied to assess clinical impact in patients who developed hypophosphatemia compared to those who did not develop hypophosphatemia. All three methods failed to demonstrate significant differences in clinical impact following one administration of high-dose intravenous iron in this short-term study.

We hypothesize several reasons that might explain these results. In addition to the fact that a type II error cannot be excluded, it can be speculated that the positive effect of the correction of ID or IDA plays a more important role than any short-term negative clinical impact of hypophosphatemia and, hence, the effects of hypophosphatemia would be difficult to discern in our study. Another challenge is that IBD, ID, IDA and hypophosphatemia are associated with similar symptoms and, possibly, similar impacts on daily life. Indeed, assessing the specific impact of hypophosphatemia with questionnaires would, therefore, prove difficult. Since the SF-36 and the VAS questionnaires are not disease- or population-specific, there may be uncertainty surrounding the reliability of the results. Additionally, the patient cohort had more than one dynamic medical condition, with overlapping symptoms, and patients were observed in a longitudinal manner. Certainly, it would be almost impossible to determine which disease state or co-morbidity is reflecting improvement or worsening of clinical status.

The already affected baseline recordings in SF-36 and the VAS score should not go unnoticed. These findings mirror previous studies of IBD populations[31], and reflect the reduced QoL and the intensity of symptoms that these patients experience in general. Finally, the fact that we did not detect clinical consequences in patients who developed hypophosphatemia suggests that, in order to detect overt symptoms and complications, the population size needs to be larger than our sample, as one might expect such complications to be relatively rare. Hence, this needs to be taken into account when considering the expectation of finding significant changes in the clinical outcomes in this study.

## CONCLUSION

In summary, our study has implicated the small peptide hormone FGF23 in the development of hypophosphatemia in IBD patients treated with FCM. An increase in intact FGF23 occurs, which probably results in phosphate wasting in the urine. Assessment of symptoms did not exclude, nor did they demonstrate, any short-term clinical impact of hypophosphatemia in IBD patients treated for ID or IDA with high-dose intravenous iron.

## ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

### *Research background*

High-dose intravenous iron is an effective and frequently used treatment option for iron deficiency (ID) or ID anaemia (IDA) in inflammatory bowel disease (IBD). However, treatment with ferric carboxymaltose (FCM) has been associated with the development of hypophosphatemia.

### *Research motivation*

We aimed to investigate the occurrence of hypophosphatemia after treatment with either FCM and ferric derisomaltose (FDI) for ID or IDA in patients with IBD.

### *Research objectives*

In this part of the study, we aimed to disclose underlying mechanism behind the development of hypophosphatemia after treatment with high dose intravenous iron and whether hypophosphatemia had a clinical impact on these patients.

### *Research methods*

A prospective observational study of adult IBD patients with ID or IDA was conducted between February 1, 2017 and July 1, 2018 at two separate university hospitals in the southeast region of Norway. Patients were recruited consecutively and received one dose of 1000 mg of either FCM or FDI, and were followed for an observation period of at least 7 wk at three timepoints; baseline, week 2 and week 6. Blood and urine samples were collected for relevant analyses at all three visits in addition to assessment of clinical symptoms using a respiratory function test, a visual analogue scale, and a health-related quality of life questionnaire.

### *Research results*

Our study results demonstrate an association between FCM treatment and the development of hypophosphatemia by increasing the level of intact Fibroblast Growth Factor 23 (iFGF23) and phosphate wasting in the urine. Moreover, we observed a significant decline in active Vitamin D and ionised calcium. No clinical impact was detected by applying Short Form-36 questionnaire, visual analogue scale score and real-time position management breathing test in an observation period of 6 wk.

### *Research conclusions*

FCM treatment is associated with the development of hypophosphatemia in patients with IBD. This is due to increased formation of iFGF23 which in turn probably results in an increase of urinary phosphate output. No clinical impact was detected nor excluded. Assumably our study is underpowered together with a too short observation period to provide solid information with regard to clinical impact of hypophosphatemia.

### *Research perspectives*

Based on our results we encourage clinicians to be aware of the risk of developing hypophosphatemia after treatment with FCM. Larger studies with a longer observation period to detect possible clinical impact of hypophosphatemia is desirable.

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

We would like to acknowledge Wondrak P at the Medical University of Innsbruck, Austria, for her great assistance and work with the analysis of 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin

D and fibroblast growth factor 23 in this study.

## REFERENCES


1 **Kulnigg S**, Gasche C. Systematic review: managing anaemia in Crohn's disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2006; **24**: 1507-1523 [PMID: 17206940 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2006.03146.x]

2 **Dignass AU**, Gasche C, Bettenworth D, Birgegård G, Danese S, Gisbert JP, Gomollon F, Iqbal T, Katsanos K, Koutroubakis I, Magro F, Savoye G, Stein J, Vavricka S; European Crohn's and Colitis Organisation [ECCO]. European consensus on the diagnosis and management of iron deficiency and anaemia in inflammatory bowel diseases. *J Crohns Colitis* 2015; **9**: 211-222 [PMID: 25518052 DOI: 10.1093/ecco-jcc/jju009]

3 **Eriksson C**, Henriksson I, Brus O, Zhulina Y, Nyhlin N, Tysk C, Montgomery S, Halfvarson J. Incidence, prevalence and clinical outcome of anaemia in inflammatory bowel disease: a population-based cohort study. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2018; **48**: 638-645 [PMID: 30069892 DOI: 10.1111/apt.14920]

4 **Rampton DS**, Goodhand JR, Joshi NM, Karim AB, Koodun Y, Barakat FM, Macken L, Ward DG, Iqbal TH, Epstein J, Fell JM, Sanderson IR. Oral Iron Treatment Response and Predictors in Anaemic Adolescents and Adults with IBD: A Prospective Controlled Open-Label Trial. *J Crohns Colitis* 2017; **11**: 706-715 [PMID: 27932449 DOI: 10.1093/ecco-jcc/jjw208]

5 **Lobo V**, Patil A, Phatak A, Chandra N. Free radicals, antioxidants and functional foods: Impact on human health. *Pharmacogn Rev* 2010; **4**: 118-126 [PMID: 22228951 DOI: 10.4103/0973-7847.70902]

6 **Mahalhal A**, Williams JM, Johnson S, Ellaby N, Duckworth CA, Burkitt MD, Liu X, Hold GL, Campbell BJ, Pritchard DM, Probert CS. Oral iron exacerbates colitis and influences the intestinal microbiome. *PLoS One* 2018; **13**: e0202460 [PMID: 30308045 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0202460]

7 **Carrier J**, Aghdassi E, Platt I, Cullen J, Allard JP. Effect of oral iron supplementation on oxidative stress and colonic inflammation in rats with induced colitis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2001; **15**: 1989-1999 [PMID: 11736731 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2036.2001.01113.x]

8 **Detlie TE**, Lindstrøm JC, Jahnsen ME, Finnes E, Zoller H, Moum B, Jahnsen J. Incidence of hypophosphatemia in patients with inflammatory bowel disease treated with ferric carboxymaltose or iron isomaltoside. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2019; **50**: 397-406 [PMID: 31264261 DOI: 10.1111/apt.15386]

9 **Wolf M**, Rubin J, Achebe M, Econs MJ, Peacock M, Imel EA, Thomsen LL, Carpenter TO, Weber T, Brandenburg V, Zoller H. Effects of Iron Isomaltoside *vs* Ferric Carboxymaltose on Hypophosphatemia in Iron-Deficiency Anemia: Two Randomized Clinical Trials. *JAMA* 2020; **323**: 432-443 [PMID: 32016310 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2019.22450]

10 **Subramanian R**, Khardori R. Severe hypophosphatemia. Pathophysiologic implications, clinical presentations, and treatment. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2000; **79**: 1-8 [PMID: 10670405 DOI: 10.1097/00005792-200001000-00001]

11 **Amanzadeh J**, Reilly RF Jr. Hypophosphatemia: an evidence-based approach to its clinical consequences and management. *Nat Clin Pract Nephrol* 2006; **2**: 136-148 [PMID: 16932412 DOI: 10.1038/ncpneph0124]

12 **Padelli M**, Leven C, Sakka M, Plée-Gautier E, Carré JL. [Causes, consequences and treatment of hypophosphatemia: A systematic review]. *Presse Med* 2017; **46**: 987-999 [PMID: 29089216 DOI: 10.1016/j.lpm.2017.09.002]

13 **Geerse DA**, Bindels AJ, Kuiper MA, Roos AN, Spronk PE, Schultz MJ. Treatment of hypophosphatemia in the intensive care unit: a review. *Crit Care* 2010; **14**: R147 [PMID: 20682049 DOI: 10.1186/cc9215]

14 **Schaefer B**, Glodny B, Zoller H. Blood and Bone Loser. *Gastroenterology* 2017; **152**: e5-e6 [PMID: 28384445 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2016.09.050]

15 **Klein K**, Asaad S, Econs M, Rubin JE. Severe FGF23-based hypophosphataemic osteomalacia due to ferric carboxymaltose administration. *BMJ Case Rep* 2018; **2018** [PMID: 29298794 DOI: 10.1136/bcr-2017-222851]

16 **Urbina T**, Belkhir R, Rossi G, Carbonnel F, Pavy S, Collins M, Mariette X, Seror R. Iron Supplementation-Induced Phosphaturic Osteomalacia: FGF23 is the Culprit. *J Bone Miner Res* 2018; **33**: 540-542 [PMID: 29281120 DOI: 10.1002/jbmr.3369]

17 **Reyes M**, Diamond T. Hypophosphataemic Rickets Due to Parenteral Ferrous Carboxymaltose in a Young Man with Crohn Disease and Iron Deficiency: A Case Report and Review of Literature. *J Clin Case Rep* 2017; **7**: 931 [DOI: 10.4172/2165-7920.1000931]

18 **Moradkhani A**, Beckman LJ, Tabibian JH. Health-related quality of life in inflammatory bowel disease: psychosocial, clinical, socioeconomic, and demographic predictors. *J Crohns Colitis* 2013; **7**: 467-473 [PMID: 22884758 DOI: 10.1016/j.crohns.2012.07.012]

19 **Vavricka SR**, Schoepfer A, Scharl M, Lakatos PL, Navarini A, Rogler G. Extraintestinal Manifestations of Inflammatory Bowel Disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2015; **21**: 1982-1992 [PMID: 26154136 DOI: 10.1097/MIB.0000000000000392]

20 **Ware JE Jr**, Sherbourne CD. The MOS 36-item short-form health survey (SF-36). I. Conceptual framework and item selection. *Med Care* 1992; **30**: 473-483 [PMID: 1593914]

21 **Ware JE**, Snow KK, Kosinski M, Gandek B. Health survey manual and interpretation guide. Boston: The Health Institute, New England Medical Center, 1993

22 **Wolf M**, Chertow GM, Macdougall IC, Kaper R, Krop J, Strauss W. Randomized trial of intravenous iron-induced hypophosphatemia. *JCI Insight* 2018; **3** [PMID: 30518682 DOI: 10.1172/jci.insight.124486]

23 **Fukumoto S**. Phosphate metabolism and vitamin D. *Bonekey Rep* 2014; **3**: 497 [PMID: 24605214 DOI: 10.1038/bonekey.2013.231]

24 **Hasegawa H**, Nagano N, Urakawa I, Yamazaki Y, Iijima K, Fujita T, Yamashita T, Fukumoto S, Shimada T. Direct evidence for a causative role of FGF23 in the abnormal renal phosphate handling and vitamin D metabolism in rats with early-stage chronic kidney disease. *Kidney Int* 2010; **78**: 975-980 [PMID: 20844473 DOI: 10.1038/ki.2010.313]

25 **Shimada T**, Hasegawa H, Yamazaki Y, Muto T, Hino R, Takeuchi Y, Fujita T, Nakahara K, Fukumoto S, Yamashita T. FGF-23 is a potent regulator of vitamin D metabolism and phosphate homeostasis. *J Bone Miner Res* 2004; **19**: 429-435 [PMID: 15040831 DOI: 10.1359/JBMR.0301264]

26 **Prié D**, Friedlander G. Reciprocal control of 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D and FGF23 formation involving the FGF23/Klotho system. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol* 2010; **5**: 1717-1722 [PMID: 20798257 DOI: 10.2215/CJN.02680310]

27 **Quarles LD**. Endocrine functions of bone in mineral metabolism regulation. *J Clin Invest* 2008; **118**: 3820-3828 [PMID: 19033649 DOI: 10.1172/JCI36479]

28 **Potts JT**. Parathyroid hormone: past and present. *J Endocrinol* 2005; **187**: 311-325 [PMID: 16423810 DOI: 10.1677/joe.1.06057]

29 **Fletcher J**, Cooper SC, Ghosh S, Hewison M. The Role of Vitamin D in Inflammatory Bowel Disease: Mechanism to Management. *Nutrients* 2019; **11** [PMID: 31067701 DOI: 10.3390/nu11051019]

30 **Nottingham University Hospitals**. Guideline for the Treatment of Hypophosphatemia in Adults. [cited 15 September 2020]. In: Nottingham University Hospitals [Internet]. Available from: https://studyres.com/doc/14104630/hypophosphataemia-in-adults---nottingham-university-hospi

31 **Jelsness-Jørgensen LP**, Bernklev T, Henriksen M, Torp R, Moum BA. Chronic fatigue is associated with impaired health-related quality of life in inflammatory bowel disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2011; **33**: 106-114 [PMID: 21083587 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2010.04498.x]

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**
7041 Koll Center Parkway, Suite 160, Pleasanton, CA 94566, USA
**Telephone:** +1-925-3991568
**E-mail:** bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
**Help Desk:** https://www.f6publishing.com/helpdesk
https://www.wjgnet.com